



3 1761 03622 8709







A GRAMMAR OF LATE MODERN ENGLISH

BY

H. POUTSMA

SOMETIME ENGLISH MASTER IN THE MUNICIPAL "GYMNASIUM"
AMSTERDAM

PART I

THE SENTENCE

SECOND HALF

THE COMPOSITE SENTENCE



SECOND EDITION

P. NOORDHOFF — 1929 — GRONINGEN



PE
1105
P6
1978
v.2

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER IX.	
Introduction	543
CHAPTER X.	
Copulative Co-ordination	555
CHAPTER XI.	
Adversative Co-ordination	589
CHAPTER XII.	
Causal Co-ordination	601
CHAPTER XIII.	
Subordinate Statements	607
CHAPTER XIV.	
Subordinate Questions	623
CHAPTER XV.	
Substantive Clauses	633
CHAPTER XVI.	
Adnominal Clauses	639
CHAPTER XVII.	
Adverbial Clauses	655
CHAPTER XVIII.	
Infinitive-Clauses	763
CHAPTER XIX.	
Gerund-Clauses	829
CHAPTER XX.	
Participle-Clauses	965
CHAPTER XXI.	
Nominal-Clauses	993
CHAPTER XXII.	
Elliptical Sentences and Anacolutha	997

SECOND HALF.

THE COMPOSITE SENTENCE.

CHAPTER IX.

INTRODUCTION.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Co-ordination and subordination compared	1— 5
Incomplete clauses	6— 7
Contraction	7
Compound elements of a sentence	8
Incomplete clauses compared with Elliptic Sentences	9
Co-ordination effected by Conjunctions or Conjunctive Adverbial Adjuncts	10—12
Syndetic, Asyndetic (or Collateral) and Polysyndetic Connexion	12
Copulative, Adversative, and Causal Co-ordination	13
Full, Incomplete, and Undeveloped Subordinate clauses	14
Subordinate Statements, Subordinate Questions, Substantival Clauses, Attributive Adnominal Clauses, Adverbial Clauses	15
The Element to be supplied in Incomplete Subordinate Clauses	16
Infinitive-, Gerund-, Participle-, and Nominal Undeveloped clauses	17

1. A composite sentence is the union of two or more sentences which from their contents, the way in which they are arranged or joined together, and the manner in which they are uttered, form a whole.
2. The grammatical relation between the different members of a composite sentence is that of:
 - a) Co-ordination (parataxis), when they are grammatically of equal rank, as in:

He will go on a journey, and his brother will stay at home.

He will go on a journey, but his brother will stay at home.

He will go on a journey, therefore his brother will stay at home.

b) Subordination (hypotaxis), when one member represents an element (subject, nominal part of the predicate, object, etc.) of the other, as in:

What I told you rests on sufficient evidence.

My advice is that you should not meddle with the affair.

I gave him what I had received.

I will tell you all that I know of the matter.

He did not go out, because he was ill.

Note a) The distinction between co-ordination and subordination is sometimes rather a grammatical than a semantic one. Thus no appreciable difference in meaning is involved if the co-ordinative *and* is changed into the subordinative *while* in *John is a banker, and his brother holds a situation under government*. Conversely *while* might be replaced by *and* or *but*, the latter on the strength of the implied contrast, in: Galsworthy at least had sympathy, while Ibsen stops short at understanding. *Manch. Guard.*, 12/11, 1926, 412 b.

The Church, after all, inherits her doctrines from the Reformation, while many of her customs and festivals are as old as Mithraism. *ib.*, 28/10, 1927, 322 c.

Substitution of *while* for *and*, however, would make the following sentence ambiguous:

The children were having their music lessons, and the baby was crying next-door. *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 2219.

For examples with *while* as a variant of *and*, the latter, in the writers' opinion, to be preferred to the former, see FOWLER, *The King's English*, 357.

In the proverb *Spare the rod and spoil the child* the first member clearly indicates a condition, so that *If you spare the rod, you will spoil the child* would be a more logical expression of the lesson contained in it.

Here follow some more examples with co-ordination that have approximate equivalents with subordination, the latter here placed within brackets:

Slaves cannot breathe in England; if their lungs | Receive our air, that moment they are free; | They touch our country, and their shackles fall. COWPER. *Task*, II, 40. (= ... As soon as they touch our country, their shackles fall.) The whole house was roaring with laughter and applause, and he saw only an ignoble farce that made him sad. THACK., *Pend.*, II. Ch. XIII, 135. (= ... while he saw only etc.)

I went at once; otherwise I should have missed him. O. E. D., s. v. *otherwise*. 2. (= If I had not gone at once, I should have missed him.)

Your arguments are very strong, nevertheless they do not convince me. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 409. (= Although your arguments are very strong, they do not convince me.)

This is no party question, for it touches us not as Liberals or Conservatives, but as citizens. *Manch. Guard.*, 22/10, 1883 (O. E. D.). (= ... because it touches us not ...)

Observe also that alternative adversative co-ordination (Ch. XI, 12) is often interchangeable with disjunctive concession (Ch. XVII, 98, Obs. VI). For further illustration see also Ch. LXI, 3. Compare especially ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Syntax*, § 288—§ 300.

β) Students of Dutch and Old English (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1776) are, no doubt, aware that the word-order in subordinate clauses often differs from that observed in co-ordinate clauses. As the above examples show, this is not mostly the case in Modern English. It is only certain subordinate questions that have another word-order than the corresponding direct questions in Modern English, as is shown by a comparison of *I wonder whether he has succeeded with Has he succeeded?* (Ch. VIII, 23).

In fact the main structural difference between subordinate and co-ordinate clauses, so far as they open with conjunctions, is the fact that the former may, as a rule, either precede or follow the head-clause, while in the latter the arrangement is fixed, the member containing the connecting link always standing last. Thus the order may be reversed in *My eldest son was bred at Oxford, as I intended him for the learned professions* (GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. 1), but this could not be done with *Do as you are told, for much depends on it* (BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 109).

3. A sentence that is made up only of members that are co-ordinate is said to be compound. When a sentence contains one or more members that are subordinate to another member, it is called complex. See MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 400.
4. The members of a compound or complex sentence are called clauses. When two or more subordinate clauses are found in a complex sentence, a) they may represent the same element, as in *I shall tell you what I heard, and what I saw*, b) they may represent different elements, as in *When I am ready, I will tell you what I heard*, c) one clause may be contained in another, as in *I told him that I would come when I had finished the letter on which I was engaged*.

The member of a complex sentence to which a clause is subordinate is termed its *head-clause*.

5. Two or more complex sentences may be joined co-ordinatively, as in *I will tell your brother the news when I see him, but I do not think that he will arrive this week.*

A complex sentence may contain two or more clauses that are co-ordinate; e. g.: *I shall tell you afterwards what I saw, and what I heard.*

6. a) A sentence or clause may be said to be incomplete when part of it is left out, because it can be supplied from the context, i. e. from another sentence or clause with which it is syntactically connected; e. g.:

i. They rowed up to it: it was a boat, but empty, and floating bottom upwards. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. VIII, 80.

"Would not you like to be a mill-owner?" — "Shouldn't I?" Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.* Ch. X, 108.

ii. "Did you see any one you thought you recognized?" — "I should rather think I did!" PUNCH.

iii. This is not the same as that. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 165.

He has not such a large income as my brother.

iv. If a man was great while living, he becomes tenfold greater when dead. CARLYLE, *Hero Worship*, I, 23.

The general impression seems to have been that Robert was a dunce, if not a reprobate. MAC., *Clive*, (498 b).

He sobbed as a child. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 495.

He is more witty than wise. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 109.

He did not sleep for a wonder that night any more than Amelia. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 362.

Note a) It should be distinctly understood that the term incomplete is here used in a grammatical, not in a semantic sense, i. e. it refers to the structure of the sentence or clause, not to its meaning. See especially ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 289.

b) Complex sentences may be rendered incomplete through the suppression of the head-clause or a subordinate clause.

i. "You'll want all to-morrow, I suppose?" said Scrooge. — "If quite convenient, sir." DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 12. (— ... shall want all to-morrow, if quite convenient, sir.)

ii. The evil that men do lives after them; the good is oft interred with their bones. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 81. (= ... the good that men do is oft interred with their bones.)

Note a) In the case of a nominal predicate in an incomplete adverbial clause it is often the copula *to be* that is also dispensed with, although it is not to be found in the preceding part of the complex; thus in some of the above examples, and in:

I wrote a similar epitaph for my wife, though still living. GOLDS., *Vic.* Ch. II. (— though she was still living.)

I lose most of my fortune, if I marry without my aunt's consent, till of age. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2. (— till I am of age.)

The Sophists were hated by some because powerful, by others because shallow. LEWES, *Hist. Philos.*, 114. (— because they were powerful, ... because they were shallow.)

β) When expanded into full clauses, incomplete clauses mostly have

a personal pronoun for their subject indicating the same person or thing as some (pro)noun in the head-clause; thus in the preceding examples. Sometimes there is no such co-occurrence, as in:

Though summer, I knew on such a gloomy evening Mr. Rochester would like to see a cheerful hearth when he came home. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXV, 338.

7. a) A compound sentence, or a group of clauses joined co-ordinatively together, which contains one or more than one incomplete member, is said to be contracted; thus:

i. He tried hard, but did not succeed. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 417.

Eclipse is first, and the rest nowhere. MAC., *Boswell's Life of Johnson*, (175 b).

Your robe was not well made, nor your bonnet very fresh. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 234.

ii. In a masterly manner he had pointed out what should be the type for the various articles: who should report the markets; who the turf and ring; who the Church intelligence, and who the fashionable chit-chat. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXIII, 354.

b) Contraction may be due to extensive suppression as in:

It's a pleasure to obey a laird; or should be, to the young. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. I, (193).

c) Contraction is avoided by precise speakers and writers when the part suppressed is not identical in form, function, or meaning with the corresponding part in the complete sentence or clause. "Incorrect" contraction mostly concerns sentences in which the predicate contains a form of the copula *to be*. This is, however, very common, even in the works of authors who are reputed to write pure English, so that it seems to be mere pedantry to find fault with it. Numerous instances may be found in HODGSON, *Errors in the Use of English*, 149 ff. So-called improper contraction is also found in:

Oh, I'm the chief of Ulva's isle, | And this Lord Ullin's daughter. CAMPBELL, *Lord Ullin's Daughter*, II.

Day after day, when school was over, and the pupils gone, did Nathaniel Pipkin sit himself down at the front window. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 151.

The delusion is better than the truth sometimes, and fine dreams than dismal waking. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIX, 200.

Kind hearts are more than coronets, | And simple faith than Norman blood. TEN., *Lady Clara Vere de Vere*, VII.

I don't know that the Queen is the better, or her enemies the worse, for me, since we parted last in Dublin city. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, 213 a.

I'm your born uncle, Davie, my man, and you my born nephew. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. III, (201).

The sky is not always as blue as this, nor our green wavelets so tame. DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XV.

Though employment has been good, and wages high during the year, pauperism has shown a tendency to increase in London. *Times*.

In such a sentence as the following the contraction may be excused on the plea that the part within the commas is meant as a parenthetic insertion:

Nobody, not even the working-classes, cares about a Reform Bill KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Pref., 106.

Such contractions as are found in the following examples would, however, hardly pass muster even with the most indulgent of grammatical critics:

Eh! cousin, a goddess in a mob-cap, that has to make her husband's gruel ceases to be divine — I am sure of it. I should have been sulky and scolded. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. IV, 349. (In its connexion with *sulky*, *been* is a copula in that with *scolded* it is the auxiliary of the passive voice.)

Well — perhaps there isn't much risk so long as he's infatuated and got money. GALSWORTHY, *In Chanc.*, Ch. III, (471). (The 's in connexion with *infatuated* represents a shortened *is*, in connexion with *got money* a shortened *has*.)

Also the following examples, although the elements to be supplied in the second member are all to be found in the first, are in bad taste:

Yet it was the man who blushed, the maid not at all. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. III, 20.

A main entrance it was plainly meant to be, but never finished. STEV., *Kid n.*, Ch. II. (198).

The moon had passed behind the oak-tree now ... — the oak-tree his boy had been so fond of climbing, out of which he had once fallen and hurt himself, and hadn't cried. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, III, VII, (714).

In the following example the pronoun *they* has, most probably, fallen out through inadvertence of the press-reader or the compositor:

What sums he made can only be conjectured, but must have been enormous. MACAULAY (*Fowler*, *King's Eng.* 101).

8. Also the different elements of a sentence or clause may be compound, i. e. consist of two or more co-ordinate parts; e. g.:
Mrs. Smith and Professor Green called while you were out. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 405.

He had to stay at home, because he had to write several letters and post-cards. Sentences and clauses with compound elements differ from contracted sentences, and groups of clauses, in that they really contain but one communication.

9. When either the subject or the predicate, or both, are suppressed, and cannot be supplied from the context, the sentence or clause is said to be elliptic (Ch. XXII); e. g.:

Well done! For shame!

Their's not to reason why. TEN., *Charge of the Light Brig.*, II.

Not a penny off, not a minute on! Slogan of the Miners.

10. The connexion of the members of a compound sentence or group of clauses, or of the parts of a compound element of a sentence or clause, may or may not be indicated by conjunctions. There are two kinds of co-ordinative conjunctions:

a) conjunctions, i. e. mere link-words, standing between the members or parts linked together, but belonging to no member or part in particular. The only co-ordinative conjunctions are *and*, *nor*, *but*, *or*, and *for*.

b) conjunctive adverbial adjuncts, i.e. words or word-groups performing the double service of modifying the second or following sentence or part, and linking it to a preceding one. Conjunctive adverbial adjuncts are, strictly speaking, unlimited in number. They include not only such words as necessarily point back to a preceding sentence, clause or element, like *also*, *too*, *however*, *yet*, *therefore*, *accordingly*; but any pronominal adverb, or word-group containing a pronominal word, may be used conjunctively. Thus in *They left for Rome; here they intended to spend the cold season*, or ... *in this town they intended to spend the cold season*, the adverb *here* and the adverbial word-group *in this town* join the second sentence to the first. But the primary and commonest function of *here* and *this* is not that of conjunctive words. Compare with the above, for example, such sentences as *He came here*, *Will you read this again?* It is for this reason that only such conjunctive adverbial adjuncts as always have a linking function, will be discussed in the following §§.

Note. The conjunctive *neither* is partly conjunction, partly conjunctive adverb. It is a conjunction when it occurs singly and introduces the second member, in which case it is interchangeable with *nor*. It is a conjunctive adverb when it occurs as the correlative of *nor*, also when it stands either at the end or in the body of the second member. For instances see below. The conjunctive *either* is always a conjunctive adverb. For instances see below.

11. Most conjunctive adverbs and adverbial expressions may be found together with co-ordinative conjunctions, chiefly *and* and *but*; thus in:

I am myself indifferent honest; but yet I could accuse me of such things, that it were better my mother had not borne me. SHAK., HAMLET, III, 1, 124.

It is painful to be obliged to record the weaknesses of fathers, but it must be furthermore told of Costigan that ... he would not unfrequently beg from his daughter, THACK., PEND., II, Ch. V, 53.

They also occur in either the head-clause or the subordinate clause of a complex sentence, as in:

i. Though Mr. Osgood's family was also understood to be of timeless origin, still he merely owned the farm he occupied. G. ELIOT, SIL MARSH, Ch. III, 18. If Arthur was red, Fanny, on the contrary, was very worn and pale. THACK., PEND. II, Ch. II, 128.

ii. If, on the contrary, we had taken a fancy for the terrible, ... we should easily have constructed a tale of thrilling interest. id., VAN FAIR, I, Ch. VI, 52.

12. A connexion which is indicated by a conjunctive is called *syndetic*, one which is not indicated by any conjunctive *asyndetic* or *collateral*. When the conjunction *and* or, or *nor* is repeated before each member of a compound sentence or element, the connexion is said to be *polysyndetic*.

Instances of *syndetic* connexion: My father was a native of Liverpool, and my mother was born in Manchester.

My father and my mother were in high spirits.

Johnsons are rare; yet, as has been asserted, Boswells perhaps still rarer. CARL., *Past and Pres.*, II, Ch. I, 36.

The papers were not ready, consequently they could not be signed.

Instances of *asyndetic connexion*: Fear God; honour the king! I came, I saw, I conquered.

His life will be safe — his possessions safe — his rank safe. LYTTON, *Rienzi*. (MÄTZN.², *Eng. Gram.*², III, 393).

Instances of *polysyndetic connexion*: We have ships, and men, and money and stores. WEBST., *Dict.*

The Cossack prince rubb'd down his horse, | And made for him a leafy bed, | And smooth'd his fetlocks and his mane, | And slack'd his girth and stripp'd his rein, | And joy'd to see how well he fed. BYRON, *Mazeppa*, III.

We will exchange him away for money, yea, for silver and gold, and for beef and for liquors, and for raiment. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IV, 43.

Note. Polysyndetic connexion is naturally more frequent in the spoken than in the written language, because in the former the mind is, as a rule, less prepared to mention the items of an enumeration than in the latter. It should also be observed that in polysyndetic connexion each item is uttered with a falling tone, while in (a)syndetic connexion the falling tone is reserved for the last. Compare JESPERSEN, *Phil. of Gram.*, 26f.

13. Co-ordination is chiefly of three kinds:

a) *copulative*, when the following sentence or clause is an extension of the preceding, as in:

He staid not for brake, and he stopp'd not for stone; | He swam the Eske river, where ford there was none. SCOTT, *Marm.*, V, XII, II.

I could not come, because I had to attend a meeting, and the chairman wanted my services.

b) *adversative*, when one sentence is opposed to the other, as in:

The Commons passed the bill, but the Lords threw it out. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 105.

c) *causal (or illative)*, when one sentence denotes the cause (reason or ground) of what is expressed by the other, as in:

He must have done it, for there was no one else in the room.

There was no one else in the room, therefore he must have done it.

This distinction is based upon the logical relations between the different conceptions expressed by the sentences, words or word-groups joined together. When the conjunction *and* precedes a conjunctive adverb, it is, accordingly, the latter which indicates the kind of co-ordination we have to deal with.

In the case of juxtaposition without any connecting word, and also when no other link-word is used than the conjunction *and*, there is often much room for understanding the relations in different ways, insomuch that classification must sometimes seem arbitrary. See O. E. D., s. v. *and*, 7, 8. Thus the following examples may be given as instances of either copulative or adversative co-ordination:

God made the country, and man made the town. COWPER, *Task*, I, 749.

The evil that men do lives after them. | The good is oft interred with their bones. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 70.

The following examples may be classified as instances of either copulative or causal co-ordination:

All remembered their affinity, and came frequently to see us. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I.

I am a mortal and liable to fall. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 30.

Darkness is cheap and Scrooge liked it. *ib.*, I, 15.

14. Subordinate clauses occur in three forms, viz.: a) full, i. e. with every element fully expressed; b) incomplete, i. e. with part of it suppressed (6, a); c) undeveloped, i. e. consisting of a verbal or nominal with or without one or more complements, as in:

i. To love one's neighbours is a Christian duty. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*²¹, § 388.

ii. Hating one's neighbour is forbidden by the Gospel. *ib.*, § 368.

iii. * The sun having risen, we commenced our journey. *ib.*, § 372.

** Supper ended, the assembly disperses for the night. Athen.

*** Clive was justly regarded as a man equal to any command. MAC., *Clive*, (507 b).

Note. Undeveloped clauses answer to *beknopte bijzinnen* in Dutch. For detailed discussion see DEN HERTOEG, *Ned. Spraakkunst*, II, 37. See also SPEYER, *Lat. Spraakk.*², § 720, where it is observed, "Men zou daarom de participia en infinitivi kunnen noemen, bijzinnen in den knop, en de bijzinnen ontplooide participia of infinitivi." Undeveloped clauses are called phrases in some English Grammars; thus in MASON, *Eng. Gram.*²¹, § 401, foot-note; BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 28.

15. According to their meaning full subordinate clauses may be divided into: a) such as correspond to a statement; e. g.: *I told him that peace had been concluded*; b) such as correspond to a question; e. g.: *I asked him if peace had been concluded*; c) such as denote a person, animal or thing; e. g.: *Who steals my purse steals trash. I gave him what is good for him*; d) such as denote particulars of a person, animal or thing; e. g.: *This is the boy that broke the window. Look at the letter which I have written*; e) such as denote particulars of an action or state; e. g.: *He made off when he saw the police. Do unto others as you would be done unto*.

Appropriate names for those of the first and the second kind are, respectively, subordinate statements and subordinate questions. They are found in almost all the grammatical functions in which most nouns can be used, viz. in those of subject, nominal part of the predicate, object, whether prepositional or non-prepositional, adnominal adjunct, and adverbial adjunct (Ch. XIII, 1; Ch. XIV, 1).

There is not, unfortunately, a suitable name for the subordinate clauses of the third kind. For want of a better they are called substantive clauses in these pages. They also occur in

the most frequent functions of ordinary nouns, i. e. in all those above mentioned, except that of adnominal adjunct (Ch. XV, 1).

Note. Substantive clause is not, admittedly, a characterizing name for the third kind of subordinate clauses. It is objectionable because subordinate statements and subordinate questions, serving as they do the same grammatical functions as a substantive, may also be called by this name. As these latter are, however, markedly designated on the strength of a feature all their own, there is some justification in using the term substantive clause in a narrower sense, i. e. in applying it only to a subdivision.

The clauses of the fourth kind occur, naturally, only in the function of attributive adnominal adjunct, and from this function they may aptly be called attributive adnominal clauses (Ch. XXI).

The clauses of the fifth kind, from their being almost exclusively representative of adverbial adjuncts, have received the name of adverbial clauses (Ch. XVII).

16. When a subordinate clause is incomplete, the part that is wanting is to be supplied: 1) from a preceding sentence not constituting its head-clause, as in the example under ii in 6, *a*; 2) from its head-clause, as in the examples under iii and iv in 6; 3) from another co-ordinate clause, as in the example under ii in 7, *a*.
17. All verbals, whether substantival or adjectival, occur as constituents of undeveloped clauses. To these we may add nominals or equivalent word-groups, which also, either by themselves or in connexion with other words, often have the syntactical value of undeveloped clauses. We may, accordingly, distinguish: *a*) infinitive-, *b*) gerund-, *c*) participle-, and *d*) nominal undeveloped clauses.

All the types of full clauses have representatives in undeveloped clauses. Thus the infinitive-undeveloped clause corresponds to:

a subordinate statement in: It was determined to send a force against them. MAC., *Clive*, (509 *b*). Compare: It was determined that an expedition should be sent to the Hoogley. *ib.*, (514 *b*).

a subordinate question in: I didn't know whether to laugh or cry. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. III, (203). Compare: I didn't know whether I should laugh or cry.

a substantive clause in: They struggled with difficulties and wants, not having where to lay their heads. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, *Martin*, (95 *a*)^{*} Compare: Here, as I take my solitary rounds | ... And ... return to view | Where once the cottage stood, the hawthorn grew, | Remembrance wakes with all her busy train. GOLDS., *Des. Vil.*, 80.

an attributive adnominal clause in: George was the first to recover himself. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. III, 50. Compare: George was the first who recovered himself.

an adverbial clause in: To hear him talk, one would suppose he was master here. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 196. Compare: If you heard him talk, you would suppose he was master here.

For the sake of brevity some abbreviations are used in the following discussions. Thus *infinitive-clause* stands for *infinitive undeveloped clause*, *gerund-clause* for *gerund undeveloped clause*, etc.; *infinitive statement* for *infinitive undeveloped clause representing a subordinate statement*; *infinitive question* for *infinitive undeveloped clause representing a subordinate question*, etc.

NOTE. Seeing that verbals that may be considered as simple elements of sentences or clauses present in almost every respect the same grammatical features as undeveloped clauses, they will be discussed under the same headings with the latter.

Undeveloped clauses may, besides, serve the function of predicative adnominal adjuncts; thus in :

I like boys to be quiet. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 124.

The voice of the apprentice was heard calling "Master" in great alarm. G. ELIOT, Broth. Jac., Ch. III, (535).

CHAPTER X.

COPULATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Four varieties of Copulative Co-ordination	1
Simple Copulative Co-ordination	2—23
Remarkable Applications of <i>and</i>	3—19
Hendiadys	9—19
<i>Nor</i> and <i>neither</i>	20—21
Correlative Combinations	22
<i>Now</i>	23
Relieving Copulative Co-ordination	24—27
Arranging Copulative Co-ordination	28—31
Analysing Copulative Co-ordination	32—34

FOUR VARIETIES OF COPULATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

1. We may distinguish four varieties of copulative co-ordination, viz.: *a)* simple, in which the members are simply mentioned in succession without any one being thrown into particular relief; *b)* relieving, in which one member, representing something more or less uncommon or unexpected, is thrown into some relief; *c)* arranging, in which the members are enumerated according to the supposed relative importance, or the order of succession of the ideas they represent; *d)* analysing, in which each member denotes a phenomenon or state which bears only in part on the matter described, or only on different epochs or aspects of it. The line of demarcation between *a)* and *b)* cannot be strictly drawn.

SIMPLE COPULATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

2. In simple copulative co-ordination the members are often placed in succession without any conjunctive (Ch. IX, 12); e. g.:

The way was long, the wind was cold, | The Minstrel was infirm and old; |
His wither'd cheek, and tresses grey, | Seem'd to have known a better day
[etc.]. SCOTT, Lay, Introd., 1-4.

The connexion may also be effected by: *a)* the conjunctions *and*, *nor* or *neither*; *b)* the correlative expressions *alike ... and*, *at once ... and*, *both ... and*, *equally ... and*, *neither ... nor*, in which the first element is an adverb, the second a conjunction; *c)* the conjunctive adverb *now*.

REMARKABLE APPLICATIONS OF *AND*.

3. *And*, the commonest of these conjunctives, is used, in the main, in the same cases as the Dutch *en*. Some applications, however, deserve to be noticed.
4. *a)* A clause opening with *and* is not unfrequently placed in the body of the sentence by way of parenthesis, as in:
Mr. Arthur Henderson — and no better spokesman could have been found — has roused considerable discussion by putting forward ... a proposal for a joint conference of representative employers and workmen to discuss the industrial situation. *Manch. Guard.*, 14/1, 1927, 21 *a*.
- b)* *And* is regularly placed at the head of a clause which is the second member of a compound sentence whose first member

contains an imperative. The latter mostly implies an adverbial relation of condition, occasionally one of concession (Ch. XVII, 78, *d*; 95, *c*).

Give him an inch, and he will take an ell. Speak one word, and you are a dead man! O. E. D., s. v. *and*, 8, *b*.

I will be satisfied: deny me this | And an eternal curse fall on you. SHAK., Mac b., IV, I, 105.

Scratch a Russian, and you will see the Tartar. BAIN, Eng. Comp., 199.

ii. Take any form but that, and my firm nerves shall never tremble. SHAK., Mac b., III, 4, 102.

Note. Sometimes both members of the complex are imperatives, as in *Spare the rod, and spoil the child*; *Give a dog a bad name, and hang him*.

c) In colloquial or vulgar language *and* is sometimes used in both the first and the second member of a compound sentence.

"She'll never put her foot inside this hall door again. That's my idea of the matter," said Spooner. — "Indeed and she will," said Rachel, "and be a happier woman than ever she's been since the house was took." TROL., Ori. Farm, II, Ch. XXI, 275.

5. *a*) *And* is used to connect not only two members of a compound sentence or of a compound element of a sentence, but also to bring about a junction of a sentence with an undeveloped nominal- or infinitive-clause, the latter standing last. Such a clause mostly denotes an adverbial relation of attendant circumstances (Ch. XVII, 116), which appears from the fact that, as a rule, it admits of being expanded into a full clause opening with *while*, or a gerund-clause introduced by *with* or *without*. Compare Ch. XX, 11 Obs. VI; and see JESPERSEN, Progr., § 165.

i. How could the room be cleaned, and me with my rheumatism? ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 61, *a*, 4.

He knew that his poor old mother could not be cheerful, and he away. DICK., Pickw., Ch. VI, 53.

I wonder what it is he's going to say. If he's going to pop, and the father in all this trouble, he's the finest fellow that ever trod. TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. VII, 66.

'Tis hundreds o'miles, and so wet, and night a'coming on, and I with no money! HARDY, Life's Little Ironies, VII, 186.

ii. You cannot speak of reason to the Dane, | And lose your voice. SHAK., Haml., I, 2, 44.

You cannot touch pitch and not be defiled. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. XVIII, 316.

Note *a*) Those clauses which admit of being expanded into a full clause with *while* may be apprehended as a variety of the construction usually termed nominative absolute (Ch. XX, 8 ff), which in its ordinary form contains a nominative and a present participle, and is not preceded by *and*. The use of *and* before the nominative absolute seems to be confined to the language of the illiterate.

When I cried, she took hold of my hand to comfort me — and the gentleman waiting for her all the time — and her poor heart very full of something, I am sure. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIV, 272.

H. POUTSMA, I II.

β) The undeveloped clause is sometimes placed parenthetically in the body of the head-clause, as in:

Mrs. Proudie ... would not hear of her guest — and he a clergyman — going out to the inn for his breakfast on a Sunday morning. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VII, 62.

I thought the plainness of my appearance, in my country habit, and that all dusty from the road, consorted ill with the greatness of the place to which I was bound. STEV., Kidn., Ch. II, (195).

γ) The practice is exceedingly common in Irish English, numerous instances appearing in the Irish novels of TROLLOPE. Compare also A. G. VAN HAMEL (*And* in Anglo Irish, E. S., XLV, 284), who illustrates it from the writings of YEATS.

And would you then be letting him come here as he likes, and settling nothing, and just maning to marry you or not, as he likes, and you and he talked of over the counthry these four months back, and he talking about you, jist as his misthress through the counthry? TROL., Macd., Ch. VI, 83.

And are you ather making me stay at home all the blessed day, and sending Captain Ussher all the way back to Mohill, and he having come over by engagement to walk with me? *ib.*, 79.

b) Quite common also is a construction in which a full clause opening with *and* stands after an undeveloped nominal clause implying an adverbial relation of time or condition; thus in:

A little farther on, and I was in Cramond parish. STEV., Kidn., Ch. II, (195).

A year earlier and he would have frowned even Miss Wright's insensitive loquacity into silence. SADLEIR, Trol., II, iv, 61.

6. *And* is sometimes placed between two identical nouns "to express a difference of quality between things of the same name or class." O. E. D., 3, b.

There are ways and ways of worshipping the Great Fetish. MAUD DIVER, Desmond's Daughter, II, Ch. I, 42.

As the following example shows the same effect is sometimes aimed at by the use of one plural:

There were ways of doing things. GALSW., Freeland's, VI, 40.

7. The first member of a copulative combination is sometimes understood, so that *and* seems to introduce a sentence by itself; thus in:

And how did little Tim behave? DICK., Christm. Car., III, 58.

And why could not you run away, boy? KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. V, 30a.

O John! and you have seen him! And are you really going? O. E. D., s. v. *and*, 12.

8. Being a mere link-word without any meaning, *and* is often used:
- a) before another co-ordinative conjunctive adverb, which expresses the logical relation between the two members connected. For illustration see below.

b) to connect two words or word-groups when the relation of the notions for which they stand is but dimly or not at all thought of. It is only natural that in this case *and* is often turned to account as a convenient expedient to meet the require-

ments of metre or rhythm. In some combinations it may even be said to serve no other purpose. The frequency of the *and*-construction after an infinitive may be due to a desire to avoid the use of two successive *to*'s. This will be shown in the following sections.

HENDIADYS.

9. The use of *and* when the logical relation between the notions (5) denoted by two words or word-groups is another than can be expressed by mere co-ordination, may be termed hendiadys, an adaptation of the well-known *ἐν δὲ διὰ δυνάμιν* of Greek grammars. Hendiadys sometimes replaces a construction in which one member of the combination, would appear: *a*) in the case of certain verbs, as an adverbial adjunct or clause of purpose, a predicative adnominal adjunct, or an objective (pro)noun or clause; *b*) in the case of certain adjectives or adverbs, as a qualifying, mostly as an intensive, adverb; *c*) in the case of certain adverbial adjuncts, as a preposition-group; *d*) in the case of nouns, as an adnominal adjunct.
10. Substitution of the construction with *and* for one denoting an adverbial relation of purpose is especially common in connexion with certain verbs implying a moving from one place to another, notably:

a) *to come*, as in: i. It was too far for people to come and dine with us. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

If he likes to come to me and beg my pardon for his rudeness, that's another matter. KEBLE HOWARD, *One of the family*, I, Ch. II, 30.

ii. Come and help me to judge of this musical family. SHER., *Crit.*, I, 2, (453).

"Henry, ... what are you doing up there?" — "Come and see." ARN. BENNETT, *Buried Alive*, I, Ch. VII, 152.

iii. Spying Pen, he came and shook him by the hand. THACK., *Pen d.*, I, Ch. III, 43.

The little child came and looked at Pen solemnly. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 342.

Note *a*) It will have been observed that the above examples have been divided into three groups i. e. such as have *to come* in the infinitive, in the imperative, or in the preterite. The fact is that instances of this *and*-construction are usual only with these forms of the verb, none having come to hand when it stands in the present, perfect, or pluperfect. Nor is it, apparently, ever used in connexion with an infinitive standing after weak *to do*. Another peculiarity which may have struck the observant student is the fact that the significance of *to come* is of the slightest. In fact, according to the O. E. D. (s. v. *come*, 3, *d*), *He came and bought one*, in the language of a salesman, would often mean the same as *He bought one*.

The following quotations are intended to show that the construction with *to* is maintained when the notion of purpose is distinctly present

to the speaker's mind, and also that hendiadys is incompatible with other forms of *to come* than those mentioned:

i. I came to tell him to-day of a most fortunate legacy. THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. XLI, 433.

He doubtless came to see how the land lay. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. X, 84.

ii. I am come to bid you farewell. THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. XLII, 438.

He spoke of some one coming to drink tea with him. *ib.*, II, Ch. XLII, 439.

β) Hendiadys also appears to be rare or non-existent after combinations of *to come* with such adverbs as *out*, *over*, etc.

On our arrival being announced, the squire came out to receive us. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXI, 197.

He often comes over to dine and sleep. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. V, 51.

γ) Hendiadys appears to be regularly observed in the combinations *come and stand*, *come and sit*. Instances are especially frequent in the preterite; e. g.:

Lo, the star which they saw in the east, went before them, till it came and stood over where the young child was. Bible, *Matth.* II, 9.

She gave him her little hand, and held his till he came and sat down at his place at the table. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. XXI, 243.

He came and stood beside Mary. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 289.

Katharine suddenly rose and came and sat beside her mother. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VIII, 140.

Do come and sit here, and be nice! ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. III, 74.

In these combinations the construction with *and* is practically obligatory because that with *to* would represent the action of sitting or standing as a fortuitous happening (Ch. LIX, 93, *d*). Thus *He came to sit next to the principal speaker of the evening* would be understood to mean *He chanced to sit next to the principal speaker of the evening*.

δ) The *and*-construction is exceedingly common in the infinitive and imperative of the combination *come and see* when denoting a visiting from friendly motives; thus in:

I wish you'd come and see me. DICK., *Pickw.*, II, 13 (*STORM, Eng. Phil.*, 609).

Madame de Florac ... asked Ethel to come and see her. THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. VIII, 93.

Come and see me. Will you come and see me? DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 108.

Come, when no graver cares employ, | Godfather, come and see your boy. TEN., *To Maurice*, 2.

For comparison a few examples are added exhibiting the alternative practice with *to*, which appears to be preferred when the two verbs are divided by other elements of the sentence:

i. When will you come to see me? DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

ii. I wish you'd let old Glub come here to see me? *id.*, *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 103.

Very good in you to come to town to see me. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, xi, Ch. III, 260.

For the reason mentioned above the *and*-construction could not be substituted for the construction with *to* in:

These are two Yarmouth boatmen — very kind, good people — who are relations of my nurse, and have come from Gravesend to see me. DICK., *Co p.*, Ch. VII, 52 b. Once or twice ... (he) asked why she did not come to see him. THACK., *New c.*, Ch. XLII, 443.

b) *to go*, as in: I must sell out and go and dig in Canada. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 207.

What should he go and buy for Laura and his mother? *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 339.

She had better let me go and seek my fortune. Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. VI, 97.

ii. And he sent them to Bethlehem, and said, | Go and search diligently for the young child. Bible, *Matth.* II, 8.

Go to my apartment and fetch me down ... my pomander box. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXIV, 387.

iii. She went and unlocked her escritoire. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 14. I went and took tea with the two ladies. *id.*, *New c.*, II, Ch. XL, 418.

"Henry, ... what are you doing up there? ... — "Come and see. ..." — So she went and saw. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. VII, 152.

Note α) As in the case of *to come*, hendiadys is in current use especially after the infinitive, the imperative, and the preterite forms of *to go*. It appears, however, to be frequent enough also after combinations with such adverbs as *out, up*, etc., as in the following examples: He passed the door a dozen times, before he had the courage to go up and knock. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, V, 168.

I will go out and meet him. THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. XK, 416.

He went up and wrung her hand. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXI, 221.

β) As the following examples are intended to show, the construction with *to* is used when there is a distinct notion of purpose in the speaker's mind:

She went off to fetch the book. THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. XXI, 221.

Esperance ... went to dress for dinner. EDNA LYALL, *Won by waiting*, Ch. XIV.

When he went to find the shopboys with a gentle homily on his lips, those to whom it should have been addressed were absent. Mrs. GASK., *Sylv. Lov.*, Ch. III, 42.

Away went Tom to find the boy in question. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

γ) What has been observed about *come and stand*, *come and sit*, and *come and see* applies, in the main, also to the analogous combinations *go and stand*, *go and sit*, and *go and see*, although the last-mentioned word-group appears to admit of hendiadys only so far as the infinitive is concerned; e. g.:

i. She went and sat down by him at the table. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. IV, 61.

She went and stood behind him, putting her hand on his shoulder, while they read the letter together. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XL, 296.

We went and stood a little way off. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

ii. * I will go and see them whenever you please. THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. VIII, 94.

My father and mother want you to go and see them for a whole week. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

** "Where is Grey Friars?" she said. "Mayn't I go to see my uncle?" THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. XL, 422.

I used to go to see him at his house. BAR. VON HUTTEN, P a m, VI, Ch. VII, 319.

δ) Like *to come, to go* loses a great deal of its original meaning in this construction with *and*. Thus in *What should he go and buy for Laura and his mother?* quoted above, *to go* is practically redundant, *What should he buy for Laura and his mother* conveying much the same meaning. Sometimes all trace of the original meaning may be said to have disappeared, *to go* approaching to a weak *to proceed* or *to make up one's mind* (to do a thing), in colloquial and vulgar language often tinged with the secondary notion that the contemplated action is considered foolish, unreasonable, or unlucky. In this application the verb freely admits of hendiadys in other forms than the infinitive, the imperative, and the preterite; e. g.:

i. * Good people, find a school for your daughters by Michaelmas, — for after that time I must go and make the happiness for others. MRS. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XI, 109.

** "Now, then," cried I, "my children, go and be miserable." GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XVII, (341).

Go and pack your trunks this instant! THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. XLI, 432.

ii. Last year his old father ... went and died, and Blanchflower came into a fortune and a good deal of land besides. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. I, 23.

iii. * If you're Master Murdstone, ... why do you go and give another name first? DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 33 a.

She goes and tells the people on board ship that it is all my fault. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. VI, 58.

If I give you some (sc. money), you'll only go and spend it. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. I, 14.

** Nothing you can say will daunt me, Job, so don't you go and try. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 244.

Don't you go and forget me when you get among the British "arrystocracy." MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, Ch. III, 51.

** I hope you have not gone and got a great dinner for us. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 46.

You've gone and waked Hamlet up. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. X, I, 240.

What do you think I have gone and done? PUNCH, No. 3687, 179 a.

ε) The following examples are intended to show that also in the *to*-construction *to go* may represent an action in contemplation:

In the meantime I'll go to prepare matters for our elopement. GOLDS., *She stoops*, IV, (207).

I go to watch thy slumbers, and woe with him that shall intrude on them! SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. V, 51.

Either carry on the war with at least as much thoroughness as the Germans themselves, or else admit that you shirk the issue, and go to make your peace. *The New Age*, No. 1195, 342 a.

ζ) To all appearance the construction with *and* never takes the place of that with *to* after *to go* when used in the shades of meaning illustrated by the following examples:

i. Why, friends, you go to do you know not what. SHAK., *Ju l. Cæs.*, III, 2, 240. (= are about to do.)

ii. I didn't go to do it. DICK., *Chimes*³, II, 58 (= do it on purpose.)

iii. He now saw that his money must all go to enrich one who had no fortune of his own. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI. (= serve to enrich.)

iv. The captain then went on to say [etc]. THACK., *Pend*, I, Ch. XXXII, 343 (= proceeded to say).

η) In conclusion it may be observed that both *to come* and *to go* often appear to be mainly used for the purpose of imparting an ingressive aspect to a durative verb (Ch. LI, 15). When, as in the following example, the following verb is one with a momentaneous aspect, some such function is, naturally, out of the question :

The little emissary ... then went and fell asleep on his accustomed bench in the passage. THACK., *Pend*., Ch. XXXI, 339.

θ) For other constructions of *to come* and *to go* with an infinitive or another verbal see Ch. LV, 34; Ch. LVII, 6.

11. Hendiadys is also more or less frequently practised in the case of the following verbs that denote some movement from one place to another :

to call, as in: Tell the boy to call and see me in a day or two. MORLEY ROBERTS, *Time and Thomas Waring*, Ch. VII, 70.

to make haste, as in: Fred must make haste and get well. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, III, Ch. XXVII, 195.

to return, as in: You need not go back, except to pack your things, and return and live with me and Boy. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XLI, 429.

to rise, as in: He would have risen and followed, but the Queen and Lord Seyton interfered. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXXVI, 415.

to run out, as in: Nor did it occur to her to run out and drown herself for shame. ARN. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. VIII, 168.

to rush, as in: What should be spoken here, where our fate, | Hid in an auger-hole, may rush, and seize us? SHAK., *Macb.*, II, 3, 129.

to stoop, as in: There cometh one mightier than I after me, the latchet of whose shoes I am not worthy to stoop down and unloose. Bible, *Mark*, I, 7.

to turn, as in: He concluded that his wisest course would be to turn and face his pursuers. GOLDS., *Vic*, Ch. XXXI, (469).

Note. It stands to reason that the construction with *to* re-asserts itself when the notion of purpose is at all clearly present to the speaker's mind; thus in :

Mrs. Primmins herself ran out to meet me. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, III, Ch. I, 54.

12. Among the verbs not indicating a moving from one place to another it is especially the following which not seldom exchange the construction with *to* for that with *and* :

to send, as in: I should like to send and get my sketches. RUDY KIPL., *Light*, Ch. III, 40.

to stay, as in: i. You must stay and hear your cousin's favourite. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XXII, 213.

ii. Stay and help your sister. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XI, 297.

iii. The lawyer stayed and dined with Major Pendennis. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29.

to stop, as in: i. Sometimes he would stop and talk with the children. Miss BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 176.

ii. They met heavy dragoons of the regiment, always quartered at Chatteris; and stopped and talked about the Baymouth balls. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 43.

to write, as in: i. Will you write and tell Mr. Peggotty, that I am not so bad as they might suppose. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 31 a.

- ii. Mary, write and give up that school. G. ELIOT, *MID.*, Ch. XL, 297.
 iii. He wrote and told me he wasn't coming back. ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. IV, 82.

Note a) The following constructions of *to write* serving approximately the same purpose as that illustrated above are of some interest:

- i. I am ... writing to tell you that I am quite willing to enlist in your Army. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7045, 6*b*.
 ii. Mr. Balfour wrote saying it would be a serious misfortune to higher education. *Times*.

β) In vulgar language we often meet with the past participle of *to be* in a meaning and function of *to go* as described above; thus in:

"Lauk, Mrs. Bardell," said Mrs. Cluppins, "see what you've been and done!" *Dick., Pickw.*, Ch. XXVI.

Oh, then, what have I been and done! ... I been and married my baby! *MER., Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXI, 257.

They've been and put a chick on a lidy's hat. *Punch*.

She's been and engaged herself to Mr. Baldwin. *GISSING, A Life's Morn.*, Ch. XI, 164.

Sometimes we even find the two almost meaningless participles *been* and *gone* placed before the participle which conveys the main meaning; thus in:

Ow, what has everybody gone and been and done with everybody, making everybody so wretched! *Dick., Crick.*, III, 88.

I've been and gone and done it. W. J. LOCKE, *The Rough Road*, Ch. XX, 249.

γ) Such a linguistic freak as occurs in the following example is, most probably, met with only in hyper-vulgar language:

Next night his gran'ry's burnt. What do he tak' and go and do? He takes and goes and hangs unsel', and turns us out of his employ. *MER., Rich. Fev.*, Ch. III, 19.

13. Instances of the construction with *and* taking the place of one (7) with a predicative adnominal adjunct are frequent after the verbs *to lie*, *to sit*, and *to stand*, which are often followed by a present participle. The copulative construction is not confined to any particular form of these verbs, but a succession of two participles connected by *and* seems to be unusual. Here follow some examples of the construction with *and*, a few with the participle-construction, which may be as common, being added for comparison. There appears to be no appreciable difference between the two constructions, the choice being, apparently, in many cases determined by conscious or unconscious considerations of rhythm or metre.

to lie: i. Dolf lay and listened earnestly. *WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl.*, (119).
 Katie would have lain and sobbed in her own room. *TROT., Three Clerks*, Ch. XXI, 245.

O bliss, when all in circle drawn | About him, heart and ear were fed | To hear him, as he lay and read | The Tuscan poets on the lawn. *TEN., In Mem.*, LXXXIX, 23.

Poor Webb lay and sobbed bitterly. *SWEET, Old Chapel*.

ii. While I lay musing on my pillow, | I heard the sound of little feet pattering outside of the door. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXII, 205.

Mr. Meeson lay gasping at the bottom of the boat. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. VIII, 78.

to sit: i. Let us sit and mock the good housewife Fortune from her wheel. SHAK., As you like it, I, 2, 28.

This was called "papa's secretary," at which Mr. Crawley customarily sat and wrote his sermons. TROL., Last Cron., I, Ch. IV, 34.

We mustn't sit and talk in this way any more. HARDY, Jude, IV, Ch. I, 256.

I sat and pondered. I thought what an interesting case I must be from a medical point of view! JEROME, Three Men, Ch. I, 3.

To any one who has sat and listened to it (sc. Lord Balfour's speech) the strangest feature of this debate has been the complete 'sang-froid' with which the whole of this constitutional doctrine has been thrown overboard by the speakers. Westm. Gaz., No. 5167, 1c.

ii. He sat looking at the horse's ears, as if he saw something new there. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 32b.

She was sitting stooping over her sewing. G. ELIOT, A. d. B. e. d. e, I, Ch. V, 52.

to stand: i. I stood and stared at myself in the glass. RID. HAG., She, Ch. I.

I have stood and watched it (sc. Moulsey lock), sometimes, when you could not see any water at all. JEROME, Three Men, Ch. VII, 74.

ii. I stood looking at the basket, quite lost in the magnitude of my trust. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 43.

We saw a tall gentleman standing looking at us intently and solemnly. SWEET, Old Chapel.

Note *a*) The above verbs may, of course, also be followed by final *to* + infinitive, as in:

I revisited each of the old haunts . . . The old beech stump on which I sat to read letters from home. LYTTON, Caxt., II, Ch. V, 53.

β) Of particular interest is the use of *to stand* before an infinitive with *to* which often serves to represent a future happening as a probability (Ch. L, 71); e. g.:

It is a fact which cannot be blinked that Austria stands to lose by the establishment of a Balkan Confederation on her southern frontier. Westm. Gaz., No. 6165, 1b.

Germany seems to stand to make more enemies by her successes than by her failures. The New Statesman, No. 115, 241b.

14. It is chiefly the verbs *to mind* and *to try* that often substitute a (6) construction with *and* for one with an infinitive with *to* as non-prepositional object. The latter construction is distinctly unusual in the case of *to mind*, but seems to be preferred in literary diction so far as *to try* is concerned. Both verbs appear to have the copulative construction only in the infinitive, and in the imperative.

to mind: i. * I will mind and confine myself to the accidents of the day. SWIFT, Journ. to Stella, 12 Oct.

You must mind and never neglect to call in Grosvenor Street when you come to London. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVII, 82.

** Mind and get all right for next Saturday. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. VI, 107.

Mind and keep her and the children downstairs till I come back. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXV, 268.

ii. You must mind to get up middling early. JOS. JACOBS, More Eng. Fairly Tales, LXXI, 136.

Never mind to take your monument ticket to-day. CON. DOYLE, Trag. of the Korosko, Ch. II, 49.

to try: i. * She will try and convert you. THACK., New c., II, Ch. VIII, 93.

I myself will try and restrain the natural inclinations of Nicholas and Henry. MRS. GASK., Sylv. Lov., Ch. III, 42.

You should try and be reasonable. MRS. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. II, 37.

I'll try and be mother and father to you both. TEMPLE THURSTON, Antagonists, Ch. XVI, 133.

** Try and get out of the house. MRS. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. V, 82.

Try and command yourself, my dear son. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXXIV, 365.

ii. He will try to be good and follow the truth. THACK., New c., II, Ch. VII, 81.

I will try to write it down. DICK., Cop., Ch. LV, 390 b.

I tried as hard to keep out of court as most men try to get into it. GREEN, Short Hist., VI, § 6, 316.

Note a) As to *to mind* it should further be observed: 1) that the construction with a subordinate statement is the ordinary one; thus: Mind you keep out of mischief. SWEET, Old Chapel.

2) That in the meaning of *to trouble oneself about*, or *to object to* (O. E. D., 8) the verbal with which the verb may be constructed is a gerund (Ch. XIX, 20), as in:

i. Never mind chaffing about money. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XXII, 230.

ii. I hate shopping, but I don't mind looking at the shops. LLOYD, North. Eng., 116.

β) In the sense of *to make an experiment with* as distinct from *to attempt*, *to do one's best to*, the verb *to try* takes the gerund instead of the infinitive (Ch. XIX, 18, b); thus in:

I tried laughing at him, and I tried arguing, but it was all of no use. EMILY LAWLESS, A Colonel of the Empire, Ch. VII.

She had tried writing, but had failed. MAR. CRAWFORD, Kath. Laud., I, Ch. III, 47.

15. Also verbals representing a prepositional object are sometimes replaced by the copulative construction. This is the case with that after:

to see in the sense of *to make sure* (that something is done) (O. E. D., 25, c). Both the construction with *and* and that with an infinitive appear to be unusual, a subordinate statement with or without an anticipating *to it*, being the ordinary construction (Ch. III, 54, b); e. g.:

i. You must see and pay everybody. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. IV, 23.

ii. Mr. Johnson is to try his fate with a tragedy, and to see to get himself employed in some translation either from the Latin or the French. BOSWELL, Life of Johnson, 23a.

iii. * When you are an earl, see to it that you are a better one than I have been. MISS BURNETT, Little Lord, 189.

** You must see that you get "Wilsbach" incandescent burners. Daily News. *to be sure* in the sense of *not to fail* (O. E. D., 14). The construction with *and* and that with an infinitive may be equally common. The

construction with a subordinate statement, always without an anticipating prepositional object, appears to be less usual.

i. Tom told me to be sure and remember the rabbits every day. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 24.

Be sure and take good care of her. CH. BRONTE, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 44.

ii. Mrs. Rashleigh says you are to be sure to put a pair of the best frilled sheets in Captain Rashleigh's room. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XII, 194.

Be sure to let me hear when it is explained. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nobs.*, Ch. XXVI, 241.

iii. At least be sure that you go to the author and get at his meaning. RUSKIN, *Sesame*, I, § 13 (O. E. D.).

16. The placing of *and* between two adjectives or adverbs, the first of which serves as a modifier or intensive of the second, or vice versa, belongs partly to good colloquial, or even literary diction, partly to the language of the illiterate. Rhythmically and metrically *and* has the same value as the adverbial suffix *ly*, and its use may chiefly be due to the common omission of this suffix in colloquial English and to a desire to avoid the consequent clash of two stresses, which is mostly at variance with the laws of rhythm or metre. Compare O. E. D., s. v. *and*, 5; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1902; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, 15.29; and especially STORM, *Eng. Phil.*², 691, where many instances are given.

i. Her (sc. the moon's) vestal livery is but sick and green. SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, II, 2, 8. (= sickly green.)

High and mighty, | You shall know I am set naked on your kingdom. *id.*, *Hamlet*, IV, 7, 42. (See the comment in O. E. D., s. v. *high*, III, 17, f.)

The furniture of her rich neighbours being ... rescued from the flames; themselves duly and ceremoniously condoled with on the agitation of their nerves; the public, at length, began to recollect something about poor Dame Heyliger. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (*Stof., Handl.*, I, 147) (= duly ceremoniously, *or, in better English*, with due ceremony.)

Bright and pleasant was the sky, ... as Mr. Pickwick leant over the balustrades of Rochester Bridge, contemplating nature, and waiting for breakfast. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. V, 38. (= pleasantly bright, *i.e.* the brightness of the sky was pleasant.)

Another cup of tea? ... This one will be nice and strong. LLOYD, *North Eng.*, 124. (= nicely strong.)

If we all keep our own homes sweet and clean, our children's lives will be spared the horrors of summer sickness. GRAPH., No. 2323, 1022 c (= sweetly clean.)

All the time there's dinner cooked and ready for him. RICH. BAGOT, *Darnely Place*, I, Ch. II, 19. (= cooked so as to be ready for consumption.)

ii. * T' measter'll be fine an' vexed at your comin' when he's away. MRS. GASK., *Sylv. Lov.*, Ch. VIII, 105.

"Ah," said Luke, "but he'll be fine an' vexed, as the rabbits are all dead." G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IV, 23.

Ah! Wakem 'ud be fine and glad to have a son like mine. *ib.*, V, Ch. VI, 324. He was fine an' altered before you come into the parish. *id.*, *Scenes*, II, Ch. I, 82.

** He looked rare and happy tha' Sunday. *ib.*

You've got a jest-book, han't you, as you're rare and proud on? *id.*, A DAM BEDE, I, Ch. I, 4.

She's rare and dirty. ARN. BENNETT, Buried alive, Ch. VI, 130.

*** Mother'll be main and glad to hear as he's gotten out. MRS. GASK., SYLV. LOV., Ch. VI, 86. (Compare: I shall be main glad to see thee. *ib.*, Ch. VIII, 108.)

Note a) It is, apparently, only a limited number of adjectives that admit of being coupled to other adjectives in the above manner. Thus it would be unidiomatic to employ the copulative construction instead of that used in:

It was beautifully clean. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 15 *b*.

The country we passed through ... still seems to me wonderfully beautiful. SWEET, Old Chapel.

Conversely some of the combinations in the above examples could hardly be replaced by constructions with adverbs: **high(ly) mighty* **nice(ly) strong* (etc.) **fine(ly) vexed* (etc.), **rare(ly) happy* (etc.) being practically non-existent, at least in predicative function. In attributive function they may not be uncommon; e. g.:

It looks a nice warm exercise, that, doesn't it? DICK., PICKW., Ch. XXX, 270. I suppose Mr. Shawn has a rare fine situation here. ARN. BENNETT, The Great Adventure, I, I (21).

β) Special mention may be made of the combination *far and away*, which as an intensive of a comparative or a superlative usually takes the place of *far away*, of which indeed, no instances have come to hand (Ch. XXX, 43, *b*).

The Century Dictionary bids fair to be far and away the largest and best general and encyclopædic dictionary of the English language. Athen.

17. a) In some combinations *and* is apt to take the place of a dimmed *in* from which it does not phonetically differ in stressless positions; thus in:

all and all, in a variety of meanings, for which see Ch. XL, 3, Obs. V; e. g.:

Take it all and all, I never spent so happy a summer. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. XXII, 216.

Patience is all and all with her now. TROL., Dr. Thorne, I, 216 (STORM, Eng. Phil., 1052).

once and away, as in: "I an't much in the habit of drinking at anybody's expense but my own." — "Habit? No," returned the stranger, "but once and away, and on a Saturday night, too." DICK., Great Expect., Ch. XI, 91.

Compare: It (sc. his income) consisted of two consulting appointments at twenty pounds a year, together with an odd fee once in a way. GALSW., Man of Prop., I, Ch. VIII, 103.

For once in a way we were not inclined to eat. MRS. CRAIK, A Hero, 109.

arm-and arm, as in: A thickset Individual ... arm-and-arm with some servant. CARL., Fr. Rev. II, II, IV III, 10 (O. E. D., 2, *a*).

Note. The copulative construction appears to be unusual; it is pronounced improper by the O. E. D. The ordinary construction with *in* is used in: The gentlemen came out of the house and walked arm-in-arm down the street towards the shore. BESANT, Dor. Forst., Ch. I, 7.

hand and glove, as in: Now, there are those fellows; I am hand-and-glove with all of them. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. XXIV, 288.

He was hand and glove with the Hon. Laurence Fitzgibbon. *id.*, *Phin. Finn*, I, Ch. I, 10.

Compare: Gus would insist that I was hand in glove with all the nobility. *THACK.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 66.

"The Tods" were hand in glove with all the cottagers. *GALSW.*, *Freelands*, VI, 39.

Note. According to the O. E. D. (s. v. *hand and glove*), the construction with *in* is a later formation than that with *and*.

b) *And* often takes the place of a stressless *by* in the distributive combinations *one by one*, *two by two*, etc. (Ch. XLII, 4, *a*); thus in:

And sometimes thro' the mirror blue | The Knights come riding two and two. *TEN.*, *Lady of Shal.*, II, 61.

Five hundred innocent burghers were tied two and two, back to back, and drowned like dogs in the river Ysel. *MOTLEY*, *Rise*, III, Ch. VIII, 497 *a*.

Note. It appears that *by* is never replaced by *and* in the combination *one by one*, as in:

As the sun got higher, ... they gradually one by one awoke. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. V, 36 *a*.

c) *And* may be understood as a substitute for a stressless (*up*)*on* in combinations of two identical plural nouns denoting an extension to an indefinite length, mostly one of distance or time, as in:

I have lived for months and months on shipboard. *BYRON*, *Let.* (O. E. D., s. v. *and*, 2, *b*).

People must be very happy, living here ... not like the thousands and thousands and thousands of those poor creatures in Bethnal Green. *GALSW.*, *Freelands* V, 34.

Compare with this construction the more usual one in: What irksome constraint I underwent, sitting in the same attitude hours upon hours, afraid to move an arm or a leg lest Miss Murdstone should complain ... of my restlessness. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 60 *a*.

(The cause) was squeezed dry years upon years ago. *id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. I, 2.

There they lie — acres of graves. Thousands upon thousands of dead people, and not one of the whole host remembered. *BESANT*, *All Sorts*, Ch. V, 49. Here in her hand was a living thing, here was a little soul! And out there in the darkness were millions upon millions of other little souls. *GALSW.*, *Freelands*, VIII, 66.

18. In accordance with the twofold nature of adnominal adjuncts (8) generally, which, broadly speaking, indicate either a quality or a relation (Ch. XXIII, 3; Ch. XXIV 7, 40; Ch. XXVIII, 2), *and* + noun may correspond to: *a)* a quality-expressing adjective + noun, *b)* a noun + a relation-expressing preposition-group. The preposition-group is mostly one with *of* indicating one of the varied relations which may also be expressed by genitive inflection. Sometimes it appears to be the first, sometimes the second member of the copulative word-group which represents the defining element, sometimes either may be understood as such. The above distinctions are admittedly more or less arbitrary. Not only is it impossible always to draw the line between a

quality or a relation, the latter often implying the former (Ch. XXIII, 13, Obs. II; Ch. XXVIII, 3, Obs. II), but it is sometimes hard to tell which of the two members of the copulative combination stands for the defining element. The following arrangement is, therefore, offered only as a rough and ready attempt at classification.

a) The first member of the copulative word-group may be understood to denote a quality of what is expressed by the second in the combination contained in:

I am glad to dwell upon the earnestness and love with which she lifted up her face to mine. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. II, 14 *a*. (= earnest love.)

He was at the very height and paroxysm of the imaginative phrenzy, when his mother found him. *THACK.*, *Pend.* I, Ch. VII, 83. (= the very highest paroxysm.)

It (sc. the conscience) showed me as clearly as possible that there was baseness and deception in the whole manner of getting leave for this visit. *SWEET*, *Old Chapel*. (= base deception.)

There is a delightful spontaneity about English boys, a manliness that must stand them in good stead in the rough and tumble of life. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, Sept., 307. (= rough tumbling.)

b) In the following examples the second member of the combination may be understood to denote a quality of the first. Numerous instances may be found in *A. SCHMIDT*, *Shak. Lex.*, s. v. *and*, 2.

There sleeps Titania sometime of the night, | Lull'd in these flowers with dances and delight. *SHAK.*, *Mids.*, II, I, 254. (= delightful dances.)

We'll bring him to his house with shouts and clamours. *id.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 50. (= clamorous shouts.)

He began to think that the source and secret of this ghostly light might be in the adjoining room. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*, III, 48. (= secret source.)

I felt it was time for conversation and confidence. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. III, 16 *b*. (= confidential conversation.)

This was all he had in return for his passion and flames. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 98. (= flaming passion.)

All them children write verses and nonsense, *ib.*, Ch XII, 124. (= nonsensical verses.)

'Twould be a sin and a shame if we let her go dirty now she's ill. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Mary Barton*, Ch. XIX, 202. (= shameful sin.)

c) The first member of the copulative word-group seems to stand for the substantive of a relation-expressing preposition-group in:

Our yoke and sufferance show us womanish. *SHAK.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 3, 84. (= the sufferance of our yoke, i. e. the fact that we tamely suffer our yoke.)

It is in such little retired Dutch valleys ... that population, manners, and customs remain fixed. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 343-4. (= the manners and customs of the population.)

That the life and progress on which he built such hopes, should be endangered at the outset by so mean a want ... was a sore humiliation. *DICK.*, *Dombs.*, Ch. II, 14. (= the progress through life.)

Have you never heard of Dumkins and determination? *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. VII, 63. (= the determination of Dumkins.)

There's plenty of sweet hay up there ... and it's as clean as hands and Meg can make it. *id.* *Chimes*, II, 61. (= the hands of Meg.)

Flcury, sinking under age and infirmity was borne down by the impetuosity

of Bell-Isle. *Mac., Fred., (668 b)*. (= the infirmity of old age. In this combination the copulative construction is practically fixed.)

The public opinion of the great is the opinion of their equals — of those whom birth and accident cast for ever in their way. *LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. II, Ch. III, 86*. (= the accident of birth. Compare: Ardent and intrepid on the field of battle, Monmouth was everywhere effeminate and irresolute. The accident of his birth ... had placed him in a post for which he was altogether unfitted. *Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 100*.)

His spirits, depressed by eighteen months passed in dull state, amidst factions and intrigues which he but half understood, rose high as soon as he was surrounded by tents and standards. *Mac., Hist., VI, Ch. XVI, 4*. (= the intrigues of factions.)

Then fearing night and chill for Annie, (he) rose | And sent his voice beneath him through the wood. *TEN., En. Ard., 440*. (= the chill of night.)

Mrs. Penfold replied that nothing could be more to their taste — except for the motors and the dust. *Mrs. WARD, The Mating of Lydia, I, Ch. V, 105*. (= the dust raised by motors.)

d) The second member of the copulative combination appears to represent the noun of a relation-expressing preposition-group in:

Soft stillness and the night | Become the touches of sweet harmony. *SHAK., Merch., V, I, 56*. (= stillness of the night.)

Charles is ... contracted by vows and honour to your ladyship. *SHER., School, V, 3, (432)*. (= vows of honour.)

They are subject to trances and visions, ... and hear music and voices in the air. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 342*. (= the music of voices.)

The neighbourhood ... was one of those ... places which abound with chronicle and great men. *ib., 364*. (= the chronicles of great men.)

Upon my word and honour, young Joseph Willet is a brave one. *DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. XXII, 87a*. (= my word of honour. In this combination the copulative construction is practically fixed.)

Despair and Byron, Thomas Moore and all the Loves of the Angels, ... were working and seething in this young gentleman's mind. *THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VII, 82*. (= the despair of, or like that of Byron.)

I delight myself with gossip and old wives. *TEN. Holy Grail, 563*. (= the gossip of old wives.)

For all the sloping pasture murmur'd, sown | With happy faces and with holiday, *id., Priuc., ProL, 56*. (= happy faces of a holiday.)

A group of girls | In circle waited, whom the electric shock | Dislink'd with shrieks and laughter. *ib., 70*. (= shrieks of laughter.)

Her sympathy and noble kindness to me ... have been beyond power and description. *WILDE, De Profundis, 57*. (= the power of description.)

We all pretend to admire enthusiasm and youth. *GALSW., Freeland's, XVI, 143*. (= the enthusiasm of youth.)

Note *a*) In the following example, showing the usefulness of the idiom in meeting the requirements of metre, the first and the fourth combination have the defining element in the first member, the second and third in the second member:

He compass'd her with sweet observances | And worship, never leaving her, and grew | Forgetful of the falcon and the hunt, | Forgetful of the tilt and tournament, | Forgetful of his glory and his name, | Forgetful of his principedom and its cares. *TEN., Mar. of Ger., 48-54*. (= the hunt with the falcon, the tilt in the tournament, the glory of his name, the cares of his principedom.)

β) In the semantic equivalent of the copulative word-group contained

in the following examples, the second noun constitutes logically, but not grammatically, the defining element:

You acted like a man and a trump. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXVIII, 401. (= a trump of a man, i. e. a man that is a trump, a first-rate fellow. Compare Ch. XXIII, 4, Obs. VI.)

A similar interpretation may be put on: I can't bear to see a soldier and a gentleman chased by a lot of chawbacons. GALSW., *Escape*, II, VIII, (87). (= a soldier that is a gentleman.)

γ) In the following sentence there is a word-group that may be resolved* into a copulative combination, and may, therefore, be regarded as a construction that is opposite to hendiadys:

Joe and Biddy became more at their cheerful ease again. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. XVIII, 173. (apparently = cheerful and at ease.)

19. *And* appears to be a mere rhythmical insertion in:

once and for all, instead of *once for all*. Compare the Dutch *eens voor al*, the German *ein für allemal*, and the French *une fois pour toutes*. Although *once and for all* is not registered in the O. E. D., it seems to be at least as common as the shorter *once for all*.

i. I beg pardon, once and for all, of those readers who take up novels merely for amusement, for plaguing them so long with old-fashioned politics. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. V, 35 b.

Before quitting, once and for all, the arid region of genealogy, it may be worth mentioning that [etc.]. SYMONDS, *Shelley*, V, 3.

It will ... be more consonant with its dignity and peace of mind if the British nation realises once and for all that the period of the duration of the war cannot be calculated by weeks or months. *Times*.

ii. I tell you once, for all that in this point I cannot obey you. SHER., *Riv.* II, I, (234).

Our reader must ... transport himself with Arthur Pendennis to London, whither he goes once for all to face the world and to make his fortune. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 295.

(They wanted) to show those landed tyrants once for all that they could not ride roughshod. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. X, 80.

one and only, instead of *one only*. The latter collocation seems to be as distinctly preferred in literary diction as the former is in colloquial language.

i. I've stopped worrying over my father's singular want of appreciation of his one and only child. VACHELL, *Searchlights*, I, (6).

Mr. Asquith's one and only course is to go straight forward regardless of all threats. *Westm Gaz.*, No. 6477, 2 a.

What! Give up the thing which lends to breakfast its one and only distinction! Never! *Punch*, No. 3972, 142 b.

ii. Ah! Jack, your heart and soul are not, like mine fixed immutably on one only object. SHER., *Riv.*, II, I, (226).

He felt ... that he was engaged in the one only passion of his life, and that D. E. A. T. H. alone could close it. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 82.

Note. *One only* varies with *only one*, which seems a more rational combination, and may be more common (Ch. XLII, 9, c); e. g.:

"Because you fell in love!" said Scrooge, "as if that were the only one thing in the world more ridiculous than a merry Christmas." DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

When no modifier precedes, *one only* could not be replaced by *only one* without a change of meaning: in the latter combination *only* would have a depreciative, not an exclusive, import, which is peculiar to the phrases illustrated

above. This will be clear when in the following example the word-order is reversed:

One only passion unreveal'd | With maiden pride the maid conceal'd. SCOTT, Lady, I, XIX.

NOR AND NEITHER.

20. *Nor* and *neither* are used in expressing that two (or more) persons or things are in the same negative predicament, or in negating two (or more) actions or states in a person or thing, or group of persons or things. They occur singly, and together as correlatives.

a) When they occur singly, they are, in the main, used indifferently, *nor* being, however, more frequent than *neither*, except in incomplete sentences whose subject alone differs from that of the first member. In these latter *neither* seems to be used practically to the exclusion of *nor*. Compare also the quotations under ii in 21, Obs. VI.

i. She passed indeed under his very nose with a female companion, but he did not know her, nor did she recognize him. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIX, 200. Scrooge was not much in the habit of cracking jokes, nor did he feel, in his heart, by any means waggish then. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 19.

ii. Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it. Bible, Gen., III, 2. Warrington blushed hugely, but did not speak. Neither did Miss Bell speak: but when he blushed, she blushed too. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVII, 186. His name had not been mentioned to Mrs. Hare; neither would she mention it now. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 32.

iii. Jesus was not there, neither his disciples. Bible, John VI, 24. I've never lived in a cottage. Neither have I. M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XI.

Sometimes the negation in the first member is not expressed, but implied. In this case *nor* is more frequent than *neither*; e. g.:

i. I remained silent, nor did he speak a single word. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 416. (remained silent = did not speak.)

Man wants but little here below, | Nor wants that little long. GOLDSM., *Balla d*, VIII. (little = not much.)

But Dora stored what little she could save, | And sent it them by stealth, nor did they know | Who sent it. TEN., *Dora*, 51. (by stealth = not openly.)

ii. Mr. Arthur Pendennis performed his work at the 'Pall Mall Gazette', but without the least enthusiasm. Neither did society excite or amuse him overmuch. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 113. (without the least enthusiasm = did not display the least enthusiasm.)

Sometimes it is difficult to find a negation in the first member; thus in:

I wish such men had an opportunity of reading over those letters which my father has sent me of my sister Pamela's; nor do I doubt but such an example would amend them. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. IX, 19.

He spoke, nor bade the Chief farewell, | But called his dogs, and gay withdrew. SCOTT, *Glenfinlas*, XXXIV.

Cold is the heart, fair Greece! that looks on thee, | Nor feels as lovers o'er the dust they loved. BYRON, *Child Harold*, II, xv.

Here he saw a deal of life, indeed: nor in his career about the theatres and singing-houses was he very likely to meet his guardian. THACK., PEND., I, Ch. XVIII, 199.

They rode on all day, shunning towns and villages. Nor was this so difficult as it may now appear. MAC., HIST., II, Ch. V, 183.

b) As correlatives they connect the members of a compound element of the sentence, *neither* opening the first, *nor* the second; e. g.:

Neither a lender nor a borrower be! SHAK., HAML., I, 3, 75.

He can make neither head nor tail of it. GOLDS., GOOD-NAT. MAN, IV, (143).

Neither in his private life, nor in those parts of his public life in which he had to do with his countrymen, do we find any signs of a propensity to cunning. MAC., CLIVE, (515 b).

I shall neither admit the charge nor deny it. THACK., PEND., I, Ch. XXVII, 293.

Neither Arthur nor Laura wished to refuse. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXII, 236.

21. Obs. I. When the second member is meant to express that its (10) subject is in the same negative predicament as that of the first, we often find *no more* taking the place of *nor* or *neither*, especially in colloquial language. *No more* is the negative of *so* as used in *You've a short memory and so have many of our tenants* (Miss BRAD., *My First Happy Christmas*). Compare Ch. VIII, 8, f.

You do not play to win. No more do I. THACK., VAN FAIR, II, Ch. XXVIII, 315.

The girl has no fortune; no more had Mrs. Sedley. *ib.*, Ch. III., 24.

She daren't say a word to Miss Amory. No more dare none of us. *id.*, PEND., II, Ch. XXIII, 256.

This *no more* should be carefully distinguished from another *no more*, which introduces a sentence that is corroborative of a preceding statement. While the first *no more* regularly entails inversion, the second rarely causes the subject to be placed after the predicate. Compare Ch. VIII, 8, f; 16, a.

"Clavering thinks he ain't fit for Parliament," the Major answered — "No more he is." THACK., PEND., II, Ch. XXVII, 299

"I don't understand thee," quoth the abbot. And no more he did. KINGSLEY, HEREW., Ch. I, 17 a.

The use of *neither* to open a corroborative sentence is very rare. See also Ch. VIII, 8, f, Note β.

"I didn't know you had any children of your own." "Neither I have." LLOYD, NORTH. ENG., 118.

"Why did you tell the Governor this horse never refused water?" — "Neither's won't — when it's in a bucket." PUNCH.

II. Another frequent substitute for *nor* (*neither*) is *any more than*, for which colloquial and vulgar English often has *no more than*; e. g.:

i. I am not obliged to tell everybody, any more than I am obliged to keep it a secret. FIELD., JOS. ANDR., I, Ch. IX, 21.

'This is mine' is not an elliptical form of 'This is my hat', any more than 'The trees are green' is an elliptical form of 'The trees are green trees'. SWEET, N. E. GR., § 111.

ii. She was a great beauty in her day, and no one ever said 'no' to her. No more than they do now. B. M. CROKER, POUR PRENDRE CONGÉ, Ch. IV.

By a figure which JESPERSEN (Neg., 6; *Phil. of Gram.*, 310)

proposes to call *prosiopesis*, *no* is apt to fall out before *more*, especially in rapid speech; thus in:

"He don't want nothin' o' that." — "More do I." MER., Rich Fev., Ch. XXIII, 167.

Thus also *any* in the above conjunctive word-group is sometimes suppressed; e. g.:

A list enclosed, from which no man can stir, more than the poor bear who is chained to his stake. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXIX, 302.

The Man of Letters has no immutable, all-conquering volition, more than other men. CARLYLE, Schiller, II, 63.

III. For *neither ... nor* as correlatives, Early Modern English also used *nor ... nor*, and *neither ... neither*. The former of these is still met with in contemporary poetry, but the latter has entirely disappeared; e. g.:

Nor sun nor wind will ever strive to kiss you. SHAK., Ven. & Ad., 1082.

It shall not be forgiven him, neither in this world, neither in the world to come. Bible, Matth. XII, 32.

Wealth heap'd on wealth nor truth nor safety buys. JOHNS., Van. of Hum. Wish., 28.

Nor to slumber nor to die | Shall be in thy destiny. BYRON, Manfred, I, 1.

In Early Modern English we also find instances of *nor ... neither*; thus in:

And they asked him, and said unto him, | Why baptizest thou then, if thou be not that Christ, nor Elias, neither that prophet. Bible, John, I, 25.

When thou makest a dinner or supper, call not thy friends, nor thy brethren, neither thy kinsmen, nor thy rich neighbours. id., Luke, XIV, 12.

IV. Though *neither* means *none of two*, it may be followed by more than one *nor*; the last *nor* is then sometimes emphasized by *yet*. Not unfrequently *neither ... nor* is succeeded by another *neither ... nor*.

Neither wind, nor rain, nor aught else can cool our affection. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 104. He has neither relations, nor friends, nor money. SWET, N. E. Gr., § 416.

The rector was neither laborious, nor obviously self-denying, nor yet very copious in alms-giving. BAIN, Comp., 146.

But neither climate nor poverty, neither study nor the sorrows of a home-sick exile, could tame the desperate audacity of his spirit. MAC., Clive, (500a).

V. When another negative than *neither* precedes, *or* varies with *nor* before the following member(s) of a compound element; e. g.:

i. He had no fortune or private means. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XVIII, 147. There was no sufficient protection of life or property. JOHN DENNIS, Good Words.

ii. I can get no rest by night nor by day. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XLVII, 281.

She does not seem to care for church work, nor charitable schemes, nor any of the occupations in which all the rest of us girls are interested. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. VIII, 123.

Or also varies with *nor* in the second member of a compound sentence in which the subject to be supplied is identical with that in the first member; e. g.:

i. This was not addressed to Scrooge, or to any one whom he could see, but it produced an immediate effect. DICK., Christm. Car., II, 41.

Nobody likes to be found out, or, having held a high place, to step down. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXIV, 255.

I never earned a dollar in my life, or did an hour's work. BELLAMY, *Look Back w.*, Ch. XIV, 84.

ii. We had no revolutions to fear, nor fatigues to undergo. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (236).

He never could be made to love the duke of Marlborough, nor to forget those stories. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 284.

Compare with the above the following examples in which the subjects of the members are not identical:

He's not called upon to rebut, nor you to entertain, an anonymous accusation. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVII, 180.

Your robe was not well made, nor your bonnet very fresh. *ib.*, Ch. XXII, 234.

Even in the case of the subjects being identical, *nor* cannot be replaced by *or*, when also the second member contains a negative.

I make no boast, nor no complaint. THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. XV, 291.

We know our mistresses are no better than many other women, nor no wittier. *ib.*, II, Ch. XV, 289.

VI. *Neither ... nor* is now regularly replaced by *either ... or* when the sentence is made negative by another word; thus in:

Nobody knows either him or his family.

It is not possible for a scheme of culture to be perfected either in matter or form, until a rational psychology has been established. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. II, 506.

Thus also when the negation is implied, as in:

It was some time before either I or the captain could gather our senses. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. III, 30. (= Neither I nor the captain could gather our senses for some time.)

How are you to get on there, without either friends or capital? STOF., *Handl.*, I, 35.

In Early Modern English *neither ... nor* was, apparently, frequently retained; e. g.:

So they shall quench my coal which is left, and shall not leave to my husband neither name nor remainder upon the earth. Bible, *Sam.*, B, XIV, 7.

VII. When the second member is made negative by another word(-group) than *nor*, *neither*, or *no more*, the adverb *either*, or *neither* is placed at the end. *Neither* is often objected to as containing a redundant negative, but is frequent enough, especially in colloquial language; e. g.:

i. We have made very few changes either. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XVIII, 128.

The streets are quiet enough, and, the Virgin be praised, we are not so far from home either. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IV, 31.

His name was Toby, and nobody could make it anything else either. DICK., *Chimes*, I, 4.

My first quarter at Lowood seemed an age; and not the golden age either. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. VII, 67.

Time had little altered her person either. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXIX, 142 a.

ii. You see the little beggar's never been to church before. I don't go in town neither, but I think it's right in the country, to give a good example. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 233.

Miss Bell laughed and said: "The little boy had not given a particularly good example." — "God, I don't know," said the Baronet. "It ain't so bad neither." *ib.*, I, Ch. XXII 234.

This (*n*)*either* sometimes refers to an imaginary sentence or word-group; thus in:

i. To what fine purpose I have been plotting! a noble reward for all my schemes, upon my soul! — a little gipsy! I did not think her romance could have made her so damned absurd either. *SHER.*, *Riv.*, IV, 3, (266).

And we that were fools enough to bring up another body's child, too; much good *she* has been, either. *Mrs. CRAIK*, *Dom. Story*, B, 73.

ii. "I believe they (sc. the shoulders of mutton) were eaten in the servant's hall," said my lady — "They was," said Horrocks, "and precious little else we get there neither." *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VIII, 81.

Either is also placed at the end of an incomplete sentence opening with *nor* which contains but one element. Early Modern English often has *neither* in this case, and this is also the ordinary word in vulgar or colloquial language of the present day; e.g.:

i. We are not rich, nor our neighbour either. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 484. They (sc. the books) have not done me much good, nor any one else either. *BEATR. HAR.*, *Ships*, I, Ch. V, 18.

ii. "I did never think that lady would have loved a man." — "No, nor I neither." *SHAK.*, *Much ado.*, II, 3, 98.

I never was thought to want manners, nor modesty neither. *FIELD.*, *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. IX, 20.

I have no business with the New Year, nor with the old one neither. *DICK.*, *Chimes*, I, 27.

But when the incomplete clause contains more elements than one, (*n*)*either* is not used. See also the examples in Obs. V.

A man of genius is not debarred from admiring the same quality in another, nor the other from returning his admiration, *OL. WEND. HOLM.*, *Autocr.*, Ch. I, 9*b*.

She took no notice of the Tredgolds, nor they of her. *JAMES PAYN*, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, A, 15.

Also when the second member opens with *or*, the adverb *either* is not unfrequently placed at the end; thus in:

Caius Mutius ... wrote three epics in a year — could Horace do that, or Virgil either? *LYTTON*, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. 111, 17*a*.

One gets tired to death of the old, old rhymes, such as you see in that copy of verses — which I don't mean to abuse, or to praise either. *OL. WEND. HOLMES*, *Autocr.*, Ch. I, 15*a*.

Women are not always reasonable, or men either. *EDNA LYALL*, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXVIII, 255.

She might have been Venus, or, indeed, Juno either. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 56, 520.

The placing of (*n*)*either* in the body of the sentence, as in the following example, appears to be very rare:

He could not make the fierce, shrewd, artisan nature flash out into fire — not always celestial, nor always, either, infernal. *KINGSLEY*, *Alt. Locke*, Ch. XX, 206.

VIII. The older English use of *ne* for *nor*, and *ne ... ne* for *neither ... nor* survives only as a rare archaism in Modern English.

All perishen of man, of pelf, | Ne aught escapen but himself. *SHAK.*, *Per.*, II, *Dumb Show*, 36. (*AL. SCHMIDT*, in his *Shak. Lex.*, mentions only one more example in *SHAKESPEARE*, viz.: *All's Well*, II, 1, 176, in which the Globe edition, however, substitutes *nay* for *ne*.)

And there a season atween June and May | ... A listless climate made, where,

sooth to say, | No living wight could work, ne cared even for play. THOMSON, *Castle of Indolence*, I, II.

Ne personage of high or mean degree | Doth care for cleanness of surtout or shirt. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, XVII.

Ne barrier wall, ne river deep and wide, | Ne horrid crags, nor mountains dark and tall, | Rise like the rocks that part Hispania's land from Gaul. *ib.*, I, XXXII.

With throats unslaked, with black lips baked, | Ne could we laugh, ne wail. COL., *Anc. Mar.*, 158. (For the second line in this example other editions have: We could nor laugh nor wail.)

IX. Combinations of a negative with *also* or *too*, although mostly avoided for some construction with *nor*, *neither*, or *either*, as is shown by the preceding discussions, are not particularly unfrequent, either in literary, or in colloquial or vulgar language. As the "correctness" of this construction with *also* or *too* is sometimes called in question, it seems advisable to show its comparative frequency by numerous examples. Compare also JESPERSEN, *Negation*, Ch. X, 114 f.

He could not help, too, rolling his large eyes round him. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 363.

Ritter is the Brucker of the nineteenth century — not quite so learned, and not quite so dull; also not quite so calm and impartial. LEWES, *Hist. of Phil.*, Pref., 10.

Unilateral formation of voiced [l] is also not unfrequent in Welsh and other languages. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 111.

The fact is that those types of English which are not Provincial or Regional Dialects, and which are also not Received Standard, are in reality offshoots or variants from the latter. WYLD, *Hist. of Mod. Col. Eng.*, Ch. I, 3.

It (sc. the use of strong forms for weak ones in ordinary conversation) is also not uncommon in the speech of Colonials. RIPPMANN, *Sounds of Spok. Eng.*, § 47.

Bennett also did not laugh. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. V, 39 a.

The crown is nothing, the cross is nothing, the ring is nothing too. TEMPLE THURSTON. *City*, I, Ch. XVIII, 161.

I suppose he can't come too. HUGH WALPOLE, *Jeremy*, Ch. III, 71.

"Do you like babies, Uncle Samuel?" — "No, I do not." — "Not even Barbara?" — "No — certainly not." — "I don't too." *ib.*, Ch. VIII, 3, 202.

These figures do not take into account casualties, also they do not include about 5000 horses and 20,000 mules, imported from India. *Daily Chron.* It was also not found possible to carry out the clause of the Treaty by which the German Emperor was to be put on his trial. *Times*, Rev. of 1920, 1 d. Three Coalition Liberals spoke in the debate on Mr. Terrell's motion — Mr. Alexander Shaw ...; Mr. Lyle Samuel, whose views are also not in doubt, and Sir Archibald Williamson. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8115, 4 a.

We ain't no 'eavenly Miltons, nor we ain't no idiots too. CROSLAND (R. Thurston Hopkins, *Rudy. Kipling*, 12).

'E ain't no reg'lar 'andsome, and 'e ain't so ugly too, | But just an average looker, the same as me and you. FLOR. A. VICARS, *Gold Stripes* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7631, 3 a.)

In questions any alternative construction with *nor*, *neither*, or *either* would hardly be possible; e. g.:

If it be no sin in a man to covet honour, why should a woman too not desire it? THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. IV, 349.

X. In conclusion it may be pointed out that the adverb *neither* also

occurs in the head-clause of a complex with an adverbial clause, as in: If there is no reason why the iron and steel trade should be subsidised by the coal industry, neither is there any reason why it should be subsidised by a duty on iron and steel goods. *Manch. Guard.*, 9/12, 1927, 442 *d.*

CORRELATIVE COMBINATIONS.

22. The conjunctive correlatives *alike ... and*, *at once ... and*, (11) *both ... and*, and *equally ... and* are used especially to direct the attention to two members separately. *Both ... and* is more common than the others. *Alike* and *both* are sometimes placed after the last member (Ch. VIII, 144, *f.*)

i. He went to sleep alike thankless and remorseless. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 311.

Round them the leaden mist shut out alike the shore and the chase. *KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XXXII, 240 *b.*

I can say with truth that in good and bad days alike he was always the same. *Daily Telegraph.*

ii. Of all the enemies of liberty whom Britain has produced, James I was at once the most harmless and the most provoking. *MAC.*, *Hampd.*, (195 *a.*)

That bad man was stimulated at once by malignity, by avarice, and by ambition, *id.*, *War. Hast.*, (613 *a.*)

Taking the chair every night at some low theatrical house at once put him in possession of a few more shillings weekly, and enabled him to gratify his old propensity. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. III, 24.

iii. It was then that both Scotland and Ireland became parts of the same empire with England. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 63.

He was both out of pocket and out of spirits by that catastrophe. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, II, XXXII, 370.

The king and the queen both honour him. *O. E. D.*

He can sing and dance both. *ib.*

iv. Her journey hither equally grieves and alarms me. *FANNY BURNEY*, *Evelina*, XV, 50.

I was ... equally duped and betrayed. *LYTTON*, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. IV, 91. He would have been equally dear to Howard and to Cocker. *id.*, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. II, 36.

Equally at present and in the remotest future, must it be of incalculable importance for the regulation of their conduct, that men should understand the science of life, physical, mental, and social. *SPENC.*, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 40 *a.*

Note. *Alike*, *both*, and *equally* are sometimes detached from the elements connected by *and*. In this case they are no longer felt as conjunctives. See also Ch. V, 16, Obs. III; Ch. VIII, 144; and compare *O. E. D.*, s. v. *both*, B.

i. Thy body and thy mind are alike unfit | To trust each other. *BYRON*, *Manfr.*, II, 1.

He passed over an injury or a benefit alike easily. *THACK.*, *Es m.*, II, Ch. X, 234.

ii. Cæsar and Pompey were both great men. *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 405.

Her mind and her person had both developed themselves considerably. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 214.

iii. His presence and his absence were equally dreaded by the lord-lieutenant. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, II, 146 (*O. E. D.*).

NOW.

23. *Now*, like the Dutch *nu*, is used to introduce the minor of a (12) syllogism, as in:

A plant has not the power of locomotion. Now an oak is a plant; therefore an oak has not the power of locomotion. WEBST., Dict., s.v. *sylogism*.

It is also placed before a statement expressing an incidental explanation (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 414); thus in:

Now the serpent was more subtil than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. Bible, Gen., III, 1.

Then cried they all again, saying, Not this man, but Barabbas. Now Barabbas was a robber. *ib.*, JOHN, XVIII, 40.

RELIEVING COPULATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

24. In the case of relieving copulative co-ordination the union (13) is effected by one of the following adverbs or adverbial expressions:

a) *also*, *besides*, *eke*, *equally*, *further(more)*, *likewise*, *moreover*, *too*, *withal*, *at the same time*; b) *as well as*, *not only (merely, alone)*, . . . *but (also, too, even)*; c) *even*, *indeed*, *nay*, *yea*.

25. The adverbial conjunctives of the first group, *also*, etc., impart (14) the least degree of prominence to the member to which they are attached. Only some of them need some comment. For illustrative quotations see also Ch. VIII, 67 ff.

Eke is obsolete, but is still archaically found in (mock-) dignified language. Compare the Dutch *mitsgaders*; e.g.: And at her house in town . . . presents himself an old-fashioned old gentleman, attorney-at-law, and eke solicitor of the High-Court of Chancery. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. II, 7. *Equally* (Dutch *eveneens*) seems to occur in this function only before *as*, as in: *Luvisca* (a kind of fabric) pyjamas, too, are equally as popular. Advertisement.

Further and *furthermore* are used interchangeably; e.g.: You know once for all that I require you to be here, not there. Further that I require you to bring obedience. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 60 a.

It appeared that Mr. Pen's bills in all amounted to about seven hundred pounds; and, furthermore, it was calculated that he had had more than twice that sum of ready money during his stay at Oxbridge. THACK., *Pen d.*, I, Ch. XX, 209.

Likewise is a literary word, the spoken language using *also* and *too* instead; e.g.: My face is likewise very well known at the Grecian. ADDISON, *Spect.*, I. It is for this reason likewise, that I keep my complexion and dress as very great secrets. *ib.*

Also moreover occurs chiefly in literary language, the spoken language preferring *besides*; e.g.: He intimated, moreover, that these pretences of clemency were mere hypocrisy. MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. iv, 199 b.

So Xenophanes gazed above him at the sky, and felt that he was encompassed by it. Moreover it was a great mystery, inviting yet defying scrutiny. LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.*, 61.

Too is the most common of the conjunctive adverbs of this group. For illustration see Ch. VIII, 68.

Withal, now used only in the higher literary style, is used in several shades of meaning, viz. that of: 1) *at the same time* (Dutch *daarbij*), as in: She, first taking an oath of them for her revenge, revealed the actor, and whole manner of his dealing, and *withal* suddenly stabbed herself. SHAK., *L u c r e c e*, *A r g u m e n t*.

Of nought | But that unbroken line he thought | Of which he was the last:
withal | His scornful troubled eyes did fall | Upon that nest of poverty. MORRIS,
E a r t h l y P a r . , T h e M a n b o r n t o b e K i n g, 43*a*.

2) *added to this* (Dutch *benevens*), as in: Let his deservings and my love *withal* be valued 'gainst your wife's commandment. SHAK., *M e r c h . , I V*, 1, 450.

3) *for all that* (Dutch *met dat al*), as in: I grant I am a woman; but *withal* | A woman that Lord Brutus took to wife. SHAK., *J u l . C æ s . , I I*, 1, 291. And yet, *withal*, there was a great family likeness between the two brothers. LYTTON, *C a x t . , I I I*, Ch. V, 73.

And *withal* there was somewhat of the air of a gentleman in this young wayfarer. *ib.*, IV, Ch. IV, 96.

Note *a*) It will have been observed that in the last shade of meaning *withal* is rather adversative than copulative. It is purely adversative in: I have not even my old enemy, dyspepsia, but eat, drink, and sleep like a top. And *withal* I am as tired as if I were hard at work, and shirk walking. HUXLEY, *L i f e & L e t . , I I*, 368.

β) Another application of *withal* is that of a preposition. As such it always has end-position, as in: And he took him a potsherd to scrape himself *withal*. Bible, Job, II, 8.

At the same time owes its occasional co-ordinative force to the partial obliteration of its strict meaning. It is often more or less adversative (O. E. D., s. v. *time*, 37, c); e. g.: We think the franchise ought to be very considerably enlarged; at the same time we are free to accept office some day. THACK., *P e n d . , I I*, Ch. XXXII, 349.

Give them my best wishes. At the same time I must say I do not envy the girl. J. S. WINTER, *L u m l e y*, XV (O. E. D.).

26. A greater degree of prominence is imparted by the conjunctives (15) of the second group. In the case of *as well as* that which is represented as uncommon or unexpected is mentioned first, in the case of *not only ... but also*) and its variants, it is mentioned last.

As well as differs from its Dutch equivalent *zoowel als* in that it is rarely split up, its place being almost invariably between the two members to be connected; e. g.: It will be my endeavour to relate the history of the people as well as the history of the government. MAC., *H i s t . , I*, Ch. I, 3. He must irrevocably lose her as well as the inheritance. G. ELIOT, *S i l . M a r n . , C h . I I I*; 23.

ii. Nature had taught him (sc. Wordsworth) that her laws, her faithfulness, and her beauty, could be observed as well in small as in great objects. G. McLEAN HARPER, *W o r d s w o r t h*, Ch. IV, 89. (*Well* perhaps to be understood as an adverb of quality, as a weak *thoroughly*, i. e. in the meaning of the Dutch *goed*.)

Note *a*) *As well as* is frequently replaced by *and ... as well*. Thus *He must irrevocably lose her as well as the inheritance* = *He must irrevocably lose her and the inheritance as well*. *As well* also occurs without *and*, as in: The cannon is not the only danger: they have rifles as well. CON. DOYLE, *S i e g e o f S u n d a G u n g e*.

β) The subordinative *as* and *like* are not unfrequently used in a way which hardly differs from that of *as well as*. Compare Ch. XVII, 104, *d*; 107, *b*.

i. Pisistratus, you are heir to my name now, as to your father's. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, X, Ch. III, 250.

This has been the aim of all ascetics, as of all philosophers. LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.*, 79.

Asceticism is disappearing out of education, as out of life. SPENCER, *Edic.*, Ch. II, 46 *a*.

ii. The mind, like the body, has a predetermined course of evolution. *ib.*, Ch. II, 47 *b*.

I am only a boy like yourself. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 11.

Not only ... but also not unfrequently drops *also*. It is hardly necessary to observe that the relation of the members connected by *not only ... but (also)* may also be considered to be one of substitutive adversative co-ordination (Ch. XI, 4): e.g.: i. This helped to account not only for there being more profusion than finished excellence in the holiday provisions, but also for the frequency with which the squire condescended to preside in the parlour of the Rainbow. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. III, 19.

The hero and heroine gain not only interest, but affection also from the reader. Graph.

ii. He addressed his observations not only to the master and the guests, but to the domestics who waited at table. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. V, 53.

Miss Amelia Sedley deserved not only all that Miss Pinkerton said in her praise, but had many charming qualities which that pompous old Minerva of a woman could not see. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 4.

Note. In the first member *merely* or *alone* sometimes stands for *only*, in the second *too* or *even* for *also*; e.g.: i. The half-century after the Reformation in England was one not merely of new intellectual freedom, but of immense animal good spirits. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 15 *b*.

Monmouth was not merely an usurper, but an usurper of the worst sort, an impostor. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 158.

ii. Companions dear! | Found worthy not of liberty alone, | Too mean pretence! but, what we more affect, | Honour, dominion, glory, and renown. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, VI, 419.

iii. To whose free gift the world does owe | Not only earth, but heaven too. BUTLER, *Hudibras* (MätzN., *Eng. Gram.*², III, 370).

iv. They don't only scorn to marry, but even to make love to any woman not as illustrious as their own. MONTAG., *Letters*. (*ib.*).

27. The highest degree of prominence is imparted by the conjunctives of the third group: *even*, etc.

Only *even* is met with in the ordinary spoken language. It is often found together with other copulative conjunctives. For copious illustration see Ch. VIII, 68.

Indeed is the weakest conjunctive of this group, and branches off into other shades of meaning. (Ch. VIII, 73.) Nor can it be said to be much used out of the literary language; e.g.: Pen felt very grave, and by no means elated, and indeed thought it was a great sacrifice he was going to perform. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 289.

Nay stands before what is regarded to be at variance with the ordinary course of things and is, therefore, highly emphatic. See also Ch. LIX, 83; e.g.: Were he my brother, nay, my kingdom's heir, ... I make a vow, | Such neighbour nearness to our sacred blood | Should nothing privilege him. SHAK., *Rich.*, II, I, 1, 116. Cicero declares himself dissatisfied with his own performances, nay even with those of Demosthenes. HUME, *Es.*, XIII, *Of Eloquence*, 99.

Within a few days, nay, perhaps within a few hours, Francesca might be his own. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Err.*, Ch. II, 14.

Yea is a word of the higher literary language, and imparts a solemn ring to the discourse. See also Ch. LIX, 82; e.g.: We will exchange him away for money, yea, for silver and gold, and for beef and for liquors, and for tobacco and for raiment. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IV, 43.

I hold | He scarce is knight, yea but half-man, nor meet | To fight for gentle damsel. TEN., *Gar. & Lyd.*, 1148.

Note. Certain phrases, such as *what is more, what is rarer, what is worse*, etc. (Ch. XXXIX, 13) often have a similar force as *even*; e.g.: "Do you know the game of *Pass it on, neighbour?*" said the new-comer, addressing one of the company on the left — "No," said the other, "and what's more I don't care." STOF., *Handl.*, I.

Fortunately Mrs. Mayfield was at home, and what is rarer, disengaged. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. VI, 163.

There was a stiffness in the action, and, what was worse, a stiffness that misbecame it. JAMES PAYN, *The Heir of the Ages*, I, 29.

ARRANGING COPULATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

28. In a r a n g i n g copulative co-ordination the members are preceded (17) by the following adverbs, or adverbial expressions: a) *first(ly)*, *second(ly)*, *third(ly)*, etc., *lastly*; b) *first, then* (or *next*), *next* (or *then*), etc., *finally* (or *last of all*, occasionally *lastly*); c) *in the first place* (or *instance*), *in the second* (or *next*) *place* (or *instance*), etc. *in the last place* (or *instance*). These groups are to a certain extent used promiscuously.
29. The first group of the above conjunctives appear to be used (18) especially in mentioning a succession of matters, mostly the cause (reason, or ground), the consequence, or purpose of some action, according to their supposed relative importance.

First is more common than *firstly*, but the use of *second*, etc., instead of *secondly*, etc., is considered bad grammar. The use of *firstly* seems to entail that of *secondly*, instead of *then* or *next*. The first of the following examples is given as a type:

i. It was impossible for me to accede to his request: first(ly), I was laid up with a severe cold; secondly, I was not quite sure that it wouldn't be better for him to make another effort; thirdly, I should have spoiled a long-cherished plan of my brother's, and lastly, the necessary funds were not forthcoming.

Silas was thinking with double complacency about his supper; first, because it would be hot and savoury; and secondly, because it would cost him nothing. G. ELIOT, *Silas Mar.*, Ch. V, 34.

First, the king could not legislate without the consent of his Parliament. Secondly, he could impose no tax without the consent of his Parliament. Thirdly, he was bound to conduct the executive administration according to the laws. MAC., *Hist.* I, Ch. I, 29.

His (Wordsworth's) poetical merits are threefold, and lie, first, in the inexplicable, the ultimate felicity of phrase which all great poets must have, and which only great poets have; secondly, in his matchless power of delineating natural objects; and lastly, more properly, and with most special rarity of all, in the

half-pantheistic mysticism which always lies behind this observation. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 53.

ii. Why should I take such pains about all this! Firstly, because it all concerns Josselin and the story of his life. Secondly, because I find it such a keen personal joy to evoke all these personal reminiscences. DU MAURIER, *The Martin*, Ch. I.

Mrs. Waterbrook inquired, firstly, if I went much into the parks, and secondly, if I went much into society. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXV, 184 *b*.

iii Our interests in this matter are two, and only two — first, to see that there is not established on the Persian Gulf a fortified position which might be used on the flank of our communications with India; second, to see that differential rates are not imposed against British goods. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5573, 2 *a*.

30. The second group of conjunctives seem to be preferred in enumerating a series of successive acts. The first of the following (19) examples may serve for a type:

The thief first provided himself with a pass-key, then slipped into the house, next secreted himself in a cupboard, and finally took advantage of my aunt's taking her usual after-dinner nap to rifle her jewel-case.

When we mean to build, we first survey the plot, then draw the model. SHAK., *Henry IV, B, I, 3, 42*.

He's here in double trust; | First, as I am his kinsman and his subject, | Strong both against the deed; then, as his host, | Who should against the murderer shut the door, | Not bear the knife myself. *id.*, *Macb. I, 7, 12-16*.

Sir Everard learned from the public News-letter, — first, that Richard Waverley, Esquire, was returned for the ministerial borough of Barterfaith; next, that Richard Waverley, Esquire, had taken a distinguished part in the debate upon the Excise bill in the support of Government; and lastly, that Richard Waverley, Esquire, had been honoured with a seat at one of those boards, where the pleasure of serving the country is combined with other important gratifications. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. II, 28 *a*.

I say nothing: first, because I cannot understand the purpose served in the Great Universal Scheme by the race of fairies; and next, because, as regards the spectres, it is a thing incomprehensible to me why the ghosts of mere obscure and lowly-born persons . . . should be allowed so great a distinction as to continue among us. BESANT, *Dor. Forster*, Ch. I, 3.

31. *In the first place (instance), in the second (next) place (instance)*, (20) etc. seem to be mostly used in the same way as the conjunctives mentioned in 29.

Do we mean to hint that Mr. Arthur Pendennis made any use of the monosyllable in question? Not so. In the first place, it was dark: the fireworks were over, and nobody could see him; secondly, he was not a man to have this kind of secret, and tell it; thirdly and lastly, let the honest fellow who has kissed a pretty girl, say what would have been his own conduct in such a delicate juncture? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 108.

In the first place Mr. Watton said so, in the next there are such things as newspapers. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, I, Ch. VII, 41 *b*.

I applied to the local post-office in the first instance, and then to the Secretary at the General Post-Office. O. E. D., s. v. *instance*, 10.

Note. In a similar function we sometimes find the cardinal numerals *one, two, three*, etc.; as in: The Mallorings, I've not the slightest doubt, believe it their duty to look after the morals of those who live on their property. There are three things to be said about that: One — you can't make people

moral by adopting the attitude of the schoolmaster. Two — it implies that they consider themselves more moral than their neighbours. Three — it's a theory so convenient to their security that they would be exceptionally good people if they did not adopt it. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. VI, 44.

ANALYSING COPULATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

32. In the case of analysing copulative co-ordination the connexion is effected by placing one of a pair of correlative adverbial conjunctives before or after each member of the compound sentence. These conjunctives are: a) *for one thing ... for another (thing)*; *half ... half*; *in part ... in part*; *on the one hand ... on the other (hand)*; *partly ... partly*; *what ... and (what)*; b) *(at) one time (moment, minute, etc.) ... at another (time, moment, etc.)*, or *at the next*, or *then*; *at times ... at times*; *now ... now (anon, then again, the next moment, etc.)*; *sometimes ... sometimes (then, then again, at other times, etc.)*; *whiles ... whiles*.
33. The first group of the above conjunctives are used in enumerating (22) a series of phenomena or states, each bearing only in part on the matter described; thus:

for one thing ... (and) for another, placed before or after explanatory statements, as in: Apology was hopeless and explanation impossible. There was no time for it, for one thing; and for another, I believed what I said to be true. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. IV, 63.

I did not participate in the bear-fights. For one thing, I was a reading man; and for another, I couldn't have ventured to run the risk of being rusticated, and breaking my mother's heart. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. I, 10.

Note The second member of the combination is sometimes absent; thus in: When you see the young lady, ... I don't think you will say she looks like a silly school-girl. She's nearly as tall as I am, for one thing. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*.

half ... (and) half as in: He consented half from cupidity, half from fear. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 102.

Many Britishers seem bent on regarding their late adversaries as half fools, half knaves. *Rev. of Rev.*

in part ... (and) in part, as in: He entered very softly; in part, because it was a church; in part, because he thought he would surprise Tom. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXI, 248 a.

Note. The preposition *in* is sometimes absent when the reference is to a (pro)noun; thus in: To Pam, part Catholic and part a wild bird of the moors, the old faith had found its resurrection. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 11.

on the one hand ... (and) on the other (hand), as in: He by no means pretends to the unerring acumen of Molière's cook on the one hand, and feels himself by no means infallible in his judgment of purely technical matters on the other. DU MAURIER, *Soc. Pict. Sat.*, 13.

The two most important elements of speech-sounds are those which depend on the shape of the glottis on the one hand, and of the mouth- and lip-passages on the other. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 48.

But what are the practical conditions? On the one hand eager holiday-makers, bent on using to the full their respite from office or class-room or parish, and fired with all the fatal fascination of Alpine climbing; on the other men to whom the patronage of these holiday-makers means livelihood for themselves and their families. Times.

partly ... (and) partly, as in: He spoke partly from conviction, partly from prudence. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 102.

what ... (and) what, placed before words or word-groups expressing the cause of the action or state indicated by the predicate. The relation of cause is mostly denoted (or implied) by the preposition *with*, occasionally by *between*, rarely by *from* or *of*, the last preposition appearing frequently in the works of JACK LONDON. The ordinary practice is to place *what with* (or *between*) only before the first of the members of the combination. Sometimes *what* is absent also before the first member, especially when it opens *with between*. The function of *what* may be described to be that of an indefinite pronoun used adverbially (Ch. XXXVIII, 13).

i. What with his pace, which was at best an awkward one in the street; and what with his hat, which didn't improve it; he trotted against somebody in less than no time. DICK., Chimes, II, 37.

What with bloom and grace, what with small proportions and movements light as air, what with an inventive refinement in dress and personal adornment that never failed, all Letty Sewell's defects of feature or expression were easily lost in a general aspect which most men found dazzling and perturbing enough. MRS. WARD, Tres., I, Ch. II, 7 b.

ii. The waiter entreated me more than once to come in and win but what with his table-spoon to my tea-spoon, his despatch to my despatch, and his appetite to my appetite, I was left far behind at the first mouthful. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 34 b.

I don't like to speak to your papa about it, my dear; he has already been put to such expense, what with the ceiling and the drains. MARRYAT, Olla Podrida.

What with the fear of being caught, the disgrace of being brought before a magistrate, and the fear of some degrading punishment, I was like a madman. SWEET, Old Chapel.

iii. What between the poor men I won't have, and the rich men who won't have me, I stand forlorn. HARDY, Madding Crowd, Ch. IX, 85.

Altogether what between March winds, April showers and the entire absence of May flowers, spring is not a success in cities. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VII, 112.

What between her sudden taciturnity and Catharine's pale silence, the girl's sense of expectancy was roused to its highest pitch. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 208.

iv. But of all kinds of ambition — what from the refinement of the times, from different systems of criticism, and from the divisions of party — that which pursues poetical fame is the wildest. GOLDS., Trav., Dedic.

v. What of the scratching and hair-pulling I received, I was glad to retreat. JACK LONDON, Before Adam, 76 (E. S., XLIV, III, 480).

He went straight up in the air, all four feet of him, roaring and caterwauling, what of the hurt and surprise *ib.*, 33.

vi. HARDC. — I {no more trouble my head about Hyder Ally or Ally Cawn than about Ally Croaker. Sir, my service to you. HAST. — So that, with eating above stairs and drinking below, with receiving your friends within and amusing them without, you lead a good pleasant life of it. GOLDS., She stoops, II, (183).

vii. Between the doctor and the housekeeper it may be easily supposed that Dolf had a busy life of it. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl., (108).

I had stinted myself to such an extent, that, between starvation, want of sleep, and over-exertion, I was worn to a shadow. KINGSLEY, *Alt. Locke*, Ch. V, 61. Note. Such a sentence as *What with hunger and cold, I felt very miserable* is, probably, due to the blending of two others, viz.: *What with hunger and what with cold, I felt very miserable*, and *With hunger and cold, I felt very miserable*.

β) Sometimes the second member of the combination beginning with *what with* is absent; thus in: I must walk up and see Jones about the duties; and then, what with getting ready, I shall have enough to do to get off in time. TROL., *Framl. Pars*, Ch. II, 16.

What with her eyes, it really gave me the shivers. GALSW., *Freelands*, VI, 38. *What of* without a correlative seems to occur frequently in the works of JACK LONDON; e.g.: It was only a short distance, though it had taken me, what of my wandering, all of a week to arrive. Before Adam, 26.

In the morning, what of our new-gained respect for the Tree-people, we faced into the mountain: *ib.*, 63.

γ) With the above constructions compare also those used in the following examples, which serve practically the same purpose: i. So, by this and by that — ... I left home, ... with as awful a reputation as ever a young gentleman earned. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LV, 571.

ii. Dinner-time then came again, ... but thanks to the horse and the dog it was nearly all broken victuals. SWEET, *The Picnic*.

34. The second group of the conjunctives mentioned in 32 are used (23) in enumerating a series of phenomena or states belonging only to different epochs or aspects of the matter described; thus:

(*at one time* (*moment, minute*, etc.), ... (*and*) *at another time, moment, minute*, etc.), or *at the next, or then*; as in: At one time I thought she was a story-teller, and at another time that she was the pink of truth. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXX, 255.

At one moment I seemed to guess their meaning (sc. of these words) in a dim way, and at the next they seemed to be more inexplicable than ever. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XVII, 474.

We were soon in full pursuit: one minute we heard the bird crying "crake, crake", close to us, then we saw it rise in front of the dog. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

One time it would be obsequiously, "Missy"; at another familiarity seemed to command an occasional "My dear". PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. II.

She never gave much; she would give one time a shilling, another time half a crown. *Manch. Guard.*, 16/3, 1928, 214 c.

at times. ... *at times*, unfrequent and literary; e.g.: At times the summit of the high city flash'd; | At times the spires and turrets half-way down | Prick'd through the mist; at times the great gate | Only, that open'd on the field below. Anon, the whole fair city had disappear'd. TEN, *Gar. & Lyn.*, 189-193. *now*, ..., (*and*) *now*; the commonest of the conjunctives belonging to this group. Only in the higher literary style do we sometimes find the second *now* replaced by (*and*) *anon*. (*Then*) *again*, and *the next moment*, and similar expressions occur as occasional variants of the second *now* in the second or following elements; e.g.: Now a rook settled on a branch within shot — anon a hare crossed their path, and Henry and his greyhound went astray in pursuit of it — then he had to hold a long conversation with the forester, which detained him awhile behind his companions — and again he went to examine the earth of a badger, which carried him on a good way before him. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XVIII, 181.

The figure itself fluctuated in its distinctness: being now a thing with one arm, now with one leg, now with twenty legs, now a pair of legs without a head, now a head without a body. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 28.

Now I thought it might be for this purpose, and now I thought it might be for that purpose. *id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIV, 525.

Now I suspected that she was very cunning; next moment I believed her honest Welsh heart to be perfectly innocent and simple. *ib.*, Ch. XXX, 255.

Now they go in full flow of harmony together, . . . now louder and louder, then lower and lower. TROL., *Ward.*, Ch. VI, 77.

His Excellency began drinking wine forthwith and gazing round upon the company, now with the most wonderful frowns, and anon with the blandest smiles. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. I, 13.

Now he spoke broad Yorkshire, and anon he expressed himself in very pure English. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. III, 54.

Onward we go along our toilsome way, now through miles of almost virgin forests, then between immense fields of corn. *Times*.

sometimes, . . . (and) sometimes; hardly less common than *now, . . . (and) now*. In the second or following members we not unfrequently find *then (again)*, *at other times*, and, in the higher literary style, *anon*; e.g.: (Here) he sometimes listened to the birds in the branches, sometimes observed the fish playing in the streams, and anon cast his eyes upon the pastures and mountains filled with animals. JOHNSON, *Rasselas*, Ch. II, 10.

His slowness was attributed sometimes to native bashfulness, and sometimes to his fear of offending his uncle. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XVI, (328).

Sometimes people new to the business called Scrooge Scrooge, and sometimes Marley. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 3.

Sometimes he would get within one or two hundred yards of her, and then, in a twinkling, she would be half a mile off. WASH. IRV., *Storm-Ship*.

Sometimes Esmond would think there was hope. Then again he would be plagued with despair. THACK., *Esmond*, III, Ch. III, 329.

Sometimes he gained a little money as a physician; at other times their dependence was on gifts brought by the Scottish lady. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, A, IV, 57.

Sometimes he used to tell us of his expeditions through the woods and fields round his home, and then he would describe the curious animals and birds he saw. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

whiles, . . . (and) whiles; rare and literary; e.g.: Long time he pondered what were best to do; | And whiles he thought that he would send her forth | To wed some king far in the snowy north, | And whiles that, by great gifts of goods and gold, | Some lying prophet might be bought and sold. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Doom of King Acris.*, 62*a*.

CHAPTER XI.

ADVERSATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Four varieties of Adversative Co-ordination	1
Contrasting Adversative Co-ordination	2— 3
Substitutive Adversative Co-ordination	4— 6
Arrestive Adversative Co-ordination	7—11
Alternative Adversative Co-ordination	12—17

FOUR VARIETIES OF ADVERSATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

1. We may distinguish four varieties of adversative co-ordination, viz.: a) *contrasting*, in which one member forms a contrast with the other, as in: *The Commons passed the bill, but the Lords threw it out*; b) *substitutive*, in which the second member contains that which is substituted for what is denied in the first, as in: *He is not my cousin, but my nephew*; c) *arrestive*, in which the second member denotes the opposite of the consequence or conclusion expected from the first, as in: *He tried hard, but he did not succeed*; d) *alternative*, in which the assuming or choosing of what is expressed by one member involves the rejection of what is denoted by the second, as in: *Our competitors lacked either the strength or the intelligence to make the best of our blunders*.

CONTRASTING ADVERSATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

2. In many cases the contrast between two notions is, apparently, not clearly thought of, so that no adversative conjunctive is used, the connexion being effected by the meaningless *and*, or merely by juxtaposition. Also the requirements of metre are, no doubt, frequently responsible for the absence of an adversative conjunctive; e. g.:

When beggars die, there are no comets seen; | The heavens themselves blaze forth the death of princes. SHAK., *JULIUS CÆSAR*, II, 2, 31.

Cowards die many times before their deaths; | The valiant never taste of death but once. *ib.*, 32.

Duty's a name, and love's a real thing. DRYDEN, *MAR. À LA MODE*, IV, 5.

'Life is a comedy to those who think, a tragedy to those who feel. HORACE WALPOLE.

Man's love is of man's life a thing apart, | 'Tis woman's whole existence. BYRON, *DON JUAN*, I, cxciv.

The vile are only vain; the great are proud. *id.*, *MAR. FAL*, II, 1, (361 a).

Things near us are seen of the size of life: things at a distance are diminished to the size of the understanding. HAZLITT, *ON GOING A JOURNEY* (PARDOE, *SEL. ENG. ES.*, 271).

Love is an hour with us: it is all night and all day with a woman. THACK., *PEND.*, II, Ch. XIX, 200.

3. When the contrast is distinctly thought of, the two members are connected by the conjunction *but*, or by some conjunctive

adverb or group-adverb, such as *conversely*, *in exchange*, *in revenge*, *on the contrary*, *contrariwise*, *on the other hand*.

Of these conjunctives *but* is by far the commonest, and the only one used in colloquial style. As some of the following examples show, it sometimes precedes some of the adversative conjunctive adverbs.

Charms strike the sight, but merit wins the soul. POPE, *Rape*, V, 34.

The test of a good education is not the stock of knowledge acquired, but the stimulus given to mental activity. LESLIE STEPHEN, *George Eliot*, Ch. I, 15.

Of the conjunctive adverbs and group-adverbs mentioned above, only *conversely*, *on the contrary*, and *on the other hand* are at all frequent in literary English; the others occur only occasionally. As to *on the contrary* it should be observed that its proper sphere of incidence is substitutive adversative co-ordination. THACKERAY, and, no doubt, many more writers of pure English, also use it as a strict synonym of *on the other hand*. The O. E. D. (s. v. *contrary*, B, 1, b) gives *on the other hand* by way of explanation of *on the contrary*.

conversely: Very free order is possible only in inflected languages. Conversely, absolute fixed order occurs only in languages devoid of inflection. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1760.

on the contrary: Wales is divided into North-Wales and South-Wales. The principal mountains are in the former. In South-Wales, on the contrary the valleys are broader, more fertile, and full of towns and villages. PARLEY (*GÜNTH.*, *Leerb.*).

Helen was delighted with the generosity of the Major's good humour. On the contrary, it quite took aback and disappointed poor Pen. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 91.

on the other hand: Miss Raeburn's dress was a cheerful red, verging on crimson. Lady Winterbourne, on the other hand, was dressed in severe black. Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 163.

Residence at Oxford is not compulsory, but, on the other hand, the emoluments of the Professorship are not great. *Athen.*, No. 1765, 155 b.

contrariwise: Thus we say, "It is I who *am* in fault," though the sentence really means, "*It* (the person) who is in fault, is I." This also is a case of *attraction*. Contrariwise the predicative pronoun is sometimes *attracted* into the case of the relative. It is usual to say, "It is *I* who did it", but, "It is *me* whom he fears." MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 470.

in exchange, not registered in O. E. D.: We were often many months without receiving letters, or seeing any civilised people but ourselves. In exchange, we had the interest of being about the last voyagers, I suppose, to whom it would be possible to meet with people who knew nothing of fire-arms. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es., Autob.*, 9a. (also in *id.*, *Life & Let.*, I, Ch. III, 43.)

in revenge, not registered in O. E. D., evidently an adaptation of the French *en revanche*: A poor corporal . . . is not generally invited into the company of commanders and the great; but, in revenge, I saw, I promise you, some very good company on the *French* part. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 69.

If no name of primary importance comes into the latest volume of the Dictionary of National Biography, there are, in revenge, some quaint and eccentric beings whose lives constitute delightful reading. *Notes & Quer.*

Many will not even admit the illuminating power of his flashing intelligence. In revenge, he has secured for himself in these last years the doubtful, but obtrusive honour of a whole school of imitators. *Times*.

SUBSTITUTIVE ADVERSATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

4. Also in the case of substitutive adversative co-ordination the two members are not seldom placed in juxtaposition without any conjunctive, notwithstanding the fact that the adversative relation is very strong, and can, therefore, hardly have been missed by the speaker or writer; thus in:

'Tis not the dying for a faith that's so hard ... 'tis the living up to it that is difficult. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. VI, 55.

It is not I who have lost the Athenians; it is the Athenians who have lost me. LEWES, *Hist. Philos.*, 86.

He was condemned to undergo the world's harsh judgment: not for the fault — for its atonement. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 6.

It is not that these people are immoral. They are unmoral. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 201, 256 *b*.

5. Among the conjunctives used to indicate this particular form of adversative co-ordination, it is again *but* which is the most usual. Ample illustration is hardly necessary.

One peculiar application of this *but*, however, deserves special mention: we sometimes find it introducing a sentence expressing emphatically that the speaker holds a different opinion, cherishes a different design, etc., from what his interlocutor assumes; thus in:

"There's no offence, mylord!" — "Yes, by St. Patrick, but there is, Horatio, and much offence too." SHAK., *Ham I.*, I, V, 136.

"Why, you won't fight him, will you Bob?" — "Egad, but I will." SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 1.

"Indeed, Fanny, we will do no such thing." — "Indeed, but we will, though!" THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 28.

"Now, my darling, you can't be comfortable in that tiny chair. You must take mine." — "Oh, no, Granny, please!" — "Oh, yes; but you must!" GALSW. *Freelands*, VIII, 65.

This *but* sometimes introduces an emphatic statement by itself, i. e. without any preceding statement in an adversative relation to it; thus in:

Oh! But he was a tight-fisted hand at the grindstone, Scrooge! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 3.

6. Besides *but* the following conjunctive adverbs or group-adverbs (5) are available: *on the contrary*, *contrariwise*, both of which, as has been shown, are also used to indicate a contrasting adversative relation, and *rather*, and *so much as*.

As to *rather* it may be observed that it assumes the function of an adversative conjunctive through the clause suggested by this comparative being understood. Thus *The old man is no coward; rather he is a man of high spirit* (*Times*) may be interpreted to stand for: *The old man is no coward; rather than a coward, he is a man of high spirit.*

So much as owes this function to the fact that *so much* is separated from the word it modifies. Thus *His talk was not witty, so much as charming* (THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XI, 242) may be understood to stand for **His talk was not so much witty, as it was charming*, which is

avoided because *much* is not, in Present-day English, used as an intensive of the positive of an adjective (Ch. XL, 95, Note). Compare also the following example, in which the adversative relation is expressed by *but*: It was not so much that he said anything noteworthy or novel, but that his manner had about it such an intensity of conviction that [etc.]. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXVI, 241.

Here follow some few examples with:

on the contrary: It is to be feared that this letter of the Parisian great lady did not by any means advance Mrs. Becky's interests with her admirable, her respectable, relative. On the contrary the fury of the old spinster was beyond bounds. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 380.

contrariwise: Nor do we agree with those who think that, by skillful discipline, children may be made altogether what they should be. Contrariwise, we are satisfied that, though imperfections of nature may be diminished, they cannot be removed by it. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. III, 71 a.

rather: If she had wished to heighten the effect of her reception by these small discourtesies, she did not succeed. Rather, Marcella's self-possession returned under them. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XX, 170 b.

Lady Maxwell, however, had not laughed at Frank Leven's speech. Rather, as he spoke of his wife's experiences, her face had clouded, as though the blight of some too familiar image, some sad, ever-present vision, had descended upon her. *ib.* IX, Ch. V, 39 a.

Nor do the reviving activities simply flourish side by side with love for this soul, and still less do they compete with it. Rather they are one with it. A. C. BRADLEY, *Com. on In Memoriam*, 44.

The record of Enver Bey is not that of a pacifist, rather he is the incarnation of the dominant military spirit in Turkey. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6429, 2 b.

The old man is no coward; rather he is a man of high spirit. *Times*.

This increasing volume of activity does not relieve the public of its responsibilities. Rather does it increase the need for watchful criticism and constant discussion. *Athen.*, No. 4625, 7 b. (Observe that in this last example, apparently contrary to ordinary practice, there is inverted word-order.)

so much as: Now, it wasn't ... for the sake of anything he might be able to do for us, so much as for his kind way, that this was quite delightful. *Dick., Christm. Car.*, IV, 89.

(He was) a wise man, as distinct from a philosopher; ... one who loves wisdom not for its own sake, so much as for the sake of its uses. LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.*, 43.

These criticisms were made, not to encourage the Government or to spur it on, so much as to destroy it. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7017, 5 a.

Compare with the above the following example in which *so much* is not divided from its complement: The room gave the impression not so much of a big room as of several rooms run into one. *DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XV.

ARRESTIVE ADVERSATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

7. Arrestive adversative co-ordination is indicated by: a) the⁽⁶⁾ conjunction *but*; b) the conjunctive adverbs *howbeit*, *however*, *meantime*, *meanwhile*, *nath(e)less*, *nathemore*, *nevertheless*, *notwithstanding*, *only*, *still*, *though*, *yet*; c) the conjunctive adverbial expressions *after all*, *all* (or *just*) *the same*, *at the same time*,

for (or with) all that (or this), in the meantime (or meanwhile), none (or not) the less, not the more.

8. About *but*, the commonest of the above conjunctives it may be (7) observed: a) that it is frequently found together with some of the other conjunctives of this group; e. g.:

"It would be absurd of me to attempt to compete with the great folks." — "But for all that, sir, I should belong to a better Club or two," the uncle answered. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 263.

It was not quite convenient, but nevertheless George gave him a considerable present instalment in bank-notes from his pocket-book. *id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 264.

Pitt was not pleased altogether, perhaps, but still not unhappy in the main. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 377.

You are rather earlier than I expected, but I am glad that you came early, all the same! PUNCH.

b) that it is often followed by *then (also)* in the sense of *it should be taken into consideration, it should not be forgotten* (Dutch *daar staat te geven over*). If a third member follows, it is introduced by *but then again*; e. g.:

In the course of their lives they had seen but few persons, except old Portman and the Major, and Mr. Pen, who was a genius, to be sure; but then your geniuses are somewhat flat and moody. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 230.

She never believed but that the girl had taken away some of it, but then women are so suspicious upon these matters. *ib.*, II, Ch. XVI, 173.

Her eyes were bright; but then, also, they were mischievous. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. V, 49.

It is true I am not rich — but then I do not want to be rich. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 114.

A young, strong, personable lover was better than an old one, but then the old man had wealth and position, and the young one had nothing but his head and his hands. But then, again, the old man had not declared himself. M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XI.

9. a) The conjunctive adverbs of this group may be dismissed (8) with little comment.

howbeit, a full clause hardened into an adverb, common in Early Modern English, now used only as an archaism (Ch. XVII, 92); e. g.: He prayed him that he might be with him. *Howbeit* Jesus suffered him not. BIBLE, *Mark*, V, 18.

however, for illustration see Ch. VIII, 67. There are several variants: *howsoever*, now obsolete; *howsomever* and *howsomdever*, now only vulgar or dialectal (O. E. D.); e. g.: i. I dare say you love him not so ill, to wish him here alone, *howsoever* you speak this to feel other men's minds. SHAK., *Henry V*, IV, 1, 130.

Howsoever, the boy went there to play. DICK., *Great Expect.*, Ch. IX, 83.

ii. *Howsomever*, it was soon seen as we'd got a new parish'ner as know'd the rights and customs of things. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. VI, 42.

Howsomever the poor lad got sickly and died. *ib.*

Howsomdever, as your countrymen say, I shall have a shy at him. HUGHES, *Tom Brown at Oxford*, Ch. XLIV (O. E. D.).

(*in the meantime, in the meanwhile*). These conjunctives are used indifferently. They owe their occasional, more or less questionable,

adversative force to the context; e.g.: Everybody who saw Lady Clavering's reception rooms was forced to confess that they were most elegant. Poor Lady Clavering, meanwhile, knew little regarding these things. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXVII, 397.

The door was shut on Cos's venerable red rose: and he went downstairs muttering threats at the indignity offered to him. In the meantime the reader, more lucky than Captain Costigan, will have the privilege of being made acquainted with the secret which was withheld from that officer. *ib.*, II, Ch. Ch. XXVIII, 311.

The prisoners went mad with despair. The gaolers, in the meantime, held lights to the bars, and shouted with laughter at the frantic struggles of their victims. MAC., *Clive*, (514*a*).

nath(e)less, now used only archaically; e.g.: "Friends," said the Chief, looking round, "the old man is but a Jew, nathless his grief touches me." SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XXXIII, 339.

And I went back to Norway to my kin, | Long ere this beard ye see did first begin | To shade my mouth, but nathless not before | Among the Greeks I gathered some small lore. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *ProL.*, 4*a*.

nevertheless, *none the less* and *not the less*, ordinary substitutes for *nath(e)less*, used chiefly in the higher literary style; e.g.: 1) Your arguments are strong, nevertheless they do not convince me. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 409.

ii. There is more in a week of life than in a lively weekly. None the less I'll slate him. RUDY KIPPL., *Light*, Ch. IV, 54.

This may have been inevitable, but it is none the less unfortunate. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 217, 14*a*.

iii. She ... already had pleasure in anticipating poor Lily's discomfiture. But not the less was she angry with Crosbie. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XVII, 196.

Note. For metrical reasons the adverb *the* is sometimes suppressed; thus in: In that still place she, hoarded in herself, | Grew, seldom seen; not less among us lived | Her fame from lip to lip. TEN., *Gard. Daught.*, 50.

nathemore and *not the more*, both obsolete; e.g.: The proud Duessa ... | Enforst her purple beast with all her might ... | But nathemore would that courageous swayne | To her yeeld passage. SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, I, VIII, XIII (MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*², III, 382).

But thou | Revisit'st not these eyes, ... | Yet not the more | Cease | to wander where the muses haunt | Clear spring. MILT., *Par. Lost*, III, 26.

notwithstanding: His nephew left the room without an angry word notwithstanding. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 8.

only: She's devilish like Miss Cutler that I used to meet at Dumdum, only fairer. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 27.

There were those among them who said he was the house-steward, only he dined with the family. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 232.

still and *yet*, often interchangeable, like the Dutch *nog* and *toch*; e.g.: i. Your arguments are very weighty; still they do not convince me. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *but*, 5.

You still may do very well. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 305.

ii. If he will stick to his business he may do well yet. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 302.

Note a) But for *still*, mostly preceded by *but*, in the meaning of *it must be admitted*, *there is no denying*, *this does not alter the fact*, etc., we never find *yet*; e.g.: The mere accumulation of facts should not be the aim of education, but still some facts there must be of which to treat.

He was an unscrupulous, perhaps an unprincipled statesman; but still he was a statesman, not a freebooter. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (599*b*).

We are bound, on the authority of Mr. Pickwick, to state, that Mr. Tupman's mode of proceeding evinced far more of prudence and deliberation than that adopted by Mr. Winkle. Still, this by no means detracts from the great authority of the latter gentleman on all matters connected with the field. DICK, *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 166.

Mr. Meeson would, no doubt, make a hard bargain; but still, if she would consent to bind herself for a sufficient number of years at a sufficiently low salary, he would probably advance her a hundred pounds. RID. HAG., *Mees.* Will, Ch. III, 33.

β) Conversely *still* is never used in contracted sentences. Thus it could not replace *yet* in: I have heard, Sir William Thornhill represented as one of the most generous, yet whimsical men in the kingdom. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. III, (250).

γ) Sometimes *still* and *yet* occur together, occasionally even after a clause opening with concessive *though*; thus in: Yet still my mind gives me that you have met her disguised to-night. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, IV, 4.

They sent him for troops only the sweepings of the galleys. Yet, still he persisted. MAC., *Clive*, (509 a).

But though the good woman had to stoop to those humble means of subsistence, yet she still kept up a feeling of family pride. WASH. IRV., *Doll* *Heyl.*, (103).

though, chiefly used in colloquial language, is regularly placed in end-position; thus in: She really carries on a kind of correspondence with him, under a feigned name though, till she chooses to be known to him. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (216).

10. Also the conjunctive adverbial expressions mentioned in 7) require (9) little comment.

After all owes its frequent adversative force to the context; thus in: The Roman occupation was, after all, very superficial. FREEMAN, *Norm. Conq.*, I, ii, 20 (O. E. D., s. v. *after*, 10).

Come, you are in time, after all. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 67.

all (or *just the same*), very common in colloquial language. Compare the French *tout de même*, used in the same meaning: e. g.: But if I had not had that hope, I would have married him just the same. DICK., *Bleak* *House*, Ch. LX, 506.

I like to see men get mellow and good-natured over a bottle of claret. All the same there is nothing so disgusting as a man who has had too much. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. X, 183.

For all that (or *this*) varies with *with all that* (or *this*), the latter being the least common: e. g.: For all that I have contrived ... to give some thought to my mother-tongue. F. HALL, *Mod. Eng.*, p. XV (O. E. D., s. v. *for*, 23, a).
ii. Yet, with all this, *Carlos* is a noble tragedy. CARL., *Life of Schil.*, II, 108.

But, with all this, the place undoubtedly possesses some of the attributes of paradise. DOR. GER., *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XII.

11. Obs. I. In conclusion it may be observed that also *then* may have an adversative force imparted to it by the context, as in: "She said that I was a bad girl. She told me so to my face." — "She was very wrong if she said so." — "She did then, and I couldn't bear it." TROL., *Orley Farm*, II, Ch. XXV, 346. (almost = *however*.)

II. In the first member of a compound with arrestive adversative co-ordination we often find certain modal adverbial adjuncts, such as *certainly*, *indeed* (Ch. VIII, 73), *it is true*, all of them announcing some contrasting statement, like the conjunction *though*; e. g.:

Certainly we have no gold mines in England, nor do we find any silver worth speaking of; but other metals are so abundant that, on the whole, we may reckon our country very rich in minerals. GÜNTH., *Leerböck*.

The spirit, indeed, is willing, but the flesh is weak. Bible, Matth., XXVI, 41.

A part of the money he borrowed, it is true, ... from a brother butler, but the chief part he paid down. THACK., *Van Fair*, II, Ch. II, 12.

ALTERNATIVE ADVERSATIVE CO-ORDINATION.

12. Alternative adversative co-ordination is indicated by: *a*) the (11) conjunction *or*; *b*) the conjunctive adverbs *else* and *otherwise*.
13. The members connected by *or* form a strong or a weak alternative, only the first implying exclusion of the matter indicated by one member on assumption of what is denoted by the other (Ch. VII, 3).

i. Is he innocent or is he guilty? ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 14.

Which is to be mine, sir, the niece or the aunt? SHER., *Riv.*, III, 1.

ii. Give me two or three nails. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 415.

Is he an Oxford or Cambridge man? *ib.*, § 565.

14. *a*) A strong alternative is often announced by the adverb *either* (13) in the first member; naturally only in affirmative sentences. The use of *either* emphasizes the alternative; thus in:

They who have no real feeling always pitch their expressions either too high, or too low. BAIN, *Comp.*, 145.

Great fortunes either expect another great fortune, or a fool. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 2.

Either curiosity or surprise, or some more hidden motive, held my wife and daughters to their seats. GOLDS., *Vic.*

It was clear that either Monmouth or his uncle was rightful king. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 156.

Note *a*) In verse *either* is sometimes replaced by *or* for metrical or rhythmical reasons; thus in:

Approach me as ye are, | Or one, or all, in your accustom'd forms. BYRON, *Manfr.*, I, I, 181.

And here and there on lattice edges lay | Or book or lute. TEN., *Princ.*, II, 16.

β) *Either* is often enough placed in the second member, but in this case it lacks the emphasizing force which it has when placed in the first, in fact adds little to the purport of the sentence. Nor is it confined to affirmative sentences, being freely used in questions as well. *Neither* is an unfrequent variant of this *either*; e. g.:

i. If John had said so, or William either, I could believe it. O. E. D., s. v. *either*, 5.

What signifies his having an open hand or purse either, when he has nothing left to give? SHER., *School*, III, I, (388).

Did you ever know English law, or equity either? DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXII, 518.

It is a shame to speak with such levity about the character of ladies, or of gentlemen either. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 317.

Some of them (sc. the children) are too big for dolls, or for rocking-horses either. LLOYD, North. Eng., 118.

ii. "I know you better," said Clennam, smiling, "than you suppose." Plornish observed, not smiling in return, And yet he hadn't the pleasure of being acquainted with the gentleman, neither. DICK., Little Dor., Ch. XII, 71 a. (For the peculiar form of the half direct, half indirect statement, opening with *And*, see Ch. XIV, 10).

;) The Early Modern English use of *either* as a conjunction is now quite obsolete; e.g.: Either how canst thou say to thy brother, Brother [etc.]. Bible Luke, VI, 42.

b) Negating an alternative of course amounts to negating the two members. Consequently negative alternative co-ordination is equivalent to negative copulative co-ordination, and in many cases interchangeable with it. Thus *He has not either relations or friends* = *He has neither relations nor friends*. (Ch. X, 21, Obs. VI). Similarly *or* and *and* are sometimes interchangeable. Thus *or* could replace *and* in:

Every fellow has some cupboard in his house, which he would not like you and me to peep into. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. VII, 71.

You are not to think, my dearest Esther, that I fail to see what you see, and fear what you fear. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. LX, 506.

Also when two matters mentioned in an alternative are compared with a third, alternative co-ordination approaches to copulative co-ordination, insomuch that *either ... or* becomes almost exchangeable for *both ... and*; thus in:

Elizabeth preserved as steady a silence as either Mrs. Hurst or Miss Bingley. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XVIII, 106.

An old bachelor is far more happy than either a bad husband or a bad wife. E. J. HARDY, How to be Happy though married, Ch. II, 27.

Even when there is no such comparison *either ... or* may be practically indistinguishable from *both ... and*; e.g. in:

That dear father, who was once so kind, so warm-hearted, so ready to help either man or beast in distress, to murder! Mrs. GASK, Mary Barton, Ch. XXII, 230.

c) *Or* is often used before a rectifying statement, as in:

I became attached, or fancied I was attached, to a woman of a much lower degree and a greater age than my own. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XX, 215.

Note a) In this case *or* is often followed by *rather*, or *at least*; by the latter, when the rectification is intended as a qualification of the idea rectified thus in:

i. But still there was a skeleton in his cupboard, — or rather two skeletons. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 40.

Laura came to her, or to the Rectory rather. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XIII, 140.

ii. His remarks did not vex her, or, at least, she showed no vexation. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. VII, 29.

β) This *at least* is not unfrequently used without a preceding *or*; thus in He can't send for the police and turn you out of the house. At least I suppose he could, but he certainly won't. Mrs. WARD, Delia Blanchflower, I, Ch. III, 67.

;) In colloquial language the use of *at least* is extended to rectifications

intended to annul a previous statement, or to such as are superior to a previous statement. Compare STOR., *Stud.*, 8, 225.

I got him to bring me over here this morning in his carriage; at least not his own carriage, for we had a break-down in the night, but one we hired instead. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIV, 343 a.

I believe — at least I know — that he was not rich. *id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XVII, 147.

Do you mind telling me why you are so tremendously anxious to have me come out this very minute? — I'll tell you — at least I don't know that I can; wait till we are outside. MAR. CRAWFORD, *Adam Johnst. Son.*, Ch. XI.

I came here hoping to see you. I want to talk seriously to you. At least — I'm not sure. I want to talk seriously to somebody, and you're the most serious person I know. *id.*, *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 220.

We can't simply exist, and ignore all that is going on in the world around us — at least we can, for it is just what we are doing. L. B. WALFORD, *Stay-at-homes*, Ch. I.

δ) Observe that the phrase *that is to say* may serve the same purpose; thus in: When I came up to town for my second year, my aunt Hoggarty made me a present of a diamond-pin, that is to say, it was not a diamond pin then, but [etc.]. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, I.

d) Sometimes the second statement expresses what would be the result, if the matter contained in the first were not to be fulfilled; thus in:

This must be distinctly understood, or nothing wonderful can come of the story I am going to relate. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

e) Like the Dutch *of*, *or* is in some constructions practically equivalent to *if not*, thus in:

I am much mistaken, or he returns your charity. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, Ch. IV, 143.

It is my brother, or I'm a Dutchman. O. E. D., 4.

f) When *or* is used to connect two subordinate clauses, the first of these is normally introduced by *whether*, the second only when it is full (Ch. XIV, 2 ff; Ch. XVII, 97); e. g.:

i. I'll drive you home at such a rate that you won't know whether the frosty wind is hot or cold. MISS BRAD., *My First happy Christm.*, (71).

Whether true or false, the reports will be believed. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 14.

ii. I don't know whether I shall leave at once, or whether I shall wait for my friend's return.

There will be room left for doubt in regard to the intentions of the Government, whether the Bill is to be pressed forward as it stands, or whether certain concessions are to be made in matters of detail. *Times*.

Note. In SHAKESPEARE *whether* sometimes appears redundantly after *or* in questions. Compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*, § 136.

Move those eyes? | Or whether, riding on the balls of mine, | Seem they in motion? *Merch.*, III, 2, 118.

15. Weak *or* is frequently found before what is an explanation or (14) merely another name for the first member of the combination (Ch. IV, 6, a); thus in:

Young Johnson had the misfortune to be much afflicted with the scrofula or king's evil. BOSWORTH, *Life of Johnson*.

I passed some time in Poet's Corner, which occupies an end of one of the transepts, or cross aisles of the Abbey. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Book*, XVIII, 171.

16. *Otherwise* or *else*, like the Dutch *anders*, is used to indicate (15) the fact that a certain happening can (*or could*) only be averted, or could only have been averted, or a certain conclusion can (*or could*) only be withdrawn, or could only have been withdrawn, if a certain condition referred to in the first member of the compound is (*or was*) fulfilled, or had been fulfilled; e.g.:

i. We must make haste, otherwise we shall be too late. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 420. (Underlying notion: If we do not make haste, we shall be too late.)

The Mss. must be accompanied by stamps, otherwise they will not be returned. *Pall Mall Mag.*

There must, of course, be a central controlling body, otherwise there could be no effective combination, and there must be a reduction of separate stuffs and plants of various kinds, otherwise there could be no considerable economies. *Times*.

ii. I have been deceived, basely deceived; else nothing could have ever made me unjust to my promise. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (468).

My present poverty, I fear, may do discredit to her wealthy children, else I should not have presumed to trouble you. SHER., *School*, V, 1, (422).

Have you brought any venison, Jacob? . . . else, I reckon, you'll not be over-welcome. MARRYAT, *New Forest*, Ch. II, 14.

But that is what the country wants. . . Else there would be no meaning in political unions or any other movement that knows what it's about. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLVI, 340.

17. *Else* or *otherwise* are frequently preceded by *or*; thus in: (16)

Follow me, child, or else these stones will be thy bier. KEATS, *St. Agnes*, XII. So if you funk, you just come along and hide, or else they'll catch you and toss you. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VI, 123.

Note. *Or else* is also found to introduce a pure alternative; e.g.: They go to some of the swell clubs, or else to some grand dinner party. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 314.

CHAPTER XII.

CAUSAL CO-ORDINATION.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
The relation cause-effect expressed in two ways	1—2
Cause mentioned first	3—4
Cause mentioned last.	5—6

THE RELATION CAUSE-EFFECT EXPRESSED IN TWO WAYS.

1. In co-ordination the relation cause-effect in its various forms may be expressed in two ways: *a*) the cause (reason, ground or purpose) is mentioned first, then the consequent fact, the action resulting from a resolution, or the conclusion arrived at. In this case the relation of cause and effect is mostly expressed by conjunctive adverbs, or by conjunctive adverbial expressions, such as: α) *accordingly, consequently, hence, so, then, thence, therefore, thus*; β) *by consequence, in consequence*; γ) *owing to these circumstances, for this (reason), on this ground, for this (purpose)*, and further word-groups in which an appropriate preposition is followed by *this* + (pro)noun suggested by the context.

b) the consequent fact, the action resulting from a resolution, or the conclusion arrived at is mentioned first, then the cause the reason or the ground. In this case the relation of cause and effect is mostly expressed by the conjunction *for*.

2. In many cases the relation cause-effect between what is expressed by the two members of the combination is not thought of by the speaker, so that the members are simply placed in juxtaposition or connected by the meaningless *and*. Thus *for* might be placed between the two members of the following sentences:

I am sure of it: I saw it myself. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 482.

I am tired: I cannot go any further. *ib.*, § 483.

The Squire is a good gentleman, he often gives a day's work. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. V, 24.

She had been afraid he would die a bachelor, he was so very choice. Mrs. GASK., *Cranford*, Ch. VII, 130.

I'm beginning to think this visit to town has not had at all a good effect upon you: you've come back unable to settle down to anything. PUNCH.

Therefore, or some such word, might be inserted after *and* in:

He spoke, and all was still. O. E. D., s. v. *and*, 8.

CAUSE MENTIONED FIRST.

3. Most of the conjunctives mentioned under α) and β) in section 1) are rather vague in meaning, being used for two or more of the four relations mentioned above. This is, no doubt, owing to the fact that these relations are not easily discriminated without some set thought. Thus the conjunctive *therefore* is used in four

functions: it is found after the sentence expressing: a) a cause, as in: *The factory was burnt down last night; therefore many workmen have been thrown out of employment*; b) a reason, as in: *Many workmen have been thrown out of employment by the recent fire; therefore funds will be raised to support them*; c) a ground as in: *He is my brother's son; therefore he is my nephew*; d) a purpose, as in: *He wanted to engage a first-rate governess; therefore he placed advertisements in more than one paper*. *Therefore*, accordingly, covers the meanings which in precise Dutch are expressed by *daar door*, *daar om*, and *daar toe*. For the rest these conjunctives require little comment. For illustration see also Ch. VIII, 67.

Accordingly is chiefly used to express the fact that the effect or conclusion is what might be expected; e.g.: He was absent when I called, and I, accordingly, left my card. WEBST., Dict.

Consequently mostly stands before what is represented as an unavoidable consequence; thus in: The papers were not ready, and, consequently, could not be signed. WEBST., Dict., s.v. *accordingly*.

His Excellency Colonel Rawdon Crawley died of yellow fever at Coventry Island six weeks before the demise of his brother, Sir Pitt. The estate, consequently, devolved upon the present Sir Rawdon Crawley, Bart. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 372.

Hence is chiefly found in the language of demonstration to introduce an inference, but it is also frequent enough in describing the consequence of a fact; e.g.: It is so with men generally, and hence we assume it to be so with you. O. E. D., 7.

God must be Self-existent; for to conceive Being as incipient is impossible. Nothing can be produced from Nothing. Whence, therefore, was Being produced? From itself? No; for then it must have been already in existence to produce itself; otherwise it would have been produced from nothing. Hence the primary law: Being is self-existent. If self-existent, consequently eternal. LEWES, Hist. Philos., 62.

The English writers of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries were able to assume on the part of their readers at least a moderate acquaintance with literary French. Hence they felt themselves at liberty to introduce a French word whenever they pleased. BRADLEY, The Making of Eng., Ch. III, 91. Note. *Hence* is sometimes preceded by a redundant *from*; thus in: From hence he has been accused, by historians, of avarice. GOLDS., Hist. of Eng., II, 280 (O. E. D., 6).

So is especially common in familiar language; thus in: There was no one there, so I went away. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 492.

Note. *So* is, however, rather unfrequent in incomplete sentences. The following examples may, therefore, be welcome: In 'two and three make five' there cannot be any logical subordination — three being, indeed, a more important factor than two — although from a grammatical point of view we are obliged to regard three as joined on to the other word, and so subordinated to it. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 404.

I am not good at descriptions of female beauty; . . . and so shall not attempt any particular delineation of Miss Laura Bell at the age of sixteen years. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXI, 213.

All such expenses were incurred to procure comfort, and so were necessary. E. F. BENSON, Arundel, Ch. III, 63.

Then stands: *a*) before an invitation (or summons) to do that which is represented as a duty to be performed on the ground of the fact(s) stated in a preceding part of the discourse; thus in: Then stay with us a little space, | Our northern wars to learn. SCOTT, *MAR M.*, I, XIV. I'm here, you see, young and sound, and hearty; then don't let us despair, I dare say things will all, somehow or other, turn out for the best. WASH. IRV., *DOLF HEYL*, (149).

β) before what is represented as a conclusion from some fact(s); thus in: The following are, then the chief forms of the personal pronouns in Early M. E. SWEET, *N. E. GR.*, § 1071.

"Hal" said the Countess, hastily; "that rumour then is true, Janet." SCOTT, *KEN.*, Ch. XX, 246.

γ) before a conclusion which the speaker draws from the words of his interlocutor, as in: "I told uncle we might drop into the Eldorado, after dinner." — "They did go there then?" PUNCH.

Thence is hardly distinguished from *hence*, but is purely literary; e.g.: "Thy fear," said Zephon bold, | "Will save us trial what the least can do | Single against thee, wicked, and thence weak." MILTON, *PAR. LOST*, IV, 856. A vast and lofty hall was the great audience-chamber of the Moslem monarch, thence called the Hall of the Ambassadors. WASH. IRV., *ALHAMBRA*, 3 (FOELS-KOCH, *WISSENSCH. GRAM.*, § 381).

There are, too, a few Greek words, such as *kudos*, *nous*, *hubris*, which have been adopted, without the customary latinization of form, in university slang, and have thence acquired a certain degree of general currency. BRADLEY, *THE MAKING OF ENG.*, Ch. III, 101.

Therefore is the typical co-ordinative causal conjunctive; it takes the place of *so* when the use of this word is for some reason inconvenient; e.g.; He was considerably younger and, therefore, much more pompous and stately than Warrington. THACK., *PEN D.*, I, Ch. XXX, 317.

One or other of these points is incontrovertible, the public wants a thing, therefore it is supplied with it, or the public is supplied with a thing, therefore wants it. *id.*, *SNOBS*, Pref., 12.

Thus, unlike like the Dutch *dus*, is not often used as an indubitable causal conjunctive, its ordinary function being that of an adverb of quality or degree. See, however, O. E. D., 2. In the following examples the causal force of *thus* appears to be without a doubt: The population of this city in 1881 was 463172, Naples being thus the largest city of Italy. *CAS. CYCLOP.*, s.v. *NAPLES*, 852 a.

As the curtain rises one of the clocks strikes two, another strikes eleven, while the others remain silent. It is thus impossible to tell what time it is. PUNCH, No. 3787, 87 a.

His uncle had been persuaded by the monks of Fountain Abbey to leave all his property to the Church, and thus poor Robin had to shift for himself. *ROBIN HOOD* (GÜNTH., *HANDBK.*).

By consequence, now archaic (O. E. D.), is chiefly used before what is represented as an inference; e.g.: The three brothers had acquired forty other qualifications of the like stamp, too tedious to recount, and, by consequence, were justly reckoned the most accomplished persons in the town. SWIFT, *TALE OF A TUB*, § 2.

Laura was on a visit to the stately Lady Rockminster, daughter to my Lord Bareacres, sister to the late Lady Pontypool, and, by consequence, a distant kinswoman of Helen's. THACK., *PEN D.*, I, Ch. XXV, 269.

He ... was nephew to Mrs. Thistlewood, and, by consequence, own cousin to Miss Helen. *ib.*, I, Ch. VIII, 87.

In consequence hardly differs from *by consequence*, but appears to be

more common in Present-day English, e.g.: Clive had been only a few months in the army, when intelligence arrived that peace had been concluded between Great Britain and France. Dupleix was, in consequence, compelled to restore Madras to the English company. MAC., Clive, (501 a).

Sir Pitt was first married to Grizzel, sixth daughter of Mungo Binkie, Lord Binkie, and cousin, in consequence, of Mr. Dundas. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VII, 67.

Note. A frequent substitute for some of the above-mentioned conjunctives is the phrase *that is why*; e.g.: You cannot carry a clock about with you, and yet you often want to know the time, when you're walking where there are no clocks. That's why people have watches. GÜNTH., Leerb.

4. The word-groups mentioned under γ) in section 1) naturally have a more clearly-defined meaning. Their discussion, however, belongs to the province of lexicography describing the various applications of prepositions, and falls, therefore, beyond the scope of this grammar.

CAUSE MENTIONED LAST.

5. *For*, the only co-ordinate causal conjunction, requires little (8) comment. Like the Dutch *want*, it may indicate a relation of cause, reason, or ground; e.g.:

The brook will be very high, for a great deal of water fell in the night. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 109.

Do as you are told, for much depends on it. *ib.*

A great deal of rain must have fallen, for the brook is very high. *ib.*

Note. In like manner as the Greek $\gamma\acute{\alpha}\rho$ and the Latin *enim*, *for* sometimes refers to an imaginary statement, and introduces the relating of events whose result has been referred to in a preceding part of the narrative; thus in:

For on their march to westward, Bedivere, | Who slowly paced among the slumbering host, | Heard in his tent the moanings of the King. TEN., Pas. of Arth., 6. (Other instances are found in TEN., Com. of Arth., 184; Lanc. & El., 1160; Holy Grail, 550.)

6. In conclusion it may be observed that the phrase *the fact is* (*that*) is often used by way of introducing an explanatory statement; thus in:

"As for those odious Irish people," says my aunt sharply, "don't speak of them; I hate them, and every one of their mothers." (the fact is there had been a law-suit about Hoggarty's property). THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. I, 4.

You were wrong — altogether wrong. The fact is, Father André, that I cannot quite acquit myself of selfishness. BUCH., That Wint. Night, Ch. I, 15.

The paths want weeding. — Yes, that's the gardener's fault. The fact is he took to drinking some months ago. GÜNTH., Leerb.

CHAPTER XIII.

SUBORDINATE STATEMENTS.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Grammatical Functions of Subordinate Statements	1
Conjunctions introducing Subordinate Statements	2—11

GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS OF SUBORDINATE STATEMENTS.

1. Subordinate statements are found in the grammatical functions of:

a) *subject*, as in: That such an event might happen cannot be disputed. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68, a.

b) *nominal part of the predicate*, as in: My belief is that you are right. *ib.*, § 12.

c) *non-prepositional object*, as in: I tell you that you are mistaken. *ib.*, 68, a.

d) *prepositional object*, sometimes announced in the head-clause by preposition + *it* (Ch. III, 54), as in: i. He may depend on it that he will never again have to go begging for funds. *Graph.*

ii. The English Government was early apprised that something was in agitation among the outlaws. *MAC., Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 116.

e) *attributive adnominal adjunct*, as in: i. * We have no hope that he will recover. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 406.

That is no proof that he did this. *ib.*

She had no idea that Mr. Tremaine could write so poetically. *Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake*, I, Ch. XI, 179.

I have got the Prince's name and his permission that I should dedicate Anacreon to him. *THOM. MOORE (STEPH. GWYNN, Thomas Moore, Ch. I, 20).*

** That Orley Farm ought to be his own he had no smallest doubt. *TROL., Ori. Farm*, III, Ch. XXI, 274.

That Wolsey, like Henry, was possessed of humour, we have abundant evidence. *BEERBOHM TREE, Henry VIII*, II, 30.

ii. The idea that I shall give my consent, is ridiculous. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 404.

One touch of nature makes the whole world kin, | That all with one consent praise new-born gawds. *SHAK., Troil & Cres.*, III, 3, 176.

Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends. *Bible, John*, XV, 13.

This only we will say — that a good woman is the loveliest flower that blooms under heaven. *THACK., Pend.*, II, Ch. XIV, 141.

It will have been observed that in the examples under e) the preposition which would be required before a (pro)noun is dispensed with before the subordinate statement. Among those of the first group there are some in which the subordinate statement semantically stands in the objective relation to the verbal idea implied by its head-word; thus *We have no hope that he will succeed* is practically equivalent to *We do not hope that he will succeed*. Compare *KRUIS., Handbk.*⁴, § 1915 f. In those of the second group the subordinate statement stands by way of apposition to its head-word (Ch. IV, 31).

f) *adverbial adjunct*. In this case they are preceded by a preposition which, together with the conjunction *that* makes up

a kind of conjunctive word-group, introducing what is usually considered as an adverbial clause. Thus in *The courtesy of nations allows you my better in that you are the first-born* (SHAK., As you like it, I, 1, 42), and in *Spare me not for that I was his father Edward's son* (MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 552), the word-groups *in that* and *for that* might be replaced by *because* without the meaning of the sentence being materially changed, which shows that the parts of these sentences which begin with them are felt to serve an adverbial function. Compare Ch. III, 55; Ch. XVII, 2; Ch. LX, 93; also JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., III, 2.2

Note. In the following examples the part beginning with *for that* is, perhaps, better understood to represent a prepositional object:

Reuben Hornby, you stand indicted for that you did on the ninth or tenth of March feloniously steal a parcel of diamonds. R. A. FREEMAN, *The Red Thumb Mark*, 175.

The gods are wearied for that I still live. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Son of Cræsa.*, 153*a*.

CONJUNCTIONS INTRODUCING SUBORDINATE STATEMENTS.

2. Subordinate statements are introduced by the conjunctions *as*, *but*, *lest*, *that*, or *what*.
3. *As*, as an introductory word of subordinate statements, is now only met with in vulgar language and in dialects. Compare STORM, *Eng. Phil.*², 803; O. E. D., s. v. *as*, 28.
He told us as "Gospel" meant "good news." G. ELIOT, *A. d. Bede*, Ch. II, 18.
I'll go and tell his lordship as you're come. You may have to wait a bit.
I'm sure as they've breakfast. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, II, 204.
I don't know as John Cousins be the mate I'd choose for my maid. M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XIII.
4. *But*, mostly corresponding to the Dutch *of*, is frequently used when the head-clause is negative or implies a negation. It is often followed by *that* or *what*. The combination *but what* is not now used in Standard English, but is frequent enough in dialects, and in colloquial or vulgar diction. See O. E. D., s. v. *but*, 30. In the majority of cases the statement introduced by *but*, *but that*, or *but what* is negative in import, and accordingly, these introductory words sometimes readily admit of being replaced by *that not*.

Note a) *But*, the descendant of the Old-English *be-utan*, originally a preposition or an adverb in the meaning of *without*, may be said to have preserved the function of a preposition when, as in some of the following examples, it is followed by *that* or *what*. Here it is felt as synonymous with *except*.

β) In the combination *but that* the linking element is the conjunction *that*, but it is difficult to account for the use of *what* or to determine its grammatical function, unless it is regarded as a vulgar variant of *that* (11). Compare O.E.D., s. v. *but*, 30, c; JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 132; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 566; H. VARNHAGEN, *An Inquiry into the Origin and Different Meanings of the English particle but*, 54 ff; WESTERN, *De Engelske Bisætninger*, § 156. Only when used by itself does *but* do duty as a pure conjunction (Ch. LX, 94).

5. A negative import is more or less clearly discernible in the clauses introduced by *but*, or its variants, which stand after such sentences as:

I am not sure, There is no knowing, Who knows (= *Nobody knows*) and their grammatical variations, or their semantic modifications, as in: i. *Who knows ... but this night-walking old fellow of the Haunted House may be in the habit of haunting every visitor.* WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (145).

Who knows but the old lady thought of her own early days. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVII, 390.

I did not know but you might have run away. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 21.

"Won't you try on some coats?" — "I don't know but I will." *Tit-bits*, No. 1291, 408 b.

ii. *I am not sure but that he was having a good-humoured jest with me.* DICK., *Coop.*, Ch. XIV, 101 b.

I did not know but that I might be called by Will to make my words good. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 967.

She was not sure but that Mr. Glascock would be considered by his friends in England to be doing badly in marrying an American girl. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXX, 236.

Godfrey did not know but that the rascal had enough money in his pocket to enable him to keep away still longer. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marne*, Ch. VIII, 58.

iii. *There's no knowing but what you may see things different after a while.* id., *A. d. Bede*, Ch. III, 29.

Who knew but what he might yet be lingering in the neighbourhood? MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 187.

There is no knowing but what we may never get any further. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 20.

How do you know my friend, but what you would have been every bit as bad. EMILY LAWLESS, *A Col. of the Emp.*, Ch. IV.

Compare with the above sentences the following with *that not*: *I am not at all sure that I was not his most particular friend.* DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 78.

I am not sure that she did not embrace him in the presence of Calverley and Coldstream. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 316.

Note a) In the following quotation *whether ... not* seems to be exceptionally used for *but (that, what)*, or *that ... not*. *Who knows whether we may not yet live to see you standing in the advocates' box?* DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. III.

β) The absence of *but*, as in the following example, strikes us as unidiomatic: *Who knows, we might become friends.* STEVENSON, *Markheim* (*Short Story*, I, 400).

γ) The clause appears to be erroneously negated in: *I am not sure but*

what I did not say that I knew where Dean was. FERGUS HUME, *The Lady from Nowhere*, Ch. XVII, 179.

b) I cannot (or do not) believe, think, or imagine; I have no notion (or idea); You cannot make me believe; I cannot be persuaded, etc.; and their grammatical variations, or semantic modifications, as in: i. I don't think, but your conversation was very innocent. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 2, (231).

I had no notion but he would go a-shooting. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIX, 368.

She had no idea but it was a foreign nobleman on whose arm she was leaning. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 277.

ii. I can't be persuaded but that you really loved Sir Harry Wildair in Paris. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, I, I, (54.)

I could not be persuaded but that the fellow was some father who had given all away to his daughters. LAMB, *Tales*, *Lear*, 160.

Seeing some figures one night moving in front of our house, nothing could persuade the good lady but that they were savages. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 955.

It is not to be supposed ... but that there are many persons who ... have a claim upon me superior to Miss Tox's. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. V, 35.

It is not to be supposed but that much pain will spring out of this unnecessarily raised question. TROL., *Ward.*, Ch. IX, 115.

Let no man dream but that I love thee still. TEN., *Guin.*, 557.

It never entered into her thought but that they must be charned with her company. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIX, 304.

He never thought but that he had spent the day profitably. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 311.

You can't think but that they are quarrelling. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. I, 3.

She would never believe but that he loved her still. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXV, 218.

iii. I had no idea but what the story was true. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 404, N.

We are not to suppose but what, if you had a suitable fortune, he would have come down with something more. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. XVI, 126.

I can't believe but what Mr. Bideawhile could make him come back. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XLI, 317.

I could hardly believe but what it was all real. EM. LAWLESS, *A Col. of the Empire*, Ch. IV.

c) I cannot (or will not) say (or pretend) and their grammatical variations or semantic modifications, as in: i. I cannot say but my daughter will be offended. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XIX, 211.

ii. The rector could not pretend but that he was glad to be rid of his guests. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXI, 90.

iii. I don't say but what he's as free as ever. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XLIX, 410.

I don't say but what she might get off with nothing worse than a sound whipping. EM. LAWLESS, *A Col. of the Empire*, Ch. VI.

I can't say but what it will make a difference. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. I, 15. Note. The simple *not* may be assumed to stand for some such expression in:

i. Not but that I should have gone if I had had the chance. O. E. D.

Thus we lived several years in a state of much happiness; not but that we sometimes had those little rubs which Providence sends to enhance the value of its favours. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (237).

ii. I never *did* eat between meals, and I'm not going to begin. Not but what

I hate that nonsense of having your dinner at half-past one, when you might have it at one. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, Ch. VII, 46.

Not but what the shy man himself would much rather not be happy in that way. JER., *Idle Thoughts*, IX, 153.

d) *I do not fear* and its grammatical variations or semantic modifications, as in: i. Never fear but I'll go. Mrs. OLIPHANT, *Within Prec.*, XVII, 15 (O. E. D., s. v. *but*, 20).

ii. I do not fear but that my grandfather will recover. *Blackw. Mag.*, VI, 684 (ib.)

iii. O dear, there's no fear but what they'll be all here in time. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 46.

Don't fear but what she's well looked after. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 204.

6. *But* and its variants are also frequent enough as introductory words of subordinate statements that imply no negative. There is, however, a tendency in the latest English to replace them by *that*. The subordinate statements here referred to are especially such as stand after such sentences as:

a) *I have no doubt, I do not question*, and their grammatical variations, or semantic modifications, as in: i. I question not but the reader will be surprised at our long taciturnity as to this matter. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. VI, 50 a.

I don't doubt but it's true. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LVI, 156.

I don't in the least doubt but all that will come right. *id.*, *Belt Est.*, Ch. XXVII, 357.

ii. He had no doubt but that Mr. Blifil would very gladly receive the offer. FIELD., *Tom Jones* VI, Ch. III, 90 a.

It was no longer doubted but that she was the object that induced him to be our visitor. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. VII, (272).

I have not the least doubt but that she would have been ready to do as he said. THACK., *Little Spitz*.

There can be no doubt but that she was lovely. RID. HAG., *Jess*, Ch. III, 23. Down to the introduction of Printing, English spelling changes from age to age in such a way that we cannot doubt but that in many cases changes of sound are implied. WYLD, *Growth of Eng.*, Ch. VIII, 100. (A few lines further on: We can hardly doubt that the two spellings express very different sounds.)

The comments of the Italian press leave no doubt but that Italy considers herself to be the enemy meant. *Manch. Guard.*, 18 11, 1927, 381 a.

There is no question but that Germany must lose these ore-fields. KEYNES, *Econ. Cons. of the Peace*, Ch. IV, 90.

iii. Do you go about your work with some little confidence, and I doubt not but what you'll have your way. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LII, 264.

Compare with the above the following examples with *that*: I have no doubt that the poor Begum is ignorant of their histories. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 264.

There can be little doubt that all this time he was a dissembler of more than common Eastern dissimulation. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 184.

I doubt not that these blunders will be exposed. *Notes & Quer.*

b) *I should not wonder, I do not consider it unlikely*, etc., and their grammatical variations, or semantic modifications, as in: It is not impossible but I may make discoveries of both (sc. my complexion and dress) in the progress of the work I have undertaken. ADDISON, *Spect.*, I.

I should not wonder but the horse is a Jew too. THACK., *Little Spitz*, (157).

I should not wonder but she has saved enough to keep her independent if she liked to leave. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVII, 199.

Note a) Thus also after such phrases as (*It is*) *ten to one*, *It is odds*, which, although containing no negative, are closely synonymous with the above expressions; thus in: i. It is two to one but it (sc. the infant) lives till it is found in the morning. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, I, Ch. III, 3b.

It is ten to one but you are thrown together again in the course of a few years., JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. XXIX, 228.

The emptier his purse, ten to one, but the richer his heart. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, VI, Ch. IV, 366.

The chances are ten to one but that ... you have been guilty of blasphemy. TROL., *Ward.*, Ch. VII, 90.

ii. It is odds but I make a hairpin of it (sc. the straw). READE, *Cloister*, Ch. II, 12.

It is odds but they will drive a hare or a fawn within reach of my arrow. *ib.*, Ch. VIII, 40.

β) In the following example *hardly likely* appears to stand improperly for *not unlikely*: It is hardly likely but what they went out to England. Mrs. Wood, *East Lynne*, I, 252.

c) *I do not deny* and its grammatical variations, or semantic modifications, as in: i. It must not be denied but I am a plain-dealing villain. SHAK., *Much ado*, I, 3, 33.

Nor can I deny but I have an interest in being the first to deliver this message. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. VIII, (282).

ii. I cannot deny but that he was the handsomest and genteelst person in the world. FIELD., *Amelia*.

iii. I'll not deny, | But what your spies informed you of is true. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, III, 1, (278).

7. What is now considered an improper use of *but* (*but that* or *but what*) appears to have been more common in older English; thus that after the following expressions where Late Modern English has *but* or its variants only in dialects, or in archaic language:

There is no reason, as in: There is no reason but I shall go blind. SHAK., *Genl.*, II, 4, 212.

God (or *the Heavens*) *forbid*, as in: The heavens forbid | But that our loves and comforts should increase | Even as our days do grow. SHAK., *Oth.*, II, 1, 196.

It is a pity, as in: They say 'tis a pity but all that deal with common women should be served so. WYCH., *Country Wife*, I, 1.

It's a pity but what she'd been the lad. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, Ch. III, 13.

It is a pity but we had asked her. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XXXVIII, 579.

Nothing hinders, or *What hinders*, as in: What hinders then, but that thou find her out? ADDISON, *Cato*, III, 7, 18 (O. E. D., s.v. *but*, 22).

Nothing hinders but that any man who has recalled to mind, or, according to the common phrase, has learned one thing only, should of himself recover all his ancient knowledge. EMERSON, *Repres. Men*, Swedenborg, 27a. What hinders but that Spain and England join'd, | Should make the mightiest empire earth has known. TEN., *Queen Mary*, V, 3, 647a.

8. *But that* appears to lose *but* in the second and following of a succession of subordinate statements that are in the same grammatical relation to the head-clause; thus in:

Meanwhile Costigan had not the least idea but that his company was perfectly

welcome to Messrs. Pendennis and Bows, and that the visit of the former was intended for himself. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XI, 123.

9. In literary English we sometimes find *lest* introducing a subordinate statement. This conjunction is at all common only when the head-clause contains a word denoting fear or apprehension, or one indicating a kindred emotion. For comment and illustration see also Ch. XLIX, 28 f.

i. I feared lest I should be deceived. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

We were afraid lest we should, *or* that we might hurt them. O. E. -D., s. v. *afraid*, 2, c.

She had had a great doubt and terror lest Arthur should not know her. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XV, 154.

My great fear now, however, was lest I should say something to compromise myself. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. III, 60.

I was in mortal fear lest the captain should repent of his confession and make an end of me. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. III, 27.

He felt a little uneasy lest she should begin to cry or make a scene. FRANCES BURNETT, *Little Lord*, Ch. II, 25.

ii. There with his boat was the Master, already a little impatient | Lest he should lose the tide. LONGF., *Miles Stand.*, V, 71.

The ships which were bound for New England were crowded at this juncture with so many fugitives from Sedgemoor that there was great danger lest the water and provisions should fail. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 303.

Beware, I say | Lest men accuse you of indifference. TEN., *Queen Mary*, III, 4, (617 a). (Observe the elision of *of*.)

(She was) jealous lest any one else's words should not have done him full justice. MRS. GASK, *North & South*, Ch. XV, 89.

The German Chancellor will be jealous lest his copyright be infringed. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6654, 2 b.

Note. In ordinary English *that* takes the place of *lest*; thus in: I am afraid that he will not succeed. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 405.

Dunstan was not without fear that he might meet with some acquaintance. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. IV, 31.

10. *That* is the commonest of the conjunctions introducing subordinate (9) statements. For the way in which the conjunction *that* has been evolved from the demonstrative pronoun *that* see Ch. LXI, 12.

In the frequent cases that a subordinate statement opens without a conjunction, *that* may mostly be supplied. As, however, the constructions with and without *that* have been used side by side from a remote period, both going back to a co-ordinative construction, it is objectionable to describe the absence of the conjunction as a suppression. The principal function of *that* has always been and is still, merely to mark subordination, i. e. to indicate in an unequivocal way the fact that the statement following is grammatically inferior to another element. Being, accordingly, without meaning, it is normally stressless and is pronounced with the neutral vowel. Only when it is divided from the words by which it is ordinarily followed, is it pronounced with the same vowel as in the demonstrative *that*, assuming what SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 1895) calls *break-stress*.

11. a) The construction without *that* is usual only when the sub-

ordinate statement follows the head-clause, 1) when it is the non-prepositional object of the verb in the latter; thus in:

I think I have the honour of addressing Mr. Smith. MASON, Eng. Gram.³¹, 250.

I fear I wrong the honourable men. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., III, 2.

One wishes it were so. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park., Ch. IX, 91.

Bows thought Pen had some reason for hurrying to his rooms. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XII, 130.

You say they are not here, and I know they are not. *ib.*, 131.

Who did you say he was? STEV., Treas. Isl., II, Ch. XVIII, 52.

I suppose there must be some residuum which no training or help will ever improve. Man ch. Guard., 25/11, 1927, 404 d.

Further illustration is hardly necessary, every page of prose or verse affording it in plenty. It may, however, be observed that as a general rule the absence of *that* is more frequent in colloquial than in literary style. Compare, for example, *I know I can trust you with I know that my Redeemer liveth*, also *I wish he would come* (SWEET, Spok. Eng., 43) with *We would that more of the London landlords would realise their responsibilities* (Westm. Gaz., No. 6447, 2 c); also *You would like to speak ill of him . . . , but you daren't — you know you daren't!* (THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XIV, 145) with *We know that Heaven chastens those whom it loves best* (*ib.*, 141).

The attentive reader may also observe that omission does not suit all verbs alike. FOWLER (in Dict. of Mod. Eng. Usage, s. v. *that*) gives "tentative lists" of verbs that prefer *that* expressed, verbs that prefer *that* omitted, and verbs "that vary according to the tone of the context." In the first group he puts *agree, assert, assume, aver, calculate, conceive, hold, learn, maintain, reckon, state, suggest*; in the second he puts *believe, presume, suppose, think*; in the third he puts *be told, confess, consider, declare, grant, hear, know, perceive, propose, say, see, understand*. The lists are not very long, and may need some correction, but, coming as they do from 'one to the manner born', they cannot fail to be of considerable value to a foreigner.

Compare also the King's English, the joint production of the brothers H. W. FOWLER and F. G. FOWLER, in which on page 356 and 357 several examples are cited in which, for some reason or another, the absence of *that* is regarded as exceptionable.

PALMER (in a Grammar of Spoken English, § 424) affirms that in such types of sentences as *I wish he'd come! I hope it doesn't rain to-morrow, It is time we went, I'd rather you went to-morrow, that* is never used, a statement which, not improbably, requires some qualification.

The present writer has found that with verbs of declaring the construction without *that* is distinctly unusual, the colloquial *to say* being, perhaps, the only exception. Thus no instance of an objective subordinate statement without *that* has turned up in the case of *to admit, to declare, to grant*.

It is not, of course, for a foreigner to set up as a judge of idiomatic propriety, but it is hardly open to doubt that most competent natives would agree that in the following examples *that* could hardly be dispensed with:

She had declared that she did like Lord Lufton very much. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXVI, 250.

(Fanny promised) that she would avoid the danger which menaced her. THACK., P e n d., II, Ch. XIV, 146.

I admit that many of them (sc. the Irish) are poor, I freely grant that in the past a large proportion of them were illiterate. Manch Guard, 25/11, 1927, 405 d.

He declared that the relationship implied in "master and men" should be an obsolete one. *ib.*, 2/12, 1927, 423 b.

Sometimes *that* is necessary, because without it the clause would be apprehended as a direct statement; thus in:

This only we will say that a good woman is the loveliest flower that blooms under heaven. THACK., P e n d., II, Ch. XIV, 141.

2) when it represents the prepositional object. In this function *that* appears to be currently dispensed with only in colloquial language, especially after such common adjectives as *glad*, *sure*, as in:

I am glad you are sensible of my attention. SHER., Riv., II, 1,

I'm glad you like it. THACK., P e n d., II, Ch. XIII, 236.

I'm sure you'll see him. I'm sure he'll come to-day. *ib.*, II, Ch. XIV, 147.

But in the following examples the dropping of *that* would, presumably, be felt as more or less inappropriate:

i. The two General Staffs agree that there cannot be even a reduction of the period of military service. Manch. Guard., 25/11, 1927, 407 a.

In an extinct volcano, such as he boasted that his breast was, it was wonderful how he should feel such a flame! THACK., P e n d., II, Ch. XIII, 135.

He flattered himself that he had commanded his temper perfectly. THACK., P e n d., II, Ch. XIII, 137.

By insisting that prisoners shall do a hard day's work the punitive and the reformatory objects of prison work can be combined. Manch. Guard., 25 11, 1927, 404 c.

Hoolan wondered that Doolan did not kick him. *ib.*, II, Ch. XII, 129.

ii. I am confident that hard work is the most salutary element in prison treatment. Manch. Guard., 25/11, 1927, 404 d.

b) *That* appears to be dispensed with almost regularly when the head-clause is incorporated in an adnominal or a substantive clause, and its suppression would leave a normally constructed sentence. Thus the suppression of *I think* in *I offer you that which (or what), I think, will be very useful* would reduce the sentence to *I offer you that which (or what) will be very useful*, which is unexceptionable so far as grammatical construction is concerned. The following examples are on the same plan.

i. I published some tracts upon the subject myself, which, as they never sold, I have the consolation of thinking were read only by the happy few. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. II, (241).

These were the doubts which he determined should be at once and for ever resolved. DICK, Pickw., Ch. VIII, 64.

Each of the choice spirits bellowed out the name of the horse or the colours which he thought or he hoped might be foremost. THACK., P e n d., II, Ch. XXI, 225.

Before her there had come a vision of the old lame man, whose name she had found out was Gaunt. GALSW., F r e e l a n d s, Ch. VIII, 70.

ii. He referred himself entirely to Laura to know what Helen would have wished should be done. THACK., P e n d., II, Ch. XX, 219.

It's Fate's doing that I am driven to say here what I had as schoolboy sworn should be said whenever we should meet again. WATTS DUNTON, A y l w i n, II, Ch. IV, 69.

It will have been observed that in all the above examples the relative is the subject of the adnominal (or substantival) clause. When this is not the case there appears to be a tendency to retain *that*; thus in: She had that indefinable something which lovers know that they can never throw away. GALSW., F r e e l a n d s, Ch. X, 81.

All that she had imagined that the desert might be to her she found that it was. HICHENS, G a r d. o f A l., II, iv, Ch. XIX, 86.

In such a sentence as the following *that* could hardly be dispensed with:

Those from whom it was thought that anything could be extorted were treated with execrable cruelty. MAC., C l i v e, (514 a).

It is rather *if* than *that* which could be supplied in:

Faith, ma'am, one is a young gentleman whom I should be very sorry anything was to happen to. SHER., R i v., V, I, (275).

In the following example it would be possible to supply first the relative, then the conjunction *that*.

Did you see any any one you thought you recognized? P u n c h (= Did you see any one that you thought that you recognized?)

c) *That* is never or rarely absent: 1) when the statement represents the nominal part of the predicate, as in:

The wonder is that a mistake of that sort has not happened before in our courts. M a n c h. G u a r d., 25/11, 1927, 406 b.

My view is that the most important element is hard work. *ib.*, 404 c.

2) when the statement is in some adnominal relation to a noun, as in:

But, Master Rowley, don't drop a word that Lady Teazle and I ever disagree. SHER., S c h o o l, I, 2, (375).

Some persons have consequently taken up a notion that she was from the first an overrated writer. MAC., M a d. d' A r b l a y, (730 b).

I had taken a fear in my mind that he might prove to be the very one-legged sailor whom I had watched for so long at the old "Benbow." STEV., T r e a s. I s l., II, Ch. VIII, 51.

But *that* is often absent after such colloquial expressions as *I've an idea*, *I've a notion*, which are practically equivalent to *I think*, which mostly rejects *that* before the following subordinate statement, as in: I had no idea you would be flooded G. MACDONALD, A n n. Q. N e i g h b., XXV, 523 (O. E. D., 9, b).

Compare, however: I had no thought that Mr. Trelawney would hear a word. STEV., T r e a s. I s l., II, Ch. IX, 58.

2) when the subject of the statement is divided from its predicate, as in:

I am afraid that you, who have always had a profound contempt for that man, would not care to meet him.

He showed her that Pen could not and must not think of her as a wife fitting for him, and that she, as she valued her honest reputation, must strive too to forget him. THACK., *Pen d.*, II, Ch. XIV, 146.

I'm astonished that you, after twenty years in my service, should still be unable to say 'Ludgate Hill' properly. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

3) when the connexion of the head-clause with the statement is broken by an adverbial clause or lengthy adjunct, as in :

I promise that if you come in time (*or but for unforeseen circumstances*) I will make you welcome in person.

Fearing that, if the enemy knew his face, they might be deterred from venturing to sea, he kept out of sight of land. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Ch. IX, 246.

I swear to you that, if I were a few years younger, and did not wear this black coat, I would be fighting at the front myself. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. I, 4.

He owned, when driven into a corner, that he seemed to have been wrong about the crew. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, II, Ch. X, 62.

Domini had been conscious that, despite their great love for each other, their mutual passion for the solitude . . ., there was at moments a barrier between them. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XXI, 135.

The following examples illustrate an uncommon practice :

Orion was told, if he would travel eastwards, and expose his sockets to the rising sun, he would recover his sight. COBHAM BREWER, *Read. Handb.*, s. v. *Orion*.

The Spectator thinks, whichever way the situation is looked at, it must be admitted that the Turks are in an exceedingly difficult position. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5424, 16 c.

4) after an introductory *it is* (*or was*) *not* and an introductory *it is* (*or was*), the latter opening that part of the sentence which is meant to convey the true state of things; thus in :

i. It was not that she returned their gaze, or affected an effrontery in her conduct; but she was able to endure it without showing that she suffered as she did so. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XVI, 198.

It was not that he sympathised with Russia. On the contrary, he wrote a letter to Baron Brunnow, . . . in which he bluntly told him that he regarded the Polish insurrection as the just punishment by Heaven on Russia for [etc.]. MCCARTHY, *Hist.*, II, Ch. XLV, 288.

ii. These things occur . . . It is not that they are worse here than everywhere else; it is simply that they are together in an accumulated mass; and, as such, strike us with tremendous force. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. IX, 37.

Similarly in the very common construction in which the sentence opens with *it is* (*or was*) to give prominence to a word(-group), the following statement normally stands with *that*, as in :

It is particularly requested that Miss Sharp's stay in Russell Square may not exceed ten days. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 3.

It was from Mr. Huxter that Bows had learned Pen's parentage, no doubt. *id.*, *Pen d.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 196.

It is time that this little volume drew to an end. DEAN ALFORD, *Queen's Eng.*, § 584.

In colloquial English *that* is, apparently, not unfrequently dispensed with; thus in :

It isn't often we've snow in the middle of May. SWEET, *Elementarbuch*, 62, 27.

It is only of late I have found out how hard — ah, how hard — it is to forgive them. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 216.

It's not having public schools makes these Fascists. WELLS, *Meanwhile*, 214 (T.).

In literary English the absence of *that* has a jarring effect; thus in: It was not without a certain wild pleasure I ran before the wind. CH. BRONTE, *Jane Eyre*, 310 (JESP., *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 237).

And it is only by faith the evils YOU mention as productive of war can be cast out of our hearts. TIMES (FOWLER, *King's Eng.*, 357).

In the following example there is a natural reason for the absence of *that*: *it is my belief* is felt as a mere modification of *I believe*:

It is my belief there was never a ship's company so spoiled since Noah put to sea. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, II, Ch. X, 63.

That appears to be very rarely absent in the case that it is an entire clause which is thus thrown into relief, as in:

It was only when Oswald was within two days' journey of Luba Fort upon Lake Victoria Nyanza that his letters reached him. WELLS, *Joan & Peter*, Ch. VI, § 1, 126. (KRUIS., *Handbk.*, § 1895).

The following example is a bit of exceptionable English:

It is not till He cometh the ideal will be seen. TIMES (*King's Eng.*, 357).

The above sentences should not be confounded with such as similarly open with *it is* (or *was*) in which it is an 'independent' relative that is dispensed with (Ch. XV, 7; Ch. XXXIX, 30), as in:

'Tis distance lends enchantment to the view. CAMPBELL, *Pleasures of Hope*, I, 7. (Here the relative *which* or *that* may be supplied.)

It's Mr. Arthur has been telling him. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXV, 280. (Here the relative *who* or *that* may be supplied.)

It was jealousy made her speak. *ib.*, II, Ch. XIX, 210.

Similarly it is a relative, not a conjunction, that is absent in:

Who is this opens the door? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 796.

What is it you want to ask me? *id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 196.

Dearest Lucy, what is it makes your head ache so often now? TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXVI, 251 (also quoted by KRUIS., *Handbk.*, § 1985.)

d) Insertion of *that* is impossible when the head-clause is placed between two elements of the subordinate statement, as in:

This, the spirit said, could not be done. DICK., *Christm. Car.*⁵, III, 81.

Note. What is here called the head-clause may also be regarded as an adverbial clause shorn of the conjunction *as*.

e) In Early Modern English *that* is sometimes dispensed with after *than*. Compare FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 551; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 233₂.

I rather choose | To wrong the dead, to wrong myself and you, | Than I will wrong such honourable men. JUL. CÆS., III, 2, 125.

12. Obs. I. The placing of a subordinate statement by way of apposition to *fact* (occasionally *circumstance*) is frequently resorted to when alternative constructions are unavailable, or would be awkward. It will be observed that *the fact* (or *the circumstance*) serves very much

the same function as the anticipating *it* in a variety of constructions, and also that the use of this word often affords an opportunity of satisfying the natural desire to construe the preceding verb, adjective, or noun with its proper preposition. The construction with *the fact* + subordinate statement being found in practically every page of literary prose, just one example will be deemed sufficient illustration.

Count Bernstorff pointed to the fact that the Preparatory Commission's mandate was explicitly, and in so many words, to prepare for the immediate summoning of an international disarmament conference on the basis of existing security. *Manch. Guard.*, 25/11, 1927, 404 a.

The construction with *the circumstance* + subordinate statement is illustrated by:

The Irish were the only people of northern Europe who had remained true to the old religion. This is to be partly ascribed to the circumstance that they were some centuries behind their neighbours in knowledge. *Mac., Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 66.

The demonstrative *this* (occasionally *that*) is sometimes used for a similar purpose; thus in:

i. Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends. *Bible, John*, XV, 13.

No two writers were more dissimilar, — except in this that they are both feminine. *Trol., Autob. (?)* 234 (*JESP., Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 2.2s).

ii. It may come to that, that we must leave, this place. *Trol., Ward.*, Ch. X, 128.

II. When a subordinate statement without *that* is placed before its head-clause, it is felt to have assumed a superior status as compared with the latter. The head-clause, indeed, is in many cases equivalent to an adverbial adjunct or clause. Thus *every person allowed* in the second of the following examples approaches, to *admittedly*, or to *as every person allowed*; and *I believe* in the third to *not improbably*, or to *as I believe*. The whole combination frequently appears as a direct utterance.

He is a man of importance, I grant you. *Goldsm., Good-nat. Man*, II, (118).
 He had the *bel air* completely, every person allowed. *Thack., Virg.*, Ch. VI, 59.
 "He is an excellent son, I believe," at last she said. *Trol., Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXVI, 252.

This relative superiority of the statement without *that* is even more marked when the head-clause is placed in its body, as in:

Mr Bolton's account of the transaction was not, it may be imagined, entirely an impartial narrative. *Thack., Pend.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 194.

The Germans, he admits, may make awkward use of their opportunity. *Manch. Guard.*, 25/11, 1927, 404 b.

The arrival this time of the Russians will, it is feared, help to fortify the German demand. *ib.*, 404 a.

Her horse, it is believed, galloped under a low archway, which caught her head. *ib.*, 2/12, 1927, 427 b.

Some Americans, it is true, pretend that merely to outlaw or prohibit war, without providing machinery for the removal of its causes, would be sufficient. *ib.*, 422 a.

The case is slightly different when a statement is accompanied by a clause that is no more than the brief expression of some sort of

emotion, as in *God (Heaven, the Lord, etc.) knows, a word of encouragement would have made me very happy*, but also here the grammatical inferiority of the statement is questionable, and the insertion of *that* would, accordingly, be felt as uncalled-for in the majority of cases. Lord send we may be coming to something better in the New Year nigh upon us! DICK., *Chimes*², I, 14.

III. A succession of two or more subordinate statements with one and the same head-word would mostly prefer *that* before each; when the first stands without it, the following will mostly have it.

i. * He knew enough ... to be aware that the poor infatuated little girl was without stain as yet; that while she had been in Pen's room it was to see the last of him, as she thought, and that Arthur was scarcely aware of her presence; and that she suffered under the deepest and most pitiful grief at the idea of losing him, dead or living. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XV, 157.

He told me that he knew papa, and that he was at school with Mark, and that, as he was such good friends with you here at the parsonage, he must be good friends with me too. TROLL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXVI, 252.

** Mrs. Portman was afraid that she must acknowledge that the mother's fatal partiality had spoiled this boy, that his literary successes had turned his head, and his horrid passions had made him forget the principles which Dr. Portman had instilled into him in early life. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIII, 138.

ii. I believe he was really right, and that nobody had told the situation of the island. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, II, Ch. IX, 57.

When there is contraction, *that* is always dispensed with in the member(s) that stand(s) without the common element. It is often absent also in the first member of a contracted succession of statements; thus in:

I hope they never have been here, and never will come. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XII, 131.

Morgan said he had asked that question, and had been told that Mr. Pendennis had had no doctor. *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 150.

There seems to be no objection to a *that*-less subordinate statement within a *that*-less ditto, as appears from:

She says she wishes she were dead. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2266.

You know you think he has done it. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIII, 139.

IV. A subordinate statement may stand co-ordinately after a (pro)-noun, as in:

How had Fanny discovered the novel of "Walter Lorraine," and that Pen was the author? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XII, 128.

V. When the head-clause puts a case for the sake of argument and, accordingly, has the predicate in the conditional, the subordinate statement often has the value of a conditional clause, and *that* could be replaced by *if*; thus in:

Your mother ... would be very glad that you should marry early. TROLL., *Orl. Farm.*, II, Ch. X, 122.

If the matter were driven to a trial it would not be for the honour of the court that a false verdict should be given. *ib.*, III, Ch. II, 15.

Sometimes she almost thought it would be better that she should stay away from Orley Farm. *ib.*, III, Ch. VI, 70.

Compare: Would it not be better if you could talk freely together about all this? *ib.*, Ch. VI, 78.

Thus also when the head-clause is a question in which the predicate might stand in the conditional, as in:

Will it not be best for her that it should be over? *ib.*, III, Ch. II, 18.

VI. A subordinate statement sometimes stands without a head-clause; thus especially in emotional utterances stating: 1) an idle wish (Ch. XLIX, 10, Obs. I; 19, Obs. I), as in:

Oh! that I had but known! HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XVIII, 126.

2) a state of things which the speaker would wish undone, or which is matter of great surprise to him, as in:

That it should come to this! SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 2, 137.

Oh that ever I was born! Oh that I was ever married! CONGREVE, *The Way of the World*, V, 1, (395).

That is, naturally, indispensable in such emotional sentences, nor is it ever absent when the head-clause is not understood, as in:

Lor, sir — how *very* odd that we should meet you year! THACK., *Pend.* II, Ch. XII, 127.

13. It is only in dialects and vulgar language that *what* is used to (10) introduce subordinate statements; e. g.:

I see what it is plain enough. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marne*, Ch. VI, 40.

CHAPTER XIV.

SUBORDINATE QUESTIONS.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Grammatical Functions of Subordinate Questions	1
The Opening Words of Subordinate Questions	2—10

GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS OF SUBORDINATE QUESTIONS.

1. Subordinate questions, inclusive of such as correspond to exclamatory sentences, are found in the grammatical function of:

a) *subject*, as in: Who can have told you this puzzles me. How I found the matter out is no concern of yours. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, 250.

It matters little how a man dies. SHAW, Doct. Dil., IV, 93.

How the accident occurred is not known, for nobody saw it. Manch. Guard., 2/12, 1927, 427 b.

b) *nominal part of the predicate*, as in: That is why I am angry. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, 251.

With these admirable moralists it was who should fling the stone at poor Pen. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XIII, 138.

c) *non-prepositional object*, as in: I want to know when this happened. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, 250.

They did not wait to hear whether he was guilty or not. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XIII, 238.

Not many of the present occupiers of the buildings round about the quarter know or care, very likely, whether or not roses grow there. *ib.*, Ch. XII, 124.

Mother never minds who asks whom to this house. RHODA BROUGHTON, Mamma, Ch. XXVI, 114.

Note. For numerous examples of subordinate question preceding the head-clause, either as the object of an infinitive in the latter, or as the object of a nominal predicate + infinitive, see Ch. II, 13; Ch. LIII, 11.

d) *prepositional object*, In this function the subordinate question not seldom loses the preposition. For numerous examples illustrating the varied practice see Ch. III, 56, and Ch. LX, 95.

i. He enlarged on what a loss he would be to the magistrates' bench. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 29.

Had he not told her ... of how he had toiled early and late in all kinds of weather? HICHENS, Gard. of A1., II, iv, Ch. XX, 114.

Those who are best acquainted with how much has been accomplished are the most painfully aware of how much still remains to be accomplished LOUNSBURY, The Standard of Usage in Eng. (JESP., Mod. Eng. Gram., III, 253).

ii. I don't care who marries him. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 30.

Beware how you marry out of your degree. *id.*, Pend., II, Ch. XX, 216.

As he thought of this he declared to himself that, if he could meet Crosbie again, he would again thrash him — that he would so belabour him as to send him out of the world, if such sending might possibly be done by fair beating, regardless whether he himself might be called upon to follow him. TROL., Small House, II, Ch. LIV, 295. (*regardless* is practically equivalent to *without regarding or considering*.)

It all depends how you handle him. BENNETT, Clayhanger, II, 280 (JESP., Mod. Eng. Gram., III, 273).

One may speculate what might have been the fate of the United Kingdom.

had Bannockburn ended otherwise. A. R. HOPE MONCRIEFF, *Scotland*, Ch. III, 46.

About 9,000,000 new voters are on the rolls, and the prophets are busily speculating how they will vote. *Manch. Guard.*, 27 I, 1928, 61 b.

Note a) In some cases the absence of any preposition is, presumably, due to the fact that the adjective or noun in question is felt as a constituent of a transitive group-verb. Thus *to be ignorant*, *to be at a loss*, *to have no idea* (or *notion*) are, all of them, close synonyms of *not to know*.

I am not ignorant how much I have been censured for mentioning this last particular. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, Swift, 37.

They were at a loss how to obtain his release. HALLAM, *Const. Hist.*, I, vi, 302 (O. E. D., s. v. *loss*, 9).

It was close upon nine when he set out. I had no idea how long he might be. CONAN DOYLE, *A Study in Scarlet*, I, v, 99.

Helen had no idea why the wife of the Baronet's younger son had cut her. E. F. BENSON, *A Reaping*, November, 129. (T.).

He had not the faintest idea what the word meant. RHODA BROUGHTON, *Mamma*, Ch. III, 30.

β) The use of the preposition in the following examples may be due to the clauses being felt as substantive clauses, which, as will be shown in the next chapter, normally retain it:

We have no idea of what death is. STEV., *Virg. Puerisque*, 160 (JESP. *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III. 252).

He had only the vaguest idea of how much her sallies would be understood by the rest of the class. *Hutchinson's Mag.*, Jan., 1928, 64 a.

γ) In the following example *what*, which stands for *what they live on*, is a non-prepositional object to *knows*. The whole subordinate complex *who knows what*, although containing two interrogative pronouns, indicates some substance, and is, accordingly, to be apprehended as a substantive clause:

Indeed who is there that walks London streets, but can point out a half-dozen of men ... living on who knows what. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVII, 186.

e) *attributive adnominal adjunct*, consisting of a preposition + noun or substantival equivalent, as in the following examples with:

about: Have you money enough to carry on the daily quarrels of man and wife about who shall squander most? GAY, *Beg. Op.*, I, 1 (MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*, 445).

It was a settled thing in this family that no question might be asked about what he knew in the way of business. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

as to: i. Great doubts exist as to which of these expressions is correct. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 319.

My dear mother wished to see him before she consented to the arrangement so as to be able to form her own judgment as to whether he was a fit and proper companion for me. JEROME, *Variety Patter*, 142.

George daily made inquiries as to how the engine was working. Cassell's *Mod. Read.*

Mr. Boniface left no instructions as to whether you were to attend as usual. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nofs.*, Ch. XXV, 232.

His father's greeting was a bitter grumble and a demand as to why he could not have stayed longer in America. SADLEIR, *Troil.*, IV, iv, 70.

ii. (This) threw no light on the question as to whether or not he was to tolerate on his estate conduct of which his wife and himself distinctly disapproved. GALSW., *Ireland*, Ch. XIII, 106.

The appearance of an article in "Punch" where the question arose as to whether or not Mr. Balfour could wear no beard, brought the matter to a head. *Westm. Gaz.*

at: I could make only the vaguest guesses at what they (sc. the machines) were for. WELLS, *The Time Machine*, 111 (JESP., *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 253).

in: a very absurd interest in who is to be its next possessor. SHELLEY, *Letters*, 596 (ib.).

of: As proof of how thoroughly we had forgotten that we were in the presence of one who might have sat down to tea with a coronet, instead of a cap, [etc.]. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VIII, 156.

It is absurd to set up a standard of how people ought to speak. SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, § 8.

Have they any sense of why they sing? TEN., *Gard. Daught.*, 101.

We will now proceed to a few examples of how not to write. FOWLER, *King's Eng.*, Ch. I, 4.

It would be a proof to him of how little this wretched business affects my opinion of him. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy NORS.*, Ch. XXVIII, 256.

Visions of how he would manage the property floated before his eyes. Mrs. ALEX., *For his sake*, I, Ch. XII, 204.

His departure into the unknown roused her abruptly to a clear conception of how his action and her mother's had affected her own character. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, I, I, Ch. I, 18.

As he gazed at her, the priest had a strange thought -- of how Christ's face must have looked when he said, "Lazarus, come forth!" ib., II, IV, Ch. XVI, 42. He then gave a short account of how he shot the Minister on the railway platform. *Manch. Guard.*, 17/6, 1927, 464 b.

We are not ... very much nearer an explanation of how this mysterious rite arose. ib., 25/11, 1927, 406 c.

Note *a*) It will have been observed that the most frequent prepositions in this connexion are *as to*, and *of*. The group-preposition *as to* when standing before subordinate questions opening with *whether*, sometimes does practically the same duty as appositional *of*. The combination *as to whether* is vehemently inveighed against by the brothers FOWLER in *The King's English* II, § 40, 333. They call it a "hideous combination", which "should be reserved for sentences in which it is really difficult to find a substitute." Among their numerous examples there are two in which *as to whether* stands with a verb.

β) It is not often that the preposition is suppressed before a subordinate question that is a constituent of an adnominal adjunct. In the following examples some plausible reason may be assigned for the suppression. Compare I, d, Note.

Be lion-mettled, proud; and take no care | Who chafes, who frets, or where conspirers are. SHAK., *Macb.*, IV, I, 91. (*To take care* is felt as a periphrasis of *to mind*).

Who cannot want the thought how monstrous | It was for Malcolm and Donald-bain | To kill their gracious father? SHAK., *Macb.*, III, 6, 8. (The exclamatory clause stands for a subordinate statement.)

We are pretty much masters what books we shall read. HUME, *Es.*, I. (Practically equivalent to: We can decide for ourselves etc.).

Have a care what you do. DICK., *Barn. Rudge* (Practically equivalent to: Mind what you do.)

No clear example of a subordinate question representing an adverbial adjunct has been found.

THE OPENING WORDS OF SUBORDINATE QUESTIONS.

2. Subordinate questions correspond to interrogative sentences of the first or of the second kind (Ch. VII, 3).

a) Those of the first kind open with *an(d)*, *if*, or *whether*. They may consist of one member, or of two or more members connected by the alternative *or*, which is sometimes placed only before the last. In such as consist of two or more members there is often contraction (Ch. IX, 7), in which case the subordinative conjunction is not repeated (Ch. XI, 14, f).

b) Those of the second kind open either with the interrogative pronouns *what*, *whether*, *which*, or *who* (or a word-group containing such a pronoun), or with the interrogative adverbs *how*, *when*, *whence*, *where*, *whither*, or *why*. Two or more subordinate questions of the second kind, depending on one and the same head-clause, are sometimes connected by the copulative *and*, placed before each successive clause, or only before the last; sometimes they are simply placed in juxtaposition without any connecting link.

3. *An(d)* is now quite obsolete in ordinary English, and survives only in vulgar language, or in dialects (O. E. D., s. v. *and*, C, 4); e. g.:

I see a voice: now will I to the chink, | To spy an I can hear my Thisby's face. SHAK., *Mids.*, V, 1, 194.

4. a) *If* is the commonest of the conjunctions mentioned under (3) 2, a. It is, however, never used when the head-clause stands last, or when the subordinate question modifies a noun; e. g.:

Noah sent forth a dove from him, to see if the waters were abated from off the face of the ground. Bible, *Gen.*, VIII, 8.

He asked her if she wished to break off their engagement. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. 1, 7.

Silas asked himself if he had been asleep. *ib.*, Ch. 1, 8.

b) *If* is unusual in subordinate questions consisting of more members, than one, except, perhaps, in verse, where it, apparently, sometimes stands to satisfy metrical considerations, as in:

And as he pluck'd his curs'd steel away, | Mark how the blood of Cæsar follow'd it, | As rushing out of doors, to be resolv'd | If Brutus so unkindly knock'd or no. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 184.

My prime request, | Which I do last pronounce, is, O you wonder! | If you be maid or no? *id.*, *Temp.*, II, 1, 425.

'Tis hard to say, if greater want of skill | Appear in writing or in judging ill. POPE, *Es. on Crit.*, 1.

Prose-instances appear to be very rare; the following is the only one that has been found:

And, hark thee villain, observe if his cheek loses colour or his eye falters, mark me the smallest twitch of his features. SCOTT, *Talisman*, Ch. XV.

Perhaps more common are instances of the first member opening with *if*, the second with *whether*, as in:

Know of the duke if this last purpose hold, | Or whether since he is advised
by aught | To change the course. SHAK., Lear, V, 1, 2.

"Will you like to look in my bedrooms, Mr. Bows, and see if my victims are
there?" he said bitterly; "or whether I have made away with the little girls
and hid them in the coal-hole?" THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XII, 130.

Compare with the above the following example representing
ordinary practice:

I'll drive you home at such a rate that you won't know whether the frosty
wind is hot or cold. MISS BRADDON, My First Happy Christmas.

The use of *or if* as in the following example is, no doubt, a bold
poetic licence:

By whose hand guided he could nowise know, | Or if in peace by traitors it
were done, | Or in some open war not yet begun. MORRIS, Earthly Par.,
Son of Cræus., III.

5. *Whether*, originally an interrogative pronoun (Ch. XXXVIII, 7), (4)
is used to introduce: a) simple subordinate questions. In this
case it is interchangeable with *if*, from which it is only distinguished
in being slightly less familiar; e. g.:

We doubt whether any name in literary history be so generally odious as that
of the man whose character and writings we now propose to consider. MAC.,
Mach., (28 b).

I have in command from Lady Rockminster to ask whether I may take you in
to supper. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVII, 284.

b) each of two (or more) full subordinate questions connected
by *or*, as in:

Whether Alcide was as irresistible a conqueror as his namesake, or whether
he was simply crazy, is a point which must be left to the reader's judgment.
THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXV, 248.

Whether it was the following Sunday when I saw the same gentleman again,
or whether there was any greater lapse of time before he re-appeared, I cannot
tell. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 11 a.

Whether he remained still upon the mountain, or whether by some false step
he had perished upon that night, we never learnt. JEROME, Woman of the
Sæter, 137.

6. Obs. I. *Whether*, when introducing a subordinate question, was in (5)
Older English sometimes followed by *that* thus in:

Then judge, great lords, if I have done amiss; | Or whether that such cowards
ought to wear | This ornament of knighthood, yea or not. SHAK., Henry VI,
A, IV, 1, 28.

And whether that my angel be turn'd fiend, | Suspect I may, but not directly
tell. id., Sonnet, CXLIV, 9.

II. The second member of a subordinate question often contains no
other word than *no* or *not*, the combination *or no(t)* being placed in
immediate succession to *whether*, or after the entire first member. The
four varieties of construction that are possible in this case are practi-
cally used indifferently. For detailed comment and for illustration
see Ch. LIX, 84.

i. Whether or no I passed my examination with credit, I cannot tell. Mrs.
CRAIK, A Hero, 64.

ii. Joseph does not seem to care much whether I love him or not. THACK., Van. Fair, I. Ch. III, 17.

7. For particulars about the use and meaning of the interrogative (6) pronouns see Ch. XXXVIII. In this connexion we may observe that in Middle English these pronouns in subordinate questions are sometimes followed by *that*; thus in:

Wel oghte a man avysed for to be | Whom that he brogthe in-to his privetee.
CHAUC., Cant. Tales, A, 4334.

8. Details about the formation, use, and meaning of the interrogative (7) adverbs may be found in Ch. XLI, and Ch. LIX. This is the place to make the following observations:

a) The interrogative adverbs, notably *how*, when introducing subordinate questions, are sometimes followed by *that*, especially in the older writers; e. g.:

Let it not disgrace me, | Il I demand, before this royal view... | Why that the naked, poor and mangled Peace ... | Should not in this best garden of the world, | Our fertile France, put up her lovely visage? SHAK., Henry V, V, 2, 34.

Tell John what things ye have seen, and heard; how that the blind see and the lame walk. Bible, Luke, VII, 22.

It was some time before he could be made to comprehend ... how that there had been a revolutionary war — that the country had thrown off the yoke of Old England. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., IV, 49.

He remarked with a mysterious air that he had heard a medical gentleman ... say how that snuff-taking was bad for the eyes. DICK., Nick., Ch. V, 72 a.

I recollected one story there was in the village, how that on a certain night in the year ... all the dead people came out of the ground. id., Barn. Rudge, Ch. I, 7 b.

He expounded to him how that money, though a very potent spirit never to be disparaged on any account whatever, could not keep people alive whose time was come to die. id., Domb., Ch. VIII, 65.

We have shown under what circumstances Esther quitted Paris, and how that, in the company of Doctor Xavier and his sister, she paid her first visit to the Château of St. Paul. MAX PEMB., Doct. Xavier, Ch. X, 42 a.

Esther remembered the Arabian Nights, and how that a doctor had cured a king by such an old device as this. ib., Ch. VI, 33 b.

b) It will have been remarked that in some of the above examples the interrogative nature of the subordinate question is vague or doubtful, and that, accordingly, a substitution of *that* for *how* *that* would hardly affect the meaning of the sentence. The same vagueness often attaches to clauses introduced by *how* when not attended by *that*; thus to those in:

'Tis told how the good old squire gives never less than gold. MASON, Eng. Gram.³¹, § 403.

Bob Cratchit told them how he had a situation in his eye for Master Peter. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 63.

He told his pretty niece and housekeeper how his heart had been moved by our red noses and chilly looks. MISS BRAD., My First Happy Christm., (72).

c) In the language of the illiterate the interrogative adverbs are often preceded by *as*, occasionally by *that*. See O. E. D., s. v.

as, 28; s. v. *how*, 10; STORM, Eng. Phil.², 803, N; FRANZ, E. S., XVII; id., Shak. Gram.², § 585.

i. I believe as how your man deals with the devil. SMOLLETT (MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 403, N).

I remember as how when I had the measles — I was living with my lady's mother, as maid to the young ladies. TROL., Orl. Farm, II, Ch. XIX, 245.

Dr. Lyster said as how the temperature was to be kept up. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. III, 62.

iii. Miss Dorrit ... came here one afternoon with a bit of writing, telling that how she wished for needle-work. DICK, Little Dor., Ch. XII, 71 b.

9. Subordinate questions introduced by *what* or by *how* often correspond to exclamatory sentences; thus in:

i. They began to talk of what a dreadful storm it had been the night before. SCOTT, Tales of a Grandf., Ch. II (FOELS.-KOCH, Wis. Gram., § 434, Anm. 3).

ii. It was curious how emotion seemed to olden him. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XV, 161.

10. This seems to be a suitable place to draw attention to a construction which is, in a manner, intermediate between direct and indirect speech. As a typical example we copy the following passage from THACKERAY, Pend., II, Ch. II, 26:

Alas! when Foker reached Lamb Court, ... Warrington was in the chambers, but Pen was absent. Pen was gone to the printing office to see his proofs. "Would Foker have a pipe, and should the laundress go to the Cock and get him some beer?" Warrington asked, remarking with a pleased surprise the splendid toilet of this scented and shiny-booted young aristocrat; but Foker had not the slightest wish for beer or tobacco: he had very important bussines: he rushed away to the *Pall Mall Gazette* office, still bent upon finding Pen.

From the above passage it appears that in the portions printed in spaced type: 1) the statements stand without *that*, and the questions without *if* or *whether*; 2) the tense differs from that which would have been used in direct speech; 3) the word-order of direct speech has been preserved in the questions; 4) the third person mostly takes the place of the first or second person.

Further illustration is found in:

Then Mr. Bacon began to speak upon the subject of his visit; said he heard that Mr. Pendennis had a manuscript novel; professed himself anxious to have a sight of that work, and had no doubt that they would come to terms respecting it. What would be his price for it? would he give Bacon the refusal of it? he would find our house a liberal house, and so forth. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. IV, 46 (Observe the incongruous use of *our* instead of *their* in the latter part of this example.)

Parting from his companions ... Clenman went alone into the entry, and knocked with his knuckles at the parlour door. It was opened presently by a woman with a child in her arms ... This was Mrs. Plornish ... — Was Mr. Plornish at home? "Well, sir," said Mrs. Plornish, a civil woman, "not to deceive you, he's gone to look for a job." DICK., Little Dor., Ch. XII, 70 a.

A maid came in now with a blue silk gown, very thick and soft. Could

she do anything for Miss Freeland? No thanks, she could not; only did she know where Mr. Freeland's room was. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. V, 34.

Note α) In comparing the above passages with their Dutch translations, it will be observed that in the latter the questions differ in no way from ordinary indirect questions; thus, in the first example: *Of Foker een pijp wilde hebben? en of the waschvrouw naar de Haan zou gaan om wat bier te halen?* Only when the speaker is represented as addressing the question to himself, does the Dutch construction resemble the English; thus in the translation of:

But lo! now, in opposition to all calculable probability, some benefit appeared to be attached to the name of David Faux. Should he neglect it, as beneath the attention of a prosperous tradesman? G. ELIOT, *Brother Jacob*, Ch. III, (529). (= ... *Zou hij dit verwaarloozen, als beneden de aandacht van een voorspoedig winkelier?*)

β) In narratives with the historic (or dramatic) present, the tense of the reported question is, naturally, the present also; thus in:

He checks his horse, and asks a workman does he know the name of Rouncewell thereabouts? DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIII, 519.

γ) Sometimes there is a verb in the head-clause, mostly *to ask*, to which such a reported question is in the objective relation; thus in:

I was bold enough to ask her would she give me that print? Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 214.

As I passed in, I asked, "How was the baby?" EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VIII, 34 b.

δ) In the following example a number of such questions is preceded by a normal subordinate question:

He then showed me the cane, and asked me what I thought of *that*, for a tooth? Was it a sharp tooth, hey? Was it a double tooth, hey? Had it a deep prong, hey? Did it bite, hey? DICK., *Cop*, Ch. VII, 45 a.

ε) It is not often that we find a reported question as here described after appositional *of*, as in:

How they pile the poor little craft mast-high with fine clothes and big houses; with useless servants, and a host of swell friends ... and with — oh, heaviest, maddest lumber of all! — the dread of what will my neighbour think. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. III, 29.

ζ) The irregularity in the use of the inverted commas is due to the hesitation on the part of the author whether the reported words are to be regarded as direct or indirect speech. The same wavering between the two constructions may be held responsible for the use of the first instead of the third person in the second of the examples from THACKERAY. In the following example the addition of the vocative *my dear* is incompatible with ordinary indirect speech: Then Ada blushing asked me how did I know that, my dear? DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LI, 428. (**How I knew that, my dear* would be an impossible construction).

η) Mention may in this connexion be made of the practice, apparently common in colloquial diction, of using an interrogative sentence in place of a reported question depending on *to ask* especially in the language of requests.

Jim! you run round to Mr. Goggles, and tell him, "Pa's kind regards, and hopes his leg's better; and will he lend him his spirit-level?" JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. III, 25.

θ) Such a sentence as *How much was the reward did you say?* may be turned into *How much did you say (that) was the reward?* It will be observed: 1) that the last member of the latter is a subordinate statement corresponding

to the first member, a subordinate question, of the former; 2) that the interrogative *how much* has been shifted.

Sentences of the second type appear to be very common in the case of *to think* being one of the verbs, as in:

How much do you think you know? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 194.

What do you think she did? SAM. TIM., Ch. XIII, 174.

Whatever do you think Pot has done with his cake? ASC. R. HOPE, *Old Pot.*

What do you think will happen? BARESS ORCZY, *Scarl. Pimp.*, Ch. XIX, 140.

What do you suppose that this slum life of his has been since he got back home? RHODA BROUGHTON, *Mamma*, Ch. XXV, 207.

In the following example the construction with two successive questions has been preserved:

It's sport to you, but what is it to the poor, think you? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XII, 131.

i) For detailed discussion of the practice described in this and the preceding notes see also JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 2.48, and 2.49; KRUSINGA, *Handbk.*¹, § 1922 f.

CHAPTER XV.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Grammatical Functions of Substantive Clauses	1
The Opening Words of Substantive Clauses	2—7

GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS OF SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

1. Substantive clauses are found in the grammatical function of:

a) *subject*, as in: i. Whatever is, is right. POPE, *Es. on Man.*, I, 294. Who chooseth me shall gain what many men desire. SHAK., *Merch.*, II, 7, 37. (The latter part of this example contains a substantive clause in the objective relation to the preceding verb.)

Whoever revolts against social laws does so at his peril. GRAY.

ii. When we were to come and take possession of our own house, was to depend on Richard and Ada. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIV, 528.

Now ... that Rebecca is with us, will be the very time. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 28.

Now that the Marconi affair has been disposed of is the time for a renewed attack on traditional Liberal lines. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6264, 3a.

Note. *Now* may also be apprehended as a substantivized adverb, to which a subordinate statement is added by way of apposition.

Because I say Republicans are stupid does not make me a Socialist. LONDON, M., 260 (JESP., *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 244).

Note. Apparently an unusual, colloquial, construction, ordinary English preferring one with *the fact that*: The fact that I say etc. Sometimes the subjective clause is recapitulated by *that*, as in: Because he leaves the palace, that is no reason why he should get into the deanery. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, 360 (JESP., *ib.*).

b) *nominal part of the predicate*, as in: i. He's what we call a flat. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 107.

ii. That is where I live. That is why I am angry. That is why I did it. That is how he always treats me. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, 251.

It matters little how a man dies. What matters is how he lives. SHAW, *Doct. Dil.*, IV, 93. (The first part of this example contains a substantive clause in the subjective relation to the preceding verb.)

c) *non-prepositional object*, as in: i. What his heart thinks, his mouth speaks. SHAK., *Much ado*, III, 2, 14.

A woman with fair opportunities, and without an absolute hump, may marry whom she likes. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 28.

You may fancy my wife's agony when she knew what had happened. *id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXI, 223. (knew = was told.)

ii. Here, as I take my solitary rounds | ... And ... return to view | Where once the cottage stood, the hawthorn grew, | Remembrance wakes with all her busy train. GOLDS., *Des. Vil.*, 80.

I, for my part, can remember when I thought it was delightful to walk three miles and back in the country to dine with old captain Jones. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXIX, 298.

d) *prepositional object*, as in: I will give this to whosoever wants it. He soon repented of what he had done. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 382.

While poor Sir Richard was brooding over what he considered as Addison's unkindness, a new cause of quarrel arose. MAC., *Addison*, 772a.

Appetite notoriously grows upon what feeds it. MANCH. GUARD., 16/12, 1927, 463c.

Mr. J. H. Thomas was very emphatic as to what he thought would be the effect of the speech. *ib.*, 23 12, 1927, 484 *d.*

adverbial adjunct, as in: i. There is no truth in what he said. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 409.

From what I saw of her the other day, I should say she was a devilish accomplished, clever girl. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. III, 34.

He had little to do with the Hope of Raynham beyond what he endured from his juvenile tricks. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 5.

ii. Turn, gentle Hermit of the dale, | And guide my lonely way, | To where yon taper cheers the vale, | With hospitable ray. GOLDS., *Ballad*.

When this dreadful exordium was over, and Tungay had stumped out again, Mr. Creakle came to where I sat. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 45 *b.*

But you do as you like with me — you always did, from when first you begun to walk. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XI, 82.

She walked away to where Mr. Cross was speaking to George. Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. III, 54.

It (sc. the light) came straight towards where she was standing. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XXII, 165.

apposition, as in: Here and there as I have said, a cleft in the level land occurs, what they would call a "chine" in the Isle of Wight. Mrs. GASK., *Sylv. Lov.*, Ch. IV, 45.

THE OPENING WORDS OF SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

2. Substantive clauses open with: *a*) the independent relative pronouns *who*, *whoever* (*whoso*, or *whosoever*), *what*, *whatever* (*whatso*, or *whatsoever*), *which*, *whichever*, *that*; *b*) adverbs, especially *when*, *where*, and *how*.
3. For detailed discussion of the relative pronouns see Ch. XXXIX, and Ch. XLI. Here we may observe that in the older writers they are sometimes found followed by *that*; thus in:

Who-so that wol his large volume seke | Cleped the Seintes Legende of Cupyde, | Ther may he seen the large woundes wyde | Of Lucesse, and of Babilan Tisbee. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, B, 60.

The above adverbs require no special discussion.

It may not be superfluous to caution the student against a wide-spread misapprehension of *who* and *what* as used in most of the examples in this chapter; i.e. the view of representing them as containing a hidden antecedent. The misapprehension has led to the use of the term *condensed relative*, coined by SWEET (*N.E. Gr.*, § 112 and § 220), and subsequently employed by other grammarians, the present writer included. But it is not difficult to prove that there is no hidden antecedent in the case, and the term should, accordingly, be banished from grammatical nomenclature, as obscuring the right understanding of the words in question, and the clauses they introduce. See especially JESPERSEN, *Phil. of Gram.*, 104, where a full exposition of the erroneous view has been given; also his *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 3.12 and 3.13.

4. About substantive clauses that are introduced by *what* it may

be observed that they are more frequent than their Dutch equivalents opening with *wat*; i. e. they often stand for what in Dutch is more usually expressed by: *a*) an adjective or participle used in certain substantival functions (Ch. XXIX, 22, Obs. V), as in:

He sold what was old, keeping what was new. (Dutch: Hij verkocht het oude en behield het nieuwe.)

He was reconciled to what had happened. DICK., *Christm. Car.* (Dutch: Hij was verzoend met het gebeurde.)

The best course would be to promise what was asked. MAC., *Clive.* (Dutch: Het beste zou zijn het gevraagde te beloven.)

b) a construction with an attributive adnominal or adverbial clause, as in:

i. The window looked out upon what in summer would have been a beautiful landscape. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXII, 206. (Dutch: Het venster zag uit op een landschap dat in den zomer mooi geweest zou zijn.)

ii. Here he recalled to himself some instances of what he could not help seeing was the artful simplicity of Miss Blanche. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. X, 113. (Dutch: Hier riep hij in zijn herinnering terugeenige voorbeelden van de listige eenvoud van Miss Blanche, zooals hij die wel moest beschouwen.)

Of a similar nature are the constructions used in:

He set out on what in ordinary weather would have been a twenty minutes' errand. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. V, 34.

After what seemed an endless time, we heard the heavy gate unbarred and quickly banged to. JEROME, *Silhouettes*, 191.

After what seemed a long time she saw Androvsky coming across the moonlit sand. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, IV, Ch. XXV, 210.

5. *What* is replaced by *which* or, less frequently, by *that*, in the second and following of a number of clauses containing different particulars of one and the same thing.

i. avoiding what we should all regret, but which I fear will otherwise become inevitable. GALSW., *T.* (JESP., *Mod. Eng. Gram.* III, 347).

ii. She was not backward to credit what was for the advantage of her family, or that came in the shape of a lover to any of them. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, 464 (ib.).

6. Substantive clauses introduced by *what* are often confounded (5) with subordinate questions opening with the same word.

It is worth observing that, while the Latin has two distinct forms, *quod* for the relative, and *quid* for the interrogative pronoun (Compare *Dic quod sentis* with *Dic quid sentias*), the French has *ce qui* (or *ce que*), the equivalent of the English *that which*, for either. Thus *ce que* is used not only in translating the relative *what* in *Give me what you have in your hand* (French: *Donnez-moi ce que vous avez dans la main*), but also in rendering the interrogative *what* in *Tell me what you have in your hand* (French: *Dites-moi ce que vous avez dans la main*). From this it seems to follow that the two words, although written

and printed apart, are felt as a perfect unit, the meaning of *c e* being entirely lost sight of.

Some sentences are ambiguous. Thus *Tell me what you said to him* admits of a twofold interpretation; viz.: *a) Tell me, what did you say to him; b) Tell me that which you said to him.* It will, no doubt, be observed that the same grammatical ambiguity may attach to such clauses as are introduced by such adverbs as *when, where, why, how.* It would, however, take an disproportionate amount of space to discuss such clauses in these pages. The subject is only of some practical importance in so far as it is bound up with the question whether there is justification for the use or absence of the preposition in the case of clauses that depend on words (verbs, adjectives, or nouns) that are construed with a preposition in the case of (pro)nouns, subordinate questions sometimes dispensing with the preposition (Ch. III, 56), substantive clauses always retaining it (Ch. III, 58). For discussion see also DEN HERTOEG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, II, 46,50; ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 70, *a*; MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 410; and especially JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 3,8.

7. A peculiar group of substantive clauses is formed by such as stand after the introductory word-groups *It is* (or its variations) followed by the element which is to be thrown into particular relief (Ch. II, 12; Ch. XXXIX, 22 ff, 30); e. g.:

It is I who say so. It is his talents he relies on for success. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 405.

It was something quite other than egoism which brought a grave look to Enrico's face. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Err.*, Ch. I, 12.

Note *a)* These sentences bear, in form, a close analogy to those opening in the same way, but ending in a subordinate statement with the conjunction *that* (Ch. XIII, 11, *c*, 4).

b) The substantive clause stands by way of apposition to the anticipating *it* (Ch. IV, 10, *d*).

c) In vulgar language the substantive clause is often introduced by *as*; thus in:

It ain't every one as is admitted to that honour. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LIV, 448.

8. Another kind of interesting sentences is formed by such as seem to have been evolved from complexes containing a subordinate question. Thus *He came from nobody knew where* (G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. II, 14) seems to go back to *Nobody knew from where he came*, or to *Nobody knew where he came from*, which would be the ordinary form in living English.

CHAPTER XVI.

ADNOMINAL CLAUSES.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Adnominal Clauses either restrictive or continuative	1— 3
Involved Constructions	4— 5
Words or word-groups introducing Adnominal Clauses . . .	6—14

ADNOMINAL CLAUSES EITHER RESTRICTIVE OR CONTINUATIVE.

1. Like attributive adnominal adjuncts (Ch. IV, 1), adnominal clauses may be:

a) *restrictive*, in which case they may be:

1) *classifying*, as in: Cats that wear gloves catch no mice. BAIN, Comp. 66.

He is a man that will never get on in the world. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2138.

A bird that is migratory always breeds in the coldest climate it visits. Westm. Gaz., No. 5412, 15c.

2) *individualizing*, as in: Blessings on the man that invented sleep. BAIN, Comp. 66.

The boy who addressed this inquiry to the young wayfarer, was about his own age. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. VIII, 81.

b) *continuative*, as in: I told John, who told his brother. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 218.

2. a) Restrictive adnominal clauses sometimes imply an adverbial relation of purpose (Ch. I, 25, b, 2), or of condition Ch. I, 25 b, 1; Ch. XLIX, 40, Obs. VI).

i. I wish to publish a book that shall create a stir and make me famous. MARIE CORELLI, Sor. of Sat. (underlying notion: for the purpose of creating a stir and making me famous.)

ii. How heavy their punishment will be who shall at any time resist! BAIN, H. E. Gr., 173. (underlying notion: if at any time they shall resist.)

To see Dobbin holding the infant, and to hear Amelia's laugh of triumph as she watched him, would have done any man good who had a sense of humour. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXV, 391.

I was prepared to shed the blood of anybody who should aspire to her affections. DICK., Cop., Ch. X, 73b.

b) A restrictive clause may have for its antecedent another restrictive clause with its antecedent, or a substantive clause, as in:

i. This disease is beyond my practice: yet I have known those which have walked in their sleep who have died holily in their beds. SHAK., Macb., V, 1, 66-67.

Is there anything you want that you have not? DICK., Cop., 329 (JESP., Mod. Eng. Gr., III, 452).

ii. It is he who sees and worships your merit the strongest, who loves you most devotedly, that has the best right to a return. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, 310 (ib., 46c).

And what was it which Wulf had recognized in Hypatia which had bowed the old warrior before her? KINGSLEY, Hyp., 193 (ib)

3. Also continuative adnominal clauses call for some further comment (2) in this place.

a) They often refer to a proper name or to a noun that is furnished with a restrictive adjunct; thus in *Give this to John (my brother, this boy, the other boy, etc.), who sorely needs it*. Compare *Give this to a boy (or the boy) who sorely needs it*.

b) They are in many cases virtually co-ordinate with the clause with which they are connected. Thus *I told John, who told his brother* differs only in grammatical structure from *I told John, and he told his brother*. Thus also:

(The blow) did the Saracen very little injury, who, lifting up his sword, fairly struck off the poor Dwarf's arm. GOLDs., Vic., Ch. XIII, (308).

In this case they often refer to an entire sentence or clause, as in.

We shall have the governess in a day or two, which will be a great satisfaction. BAIN, Comp., 64.

He heard that the bank had failed, which was a sad blow to him. MASON, Eng. Gram., § 412.

Also when the adnominal clause stands in the body of the head-clause, it may nevertheless be virtually co-ordinate with the latter; thus *Jones, who should know something of the matter, thinks differently* admits of being converted into *Jones thinks differently, and he should know something of the matter*.

Similarly the following complexes are hypotactic only in form, although they do not admit of being so readily reduced to parataxis as the above examples:

The other man, whose business was to communicate with Charnock, was a ruffian, who had served in the Irish army. BAIN, Comp., 63.

The royal power was in conflict with two enemies: the feudal independence of the nobles, which it wished to destroy; and the growing municipal freedom of the great cities, which it wished to curb. *ib.*

She refused to see her reprobate husband, whom nobody pitied. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXIII, 249.

Sometimes a continuative clause containing a wish or command, or a question, appears as a parenthetical or appended addition; thus in:

If all the dead could now return to life, | (Which God forbid!) or some, or a great many [etc.]. BYRON, Don Juan, III, l.

Had I to live again, which Apollo forbid, I would pursue the same policy. BENNETT, Anna, 45 (JESP., Mod. Eng. Gram., III, 6.47).

This indeed is properly the sum of his (sc. Knox's) offences, the essential sin; for which what pardon can there be? CARL, Heroes, IV, 140.

b) Continuative clauses sometimes imply some adverbial relation of cause (or reason), or concession, as in *For further particulars you had better apply to my brother, who has paid particular attention to the subject* (approaching to ... *for he has paid particular attention to the subject*), *His father, who was an officer, intended him for a military career* (approaching to ... *because he was an officer* ...) *It is strange that he should have been unkind to you, who did so much for him* (approaching to ... *although you did so much for him*). Some such notion is more or less distinctly discernible in:

i Murray's enemies in Scotland, who were both numerous and powerful, comprised two parties: the friends of the old church, who were anxious for the restoration of Mary; and the house of Hamilton, who were jealous of Murray's great power. BAIN, Comp., 64.

Thus it came to pass that his movement of pity towards Sally Oates, which had given him a transient sense of brotherhood, heightened the repulsion between him and his neighbour. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. II, 15.

When I that knew him fierce and turbulent | Refused her to him, then his pride awoke. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 447.

ii. He insisted on building another house, which he had no use for. BAIN, *Comp.*, 64.

For further comment on continuative adnominal clauses see Ch. XXXIX, 4, *d*; 16 ff. Compare also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, §§ 218, 2134; JESPERSEN, *S. P. E.*, *Tract* XXIV; KRUISINGA, *Handbk.*, § 1926.

4. *a*) Occasionally we meet with adnominal clauses that are connected by the co-ordinating *and* with some adnominal adjunct. The construction is an awkward one, and is, therefore, mostly avoided by good stylists. For exhaustive comment see FOWLER, *The King's Eng.*, 85 ff. (3)

The more important rules, definitions, and observations, and which are, therefore, the most proper to be committed to memory, are printed with a larger type. LINDLEY MURRAY (*Storm, Eng. Phil.*, 737).

A large mansion-house stood in the centre of it (sc. the farm), very much out of repair, and which, in consequence of certain reports, had got the name of the Haunted House. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (109).

However, a crisis arrived for the author's life, and a crisis for other objects still dearer to him, and which will always be far dearer to him than his life, even now that it is again a happy one. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. V, 69.

He ... was quite different from that "aughty 'artless beast," as Mrs. Bolton now denominated a certain young gentleman of our acquaintance, and whom she now vowed she never could abear. THACK., *II, Pend.*, Ch. XVIII, 194.

Had it not been for what he himself called the delirium of the preceding session, and which had still not subsided, he would have seen that Pitt was in fact taking his first measures for the effective deliverance of Ireland from an unjust and oppressive subordination. JOHN MORLEY, *Burke*, Ch. VII, 183.

b) Sometimes an adnominal clause modifies another adnominal clause with its antecedent. For illustration see also 2, *b*).

There is a man I once knew who is now a baronet. JEROME, *They and I*, Ch. II, 35 (T.).

It is not only the sounds that we know we hear, but the sounds of which for the most part we are unconscious, that form the link between us and external things. E. F. BENSON, *A Reaping*, June, 16 (T.).

I know all that transpires that can be told without an absolute breach of confidence. OPPENHEIM, *The Wrath to Come I*, Ch. XII, 90.

The question was put *sotto voce*, and there could be no doubt as to the person to whom it was addressed; yet it was the one at whom it was *not* aimed who promptly answered it. RHODA BROUGHTON, *Mamma*, Ch. VII, 64.

INVOLVED CONSTRUCTIONS.

5. Adnominal clauses often have, especially in literary English, (6) other clauses incorporated in them. Such an incorporated clause may be:

a) *a subordinate statement*, as in: I published some tracts upon the subject myself, which, as they never sold, I have the consolation of thinking were read only by the happy few. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. II, (241).

All this amounted to a bliss which, till then, she could not have conceived that life was capable of bestowing. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 486.

Those from whom it was thought that anything could be extorted were treated with execrable cruelty. MAC., *Clive*, (514 a).

It was but a threat occasioned by anger, which you must give me leave to say, ma'am, was very natural on his part. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XX, 214.

b) *another adnominal clause*, as in: Honour is a treasure which he must be your enemy indeed who would attempt to rob you of. I. SCHMIDT, *Eng. Gram.*³.

"Such are the faults of that wonderful performance *Paradise Lost*;" which he who can put in balance with its beauties, must be considered not as nice but as dull. JOHNSON, *Lives*, *Milton*, 75.

It was his desire to shield her from the remotest possibility of a danger which there was hardly a person in England who would not laugh to scorn. ANSTEV, *Fal. Id.*, Ch. XII, 157.

c) *adverbial clauses* of various descriptions, as in: They succeeded in raising prejudices against Nelson which he was many years before he could subdue. I. SCHMIDT, *Eng. Gram.*³, § 297.

She extended her hand to him, which, when he had reverently kissed, she said to him [etc.]. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXIII, 296.

There are enough of brave men around me whom I may imitate if I cannot equal. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIV, 359.

What fools we are! We cry for a plaything, which, like children, we are never satisfied with till we break open. BYRON (*ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE*), *Byron*, Ch. IV, 64.

"How strange it is," said Lone, changing a conversation which oppressed her while it charmed. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. II, 65 a.

He at times indulged in whiles which modern statesmanship, even while it practises, condemns. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 902 b.

Ireland should not be plunged in an absurd religious warfare, which, if Christianity does nothing to prevent, it is the paramount duty of Ministers to keep out of the red pages of history. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 68, 558.

Note a) In all the preceding examples the relative is in the objective relation to the verbs in both the relative and the adverbial clause. Instances in which it is in the subjective relation to the verb in the relative clause appear to be less frequent; e.g.: For Pyramus therein (sc. in the play) doth kill himself. | Which, when I saw rehearsed, I must confess, | Made mine eyes water. SHAK., *Mids.*, V, 1, 68.

Sir, there is a villain at that Maypole ... that, unless you get rid of, and have kidnapped and carried off at the very least, ... will marry your son to that young woman. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXIV, 94 b.

β) The relative may be suppressed, as in: I wish to shackle that liberty you adorn while you assume. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. VI, 28 a.

He saw before him ... the threatened desecrator of the goddess he served while he disbelieved. *ib.*, IV, Ch. VI, 104 b.

For examples in which the conjunction *that* is dispensed with see above under 5, a.

γ) Sometimes an anaphoric personal pronoun is placed in the adverbial clause, which, though strictly unnecessary, makes for clearness; thus in: In short, he liked the girl the better for that want of chastity which, if she had

possessed it, must have been a bar to his pleasures. FIELD., Tom Jones, V, Ch. V, 71 a.

The "Humours of the Court" is founded on two Spanish comedies, which, when I read them, appeared to me variations of the same story. BRIDGES. Hum. of the Court.

δ) Here belong also the clauses opening with *than* + relative, in which this combination figures as an incomplete clause, as in: Dr. Adam Smith, than whom few were better judges on this subject, once observed to me that "Johnson knew more books than any man alive". Bosw., Life of Johns., 14 a. (underlying notion: there were few better judges on this subject than he was.)

Mr. Toots, than whom there were few better fellows in the world, had laboriously invented this long burst of discourse with the view of relieving the feelings both of Florence and himself. DICK., Domb., Ch. XVIII, 165.

I have been obliged to content myself through life with saying what I mean in the plainest of plain language, than which, I suppose, there is no habit more ruinous to a man's prospects of advancement. HUXLEY. Autobiography, 5 a.

Lord Milner, than whom Mr. Chamberlain said he had never met a better man, had placed the Empire under such an immeasurable debt of gratitude, that [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., No. 196, 339 a.

d) *infinitive-clauses* in various grammatical functions, as in: The sorrowful troop no sooner arrived at the castle than they were met by Hippolita and Matilda, whom Isabella had sent one of the domestics to advertise of their approach. HOR. WALPOLE, Castle of Otranto, Ch. IV, 129.

My poor mother has prejudices which it is impossible for my logic to overcome. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. I, 14.

Every fellow has some cupboard in his house, begad, which he would not like you and me to peep into. ib., II, Ch. VII, 71.

She became a perfect Bohemian ere long, herding with people whom it would make your hair stand on end to meet. id., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXIX, 325.

These literary avocations, profitless as they seemed, gave a certain refinement to his tastes, which they were not likely otherwise to have acquired at the Mug. LYTTON, Paul Clif., Ch. III, 25—26 (T.).

The other received injuries which are expected to prove mortal. Times.

e) a *gerund-clause*, representing either a prepositional object or an adverbial adjunct, as in: i. He always took possession of the same table in the same corner, from which nobody ever thought of ousting him. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. I, 11.

The Irish maid-servant came with a plate and a bottle of wine, from which the old gentleman insisted upon helping the valet. id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXVI, 279.

The Novoe Vremya published a long indictment of the Anti-Slav policy, of which it charges the Archduke with being a leading protagonist. Times, 3/7. 1914, 530.

ii. Whether Mrs. Honour really deserved that suspicion of which her mistress gave her a hint, is a matter which we cannot indulge our readers' curiosity by resolving. FIELD., Tom Jones, IV, Ch. XII, 59 a.

Wet weather was the worst; the cold damp, clammy wet, that wrapped him up like a moist great-coat, the only kind of great-coat Toby owned, or could have added to his comfort by dispensing with. DICK., Chimes, I, 7.

He may master that enormous legend of the law, which he proposes to gain his livelihood by expounding. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXIX, 310.

I am grievously afflicted with the headache, which I trust to change of air for relieving. Mrs. GASK. Life of Ch. Brontë, 364.

One of these peculiarities is the large amount of space given to common words that no one goes through the day without using scores or hundreds of times. *Conc. Oxf. Dict.*, Pref.

I have known an ingenuous athlete express himself with a neatness and clarity I could envy without reaching. *BERNARD CAPIS, The Pot of Basil*, Ch. IV. 44.

There is one question which I cannot quit the subject of the Australian future without touching. *Times*.

f) *participle-clause* with a nominative absolute, as in: He challenged him to fight, which the fellow refusing, Caius, in a fit of honest passion, beat him soundly . . . , which coming to the ears of Regan and her husband, they ordered Caius to be put in the stocks. *LAMB, Tales, Lear*, 156.

6. Obs. I. Sometimes the clause is made more involved by the insertion of some such intercalary phrase as *I think, I confess*, etc., to which the whole adnominal clause with its subordinate members is related by way of subordinate statement; e. g.:

For Pyramus therein (sc. in the play) doth kill himself. | Which, when I saw rehearsed, I must confess | Made mine eyes water. *SHAK., Mids.*, V, I, 68. (I must confess that, when I saw it, it made mine eyes water.)

II. Some sentences in which the relative clause has for its predicate a subjective verb, i. e. one which governs no object either prepositional or non-prepositional, almost defy all analysis when the relative is in the objective relation to the verb in its subordinate member; thus:

She extended her hand to him, which, when he had reverently kissed, she said to him [etc.]. *SCOTT, Quentin Durw.*, Ch. XXIII, 296.

Viewing the various witnesses of a social system which has passed from the world for ever — a stranger, from that remote and barbarian Isle which the Imperial Roman shivered when he named, paused amidst the delights of the soft Campania and composed this history! *LYTTON, Pomp.*, V, Ch. XI, 153 b.

The same awkwardness attaches to the following examples in which an incomplete clause opening with *than* is incorporated in the relative clause:

It was her business, among other duties, to knock at Miss Sharp's door with that jug of water which Firkin would rather have perished than have presented to the intruder. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 167.

Here she named the name of a great leader of fashion, that I would die rather than reveal. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 323.

Open violation of the marriage laws means either downright ruin or such inconvenience and disablement as a prudent man or woman would get married ten times over rather than face. *SHAW, Getting Married*, Pref., (110).

Very awkward also is the following example in which a full clause with *than* is part of the adnominal clause:

Mrs. Honour, therefore, had heard the whole story of Molly's shame, which she, being of a very communicative temper, had no sooner entered the apartment of her mistress, than she began to relate in the following manner. *FIELD, Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. XII, 58 b.

III. Sometimes the matter becomes even more involved by the fact that the predicate in the relative clause contains an intransitive verb besides a transitive; thus in:

The gentleman with the cane lifted his hat and began to tender an apology, which Mr. Haredale had begun as hastily to acknowledge and walk away, when he stopped short. *DICK., Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XLIII, 165-6.

And when she (sc. the novice) drew | No answer, by and by (she) began to hum | An air the nuns had taught her; "Late so late!" | Which, when she heard, the Queen looked up, and said [etc.]. TEN., Guin., 162.

He did not know any woman, in fact, whom he would not rather die than marry. BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh, Ch. LI, 235.

IV. Also when the relative clause contains no other clause, the predicate in it sometimes has two co-ordinate verbs governing grammatically different constructions; thus in:

When we are subdued by sickness, it seems possible to us to fulfil pledges which the old vigour comes back and breaks. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. IX, 240.

V. In conclusion mention may here be made of the queer construction in the following sentence, in which the object of the relative clause differs from that of the adnominal clause subordinated to it: in the former it is *fable*, the latter *humour and conduct*:

As for the humour and conduct of this famous fable, I suppose there is no person who reads but must admire. THACK., Eng. Hum., I, 38.

WORDS OR WORD-GROUPS INTRODUCING ADNOMINAL CLAUSES.

7. Adnominal clauses are introduced by: *a*) relative pronouns *who*, (4) *which*, *that*; *b*) conjunctive adverbs, or adverbial word-groups, viz.: 1) such as are compounds of *where*; e. g.: *whereof*, *whereby*, etc.; 2) such as are not compounds of *where*; e. g.: *when*, *whence* (*from where*, or *from whence*), *where*, *whither*, *why*; 3) such are made up of a preposition and a relative pronoun and are equivalent to the compounds of *where*; e. g.: *of which*, *by which*, etc.; *c*) conjunctions, such as *as*, *but* (sometimes followed by *that* or *what*), *that*.
8. For detailed discussion of the relative pronouns see Ch. XXXIX. (5) In this connexion it may be observed: *a*) that in older English they are sometimes followed by the conjunction *that* (O. E. D. s. v. *that*, conj., 6); e. g.:

A marchant . . . | Me taughte a tale, which that ye shal here. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, B, 133.

I wol yow telle a tale which that I | Lerned at Padowe of a worthy clerk. ib., E, 26.

b) that they are sometimes found to refer to a noun in the genitive or to a possessive pronoun (Ch. XXXIX, 6); e. g.:

i. On reaching these apartments, which were over a chemist's shop whose stock of cigars and soda-water went off rapidly by the kind patronage of his young inmates, Pen only found Mr. Spavin. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. V, 53.
But near by is my asses' stall, | Who on this night bide in the town. MORRIS, Earthly Par., The Man born to be King, 42a.

ii. Would you have me . . . | Put my sick cause into his hand that hates me? SHAK., Henry VIII, III, I, 118.

'Twere long to tell what cause I have | To know his face that met me there. SCOTT, Marm., IV, XXI, 30.

9. The use of compounds of *where* to introduce adnominal clauses, (7) once very common, is now chiefly confined to certain varieties of style, especially to that of technical (legal) language, and verse, and in general to that in which a certain brevity or quaintness is aimed at (Ch. LIX, 46); e. g.:

Infected be the air whereon they ride. SHAK., Mac b., IV, 1, 138.

There is no place of general resort wherein I do not often make my appearance.

ADDISON, Spect., 1.

A horrid shriek of laughter came out of Pen's room, whereof the door was open. THACK., Pen d., II, Ch. XV, 153.

He the stone still sought | Whereby base metal into gold is wrought. MORRIS, Earthly Parad., Prol., 4b.

It is worth while to consider whether there is any test whereby words of native English origin may be known from others. SKEAT, Princ., I, 19.

For the first time in her life she beheld the spot whereof her father had spoken.

RID. HAG., Jess, Ch. XIV.

The powers of the Irish legislature shall not extend to the making of any law whereby any inhabitant of the United Kingdom may be deprived of equal rights as respects public sea-fisheries. Home-Rule Bill.

In ordinary language word-groups consisting of a preposition followed by a relative pronoun now take the place of compounds of *where*, thus in:

Very speedily another chance occurred, by which Mr. Pen was to be helped in his scheme of making a livelihood. THACK., Pen d., I, Ch. XXXI, 339.

"And how do you come to know Mrs. Hoggarty's property so accurately?" said Mr. Brough. Upon which I told him. id., Sam. Titm., Ch. 99.

10. Adnominal clauses introduced by conjunctive adverbs that are (8) not compounds of *where*, are very common in English; e. g.:

The reason why he cannot succeed is evident. MASON, Eng. Gram.³¹, 251. That is the house where I dwell. ib., § 408.

From that time I first date the hour when I felt that I loved my father, and knew that he loved me. LYTTON, Caxt., I, Ch. IV, 19.

William Dobbin had for once forgotten the world, and was away with — Prince Whatdycalle and the Fairy Peribanou in that delightful cavern where the Prince found her, and whither we should all like to make a tour. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 43.

The aide-de-camp must have arrived some time while Jos and Rebecca were making their bargain together. ib., I, Ch. XXXII, 348.

He got her in a corner whence there was no escape. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 71. (Compare the following example with the redundant *from before whence*: They returned back again to the same city from whence they came forth. BAIN, Comp., 43.)

11. The conjunction *as* is used to introduce adnominal clauses which (9) denote the particulars referred to by the determinative pronouns *same*, and *such* (Ch. XXXVII), as in:

He offered me the same conditions as he offered you. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 38.

I don't admire such books as he writes. ib., 411.

You are welcome to my help such as it is. ib., 251.

12. Obs. I. Clauses of this kind are often incomplete; sometimes they (10) they are entirely understood; thus in:

i. This is not the same as that. He has not such a large fortune as his brother.

ii. He told me the same story. There had not been such a storm for years. What such a force, well directed, could effect, even against veteran regiments and skilful commanders, was proved, a few years later, at Killiecrankie. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 109.

II. Instead of *as* we frequently find *that* after *same*. Also *which* appears as an occasional variant, but *who* seems to be unusual after *same*; e. g.:

They talk to him of their pleasures and affairs with the same frankness that they would to another. HUME, Es., I, 6.

I can never be the same to you that I am to other people. MISS BRAD., My First Happy Christm.

When I looked in his face, I thought I could see traces of the same mental struggles that I had gone through. SWEET, Old Chap.

She was still the same person that she had been half an hour ago. DOR. GUARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. I.

ii. He attested this to be the same which had been taken from him. FIELD., Jos. Andr., I, Ch. XV, 39.

The easy king, who allowed to his mistresses the same liberty which he claimed for himself, was pleased with the conversation and the manners of his new rival. MAC., Com. Dram., (573 b).

The older man recognized, no doubt, in the younger that same ardent longing to achieve distinction which dominated himself. GRAPH.

iii. And there was Mr. Green Walker, a young but rising man, the same who lectured not long since on a popular subject to his constituents at the Crew Junction, TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 69.

The use of the relative pronoun after *same* may be explained by assuming that *as* + determinative *that* is understood after it. Thus *He attested this to be the same which had been taken from him* may be regarded to be short for *He attested this to be the same as that which had been taken from him*.

According to MURRAY (in O. E. D., s. v. *as*, 23) "*same* ... *as* usually expresses identity of kind, *same* ... *that* absolute identity, except in contracted sentences, where *same* ... *as* is alone found; cf. *he uses the same books as you do, he uses the same books that you do, he uses the same books as you, you and he use the same books*."

Also the conjunctive adverbs and adverbial word-groups mentioned in 7, b) are sometimes met with after *same*; thus in:

They returned back again to the same city from whence they came forth. BAIN, Comp., 43.

Every order was obeyed with the same coolness and courage with which it was given. A Ship on Fire (STOF., Leesbk., I).

III. *Same* sometimes appears to be understood; thus in:

As I stood opposite to Mr. Pocket, Junior, delivering him the bags, One, Two, I saw the starting appearance come into his own eyes that I knew to be in mine. DICK., Great Expect., Ch. XXI, 208.

IV. Instead of an incomplete clause consisting of *as* + (pro)noun we not unfrequently find *with* + (pro)noun; thus in:

The dulcimer is supposed to be the same with the psaltery of the Hebrews. WEBST., Dict., s. v. *dulcimer*.

Pen went to the same college with him. THACK., *Pen d.*, I, Ch. XVI, 156.

Dupleix entered the town in the same palanquin with the Nizam. MAC., *Clive*, (504 *b*).

I slept in a room on the same floor with my aunt's. DICK., *Co p.*, Ch. XXIII, 173 *a*.

It would be a thousand pities if Mr. Godfrey should take to going along the same road with his brother. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Ma r n.*, Ch. III, 19.

The use of *with* after *same* may, at least in part, be due to the influence of sentences like :

I don't put myself on a level with you. DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. XXVII, 219 *b*.

Thus also we sometimes find *with* taking the place of *to* after *equal*, *like*, and *similar*, as in :

i. I do not pretend to possess equal frankness with your ladyship. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch., LVI, 347.

Passengers who were not in an equal state of spirits with himself. DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. XXVI, 214 *a*.

ii. He loves her without limit, as the only creature he had ever met with of a like mind with himself. CARL., *Life of Schil.*, I, 55.

iii. The subordinate personages are of a similar quality with the hero. *ib.*, I, 35. Most of them had enormous breeches, of similar style with that of the guide's. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-bk.*, V, 40. (The use of *with* after *similar* may be archaic, see O. E. D., s. v. *similar*, 2, *b*.)

Also after the adverb *equally* there is sometimes an exchange of *with* for *as*, thus in :

I am equally weary of confinement with yourself. JOHNS., *Ras.*, Ch. XIV, 87.

V. In Early Modern English we also find instances of a relative pronoun being used after *such*. See also FRANZ. E. S., XVII; STRONG, LOGEMAN, and WHEELER, *Hist. of Lang., Intro d.*, 151.

There rooted between them then such an affection which cannot choose but branch now. SHAK., *Wint. Tale*, I, I, 26.

You speak to Casca, and to such a man | That is no fleeing tell-tale. *id.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 3, 116.

His behaviour is such that would not shame the best education. FIELD, *Jos. Andrews*, IV, Ch. VI, 216.

To such I render more than mere respect | Whose actions say that they respect themselves. COWP., *Task*, II, 377.

Such prisoners from whom he was desirous of extorting ... information. SCOTT, *Anne of Geierstein*, Ch. XIV (O. E. D., 127).

In the latest English the use of a relative after *such* is "rare and regarded as incorrect." O. E. D., 12.

Only such intellectual pursuits which are pleasant. SARAH GRAND, *Ideala*, 229 (O. E. D., 12).

The furniture in tens of thousands of workmen's houses is such that would disgrace any decent set of savages. *Ninet. Cent.*, May 1890, 712 (WESTERN, *De Eng. Bysætninger*, § 167).

In such a sentence as the following *that* does not introduce an adnominal, but a substantive clause: the preceding noun ought not, accordingly, to be apprehended as its antecedent :

It is such follies that make history something better than a Newgate Calendar of the crimes of comrion sense. DAVIS, *Mod. Europe*, 211 (KRUIS., *Handbk.*, § 1165).

VI. Conversely *as* is sometimes found in Early Modern English after the determinative *that* (*the*). See also ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*³; § 280; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*², 803.

I have not from your eyes that gentleness and show of love as I was wont to have. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 34.

I did not imagine these little coquetries could have the ill consequences as I find they have. Spect., LXXXVII (STORM, *Eng. Phil.*², 803).

Such is sometimes placed after the noun it qualifies, with the result that it forms a kind of unit with the conjunction *as*. For this *such as* the Dutch has *zoo als*; e. g.:

The rice-fields yield an increase such as is elsewhere unknown. Mac., *Clive*, (512 a).

We have restored Egypt to a position of prosperity such as she has never known in these later centuries. Times.

We are losing an admirable chance of putting England in her proper place, an opportunity such as we shall not find again in a hundred years. Morning Leader.

This *such as* is especially frequent before (pro)nouns representing an incomplete clause and mentioning persons or things by way of exemplification of what is expressed by the head-clause. See O. E. D., 9, d.

Experienced travellers put the ticket in some conspicuous place such as the band of the hat. Good Words.

Before a noun or pronoun *such as* is practically interchangeable with *like*. Compare the preceding examples with:

There were plenty of books and occupation for a literary genius like Mr. Arthur. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 305.

Many of the histories were sufficient to make the hair of a respectable young lady like Augusta stand positively on end. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. V, 48.

VIII. Instead of *such as* we sometimes find *as*: 1) before a (pro)noun or substantival equivalent. In this connexion the shorter form appears to be unusual; e. g.:

A beast of prey, as the lion or tiger. O. E. D., s. v. *as*, 26.

But a dog, or a lesser thing, any inanimate substance, as a keepsake, a watch or a ring, a tree, or the place when we last parted, when my friend went away upon a long absence, I can make shift to love. LAMB., *Es. of El.*, *Bach. Compl.*, (261).

The story is marred by some unliterary sentences, as "I never heard it before." *Lit. World*, 18/10, 1901.

2) before an entire clause. In this case *as* is, apparently, never, or at least rarely, preceded by *such*; e. g.:

Few can know the greatness of his character, as I know it. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXI, 513.

Mr. Barkis's wooing, as I remember it, was altogether of a peculiar kind. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. X, 72 a.

On one of these many coward's errands then, (for, as I view them now, I can call them no less,) Mr. Holt had come to my lord. THACK., *Es. sm.*, II, Ch. IV, 183.

IX. The quality-expressing force of *such* is sometimes so weak that *such as* is hardly distinguishable from *those who* (or *they who*) (Ch. XXXVII, 8, Obs. 1); thus in:

Major Pendennis spent the autumn passing from house to house of such country friends as were at home to receive him. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXX, 329. In vulgar English *as* often occurs as an ordinary relative pronoun. See O. E. D., s. v. *as*, 24; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*², 803. For comment and illustration see also Ch. XXXIX, 20.

There was a bundle of letters belonging to a dead and gone lodger as was hid away at the back of a shelf. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LIV, 449.

XI. In conclusion attention is drawn to such exclamatory sentences as: Such a modest man as he is! HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, I, Ch. VIII, 64.

13. *But* is often used to introduce an adnominal clause when the (11) head-clause is negative or implies a negative. Also the adnominal clause is negative, so that *but* may be said to be equivalent to a relative pronoun + *not*. As in the case of subordinate statements, the Dutch has *of* (Ch. XIII, 4). The negated relative pronoun that might be substituted for *but*, would mostly be the subject of the adnominal clause, less frequently the non-prepositional object, and would rarely serve another grammatical function; e. g.:

i. For nought so vile that on the earth doth live, | But to the earth some special good doth give. SHAK., *Rom. & Jul.*, II, 3, 18.

There was hardly a man he met in the streets, but saluted him as an old acquaintance. LAMB, *Tales, Com. of Er.*, 120.

There is no situation in life but has its advantages and pleasures. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXIV, *Postscript*.

There was not a single soul in the house, high or low, but was fond of that good sweet creature. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 177.

There's not a single tradesman I employ but has shares in it to some amount. *ib.*, Ch. VI, 59.

There were few but were glad to see her ... in trouble. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XIV, 62 a.

ii. No jocund health that Denmark drinks to-day | But the great cannon to the clouds shall tell. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 2, 126.

There is no work whatsoever but he can criticize. GOLDS., *Cit. of the World*, I (O. E. D., s. v. *but*, 12 b).

iii. There is not one of them but in his house | I keep a servant fee'd. SHAK., *Macb.*, III, 4, 130.

14. Obs. I. The head-clause often appears in a shortened form through (12) the suppression of *there is* or its variations; thus in:

i. Nobody but has his faults. SHAK., *Merry Wives*, I, 4, 16.

Scarcely a family in the neighbourhood, but incurred our suspicions. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XV, (320).

In a few moments not a window in the street, but had its particular night-cap. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (149).

Never yet | Was noble man but made ignoble talk. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 1081.

ii. Not a turkey, but he beheld daintily trussed up. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXIV.

But acting as a negated relative pronoun, it is but natural that the (pro)noun modified by the adnominal clause should not be referred to by a personal pronoun. Thus in all the examples cited in 13. Such a pronoun, however, appears frequently enough; e. g.:

i. There's ne'er a villain dwelling in all Denmark. | But he's an arrant knave. SHAK., Hamlet, I, 5, 123.

When went there by an age, since the great flood, | But it was famed with more than with one man. id., Julius Cæsar, I, 2, 153.

Not a young man of rank passed by them in the course of the muster, but he carried his body more erect in the saddle. SCOTT, Old Mort., Ch. II, 29.

He hears of no swordsman but he envies his reputation. id., Fair Maid. Ch. II, 32.

There is no town of any mark in Europe, but it has its little colony of English ruffs. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXIX, 326.

And Merlin call'd it "the Siege Perilous," | Perilous for good and ill; "for there," he said | "No man could sit, but he should lose himself." TEN., Holy Grail, 174.

ii. In Eske or Siddel, fords were none, | But he would ride them, one by one. SCOTT, Lay, I, XXI.

He never had an agent but he mistrusted him. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. VI, 66.

III. All the above sentences seem to be but modifications of such as contain *but*, as the equivalent of the conjunction *that + not*, opening an adverbial clause of attendant circumstances (Ch. XVII, 117), as in:

He could not see | The bird of passage flying south, but long'd | To follow. TEN., Princ., III, 194.

Sometimes, indeed, a clause may be regarded as either adnominal or adverbial; thus in:

There never was a reform yet propounded, but some one pronounced it forth-with to be chimerical, extravagant, and Utopian. Daily Telegraph (O. E. D. s. v. *but*, 12).

The confusion of the two relations may have been responsible for THACKERAY leaving out *in (it)* in:

There is not a house in which I enter, but I leave a prospectus of the West Diddlesex. Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 59.

IV. Instead of *but* we sometimes find *but what*, which, though often considered vulgar (O. E. D., s. v. *but*, 30), is also met with in ordinary English; e. g.:

i. There was scarce a farmer's daughter within ten miles round but what had found him successful and faithless. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. III, (248).

Not that I think Mr. Martin would ever marry anybody but what had had some education. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. IV, 29.

There's no Tulliver but what's honest. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. IX, 243.

There was nothing but what could be made out by justices and constables. id., Sil. Mar., Ch. VIII, 52.

There was not a girl in Usk, but what would do her best to stop a horse. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, II, 101.

ii. There was no feat, however difficult or risky, but what we would undertake and excel in. Tit-bits.

These clauses with *but what* may have been evolved from those in which *but* introduces an adverbial clause of exception (Ch. XVII, 152). Thus in the following examples the subordinate clause may be apprehended as either adnominal or adverbial:

No ill luck stirring but what lights on my shoulders. SHAK., Merchant, III, 1, 82.

He had no visible friends but what had been acquired at Highbury. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. III, 22.

Not that I think Mr. Martin would ever marry any body but what had some education. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 29.

I never spend nothing but what is my own. Old Ballad (Rainbow, II, 47).

Also in these clauses with *but what* the (pro)noun modified is sometimes referred to by an objective personal pronoun; e. g.:

There was nothing so humble, so base even, but ~~what~~ his magic would transform it into the rarest beauty without altering a note. DU MAURIER, Tribby, I, 79.

There is no difficulty in explaining the use of *but what* when the reference is to something non-personal, as in *There's nothing but what's bearable as long as a man can work* (G. ELIOT, A d. Be de e), or in *No ill luck stirring but what lights on my shoulders* (SHAK., Merch., III, 1, 82), in which *but what* may be said to have the value of *except that which*. But it seems impossible to account for the use of this word-group when the reference is to persons, unless it be assumed that the speaker but vaguely thinks of the personal nature of what he is speaking about, which seems more or less plausible, because in most cases the negated antecedent indicates a modified *nobody*. Compare WESTERN, De Engelske Bisætninger, § 156.

15. The conjunction *that* sometimes replaces a conjunctive adverb (13) or adverbial expression. Thus *He left the day that I arrived* = *He left the day on which I arrived* (in literary or archaic English: *whereupon I arrived*). The clause introduced by *that* may be said to stand by way of apposition to its head-word, and may, accordingly, also be apprehended as a subordinate statement; e. g.:

In the instant that your messenger came, in loving visitation was with me a young Doctor of Rome. SHAK., Merch., IV, 1, 153. (that = in or at which.)
I can give no reason ... that I follow thus | A losing suit against him. *ib.*, IV, 1, 59. (that = why.)

Is not this the day | That Hermia should give answer of her choice? *id.*, Mids., IV, 1, 139. (that = on which.)

Since they did plot | The means that dusky Dis my daughter got, | Her (sc. Venus) and her blind boy's scandal'd company | I have forsworn. *id.*, Temp., IV, 89. (that = by which.)

In the day that thou eatest thereof (sc. the tree of the knowledge of good and evil) thou shalt surely die. Bible, Gen., II, 17. (that = in or on which.)

This ... is probably the reason that we love one another. RICH., Clar. Harl., I, 120 (WESTERN, De Engelske Bisætninger, § 172). (that = why.)

This is the way that we live. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 74. (that = in which.)

Perhaps that is the reason that I do not believe anything he has told me. OSC. WILDE, Dor. Gray, Ch. II, 31. (that = why.)

Note α). The use of *that* instead of *why* after *reason* appears to be unusual in Present-day English.

β) These clauses may also stand without any conjunctive; thus those in:

In the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened. Bible, Gen., III, 5.

This is the way you always damp my girls and me, when we are in spirits. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. V, (262).

H. POUTSMA, II.

The way he went after that plump sister in the lace tucker, was an outrage on the credulity of human nature. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 70.

I shall hate the name of Science till the day I die. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XLV, 452.

The reason we all like to think so well of others is that we are all afraid for ourselves. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. VI, 99.

My acquaintance with Mr. MacDonald dates from the time I had just left college. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 359 *b*.

It really was provoking that this new clasp should go wrong ... the first time it was used! GALSW., *Freelands*, XVI, 140.

;) The following example contains a curious, and, no doubt, very rare, instance of *which* being used in a similar function as the above *that*.

On the day which he (sc. Heracles) should have been born, Zeus announced to the gods that a descendant of Perseus was about to see the light, who would hold sway over all the Perseidæ. NETTLESHIP & SANDYS, *Dict. of Clas. Ant.* s.v. *Heracles*, 280 *a*.

CHAPTER XVII.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
General Observations	1— 5
Adverbial Clauses of Place	6— 13
Adverbial Clauses of Time	14— 31
Adverbial Clauses of Causality	32— 99
Adverbial Clauses of Cause, Reason or Ground	32— 48
Adverbial Clauses of Consequence or Inference	49— 53
Adverbial Clauses of Purpose	54— 60
Adverbial Clauses of Condition or Hypothesis	61— 79
Adverbial Clauses of Concession	80— 96
Adverbial Clauses of Disjunctive Concession or Alternative Hypothesis	97— 99
Adverbial Clauses of Manner	100—158
Adverbial Clauses of Quality	100—115
Adverbial Clauses of Attendant Circumstances	116—123
Adverbial Clauses of Degree	124—135
Adverbial Clauses of Alternative Agreement	136—138
Adverbial Clauses of Proportionate Agreement	139—143
Adverbial Clauses of Restriction	144—151
Adverbial Clauses of Exception	152—158

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adverbial clauses may sometimes be exchanged for principal sentences: in this case they may be termed *continuative*. Thus *We travelled as far as Paris, where we parted company* = *We travelled as far as Paris; here we parted company*.

Poor Joe's panic lasted for two or three days; during which he did not visit the house. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 26.

Nurse let me sleep till the clock struck two quarters after eleven, when she awoke me, put on my hat, and tied a handkerchief about my neck. WALT. BESANT, *Dor. Forst.*, Ch. I, 5.

The perils of our sailors were increased with the risk of our merchants, inasmuch that prayers were offered in all the churches. *id.*, *London*, I, 34.

Some clauses of this kind, e.g. that in the first example cited above, may also be regarded as a variety of attributive adnominal clauses (Ch. XVI, 3). See also DEN HERTOOG, *Nederl. Spraak.*, II, § 84, Opm.

2. Adverbial clauses are introduced by a great variety of conjunctions and conjunctive expressions, most of which, on being traced to their origin, will be found to consist of an adverbial adjunct followed by either *that* or *as*. Compare DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraak.*, II, § 70, Opm. 1; *ib.*, III, § 123; MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 290; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*³, § 287 ff; O. E. D., s. v. *as*, 27, and s. v. *that*, 7; ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 47, Obs.; MÄTZN, *Eng. Gram.*², III, 411; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 546; WESTERN, *De Engelske Bisætninger*, § 140.

Some have thrown off either of these conjunctive links in Present-day English, but may still be found with them in Early Modern English. Such are *when* (19, Obs. VII), *after*, *before*, *ere*, (*un*)*till* (22); *while* (25, Obs. IV); *since* (26); *because* (37, Obs. I); *lest* (57, Obs. I); *unless* (75); (*al*)*though* (84, Obs. II).

Some, especially such as are made up with *that*, are now used either with or without this link. Thus we find either with or without *that*: *by the (that) time*, *every time*, *the instant*, *the moment* (23); *by then*, *directly*, *immediately*, *now* (26); *for* (42); *by reason*, *for fear* (44); *being*, *considering*, *seeing* (46); *so* (53; 70); *but* (21, 22, 67, 118, 134, 155, 156); *in case*, *on condition* (68); *provided*, *providing*, *supposing* (71); *say*, *suppose* (72); *for all* (89); *notwithstanding* (91); *albeit* (92); *for aught*, *for anything*, *for all* (150).

Some, especially such as contain *as*, are now never used without this link. This is the case with *as (so) long as*, *as often as*, *as*

(so) soon as, so surely as (27); by that, in that (41); forasmuch as, inasmuch as, whereas (47); insomuch that, so much so that (53); for the purpose that, in order that, to the end that, to the intent that (60); despite that (88); besides that, moreover that (122); as (so) far as, as nearly as, for so much as, in so far as (149); except that, save that, saving that (156); only that (157).

3. When a clause is introduced by a conjunctive containing *that*, and is followed by others standing in a similar relation to the head-clause, the latter are introduced by *that* only. See KELLNER, *Hist. Outl.*, § 448; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 548.

It's quite right ... that people should rejoice in their families, and provide for them, so that this is done in the fear of the Lord, and that they are not unmindful of the soul's wants while they are caring for the body. G. ELIOT, *A. d. Bede*, Ch. VI, 66.

But that it was high noon, and that no circumstance of ghostliness accompanied the curious cackinnation; but that neither scene nor season favoured fear, I should have been superstitiously afraid. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XI, 127.

Note a) In Older English, and archaically in Late Modern English, *that* is also found to replace a preceding conjunctive not containing *that*. Compare O.E.D., s. v. *that*, 8; A. SCHMIDT, *Shak. Lex.*, s. v. *that*; WESTERN, *De Engelske Bisætninger*, § 142.

Though yet of Hamlet our dear brother's death | The memory be green, and that it us befitted | To bear our hearts in grief [etc.]. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 2, 2. When in your motion you are hot and dry — | ... And that he calls for drink, I'll have prepared him | A chalice for the nonce [etc.]. *ib.*, *Hamlet*, IV, 7, 159. But since he stands obdurate, | And that no lawful means can carry me out of his envy's reach, I do oppose | My patience to his fury. *id.*, *Merch.*, IV, 1, 9.

It was early in the year; but as soon as the weather was auspicious, and that the spring began to melt into the verge of summer, we took rod in hand, and sallied into the country. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXI, 331.

(The) galleries, passages and staircases (were) wide enough and antiquated enough to furnish materials for a hundred ghost-stories, supposing we should ever be reduced to the lamentable necessity of inventing any, and that the world should exist long enough to exhaust the innumerable veracious legends connected with old London Bridge, and its adjacent neighbourhood on the Surrey side. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. X, 79.

On the morrow I was sad; partly because you were poorly, and partly that I wished my father knew, and approved of my excursions. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXIV, 124 b.

β) Sometimes also *that* appears to be a vague representative of a conjunction not to be found in a preceding part of the sentence; thus in:

i. I will go nowhere that she cannot go. TROL., *Doct. Thorne*, Ch. XLVII, 628.

ii. It has been the same ill luck with me since I was a lad, until now that I am sixty years old. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 195.

Compare: Now is it Rome indeed and room enough, | When there is in it but one only man. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 157.

But now, when he had in some way spoken out, Bell started back from him. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XXXIX, 107.

But now, when Tom began to laugh at her, and say she was like the idiot, the affair had quite a new aspect. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 55.

In the following example, quoted by JESPERSEN (*Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 8.64), *now* is alternately followed by *when* and *that*: I renew this request now when I am only induced by reason and virtue ... and now that you are returning to England, you will have little chance of meeting with him. MARY SHELLEY, *F.*, 236.

It is of some interest to compare these sentences, in which the adverb preceding *that* belongs rather to the head-clause than to the subordinate clause, with those in which the adverb is felt to be an integrant part of the latter, as in:

She left the room immediately that breakfast was over. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. V, 41.

This is, presumably, mostly the case when the head-clause stands last, as in:

Everywhere that a great soul gives utterance to its thoughts, there also is Golgotha. LEWES, *Philos.*, 143.

Now that we are alone, I will impart to thee the reason of my going. WASH. IRV.

It will be observed that in reading these sentences aloud there is a slight pause after the adverb in those of the first type, while the voice runs on after the adverb in those of the second type. It may be added that only in the latter *that* is often dispensed with leaving the conjunctive function to the adverb.

4. Conjunctive adverbs may stand between the adverbial adjunct and *that*, as in:

Now, however, that the representative of the Foreign Office is pressing this reform on the Chinese negotiator, a certain number of the British traders of Shanghai protest against the payment of the consideration. *Times*.

5. According to their meaning adverbial clauses may be divided into: *a*) those of place; *b*) those of time; *c*) those of causality, subdivided into those of: 1) cause (reason, or ground), 2) consequence (or inference), 3) purpose, 4) condition (or hypothesis), 5) concession, 6) alternative hypothesis (or disjunctive concession); *d*) those of manner, subdivided into those of: 1) quality, 2) attendant circumstances, 3) degree, 4) alternative agreement, 5) proportionate agreement, 6) restriction, 7) exception.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PLACE.

6. Adverbial clauses of place are introduced: *a*) by the conjunctions *as*, *where*, *whence* (*from whence*, or *from where*), *whither*, *wherever* (*wheresoever*, or *whereso*), *whithersoever*; *b*) by conjunctive word-groups consisting of a preposition + the relative pronoun *which* + noun. The conjunctives under (*b*) are only found at the head of continuative clauses.

7. *As*, at the head of an adverbial clause of place occurs only in older English; e. g.:

Here, as I point my sword, the sun arises. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., II, 1, 106.

Note. *As* is still used in clauses in which the relation of place is mixed with a relation of time, or condition thus in:

It is, right in front of you as you cross London Bridge. O. E. D., s. v. *as*. 17. He has his shoes rubbed, and his periwig powdered at the barber's as you go into the Rose. ADDISON, Spect., II.

He was sitting in the one sitting-room on the left side of the passage as the house was entered. TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. IV; 32.

Behind Hicks's hay-rick, as you turn to the right up Churchyard Lane. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. I, 3.

8. *Where* is the commonest conjunctive to introduce adverbial clauses of place.

Where thou dwellest I will dwell. MASON, Eng. Gram.⁴, 252.

Such instigations have been often dropp'd | Where I have took them up. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., II, 1, 50.

Note a) SHAKESPEARE sometimes uses an adverbial clause with *where* after the imperative of verbs of looking, such as *look, lo, behold, see*, where *there* would be expected, thus in:

Peace, break thee off; look, where it comes again! Hamlet, I, 1, 40.

But soft, behold! lo, where it comes again! ib., I, 1, 126.

Behold, behold, where Madam Mitigation comes! Meas. for Meas., I, 2, 45.

See, where he looks out of the window. Tam. of the Shrew, V, 1, 57.

And look where Publius is come to fetch me. Jul. Cæs., II, 2, 108.

β) In some generalizing statements *where* has practically the same force as *when*. In the following example they are used alternately:

The lawyers of the nineteenth century have decided for us that the word *man* always includes *woman* where there is a penalty to be incurred, and never includes *woman* when there is a privilege to be conferred. Rev. of Rev., No. 213, 322 b.

γ) *Where* as a local conjunction may have been common enough in older English, but has, apparently, disappeared from the language.

For *whereas* introducing an adverbial clause of cause, or of attendant circumstances, see 47 and 123 respectively.

My lord protector, 'tis his highness' pleasure | You do prepare to ride unto Saint Alban's, | Where as the king and queen do mean to hawk. SHAK., Henry VI. B, I, 2, 58.

9. *Whence* is only found in the higher literary style; in the spoken language it is replaced by *from where* or *where ... from*. *From whence*, in which *from* is, of course, redundant, is sometimes used for *whence*. Both *whence* and *from whence* are most frequently met with in continuative clauses (13).

Go whence you came. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 75.

Let him walk from whence he came. SHAK., Com. of Er., III, 1, 37.

Before I go whence I shall not return, even to the land of darkness and the shadow of death. Bible, Job, X, 21.

He will soon return whence he came. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXIII, 303.

10. *Whither* has been superseded by *where* in ordinary speech. Like *whence*, it is chiefly used in continuative clauses (13).

Nay, take me with thee, good sweet Exeter: | Not that I fear to stay, but love to go | Whither the Queen intends. SHAK., *Henry VI*, C, II, 5, 139.
For whither thou goest, I will go. BIBLE, *Ruth*, I, 16.

11. *Wherever, wheresoever, whencesoever, whithersoever* and *whereso* are either general or indefinite in meaning. Thus *wherever* may be equivalent to *at (or to) every place where*, and to *at (or to) any place where*. The force of *ever, soever* and *so* is in Dutch expressed by *maar*. The same conjunctives are also found in concessive clauses (93), in which case these endings answer to Dutch *ook*. Only *wherever* is in ordinary use. The other forms now occur only in the higher literary language. For detailed discussion of compounds with *(so)ever* or *so* see Ch. XLI.

She has been the belle and spirit of the company wherever she went. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1.

They encountered the enemy wherever he showed himself and defeated him. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 55.

Water spread itself wheresoever it listed. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 65.

Wheresoever the strong tide met with an impediment, his gaze paused for an instant. *id.*, *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. I, 3.

I make no more remonstrances, but am as a lamb in her hands, and she leads me whithersoever she pleases. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 183.

Note. Instead of *wherever* we also find *everywhere* or *anywhere*, with or without the conjunction *that*; thus in:

i. * Everywhere that Shakespeare turned in London, he saw [etc.]. OSC. WILDE, *Intentions*, 201 (JESP., *Mod. Eng. Gr.*, III, 865).

** Has anybody looked for her? I have — everywhere — everywhere I can think of. HALL CAINE, *Christian*, 433 (*ib.*, III, 7, 71).

ii. * They are taken up mountains, anywhere that a mule can find a road. RUDY. KIPL., *Jungle Bk.*, I, 223 (JESP., *Mod. Eng. Gr.*, III, 865).

** He would live with his grandmother anywhere she liked. THACK., *Newc.*, 551 (*ib.*, 7.71).

12. The particulars of place indicated by the clause are sometimes recapitulated, less frequently anticipated, by correlative adverbs in the head-clause; thus in:

i. Where there is a will, there is a way. PROV.

Then whither he goes, thither let me go. SHAK., *Rich.*, II, V, 1, 85.

For wheresoever the carcass is, there will the eagles be gathered together. BIBLE, *Matth.*, XXIV, 28.

Wherever she went, there went he. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 70.

ii. Earls and countesses, barons and their baronesses were scarce there where fate had placed her. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. III, 40.

13. Adverbial clauses of place that are continuative, are frequent enough. They are introduced: a) by the same conjunctives as the above, to the exclusion, however, of the compounds of *(so)ever*, and *so*; e. g.:

i. We travelled together as far as Paris, where we parted company. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, 252.

They stood invisible for a little while in the shadow of a wall, where they separated. HARDY, *Life's Little Ironies*, IV, Ch. II, 98.

ii. She called for her carriage and drove to Shepherd's Inn, at the gate of which she alighted, whence she found her way to her father's chambers. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. V, 54.

iii. They only retired to the next room, from whence they could overhear the whole conversation. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XVI, (331).

He began to think that the source and secret of this ghostly light might be in the adjoining room, from whence, on further tracing it, it seemed to come. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 48.

iv. Rebecca asked him to come into her room, whither he followed her quite breathless to conclude the bargain. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 347.

Note. *Whence* also occurs at the head of a clause stating that a conclusion is taken (52).

In later years my mother, looking at me almost reproachfully, would sometimes say, "Ah! you were such a pretty boy!" whence I had no difficulty in concluding that I had not fulfilled my early promise in the matter of looks. HUXL., *Lect. and Es.*, *Autob.*, 6a.

b) word-groups consisting of a preposition + relative pronoun + noun (1).

We travelled together as far as Paris, at which place we parted company.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF TIME.

14. Adverbial clauses of time are introduced by the following conjunctives: a) conjunctions: *as*, *than*, *when* (sometimes followed by *that*, or *as*) *whenever* (or *whenever*); b) prepositions used as conjunctions, *that* being understood: *after*, *against*, *before*, *ere* (or, or *ere*, (or *ever*), *till* (or *until*); c) adverbial adjuncts used as conjunctions: 1) containing a noun: *by the (that) time*, *every time*, *the instant*, *the moment*, *while*, all of them sometimes followed by *that*, in this connection the substitute for a conjunctive adverb; 2) containing an adverb: *by then*, *directly*, *immediately*, *now*, *once*, *since*, some of them sometimes followed by *that*, in this connection a substitute for *when* or *as*; 3) containing an adverb preceded by *as* or *so*, and followed by *as*: *as* (or *so*) *long as*, *as* (or *so*) *often as*, *as* (or *so*) *soon as*, *as* (or *so*) *surely as*; d) the word-group *what time*; e) conjunctive adverbs compounded with *where*: *whereat*, *where(up)on*; f) equivalents of the above, containing the relative pronoun *which*: *at which*, *during which*, *after which*, etc.; *at which time*, *during which time*, *after which time*, etc.; g) the word-group *since when*. The conjunctives mentioned under e), f) and g) are used only in continuative clauses.
15. *As* is the typical conjunction in describing an action actually going forward, and coinciding with an other action, or timed by a certain event. In sentences in which it appears, both (or all) the predicates are durative, i. e. represent an action as in

progress; or one predicate is durative while the other is momentaneous.

a) In sentences of the first description the predicates are either in the present or in the preterite tense, mostly in the latter. The durativeness of the predicates is often but vaguely, or not at all, matter of the speaker's thoughts, so that they are not usually placed in the expanded form. In these sentences *as* approaches to *while*, from which it mainly differs in that it lays less stress on simultaneity (24). The Dutch has *terwijl*, or in the case of the predicate being unattended by a lengthy adjunct, it replaces the full clause by an infinitive-clause with *onder*. Thus the Dutch translation of *His voice trembled as he spoke the last sentence* (G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. III, 27) would run: *Zijn stem beefde terwijl hij den laatsten zin uitsprak, or ... onder het uitspreken vanden laatsten zin.*

i. * Here I sit at the desk again, watching his eye — humbly watching his eye — as he rules the ciphering-books. DICK., *Co p.*, Ch. VII. 45 b.
All he has got to do is to keep on turning as he runs away. *id.*, *Domb.* Ch. XII, 103.

** We write as the new British offensive east of Ypres is developing, and when the results are unknown. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 7571, 2 b.

ii. * As I looked some one came near. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

For, as Lord Marmion crossed the court, | He scattered angels round. SCOTT, *Marm.*, I, x.

She did not hear the noise of the cab-wheels as he drove away. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 393.

Strong nused a while as he lighted his cigar. *id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. VI, 60.

He winked as he spoke. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. VI, 40.

His cheeks became flushed as he went on. *id.*, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. III, 27.

As time went on, the tonic effect of Margate air worked such a change in me that I was pronounced well. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, I, Ch. VI, 43.

** There were generally some last words bawled after him, just as he was turning the corner. WASH. Irv., *Dolf Heyl*. (110).

The clock was striking twelve as I walked down the village. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 8.

They were carrying him home as we were coming to church. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. XXII, 297.

b) In sentences of the second kind the predicates are always in the preterite tense. The durative predicate may stand either in the head-clause or in the subordinate clause. The latter is then mostly introduced by *as*, in the opposite case mostly by *when*. Durativeness being a prominent notion in the speaker's thoughts, the expanded form is quite common, especially in the case of the durative predicate standing in the head-clause. The following sentences may serve to illustrate the normal practice: *I received your letter as I was walking in the garden; I was walking in the garden, when I received your letter.* In these sentences *as* has the value of *at the time that*. Simultaneity being a prominent

notion in the speaker's thoughts, *as* is often preceded by *just*. The Dutch has (juist) toen. For discussion of the aspects of the predicates in sentences of the first and the second description see also Ch. LII, 12 ff.

He arrived *as* we were setting out. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 264, N.

About the middle of the next day, *as* she was in her room getting ready for a walk, a sudden voice below seemed to speak the whole house in confusion. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXVIII, 159.

The captain touched him on the shoulder, *just as* they were passing the inner gate. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 111.

One day the old diplomatist entered Lady Clavering's drawing room, *just as* the latter quitted it. *ib.*, II, Ch. VII, 77.

Almost *as* he spoke, another object came over the garden wall. CHESTERTON, *Man a live*, I, Ch. I, 24.

16. Obs. I. In all the above examples the predicate in the temporal clause is durative. When formed from a primarily momentaneous verb, it also implies the circumstances attending the action. In the case of the predicate preserving its strictly momentaneous aspect, as in the following examples, the use of *as*, instead of *when*, is rather uncommon and, perhaps, more or less unidiomatic:

The words of sweet Shakespeare were passing through my mind *as* the clock struck midnight from the tower of the church in which he lies buried. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVI, 258.

You and Miss Roundle looked so droll *as* you — *as* you met with your little accident. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 290.

She ... was in the act to turn away, *as* a tear dropped on his forehead. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. III, 21*a*.

II. From what has been described as the peculiar sphere of incidence of *as*, it follows that it is rare: 1) in sentences describing a general truth, a habit or custom, etc. (18, *e*). Thus it could not take the place of *when* in:

When Yeobright was not with Eustacia, he was sitting slavishly over his books; *when* he was not reading, he was meeting her. HARDY, *Return*, III, Ch. V, 249.

2) in temporal clauses with the copula *to be*. Thus *as* could hardly be substituted for *when* in such a sentence as *He left home when it was already dark* (18, *b*). The following examples, accordingly, exhibit rather unusual practice:

They arrived at the Squire's house *just as* dinner was ready. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, III, Ch. VII, 174. (The use of *as* is, perhaps, occasioned by the preceding *just*.)

He certainly would have done it, had not the sitting-room opened *as* he was on the landing-place. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XXIX, 342.

As his Majesty was less than one hundred yards from the mosque, a terrific explosion, caused by the bursting of a bomb, took place, and killed every one in the immediate vicinity. *Daily Mail*.

As is not uncommon, however in temporal clauses in which the predicate is formed by such verbs as *to lie*, *to sit*, or *to stand*.

i. He laughed at himself, *as* he lay on his pillow. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XV, 153.

ii. One morning, as Blanche sat in her boudoir, there was a knock at the door. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. III, 27.

iii. It grew to be broad daylight, as they stood there. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 348.

As these two were standing in this attitude, the door of Pen's bedchamber was opened stealthily. *id.*, *Pen d.*, II, Ch. XV, 162.

Nor is *as*, apparently, unusual in case only the head-clause has a predicate with *to be*, in particular when this predicate has assumed an ingressive meaning, or when that of the temporal clause is distinctly meant to indicate an action in progress, as in:

i. As I grew up, it was my best delight | To be his chosen comrade. WORDSW., *Excursion*, I, 60. (almost = it became my delight.)

As Mr. John Oakhurst stepped into the main street, he was conscious of a change in its moral atmosphere since the preceding night. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, 18. (practically = became conscious.)

Reuben strode along so rapidly that she was almost breathless as she tripped by his side. M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XI. (almost = she became breathless.)

ii. It was nearly dark as Mark Robarts drove up through the avenue of lime-trees to the hall-door. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 20.

Such was the state of affairs as the carriage crossed Westminster-bridge. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 54.

Whether he likes it or not, we must be at his side to support him as he enters again upon the world. BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LXIX, 308.

III. It follows also that *as* is uncommon: 1) in temporal clauses in which the predicate is formed by such verbs as *to hear*, *to see*, which express no action but the receiving of a sense-impression (Ch. III, 41, a). Thus *when* would appear to be more appropriate than *as* in:

As the lad near us heard my father's words, the colour rushed over his face. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 7.

Dick thrust the letters into his pocket as he heard the sound. RUDY KIPL., *Light*, Ch. X, 147.

Also when the tense in the head-clause is the same as that of the temporal clause, although the happenings described are not simultaneous, the use of *as* is exceptional; thus in:

My quandary was turned to wonder, as Miss Mayton drew the little scamp close to her and kissed him soundly. HABBERTON, *Helena's Babies*, 82.

2) in temporal clauses whose time-sphere is anterior or posterior to that of the head-clause (18, c. and d). Thus *when* would, most probably, have been preferred to *as* by most speakers in:

With renewed shouts, those on foot pushed forward, till, as they had nearly gained the copse referred to by the German, a small compact body of horse-men... dashed from amidst the trees. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 14.

There is not, of course, anything unusual in the use of *as* when both the head-clause and the temporal clause have the predicate in the pluperfect tense, as in:

He had positively seen it (sc. the door of his room) swing open as the foot-steps had entered. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (118).

IV. Temporal clauses of the first kind can often be replaced by participle-clauses, or by gerund-clauses opening with *in*, when their subject

is identical with that of the head-clause. Thus *He rattled the halpence in his pocket as he walked homeward* (PHILIPS, *Madame Leroux*, Ch. XIII) might be changed into *Walking homeward, or In walking homeward, he rattled the halpence in his pocket.*

V. In clauses introduced by *as* the temporal notion is sometimes mixed: 1) with one of place (7, Note); 2) with one of cause (see the examples in Obs. III); 3) with one of proportionate agreement, the increase of one thing being in accordance with that of another. The following examples, indeed, bear a great resemblance to those cited in 140:

We loved each other, and our fondness increased as we grew old. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (236).

You don't know what a comfort it (sc. a quid of tobacco) is, sir; you'll take to it, bless you, as you grow older. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 4.

Every sign of the growing prosperity, the sight of London as it became the mart of the world, of stately mansions as they rose on every manor, told, and justly told, in Elizabeth's favour. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 374.

As the sun rose higher and higher, a great stillness fell upon the forest. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XXXIII, 170.

As I drew nearer, walking slowly past her, I heard clearly the words she spoke. EVA ANSTRUTHER, *St. James's Park.*

4) with one of restriction; i.e. the fulfilment of a happening is more or less distinctly represented as depending on the fulfilment of a condition. Compare 145.

You've got to receive the dividends as they become due. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. LII, 267.

I desired to obtain a Professorship of either Physiology or Comparative Anatomy, and as vacancies occurred, I applied, but in vain. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, *Autobiography*, 10a.

17. *Than* appears at the head of a clause thought of in a relation of time to the head-clause after *no sooner*. Strictly speaking the relation of time is expressed by the word-group *no sooner . . . than*, which differs from other conjunctive word-groups of time, such as *as soon as*, etc., only in so far as its two members are divided by other elements of the sentence. In Early Modern English *but* was often used instead of *than* (21).

She no sooner saw Joseph, than her cheeks glowed with red. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, IV, Ch. I, 201.

No sooner did this idea enter his head, than it carried conviction with it. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (145).

Miss Nancy had no sooner made her curtsy, than an elderly lady came forward. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. XI, 79.

Note a) Through confusion with sentences like the above *than* is sometimes placed in temporal clauses standing after a head-clause with *barely*, *hardly*, or *scarcely* (18, d). For discussion of this misuse of *than* see also MALMSTEDT, *Stud. in Eng. Gram.*, 34; HORN, *Her.-Arch.*, No. 114, 363; HODGSON, *Er. in the Use of Eng.* 122 f; STOF., *E. S.* XXXI.

Scarcely had she gone, than Clodius and several of his gay companions broke in upon him. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. VII, 52a.

Hardly had Zahlbar's drooping hopes been revived by this grain of consolation than they were dashed to the ground by a telegram from Dr. Cactus. STEAD, *Hist. of the Mystery*, 98 b.

β) The use of *when* instead of *than* after *no sooner* is another solecism (19, Obs. IV).

18. *When* is the ordinary conjunction: a) to introduce a clause describing an action which marks the time at which the state of things mentioned in the head-clause obtained or will obtain, or at which the action indicated by the latter was going forward or will be going forward.

i. I was a mere boy when I was taken to the first post mortem examination I ever attended. HUXL., *Lect. and Es., Autob.*, 7 a.

It was dark when the cannonading stopped all of a sudden. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 353.

The conversation was at a high pitch of animation when Silas approached the door of the Rainbow. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. VI, 38.

ii. And she may still exist in undiminished vigour, when some traveller from New Zealand shall, in the midst of a vast solitude, take his stand on a broken arch of London Bridge to sketch the ruins of St. Paul's. MAC., *Popes*, (542).

iii. We were going up to the house, among some dark heavy trees, when he called after my conductor. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 39 a.

Mr. Strong ... was playing the piano when we went in. *ib.*, Ch. XVI, 119 b.

iv. The sun will be shining into your room when you awake.

We shall be travelling in Switzerland when you join us.

b) to introduce a clause describing a state, and indicating the time at which the action or state mentioned in the head-clause occurred or will occur.

i. I went back to India when I was fourteen. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 76.

ii. He was often ill when he was a boy.

iii. I will come when I am ready. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

iv. I will be there when it shall be light. *ib.*, 173.

c) to introduce a clause describing an action or state of things prior to another action or state of things.

When he had walked about ten miles, he took a few minutes' rest.

Clive had been only a few months in the army, when intelligence arrived that peace had been concluded between Great Britain and France. MAC., *Clive*, (501 a).

d) to introduce a clause describing an action or state of things subsequent to another. In this case the head-clause is often found to contain a negative word, or a word implying a negation, like *hardly*, *scarce(ly)*, *barely*. *Before* is a frequent variant (21).

Major Pendennis had not quitted the house many hours, when Arthur Pendennis made his appearance at the well-known door. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXII, 346.

He had not read half-a-dozen pages, when the expression of his face began to change. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVII, 298 b.

He had not walked three paces, when he turned angrily round. *id.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VII, 72.

They had not been at home many hours, when he presented himself. *id.*, *Two Cities*, II, Ch. XX, 234.

I had barely completed this surgical operation, when Tom's gardener-coachman appeared. *HABBERTON*, *Helen's Babies*, 45.

Hardly had he done so, when the Boers came on in great numbers at a furious gallop. *11. Lond. News.*

e) to introduce a clause stating the time present or past when another action or state customarily comes off, or has come off. This *when* sometimes expresses approximately the same idea as *whenever* (20).

When clouds appear, wise men put on their cloaks; | When great leaves fall, the winter is at hand; | When the sun sets, who doth not look for night? *SHAK.*, *Rich.* III, II, 3, 33—35.

Our sermon-books are shut up when Miss Crawley arrives. *THACK.*, *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 103.

f) to introduce a clause stating what action put a stop to, or interrupted an action, or prevented a contemplated action; e. g.: Upon the Doctor, and the widow, the eyes of both Mr. Tupman and his companion had been fixed for some time, when the stranger broke silence. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 14.

Henry was still abusing the defaulter when Monckley cut him short. *COMPT. MACK.*, *Sylv. Scarl.*, Ch. II, 81.

He was going to say more, when she interrupted him eagerly. *HICHENS*, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XX, 109.

19. Obs. I. *When* is less common than *as*: 1) when the predicate in both the head-clause and the temporal clause are durative, or 2) when the predicate in the head-clause is momentaneous and that in the temporal clause durative. Thus most writers would, perhaps, have preferred *as* to *when* in:

i. When he read the note of the two ladies, he shook his head. *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*, Ch. XII, (303).

When ... I looked around upon all the familiar objects and scenes within our own ground, where your common amusements were going on ... I felt there was nothing painful in witnessing that. *HUGHES*, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VI, 290.

When the old gentleman said this, he looked so fierce that Tom began to look frightened. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 122.

Bob's voice was tremulous when he told them this. *id.*, *Christm. Car.*, III, 67.

I could not help thinking several times in the course of the evening, and particularly when I walked home at night, what delightful company she would be in Buckingham Street. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXIV, 178 a.

When Crosbie was making his ineffectual inquiry after Lady the Courcy's bracelet at Lambert's, John Eames was in the act of entering Mrs. Roper's front-door in Burton Crescent. *TROL.*, *Small House*, II, Ch. XLI, 127.

ii. And, when I crossed the wild, | I chanced to see at break of day | The solitary child. *WORDSW.*, *Lucy Gray*, I.

Mrs. Higgins observed in an undertone to Mrs. Parrot when they were coming out of church, "Her husband, who'd been born i' the parish, might ha' told her better." *G. ELIOT*, *Scenes*, II, Ch. I, 71.

When Sir Walter was one day riding with a friend over the fields near his country-seat, he came to a gate which an Irish beggar hastened to open for him. *Anecdote* (*GÜNTH.*, *Leerböck*).

II. In the clauses mentioned under *c*), the tense of the verb naturally often differs from that of the head-sentence, i. e.: 1) in the former it is a pluperfect in the latter an imperfect; e. g.: *When he had finished his letter, he took it to the post.*

2) in the former it is a perfect future or a perfect doing duty for the perfect future, in the latter a simple future; e. g.: *When I (shall) have finished my letter, I shall take it to the post.*

In some cases we find the pluperfect in both the adverbial and the head-clause, namely when the speaker interrupts his narrative to relate what had taken place previously; e. g.:

Amelia and the Major's wife had rushed down to him, when the latter had recognized him from his balcony. THACK., *VAN FAIR*, I, Ch. XXXII, 349.

Sometimes the imperfect seems to be used less properly for the pluperfect; thus in:

When he reached his own hotel, he found a score of its numerous inhabitants on the threshold discoursing of the news. THACK., *VAN FAIR*, I, Ch. XXXII, 348.

Also the present tense, doing duty for the simple future, is often used for the perfect, serving for the perfect future; e. g.: *When the time comes, I shall know how to deal with you.*

Similarly the imperfect may stand for the pluperfect, as in:

There was a garden that certain small people might play in when they came. THACK., *SAM. TITM.*, Ch. IX, 95.

Also in the clauses mentioned under *d*), the tense of the predicate mostly differs from that of the predicate in the head-clause, naturally in a way opposite to that described above. However, when the head-clause contains such an adverb as *barely*, *hardly*, or *scarcely*, it often has the predicate in the imperfect instead of the pluperfect; e. g.: *Hardly did he see me when he made off.*

For more detailed discussion of the use of the imperfect for the perfect tenses see Ch. L, 138 ff.

IV. In older English the clauses mentioned under *d*) are mostly found introduced by *but*, when the head-clause contains a negative or such a negative-implying adverb as *barely*, *hardly*, or *scarcely* (21). For the misuse of *than* after these adverbs see 17.

The use of *when* instead of *than* after *no sooner*, as in the following example, is another instance of contamination:

The words were no sooner out of his mouth when Lambourne again made at him. SCOTT, *KEN.*, Ch. XXIII, 237.

V. Early Modern English, and archaically later English, have frequent instances of *when* being followed by *as*, or *that*; e. g.:

i. When as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost. Bible Matth., I, 18. When as the Palmer came in hall, | Nor lord, nor knight, was there more tall. SCOTT, *MARR.*, I, xxviii.

Hearken a little unto such a tale | As folk with us will tell in every vale | About the yule-tide fire, when as the snow | Deep in the passes, letteth men to go | From place to place. MORRIS, *EARTHLY PAR.*, Atal., 39 b.

ii. When that the poor have cried, Caesar hath wept. SHAK., *JUL. CÆS.*, III, 2, 96.

And il seemed to Little Billee that, for the twentieth part of a second, Alice

looked at him with Trilby's eyes; or his mother's when that he was a little tiny boy. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 31.

When if was much rarer, and has now quite disappeared.

When if the matter be spirituous, and the cloud compact, the noise is great and terrible. TH. BROWNE, *Pseud.*, Ep., II, 69 (FRANZ, E. S., XVIII).

VI. Like the Dutch *als* and *wanneer*, the English *when* is often found in clauses expressing a secondary idea of: 1) *cause, reason, or ground*; e. g.:

Haven't I reason to go out of my senses, when I see things going at sixes and sevens? GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, I, (102).

When she takes so much pains to get rid of it (sc. her bulk), you ought not to reflect on her. SHER., *School*, II, 2, (380).

2) *condition*, but only when a general case is put; e. g.: A victory is twice itself, when the achiever brings home full numbers. SHAK., *Much ado*, I, I, 8.

Even a fool, when he holdeth his peace, is counted wise. Bible, *Prov.*, XVII, 28.

You know I am compliance itself — when I'm not thwarted. SHER., *Riv.*, II, I, (234).

3) *concession*; e. g.: (His life) has been spoiled and ruined for him, when he is but one-and-twenty. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XVIII, 165.

4) *attendant circumstances*, almost equivalent to *while* (121); e. g.:

This office paid her no less than six-and-thirty pounds a year, when no other company in London would give her more than twenty-four. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 10.

You pretend you're going to Ned's parents, when you're really going to the Old Chapel. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

20. *Whenever* is either generalizing or indefinite in meaning and is, accordingly, equivalent to *every time (that)* (23), or to *when at any time*. *Whensoever* is an older and, consequently, now a more dignified form. For the use of *when(so)ever* in concessive clauses see 93. Rather frequently the notion of time implied in *when(so)ever* is strongly mixed with that of condition; e. g.:

i. * He punished the boy whenever he did wrong. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 416. Whenever a regular attack was made, the assailants invariably came to grief. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 185.

** Private enmity alone was gratified whenever public justice was invoked. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 19.

I undertook to partially fill up the office of parish-clerk by Mr. Crackenthorp's desire, whenever your infirmities should make you unfitting. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. VI, 40.

I could, I felt sure, grope my way to the front-door, let myself out, and, whenever I chose, return by aid of the latch-key. HUGH CONWAY, *Called back*, Ch. I, 9.

ii. I am constant to my purposes; they follow the king's pleasure: if his fitness speaks, mine is ready; now or whensoever, provided I be so able as now. SHAK., *Hamlet*, V, 2, 210.

iii. "I shall have your good wishes, however, Jack?" — "Whenever he meets you, believe me." SHER., *Riv.*, IV, I, (258).

This decided him to part with the boy, whenever he should be found. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 140.

Whenever you grow tired of your box, you have my leave to sell it. *id.*, *Caxt.*, I, Ch. IV, 21.

21. Of the second group of conjunctives used to introduce temporal clauses, only a few call for some comment.

After: He never spoke after he fell. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*³¹, § 416.

After the vote was taken, the assembly broke up. *BAIN*, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

Against, now considered archaic or dialectal (O. E. D.), but by some writers used as a cultured English word. In Early Modern English it was quite common. Compare *STORM*, *Eng. Phil.*², 487; *FRANZ*, *E. S.*, XVIII.

Some say that ever 'gainst that season comes | Wherein Our Saviour's birth is celebrated, | The bird of dawning singeth all night long. *SHAK.*, *Hamlet*, I, I, 158.

Thou shalt stand by the river's bank against he come. *Bible*, *Ex.*, VII, 15.

I had not said much, only some nonsense ... about getting some frogs against the Frenchman came to dine with us. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 984.

She gathered fresh flowers to deck the drawing-room against Mrs. Hamley should come down. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. VII, 70.

Before, when used after a head-clause with a negative, or with *barely*, *hardly*, or *scarcely*, varies with *when* (18, d). Older English often has *but* in this case. Sometimes it has the value of *rather* (or *sooner*) *than*.

i. The truth will come before we are done. *BAIN*, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

Before he shut his heavy door, he walked through his rooms. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*, I, 15.

It was near one before the gentlemen and ladies sought their chambers. *CH. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*. Ch. XVII, 204.

ii. * I had not long been at the university, before I distinguished myself by a most profound silence. *ADDISON*, *Spect.*, I.

He had not been in the snug little corner five minutes, before he began to nod. *DICK.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXI, 248 b.

It was not long before she gained upon Paul's heels, and caught and passed him. *id.*, *Dom b.*. Ch. XII, 111.

* * I had scarcely taken orders a year, before I began to think seriously of matrimony. *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*, Ch. I.

Scarcely was the song ended, before the arrival of Miss Brandon's servant was announced, *LYTTON*, *Paul Cliff.*, Ch. XI, 130.

The meal was scarcely over, before a chaise and pair came to the door. *id.*, *My Novel*, I, iv, Ch. XXV, 290.

(They) had scarcely been allowed time to say a single prayer, before they were all tied up and turned off. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, VII, Ch. XVIII, 14.

The words were scarcely out of his mouth, before Robinson drove the spade into the soil. *READE*, *Never too late*, I, Ch. X, 115.

The words were hardly out of his mouth, before, peering about in every direction, he discovered an iron spike with some cord wrapped round it. *ib.*, I, Ch. X, 116.

Observe also the use of *before* in the following example, in which *only just* is equivalent to *scarcely*:

She had only just fixed on an amethyst before feeling deadly ill with a dreadful pain through her lungs. *GALSW.*, *Tatterdemalion*, I, I, 17.

iii. I will die before I submit. *O. E. D.*, s. v. *before*, C, 2.

Note. The vulgar language often has *afore* instead of *before*; thus in: I know the gentleman will put that 'ere charge into somebody afore he's done. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 164.

But as a temporal conjunction is now obsolete or archaic. In Early Modern English we frequently find it: 1) instead of *than* after *no sooner*, 2) instead of

when or *before* after a negative head-clause, or one with *barely*, *hardly*, or *scarcely*. See SATTLER, E. S., IV, 79; FRANZ, E. S., XVIII, 428; STOF., Stud., B, 105; MALMSTEDT, Stud. in Eng. Gram., 34; JESPERSEN, Negation, 134. i. Your brother and my sister no sooner met but they looked, no sooner looked but they loved, no sooner loved but they sighed, no sooner sighed but they asked one another the reason, no sooner knew the reason but they sought the remedy. SHAK., As you like it, V, 2, 35-40.

I no sooner saw this venerable man in the pulpit, but I very much approved of my friend's insisting upon the qualifications of a good aspect and a clear voice. ADDISON, Spect., No. CVI.

His lordship has no sooner disappeared behind the trees of the forest, but Lady Randolph begins to explain to her confidante the circumstances of her early life THACK., Virg., Ch. LIX, 614.

No sooner does one bring out a book of travels, or poems, a magazine or periodical, quarterly, or monthly, or weekly, or annual, but the rival is in the field with something similar. id., Pend., I, Ch. XXXI, 340.

ii. I take my leave of you: | Shall not be long but I'll be here again. SHAK., Macb., IV, 2, 23.

For when my outward action doth demonstrate | The native act and figure of my heart | In complement extern, 'tis not long after | But I will wear my heart upon my sleeve | For daws to peck at. id., Oth., I, 1, 65,

Scarce have I arrived here, ... | But there is brought to me from your equerry | A splendid richly plated hunting dress. COLERIDGE, Pic., I, 9, (453). But scarcely had my imagination begun to develop this delightful theme, but my waking dream was cut short. BELLAMY (Malmstedt).

Ere, chiefly found in literary English, ordinary English preferring *before*; e.g.: Within a month; | Ere yet the salt of most unrighteous tears | Had left the flushing in her galled eyes, | She married. SHAK., Haml., I, 2, 154.

His pity gave ere charity began. GOLDS., Des. Vil., 62.

It was not long ere it (sc. the name of Ivanhoe) reached the circle of the Prince. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XIII, 130.

Scarce was he in his palace, ere he ordered couriers ... to be in preparation for his summons. LYTTON, Rienzi, V, Ch. II, 197.

Note. In Older English we often find *or* for *ere*; already in Early Modern English this use of *or* was fast dying out however. It was then sometimes prefixed to *ere* for the sake of emphasis. *Or ever* was a frequent variant of *or ere*. Both *or ere* and *or ever* occur now only as archaisms. ABBOT, Shak. Gram.³, § 131; ALDIS WRIGHT, Bible Word-Book, i. v. *or*.

i. Long or the bright sonne up risen was (?) The Flower and the Leaf, 28 (ed. 1598). (erroneously attributed to CHAUCER.)

ii. A little month, or ere those shoes were old | With which she follow'd my poor father's body ... she married with my uncle. SHAK., Haml., I, 2, 147. Had I been any god of power, I would | Have sunk the sea within the earth, or ere | It should the good ship so have swallow'd. id., Temp., I, 2, 11.

Or ere the jealous queens of nations greet, | Doth Tayo interpose his mighty tide? BYRON, Ch. Har., I, xxxii.

iii. Would. I had met my dearest foe in heaven | Or ever I had seen that day, Horatio! SHAK., Haml., I, 2, 183.

The lions ... brake all their bones in pieces or ever they came at the bottom of the den. Bible Dan., VI, 24.

Long time elaps'd or e'er our rugged sires | Complain'd, though in commodiously pent in. COWPER, Task, I, 68.

I looked to heaven, and tried to pray; But or ever a prayer had gusht, A wicked whisper came, and made my heart as dry as dust. COLERIDGE, Anc. Mar., IV, 245.

And or ever that evening ended, a great gale blew. TEN., *Revenge*, XIV, 10.
Till and *until* are used indifferently, the choice being, no doubt, sometimes determined by considerations of metre or rhythm; e. g.: Stop till I shut the door of the shop. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 80.

They remained until night set in. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 113.

22. Down to the Stuart period most of the conjunctives mentioned in the preceding section were often furnished with *that*. The occasional instances of this practice found in later English are felt as archaisms. Thus we meet with:

after that; e. g.: The next day, after that our trouble of carriage and removing of our men and goods out of our ship was somewhat settled and quiet, I thought good to call our company together. BACON, *New Atlantis*, (274).
 Every time after that she praised the Curate to Mrs. Pendennis, she came away from the latter with the notion that the widow had been praising him. THACK., *Pend.*, I. Ch. XVI, 161.

Yet, after that they had laughed, they became sad. OSC. WILDE, *House of P.o.m.*, *The Star-Child*, (211).

before that; e. g.: Before that Philip called thee, . . . I saw thee. Bible, *John*, I, 48.

but that; e. g.: The breath no sooner left his father's body, | But that his wildness, mortified in him, | Seem'd to die too. SHAK., *Henry V*, I, I, 26.

by that; e. g.: By that these Pilgrims had been at this place a week, Mercy had a visitor. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, II, 82 (O. E. D., s. v. *by*, 21, c).

till that or *until that*; e. g.: Doth it not flow as hugely as the sea, | Till that the weary very means do ebb? SHAK., *As you like it*, II, 7, 73.

(They) were our guides at first, until that we | Reached the green hills. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 18a.

That they (sc. the gods) so prayed might yet perchance defend | That life, until at least that he were dead. *ib.*, *Son. of Cræus*, IX.

23. The clauses opening with an adverbial adjunct containing a noun admit of a twofold interpretation; i. e. the noun with or without *that* is, indeed, felt to be an integrant part or a subordinate clause, as appears from the preceding pause when the sentence is read aloud; but the noun by itself primarily belongs to the head-clause, the following word-group being related to it by way of apposition (Ch. XVI, 14. Compare also 3, Note x). The conjunction *that* is mostly dispensed with. The suppression of *that* after *while*, and that of the article before it, practically converts this noun into a pure conjunction. Here follow some examples with:

by the time (that): It was near Christmas by the time all was settled. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 478.

By the time that she had got the other girls quiet, she was feeling madder than ever with Eva Fairlayse. BARRY PAIN, *Miss Slater*.

each time that: Each time that we have been together, he has placed his hand on my head and murmured, "God bless you, my poor Blanche!" BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. IX, 85.

every time: Our mother predicts your fortunes every time she hears of your welcome visits to the Colonna. LYTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 11.

A cold tremble came over him every time his eyes wandered in the direction of the dismal object. DICK., *O. I. Twist*, Ch. V, 63.

We started every time a fish leaped. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

the instant: I am destined to die in this place, I felt it the instant I set foot upon the shore. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXIII, 195—196.

Note. The use of such a conjunctive *as* is found in the following example is, no doubt, very rare and confined to verse: But, instant as its 'larum rung, | The castle gate was open flung. SCOTT, *Brid. of Trierm.*, l. xv. *the moment*: He seized Tom Pinch by both his hands the moment he appeared. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XII, 102*b*.

Compare: It seems that, upon the first moment I was discovered sleeping on the ground after my landing, the Emperor had early notice of it by an express. SWIFT, *Gul.*, l. Ch. I, (117*a*).

I disliked the looks of the chap at the first moment he came up. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 34.

the time: I'd touch his body the time he'd die. SYNGE, *The Shadow of the Glen* (A. G. VAN HAMEL, *On Anglo-Irish Synt.*, E. S., XLV, 285).

24. *While* is found: a) to introduce a clause describing the action or state at, or during the time of the action or state mentioned in the head-clause. *While* the predicate in the temporal clause is always durative, that in the head-clause may be either durative or momentaneous; e. g.:

i. He advanced to the indicated spot, | bowing reverently while he fiddled. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XI, 88.

While they were talking, the dawn came shining through the windows of the room. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 84.

Anastase had told his story with many pauses, working hard while he spoke. MAR. CRAWF., *Don Orsino*.

While the grass grows, the steed starves. SHAW, *Doct. Dil.*, III, 56.

ii. He came while I was out. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 499.

While he did this, the woman threw her bundle on the floor. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 91.

O mother, praying God will save | Thy sailor, — while thy head is bow'd. | His heavy-shotted hammock-shroud | Drops in his vast and wandering grave. TEN., *In Mem.*, VI, iv.

Old Jonathan Usbech had died, while Sir Joseph Mason was still living. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, I, Ch. I, 3.

b) to introduce a clause stating how long an action or state lasts, lasted, or will last.

I will praise thee while I live. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, § 113.

Get in your hay while the sun shines. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXIV, 204*b*.

Tho' men may bicker with the things they love, | They would not make them laughable in all eyes, | Not while they loved them. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 327.

25. Obs. I. The first group of clauses introduced by *while* bear a great analogy to the first group of clauses introduced by *as*. Indeed in all the clauses mentioned in 15*a*, *while* could be substituted for *as* without any material change of meaning. *While* has a wider area, however, in being freely used also when the clause expresses a being in a state, and when a customary coincidence is described; e. g.:

While one played, the other would sing some soothing ballad. GOLDS., *Vic.*

II. When introducing one of the second group of clauses, *while* varies with *as* (or *so*) *long as*, to which it is often preferred to avoid the ambiguity attaching to the latter (27).

III. *While* varies with: 1) *whilst*, which may be as frequent; e. g.:

Whilst I live, thou shalt never want a friend to stand by thee! WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., V, 38.

Lady Rockminster came in whilst this curtsey was being performed. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXIX, 318.

She lingered about London whilst her husband was making preparations for his departure to his seat of government. id., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXIX, 317.

2) *the while*, which, though archaic, is not unfrequent; e. g.:

Mercy, reminded of the bonnet in her hair, hid her fair face and turned her head aside: the while her gentle sister plucked it out, and smote her... upon her buxom shoulder! DICK., Chuz., Ch. V, 42b.

Rimanez took farewell of his host, the while he expressed his sympathy with him in his domestic affliction. MARIE CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., I, Ch. XIV, 194.

3) *whiles*, which has long fallen into disuse, and only survives as an occasional archaism.; e. g.:

Such men as he be never at heart's ease | Whiles they behold a greater than themselves. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 209.

Agree with thine adversary quickly, whiles thou art in the way with him. Bible, Matth., V, 25.

In mist or cloud, on mast or shroud, | It perched for vespers nine; | Whiles all the night, through fog-smoke white, | Glimmered the white Moon-shine.

COLERIDGE, Anc. Mar., I, 77.

4) *the whiles*, which does not occur in SHAKESPEARE, nor in the Authorized Version, but is met with in SCOTT.

They feasted full and high: | The whiles a Northern harper rude | Chanted a rhyme of deadly feud. SCOTT, Marm., I, xiii.

But see, my love, where far below | Our lingering wheels are moving slow, | The whiles, up-gazing still, | Our menials eye our steepy way. id., Brid. of Trierm., III, Concl. ii.

Note. SHAKESPEARE has *the whiles* as an adverb in: Take you your instrument, play you the whiles; | His lecture will be done ere you have tuned. Taming, III, 1, 22.

5) *the whilst*, which occurs but in a few instances in SHAKESPEARE, and is not found in Present-day English, except, perhaps, in some dialects.

If he steal aught the whilst this play is playing, | And 'scape detecting, I will pay the theft. SHAK., Haml., III, 2, 96.

I saw a smith stand with his hammer, thus, | The whilst his iron did on the anvil cool. id., K. John, IV, 2, 194.

Note. *Whiles* is an adverbial genitive (Ch. V, 5). *Whilst* has been formed from *whiles*, the *t* being a frequent popular outgrowth. Compare *amongst*, *amidst*, *betwixt*.

IV. *While as*, and *while* (*whiles*, or *whilst*) that are found in Early Modern English, but are now quite obsolete (2).

i. The Holy Ghost this signifying, that the way into the holiest of all was not yet made manifest, while as the first tabernacle was yet standing. Bible, Hebr., IX, 8.

ii. While that the armed hand doth fight abroad, | The advised head defends itself at home. SHAK., Henry V, I, 2, 178.

Whilst that this shadow doth such substance give. SHAK., Son., XXXVII, 10.
What need have I for temple or for priest? | Am I not God, whiles that I live at least? MORRIS, Earthly Par., The Proud King, 87a.

VII. *While* often stands at the head of clauses expressing a relation

of attendant circumstances (121), i. e. such as express a notion which is in adversative relation to that denoted by the head-clause (Ch. IX, 2, Note a); thus in:

While France does not lack soldiers, she is in urgent need of good officers. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. I, 16.

Further secondary notions that may be implied in *while* are those of: 1) *provided (that)*, Dutch mits, as in:

The brothers, and other relatives, might do as they would, while they did not disgrace the name. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 5.

Richard was supposed to have all his desires gratified, while he attended to his studies. *ib.*, Ch. XI, 77.

2) *though*, as in: The Tories, while they extolled his princely virtues, had often lamented his neglect of the arts which conciliate popularity. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 18.

SHAKESPEARE has several instances of *while(s)* in the meaning of *till*; thus in:

We will keep ourself | Till supper-time alone: while then, God be with you! MACB., III, I, 44.

He shall conceal it | Whiles you are willing it shall come to note. *Twelfth Night*, IV, 3, 29.

VIII. *While* rarely, if ever, implies a secondary notion of cause, and is not accordingly, to be translated by *wijl*. The following is a doubtful example:

He was generous, she doubted not, as the most generous of his sex; but while he was mortal there must be a triumph. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. L, 305.

26. What has been observed in 23 about the clauses opening with an adverbial adjunct containing a noun applies also to those whose opening word is an adverb. Compare, however, 3, Obs. ;). After most of these adverbs *that* is mostly dispensed with. It is especially the following which are more or less frequently used in a conjunctive function:

by then; e.g.: This evening late, by then the chewing flocks | Had ta'en their supper on the savoury herb. MILTON, *Comus*, 540.

Now was it eve by then Orpheus came | Into the hall. MORRIS, *Jason*, III, 503. Note. As a conjunctive adverb *by then* appears to be very rare.

directly; e.g.: Directly a man begins to sell his feeling for money, he's a humbug. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IV, 41.

Directly he was well started, I felt, somehow, that the audience was very hostile. Mrs. WARD, *Marc.*, III, 217.

immediately, e.g.: i. She had left the room immediately that breakfast was over. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. V, 41.

ii. Immediately the maid had departed, little Clare deliberately exchanged night attire for that of day. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. IV, 21.

The book will be published immediately peace is concluded. GRAPH.

now; e.g.: i. Now that we are alone, I will impart to thee the reason of my going. WASH. IRV.

Now that the absolute moment of parting had come, the girls could not speak lest the tears should come and choke them. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. XXXV, 597.

ii. The public temper will soon get to a momentary heat, now the question of Reform has set in. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLVI, 339.

The idea of Marner's money kept growing in vividness, now the want of it had become immediate. *id.*, *Sil. Marner*, Ch. IV, 30.

Note. As most of the above examples show, the relation of time indicated by these clauses is sometimes largely mixed with that of causality.

once; e.g.: I. Once that she had begun to cry for she hardly knew what, she could not leave off for crowding thoughts she knew too well. HARDY, *Mad. Crowd*, Ch. LVI, 461.

I expect the poor old gentry felt too lonely to stop, once that dear Miss Halcyone was gone. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXIII, 195.

ii. Once you over-educate a girl, you can do nothing with her. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 139.

Once he accepted an acquaintance, he was graciously pleased to thaw. RUDY KIPL., *W. W. Winkie*.

Once grasp this fact, and you will cease to be at the mercy of phrases ... Once begin to take the teaching of English composition seriously in all our schools and universities, and our teachers will soon train themselves. *Times*, *Educ. Sup.* 29.9, 1918 (KRUIS., *Handbk.* 1, § 223).

Note. Like the purely adverbial *once* (Ch. VIII, 73), the conjunctive adverbial *once* represents the matter spoken about as an accomplished fact. In generalizing statements the relation implied by the subordinate clause is rather one of condition than of time. When the latter contains an imperative, the head-clause opens with *and* (Ch. X, 4, b).

since; e.g.: i. The jealous o'erworn widow and herself, | Since that our brother dubbed them gentlewomen, | Are mighty gossips in this monarchy. SHAK., *Rich. III*, I, 1, 82.

Since that your worships have made me a rogue, I hope I shall have my money again. FARQUHAR, *Rec. Of.*, V, 6, (342).

"I haven't seen 'ee, ye know, for four years." — "Not since that Reuben went away." M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XIV.

ii. It is ten hours since I had anything to eat. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 109. What a part of confidante has that poor teapot played, ever since the kindly plant was introduced among us. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXXII, 347.

Note a) Save, perhaps, for some dialects, the use of *that* after *since* is now obsolete.

β) The adverbial notion implied in *since* is not unfrequently emphasized by *ever*. See the last of the above examples.

γ) For discussion of the different meanings of *since* in temporal clauses, and of the variable tenses and aspects of the predicate in the latter, see Ch. L, 131 f; Ch. LI, 9, 11, 22, d.

δ) *Since* is contracted from Middle English *sithens* or *sithence*, in which *s* or *ce* is the suffix of the adverbial genitive added to an earlier *sithen*. *Sithen* was often abbreviated to *sith* or *sin*. In Old-English we find *sifþan*, with many variants, which stands for *sifþam*. This latter form answers in every respect to the German *seit dem*.

In Early Modern-English instances of *sithence* (*sithens*) are rare, but *sith* occurs frequently enough; mostly, however, as a causal conjunction. ALDIS WRIGHT, *Bible Word-Book*, s. v. *sith*; FRANZ, *Shakespeare's Grammar*, § 559.

i. But, laire Fidessa, sithens fortunes guile, | Or enimies powre, hath now captived you, | Returne from whence ye came. SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, I, IV, 51.

Which I held my duty speedily to acquaint you withal; sithence, in the loss that may happen, it concerns you something to know it. SHAK., *All's Well*, I, 3, 124.

ii. Something have you heard | Of Hamlet's transformation; so call it, | Sith
nor the exterior nor the inward man | Resembles that it was. SHAK., HAMLET,
II, 2, 6 (The folios have *since not*.)

Therefore, as I live, saith the Lord God, I will prepare thee unto blood, and
blood shall pursue thee: sith thou hast not hated blood, even blood shall
pursue thee. BIBLE, EZEK., XXXV, 6.

27. The conjunctives whose last member is the conjunction *as*, were originally used in comparing two (groups of) persons or things as to a certain phenomenon, state, or quality, each word having its full meaning; but they have long been used as a kind of unit with the idea of comparison thrown into the background. In other words: originally the first *as* or *so* + adjective or adverb belonged to the head-clause, while the second *as* introduced the subordinate clause; now the whole word-group is often found to form an integrant part of the latter alone. Compare *This state of things lasted as long as the war continued* with *As long as the war continued, the carrying out of such a project could not be thought of*.

Instead of the first *as* we often find *so*, sometimes without marking a different idea, but sometimes implying the blending of a relation of time with other adverbial relations. See STOF., Intensives and Down-Toners, 81, ff.; STORM, Eng. Phil.², 697. The following combinations with *as* are more or less frequently found to introduce adverbial clauses of time:

as (or *so*) *long as*; e.g.: i. * As long as the general spirit of the administration was mild and popular, they were willing to allow some latitude to their sovereign. MAC., HIST., I, Ch. I, 33.

She walked away looking very scornful and dignified as long as he could see her. M. E. FRANCIS, THE MANOR FARM, Ch. XI.

** As long as he is silent, he is not offensive. THACK., PEND., II, Ch. VII, 71.
The sort of work is quite indifferent to me as long as it brings in money. EDNA LYALL, HARDY NORS., Ch. XII, 101.

ii. * So long as the poor Baroness lived, I did not feel that I had the right to come between you. DOR. GER., ETERN. WOM., Ch. III.

So long as men believe that women will forgive anything, they will do anything. SARAH GRAND, HEAV. TWINS, I, 120.

** How late you are! Well! never mind, so long as you are come. DICK., CHRISTM. CAR., III, 57.

So long as his friend was enjoying himself, how should he be discontented? THACK., VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. VI, 55.

I care not, for my part, if you are tedious, so long as you are earnest. LYTTON, MY NOVEL, I, VII, Ch. I, 439.

Note α) In the examples marked with ** the relation of time is distinctly mixed with that of another adverbial relation, mostly one of condition.

β) In SHAKESPEARE there are but three instances of *as long as*, and twelve of *so long as*. In the Authorized Version, on the other hand, the instances of *as long as* far outnumber those of *so long as*. The same preference of *as long as* to *so long as* is observed in the writers of the eighteenth century.

as often as; e.g.: As often as she opened her lips to mention the name of her present employer, a sort of inexplicable numbness paralysed them into silence. DOR. GERARD, ETERN. WOM., Ch. XXII.

Note. SHAKESPEARE prefers *so oft as* to *as oft as*. According to STOFFEL (Intens. & Down-ton., 82 ff) the Authorized version has four instances of *as oft(en) as*, none of *so oft(en) as*.

as (or *so*) *soon as*; e.g.: i. If that is the case, we will unfurnish this house, and, as soon as you please, go back to Brompton Hall. MARRYAT, Olla Podrida.

English common sense will, however, thwart these amiable attempts to make mischief, as soon as the English public realize the nature and the origin of the incitements addressed to them. Times.

ii. Natural love in brutes is much more violent than in rational creatures, but so soon as the wants of the young cease, the mother withdraws her fondness. ADDISON, Spect., CXX.

So soon as they arrived at the princely mansion of Boteler, the Lady Emma craved permission to retire to her chamber. SCOTT, Wav., App., Ch. V, 17 b. So soon as all was right again, I determined that I would hang up my pictures. MARRYAT, Olla Podrida.

The next day, so soon as Mrs. Rashleigh's carriage had driven off, he rang the big bell at her front gate. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XI, 187.

Note. SHAKESPEARE uses only *so soon as* as a conjunctive of time, the Authorized Version only *as soon as*. The latter is also the ordinary formula in the 18th century. From the beginning of the 19th century *so soon as* seems to have received renewed favour at the hands of writers, perhaps owing to the influence of WALTER SCOTT, whose language is known to have been strongly tinged with SHAKESPEARE'S idiom. See STOF., Intens & Down-toners, 85 ff.

So soon as is, presumably, preferred by most writers when a causal relation makes itself felt. Compare *As soon as I saw him, I took aim at him* with *So soon as I saw his face, all my fears vanished*.

so surely as; e.g.: So surely as she came into the room, however, Martin feigned to fall asleep. DICK., Chuz., Ch. IV, 23 a.

So surely as I looked towards her, did I see that eager visage. . . . intent on mine. id., Cop., Ch. XXIX, 214 a.

So surely as they raised their voices, the old man got quite blithe and loud, and so surely as they stopped, his vigour sank again. id., Christm. Car., III, 65.

Note. *As surely as* is not, apparently, used in this function.

28. The word-group *what time* is now rarely met with: it is least uncommon in continuative clauses (31). Instances are more frequent in Early Modern English. FRANZ, Shak. Gram., § 554. Anm. I.

Two such I saw, what time the labour'd ox | In his loose traces from the furrow came. MILTON, Comus, 291.

29. Adverbial clauses of time are often incomplete, especially such as are introduced by *when*, *while*, *till*, *once*, *as soon as*; e.g.:

i. He had been married when a child. Mac., Hist. of Eng.

If a man was great while living, he becomes tenfold greater when dead. CARL., Hero Worsh., Lect., I, 23.

ii. We got acquainted with miss while on a visit in Gloucestershire. SHER., Riv., I, 1.

Let me mention another case while upon that matter. HUXL., Darwiniana, Ch. XI, 351.

While very young, I commenced the study of medicine under a medical brother-in-law. id., Lect. and Es., Autobiog., 6 b.

iii. I lose most of my fortune if I marry without my aunt's consent till of age. *SHER., Riv., I, 2.*

The rule has been for the champion to win his title young, and keep it till old, or at least middle-aged. *Manch. Guard., 2/12, 1927, 421 d.*

iv. Once in his own place, he will show the world what he is capable of. *BESANT, All Sorts, Ch. XXV, 178.*

v. Mr. Barnabas came as soon as sent for. *FIELD., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. XIII, 32.*

30. The particulars of time indicated by the clause are sometimes referred to in the head-clause by correlative adverbs. This practice, once common, was, however, unusual already in Early Modern English, and may be regarded as almost obsolete in Present-day English. *FRANZ, Shak. Gram.², § 554, Anm. 3.*

When that Aprille with his shoures sote | The droghte of Marche hath perced to the rote | ... Than longen folk to goon on pilgrimages. *CHAUC., Cant., A, 1-12.*

And when this hail some heat from Hermia felt, | So he dissolv'd, and showers of oaths did melt. *SHAK., Mids., I, 1, 245.*

As long as I kept my daily tour to the hill to look at, so long also I kept up the vigour of my design. *DEFOE, Rob. Crus. (STORM, Eng. Phil., 697).*

When land is gone and money's spent, | Then learning is most excellent. *G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. III, 193.*

When the union of the sexes first takes place, then an indissoluble marriage has been entered upon, whether or not it has been preceded by any ceremony. *Stead's Annual for 1906, 31a.*

31. Continuative clauses of time are introduced by:

a) *when*; e.g.: It is good to be children sometimes, and never better than at Christmas, when its mighty Founder was a child himself. *DICK., Christm. Car., III, 70.*

The whole nation was jubilant; when, like a bolt from the blue, news arrived of a serious reverse. *ONIONS, Advanc. Eng. Synt., § 14.*

b) the word-group *what time*; e.g.: There were ... veterans who had followed on the heels of the cavalry that occupied Cairo in '82, what time Arabi Pasha called himself king. *RUDY. KIPL., Light, Ch. II, 19.*

The voice was the voice of the man who had told her the tale of his doings in the park, what time he looked to kick the world before him. *ib., Ch. XI, 152.*

c) compounds of *where*, chiefly *whereat* and *where (upon)*; e.g.: Topper answered that a bachelor was a wretched outcast, who had no right to express an opinion on the subject, whereat Scrooge's niece's sister blushed. *DICK., Christm. Car., III, 68.*

They brought a little vase containing coins, the which the member of the Gentlemanly Interest jingled, as if he were going to conjure. Whereat they said how droll, how cheertul, what a flow of spirits! *id., Chuz., Ch. XXXV, 280 b.*

Dominee Van Schaick sung a Latin hymn in honour of St. Nicholas, whereupon the goblin threw himself up into the air like a ball. *WASH. IRV., Storm-Ship (STOF., Handl. I, 89).*

d) word-groups consisting of a relative pronoun preceded by a preposition, chiefly *after which*, *at which*, *during which*, *(upon) which*; e.g.: Betty had now lived three years in this dangerous situation, during which she had escaped pretty well. *FIELD., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. XVIII, 52.*

Hans van Pelt screwed his mouth closer together, and said nothing; upon which some shook their heads, and others shrugged their shoulders. *WASH. IRV., Storm-Ship (STOF., Handl. I, 85).*

Poor Joe's panic lasted for two or three days; during which he did not visit the house. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 26.

f) word-groups consisting of a preposition + conjoint relative pronoun; e.g.: One of my grandfather's executors ... assured Mr. Bowling ... that a day should be appointed after the funeral for examining the papers of the deceased, in presence of all his relations; till which time every desk and cabinet in the house should remain close sealed. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. IV, 21.

Note. The preposition *at* seems to be suppressed for the sake of the metre in: Her clothes spread wide; | And, mermaid-like, awhile they bore her up: | Which time she chanted snatches of old tunes. SHAK., Hamlet, IV, 7, 179.
g) the word-group *since when*. Two years ago I used your soap, since when I have used no other. PUNCH.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF CAUSALITY.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF CAUSE, REASON, OR GROUND.

32. As the relations of cause, reason, or ground are not clearly discriminated by ordinary speakers and writers, the same conjunctives are used for all three.
33. The conjunctives of cause, reason, or ground are the following: a) conjunctions, viz.: *as, because, lest, that*; b) prepositions used as conjunctions, more or less regularly coupled with *that*, viz.: *by, for, in*; c) adverbial adjuncts used as conjunctions, viz.: 1) containing a noun: *by reason, for fear, in respect, more by token*, mostly followed by *that*, 2) containing an adverb: *now, since, withal*, often followed by *that*, 3) consisting of a participle absolute (Ch. XX): *being, considering, seeing*, often followed by *that*; d) containing an adverb followed by *as*, viz.: *forasmuch as, inasmuch as, whereas*.
34. *As* is chiefly used when it is assumed that the cause, reason, or ground of what is expressed in the head-clause, is obvious or well-known to the person spoken to, and needs, therefore, only to be stated in passing. As the head-clause is the weightiest element of the communication, it has mostly back-position. See WEBST., Dict., s. v. *because*.
- i. As my eldest son was bred a scholar, I determined to send him to town, where his abilities might contribute to our support and his own. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. III, (246).
As Lydia is so obstinate against him, perhaps my son may have better success. SHER., Riv., I, 2, (222).
As she had always received six per cent. in Ireland, she would not hear of a smaller interest; and had warned me, as I was a commercial man, on coming to town, to look out for some means by which she could invest her money at that rate at least. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 58.
- ii. My eldest son was bred at Oxford, as I intended him for the learned professions. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. I.
With your permission I will enter into my history, as it may prove a warning

to others who will not remember the old proverb of 'Let well alone.' MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

They have now quitted a school, near Portman Square, to which my wife insisted upon my sending them, as it was renowned for finishing (sc. the education of) young ladies. *ib.*

35. Obs. I. The rise of *as* as a causal conjunction may become intelligible by looking at such a sentence as *As I have appointed him, so I may dismiss him at any time*, which answers the twofold purpose of comparing two facts and representing them as cause and effect. To ensure the ascendancy of the idea of comparison, the adverb *so* is placed in the head-clause; when, on the other hand, the idea of causality is foremost in the speaker's thoughts, this adverb is dropped: *As I have appointed him, I may dismiss him at any time*.

Once *as* being used to express causality blended with comparison, the way was paved for extending its employment to cases in which causality alone was to be denoted. For a long time, however, *as* was used as a causal conjunction only when there was a secondary idea of comparison, i.e. only in connection with the correlative adverb *so*. Thus in SHAKESPEARE there is not a single instance of causal *as* without *so*, and instances do not become frequent before the middle of the 18th century. See STOF., E. S., XXVIII; O. E. D., s. v. *as*, B, I, 3, *b*. Here follow some instances of causal *as* . . . *so*:

As a madman's epistles are no gospels, so it skills not much when they are delivered. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, V, 295.

This cast of mind, as it is generally very innocent in itself, so it renders his conversation highly agreeable. ADDISON, *Spectl.*, CVI.

Women of her airy temper, as they seldom think before they act, so they rarely give us any light to guess at what they mean. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 2, (209).

As he had never any intention to deceive, so he never suspected such a design in others. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. III, 4.

My children, the offspring of temperance, as they were educated without softness, so they were at once well-formed and healthy. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I. As they occupy the leisure part of life, so should they occupy the leisure part of education. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 31 *b*.

II. There is also a relation of cause (reason, or ground) implied in a clause in which *as* is placed after an opening present participle. The causal force does not, however, lie in *as*, but follows from the participle-construction (Ch. XX, 10, *b*). See also KRUISINGA in *English Studies*, IX, VI, 200.

The insidious advice, agreeing as it did with what his own terrors suggested, was readily received. MAC., *Clive*, (518 *b*).

Nor was the testimony of Lord Justice Rigby less important, showing as it did, that the officers of the army are not visionary philanthropists. *Times*. Living as he has done for many years in the country, he, like many other Manchester businessmen, divided his time and his interests between the city where he worked and the country where all his leisure was spent. *Manch. Guard.*, 2/12, 1927, 422 *d*.

36. *Because* is the ordinary conjunction when it is assumed that the cause, reason, or ground of what is expressed by the head-clause is not obvious, or known to the person spoken to, and

requires to be expressly stated. As the subordinate clause is felt to be the weightiest member of the sentence, it mostly has back-position.

i. The crops failed because the season was dry. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 109.

He will succeed because he is in earnest. *ib.*, 109.

I love him because he is good. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 421.

Laura liked Pen because she saw scarcely anybody else at Fair Oaks except Doctor Portman and Captain Glanders, and because his mother constantly praised her Arthur, and because he was gentlemanlike, tolerably good-looking and witty, and because, above all, it was her nature to like somebody. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 169.

ii. Because you like a raw beef-steak and a pipe afterwards, you give yourself airs of superiority over people whose tastes are more dainty. *ib.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 265.

Because they are chiefly home-bred English, they say you have insight. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. III, 37.

The head-clause is to be supplied from the preceding question in the answers to riddles, as in:

Why are naughty boys like postage-stamps? — Because they are licked and put in the corner.

37. Obs. I. The clause opening with *because* would sometimes hardly admit of being placed before the head-clause, and may then be considered as continuative, *because* being in this case indistinguishable from *for*. Compare KRUISINGA, *Handbk.*⁴, § 1990.

I've never any pity for conceited people, because I think they carry their comfort about with them. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, V, Ch. IV, 307.

But let it not for an instant be doubted that they were nice, kind-hearted, well-behaved, and delightful girls. Because they were: they were not angels. BENNETT, *The Old Wives' Tale*, I, Ch. I, § 2.

II. In older English *because* may also be found to introduce adverbial clauses of purpose (55). According to the O. E. D., this use of the word is still common in dialects. See also WESTERN, *De Engelske Bitsætninger*, § 151, 1.

The splitting rocks cower'd in the sinking sands | And would not dash me with their ragged sides, | Because thy flinty heart, more hard than they, | Might in thy palace perish Margaret. SHAK., *Henry VI*, B, III, 2, 100.

III. In Early Modern English and archaically in Present-day English *because* is sometimes found followed by *that*; thus in:

Because that I familiarly sometimes | Do use you for my fool and chat with you. | Your sauciness will jest upon my love. SHAK., *Com. of Er.*, II, 2, 26. And the people repented them for Benjamin, because that the Lord had made a breach in the tribes of Israel. Bible, *Judges*, XXI, 15.

He could not be silent long, because that his trouble increased. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, (142).

Why fear? because that foster'd at thy court | I savour of thy — virtues? TEN., *Merl. & Viv.*, 38.

IV. In the language of illiterates *because* is often mutilated into *acause* and *cos*.

"Young boys have been smothered in chimneys before now" said another gentleman. — "That's *acause* they damped the straw afore they lit it in the

chimbley to make 'em come down agin," said Gamfield. DICK., O1. Twist, Ch. III, 37.

He always prints, I know, 'cos he learnt writin' from the large bills in the bookin' offices. id., PICKW. (FRANZ, E. S., XII).

38. *Lest* opens a clause expressing what is the subject of an apprehension and is, therefore, equivalent to because I (etc.) fear (or feared) that; thus in:

Now that the absolute moment of parting had come, the girls could not speak lest the tears should come and choke them. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. XXXV, 597.

I subsided in fearful blushes, lest I had taken too much notice of "the dress-maker." Mrs. CRAIK, Dom. Stor., I, Ch. IV, 241.

He carried a brown-paper parcel, which he tried to cover with his trencher, lest curious eyes might be about. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. I, 16.

Tom Smart ... (did) not stir, ... lest he should be seen. ib., Ch. I, 21.

The ship cautiously felt her way nearer, with engines slowed down and with lead going lest by chance the volcanic disturbance had thrown up some unexpected shoal. Times.

Note. When what is expressed by the clause is represented as a thing to be avoided or prevented, the relation of cause passes into that of purpose, and *lest* is equivalent to *that not* (56).

β) In the following example the clause opening with *lest* does not, apparently, convey any notion of apprehension, and the conjunction is, perhaps, best understood as a synonym of *because*.

Nor yet suppress the generous sigh, | Because his rival (sc. Pitt's rival) slumbers nigh; | Nor be thy *requiescat* dumb, | Lest it be said o'er Fox's tomb. SCOTT, Marm., Introd. to I, 129. (apparently = because it is said over Fox's tomb, which would be disapproved of by many.)

39. *That* appears as a weak representative of *because* in various shades of meaning. It is especially common after a comparative, whether or not preceded by *the*; e. g.:

i. But in these cases | We still have judgement here; that we but teach | Bloody instructions, which, being taught, return | To plague the inventor. SHAK., Macb., I, 7, 8.

Thou art a happy woman ... that ... thou canst bind such a victim to the horns of the altar. SCOTT, ABBOT, Ch. X, 94.

He unlocked the door, entered the apartment, and asked what he wanted, that he made so much noise. id., Redgauntlet, Ch. XXII, 519 a.

The girls could not speak lest the tears should come and choke them. It was not that they were about to part with him; that parting would only be for a month. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. XXXV, 597.

The strong beasts ... are looking mild reproach at him from between their blinkers, that he should crack his whip at them in that awful manner. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. I, 2.

All her (sc. Scotland's) sons and daughters think more highly of their country that Burns was of it. W. GUNNYON, Biographical Sketch (of Burns), 50.

ii. * It was a melancholy precaution, and the more melancholy that it was necessary. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXIV, 368.

The act was the bolder that he stood utterly alone. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. V, § 3.

The day seemed all the happier, all the more hopeful, that he knew this little

token of friendly sympathy was in his possession. W. BLACK., *The New Prince Fort.*, Ch. IX.

** He liked his wife better that she had owned to that passing feeling for Warrington. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVII, 389.

40. Obs. I. It is hardly necessary to observe that *because* takes the place of *that* when the causative relation is to be expressed more explicitly.

This worthy man found himself not the less attached to Pendennis, because the latter disliked port-wine at dinner. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 325.

II. Care should be taken not to confound adverbial clauses introduced by *that* with clauses introduced by the same conjunction that represent a prepositional object, such as:

Father, I thank thee that thou hast heard me. Bible, John, XI, 41 (= for hearing me.)

How grateful should I be that I have my own dear father always with me. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. I, 19.

41. Of the prepositional conjunctives only *in that* is at all in common, though literary use: the two others, *by that* and *for that* are now obsolete.
42. *By that* appears to have entirely disappeared from the language. (41) The O. E. D. (s. v. *by*, 36, b) registers two examples, one from TINDALE (dated 1526), and one from EARL NORTHAMPTON (dated 1606). The combination is not, apparently, used as a causal conjunctive by SHAKESPEARE. ALEX. SCHMIDT (*Shak. Lex.*) does not mention a single instance. Nor has WALDIS WRIGHT (*Bible Word-Book*), though commenting on *by that* as a conjunctive of time, found it in a causal function in the Bible.
- In that* exhibits a blending of the relations of cause and restriction (148); thus in:
- The courtesy of nations allows you my better, in that you are the first-born. SHAK., *As you like it*, I, 1, 42.
- I have sinned in that I have betrayed the innocent blood. Bible, Matth., XXVII, 4.
- When she had first become acquainted with Miss Amedroz, her conscience had not rebuked her in that she was deceiving her new friend. TROL., *Belt Est.*, Ch. XXI, 274.
- The empire would be only worse than the present one in that the devils of superstition and bigotry would be added to those of tyranny and rapine. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XVII, 84 b.
- The king's favourite was something like Mavis Clare in that she possessed genius. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 232.
- I was aware of joy in that the two sides were now levelled to ten men apiece. GISSING, *The Matador of the Five Towns*, 26.
- Te Wu was a typical Manchu in that he liked a quiet life and avoided strife. *Manch. Guard.*, 2/12, 1927, 434 b.
- The chapters are valuable in that they present an epitome of all science. *Acad. & Lit.*

For that, which appears to have been quite common in Early Modern English, is only occasionally met with in the latest English.

The other part reserved I by consent, | For that my sovereign liege was in my debt. SHAK., *Rich. II*, I, 1, 128.

Joseph begged them to have mercy upon him; for that he had been robbed and almost beaten to death. FIELD., JOS. ANDR., I, Ch. XII, 28.

Tom begged to be excused, for that he had particular business. id., TOM JONES, IV, Ch. X, 55.

And for that wine is dear, | We will be furnished with our own. COWPER, JOHN GILPIN.

With his last breath, he had told his attendants to throw him into a ditch like a dog, for that he was not fit to sleep in a Christian burial-ground. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. IV, 53.

For this high cause, and for that I know men, and know him to be the flower of men, I give myself to him. MER., RICH. FEV., Ch. XXIV, 178.

Dick showed Bessie the letter, and she abused him for that he had ever sent Torpenhow away and ruined her life. RUDY. KIPL., Light, Ch. VIII, 110.

In the following example *for that* and *because* are used alternately: At this, His Relations were sore amazed; not for that they believed that what he had said to them was true, but because they thought that some frenzy Distemper had got into his Head. BUNYAN, Pilg. Prog., (143).

43. Obs. 1. Early Modern English also has *for* without *that* to introduce a subordinate clause, the subordination appearing from the fact that the head-clause stands last (Ch. IX, 2, Note β), or is part of a subordinate complex. Occasional instances have been found in Late Modern English.

And, for our coffers ... are grown somewhat light, | We are enforced to farm our royal realm. SHAK., RICH. II, I, 4, 43.

Adams ... answered ... that nothing could be more convenient, for he had no other business to the great city. FIELD., JOS. ANDREWS, I, Ch. XVII, 48.

And, for they were so lonely, Clare | Would to these battlements repair. SCOTT, MARRI., VI, III.

And, for himself was of the greater state, | Being a king, he trusted his liege-lord | Would yield him this large honour all the more. TEN., GAR. AND LYN., 387.

For and *for that* appear alternately in: I hate him for he is a Christian, | But more for that in low simplicity | He lends out money gratis. SHAK., MERCHANTS, I, 3, 43.

II. Besides *for* and *for that*, Early Modern English has the pleonastic *for because*, and *for why*. The latter is considered by FRANZ (Shak. Gram.², § 560) to have been originally an elliptic question, which view is plausible enough, and is corroborated by the fact that in SHAKESPEARE, at least in some editions, it is followed by either a note of interrogation or a comma. The evidence adduced by W. A. WRIGHT (Bible Word-Book, s.v. *for why*) is, however, hardly in unison with it. *For why* does not occur in the Authorized Version.

And for because the world is populous, ... | I cannot do it. SHAK., RICH. II, V, 5, 3.

I weep for thee and yet no cause I have; | For why, thou left'st me nothing in thy will. id., PAS. PILGR., 138.

By myself have I sworn, saith the Lord, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son. Bible Gen., XXII, 16.

44. The conjunctive adverbial adjuncts containing a noun require little comment.

By reason that sometimes dropped *that* in Early Modern English, but regularly retains it now (O. E. D., s.v. *by*, 36, b); e.g.: i. He keeps himself
H. POUTSMA, I II.

a batchelor, by reason he was crossed in love by a perverse beautiful widow of the next county to him. STEELE, *Spect.*, II.

ii. Wine is scarce, by reason that it is prohibited. WHEELER, *Journ. Greece*, II, 203 (O. E. D., s. v. *by*, 36, *b*).

Note. In the same function for the reason *that*, as in: As I write this, she lives before me with more vividness than my father, for the reason that her character during my childhood . . . seemed to be a thousand times more vivid than his. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 35.

For fear that takes the place of *lest* in ordinary language (38). The omission of *that* is colloquial but very common (O. E. D., s. v. *fear*, 3, *b*). Instead of *that* the literary *lest* is sometimes placed after *for fear* (60). The relation of cause mostly passes into that of purpose, when what causes fear is still future. In that case *for fear (that)* is equivalent to *that not*; e. g.:

Wherefore up and act, nor shrink | For fear our solid aim be dissipated By frail successors. TEN., *Princ.*, III, 249.

Flashman released his prey, who rushed headlong under his bed again, for fear they should change their minds. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VI, 125.

More by token = especially because, is used only in dialects (O. E. D., s. v. *token*, 15, *b*); e. g.: I'd sooner have his father; he war an honest man, more by token he war no Protestant. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XIII, 226.

But I'll not look at the mare just at present; more by token I'm told she's not very civil to morning visitors. *ib.*, Ch. XV, 257.

In respect that is uncommon and literary; e. g.: To a bad clergyman this may be an advantage, in respect that it allows him to remain bad, and to grow worse with impunity. GLADSTONE, *Gleanings*, II, 350 (O. E. D. s. v. *respect*, 4, *c*).

45. Also the conjunctives containing an adverb require no more than a few words of comment.

For *now (that)* see 26.

Withal that appears to be uncommon, and purely literary; e. g.: And yet withal that dead his fathers were, | He needs must think, that quick the years pass by. MORRIS, *EARTHLY PAR.*, *The Proud King*, V.

Since is the typical conjunctive when it is assumed that the cause, reason, or ground of what is expressed by the head-clause is known to the reader, and need only be stated by way of reminder. It follows that it is often followed by *you*. It has practically the same area of incidence as *as* (34), from which it appears to differ only in being more literary; e. g.: i. * Since you say so, I must believe it. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 251.

Since you desire it, I will look into the matter. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 109.

Since you ask me what I wish, gentlemen, this is my answer. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

** Since these men could not be convinced, it was determined that they should be persecuted. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 59.

ii. She said God forbid she should not discharge the duty of a Christian, since the poor gentleman was brought to her house. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. XV, 38.

Mr. Tow-wouse sent to a clergyman to come and administer his good offices to the soul of poor Joseph, since the surgeon despaired of making any successful applications to his body. *ib.*, I, Ch. XIII, 32.

Citizens, indeed, were forced to defend themselves from violence, since there was no efficient protection of life or property. JOHN DENNIS, *Good Words*.

46. The participles absolute used by way of causal conjunctives are: *being that*, *save*, *perhaps*, for Scotch dialects, very rare; e. g.: Being that

I flow in grief, | The smallest twine may lead me. SHAK., Much ado, IV, 1, 251.

Sir John, you loiter here too long, being you are to take soldiers up in counties as you go. id., Henry IV, B, II, 1, 199.

And being we are, I perceive, going some considerable way together, I will give you an account of the whole of the matter. BUNYAN, Pilg. Prog. (FRANZ, Shak. Gram.², § 563).

Weel, I have fought once more in this old quarrel, though I admit I could not be so far *ben* as you lads, being that it was my point of duty to keep together our handful of horse. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. XLVIII, 126 b.

Note. Also *being as*, a variant of the above, seems to occur only in dialects; e.g.: Being as I was passing, I just thought I'd look in. JACOBS, Odd Craft, Ch. VI, 109.

considering that, with a secondary implication of restriction; e.g.: Considering that the world is so intricate, we are not to be surprised that science has progressed slowly. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 110.

He resolved to lie awake till the hour was past; and considering that he could no more go to sleep than go to Heaven, this was, perhaps, the wisest resolution in his power. DICK., Christm. Car., II, 26.

seeing that; e.g.: Now I know that thou fearest God, seeing thou hast not withheld thy son. Bible, Gen., XXII, 12.

As to my voice — how should my voice not change, seeing that it was the voice of a child when you last listened to it? WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. IV, 74.

John could not ask questions, seeing it was none of his business. MAR. CRAWF., Lonely Parish, Ch. II, 18.

Seeing that we refuse to allow her (sc. Ireland) to govern herself, we are bound to give her the Catholic university she demands. Rev. of Rev., No. 196. 342 a.

Note a) *Seeing that* has rather a restrictive than a causal function in: He had been in his earlier years a poor man as regarded his income — very poor, seeing that he was an earl. TROL., Small House, I, Ch. XII, 142.

β) It has no conjunctive function in: The Kurhaus guests, seeing that she was alone and ailing, made some attempts to be kindly to her. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. VII, 26.

47. The causal conjunctives with *as* exhibit a more or less distinct blending with other adverbial relations, notably that of restriction (144). An exception must be made with *whereas*, which is used to denote two markedly distinct relations, viz.: one of cause (reason, or ground), and one of attendant circumstances (123).

Forasmuch as, according to the O. E. D. somewhat formal or archaic; e.g.: Forasmuch as the thirst is intolerable, the patient may be indulged. WEBST., Dict., s. v. *for*.

For that Woodman and that Farmer, though they work unceasingly, work silently, and no one heard them as they went about with muffled tread: the rather forasmuch as to entertain any suspicion that they were awake was to be atheistical and traitorous. DICK., Two Cities, I, Ch. I, 16.

Note a) In early use occasionally with ellipsis of the second *as*; rarely with substitution of *that*." O. E. D.

β) *Forasmuch as*, a variant of the above, is now obsolete, and appears at all times to have been unusual. The following is the only example that has come to hand: And Jesus said unto him, | This day is salvation come to this house, forasmuch as he also is a son of Abraham. Bible, Luke, XIX, 9.

Inasmuch as, common only in literary style; e. g.: He knows that, *inasmuch as* I have told him. MASON, Eng, Gram.³⁴, § 597.

I am ready to accept your proposal *inasmuch as* I believe it is the best you can offer. WEBST., Dict., s. v. *because*.

"The wery thing," said Mr. Weller, who was a party interested, *inasmuch as* he ardently longed to see the sport. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 163.

Note. In its primarily restrictive function *inasmuch as* is now uncommon. This function is indubitable in: A few years later than that she was left quite alone, except *inasmuch as* she was left with her mother. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. II, 18.

Whereas, as a purely causal conjunction used only in legal style. It introduces the preamble of an Act of Parliament, giving the reason or motive of the enactment, or the evil to be remedied by the provisions that follow; e. g.: Whereas it is expedient that, without impairing or restricting the supreme authority of Parliament, an Irish legislature should be created for such purposes in Ireland as in this act mentioned. Be it therefore enacted by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same as follows: [etc.]. Preamble to the Home Rule Bill of Gladstone.

48. Adverbial clauses of cause (reason, or ground) are often incomplete, especially such as are introduced by *as* or *because*; thus in:

i. Our remaining horse was utterly useless, as wanting an eye. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XIV.

Our guest quits us as not being hospitable enough. THACK., EsM., III, Ch. XI, 422.

ii. The Sophists were hated by some because powerful, by others because shallow. LEWES, Hist. of Philos., 114.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF CONSEQUENCE AND INFERENCE.

49. Adverbial clauses of consequence and inference are always continuative. Thus *It was raining cats and dogs, so that we could not go out* = *It was raining cats and dogs, consequently we could not go out*. It is clear that these clauses are represented in co-ordination by the sentences mentioned in XII, 1, *a*, while those of cause (reason and ground) are represented by the sentences mentioned in XII, 1, *b*.
50. The conjunctives used to introduce adverbial clauses of consequence and inference are: *a*) the conjunction *that*; *b*) the conjunctive adverbs *whence* and *wherefore*; *c*) the adverbial adjuncts used as conjunctions *insomuch*, *so much so*, and *so*, regularly followed by *that*.
51. *That* is used: *a*) to introduce a clause stating what would be the effect if the import of the head-clause were (had been) reversed. Thus *He loved no man that he should offer him a share* (G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. II, 13) may be interpreted thus: *His loving any man would have induced him to offer him a share*. Possibly the sentence must be understood to mean

He loved no man so much (well enough) that he offered him a share, in which case it would offer an instance of an antecedent *so (much)* being absent before a clause stating the consequence by which the intensity of an action becomes apparent (132).

b) to introduce a clause stating an effect that is to account for a statement being made or a question being asked.

i. I doubt he be not well, that he comes not home. SHAK., *Merry Wives*, I, 4, 43.

There is something in the wind, that we cannot get in. id., *Com. of Er.*, III, 1, 69.

ii. Tell us what hath chanc'd to-day, | That Cæsar looks so sad. id., *Jul. Cæsar*, I, 2, 216.

Are the duns at you, that you look so glum? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIX, 207.
Have you nothing to do, that you are sitting there idle? G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. III, 23.

Note. In Early Modern English *that* is also met with at the head of other clauses of consequence. See ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*, § 283; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 571.

Have you not made an universal shout, | That Tiber trembled underneath her banks? SHAK., *Jul. Cæsar*, I, 1, 45.

"The victory fell on us." — "Great Happiness!" — "That now | Sweno, the Norways' king, craves composition." id., *Macb.*, I, 2, 58.

52. The conjunctive adverbs *whence* and *wherefore* belong to the literary language alone.

Whence is found at the head of a clause containing an inference, and answers to the co-ordinative *hence* (Ch. XII, 3). As in the latter, the original local meaning is often only vaguely discernible in it (13, a); e.g.: This bird (sc. the shrike) has a strong bill toothed at the end, and feeds on small birds and insects, whence it is known as the butcher-bird. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *shrike*.

This god had a goose for his ensign; whence it is that some learned men pretend to deduce his original from Jupiter Capitolinus. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, II, (61 a).

The Colonel's lawyers informed him that his brother-in-law had effected a heavy insurance upon his life, whence it was probable that he had been raising money to discharge debts. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 371.

Wherefore introduces clauses representing an action as the result of a resolution, and is, therefore, of a more limited application than its co-ordinative representative *therefore* (Ch. XII, 3), e.g.: But he couldn't replenish it (sc. the fire), for Scrooge kept the coalbox in his own room. Wherefore the clerk put on his white comforter. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 5.

For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day and hallowed it. Bible, Ex., XX, 11.

53. The conjunctives *insomuch that*, *so much so that*, and *so that* have the same vagueness as the co-ordinative conjunctions mentioned in Ch. XII, 3. The relation of degree implied in *so* is distinctly apparent only in *so much so that*. It is very vague, or quite absent in *insomuch that*, and *so that*. As is shown by the punctuation the whole of these word-groups belongs to the

subordinate clause. When *so* is separated from *that*, the former going with the head-clause, the latter with the subordinate clause, the meaning of the sentence is materially changed (114, 132). Only *so that* is used in ordinary spoken and written English; the two others belong to the literary style alone.

Insomuch that: She was of a spare and straight shape, this young lady, insomuch that her garments appeared to be in constant danger of sliding off those sharp pegs, her shoulders. DICK., *Crick.*, I, 12.

After this we learned every day of the capture and of the destruction of our rich ships in the narrow waters above-named, insomuch that we were forced to abandon this route. WALT. BESANT, *LONDON*, I, 34.

Between spelling and pronunciation there is a mutual attraction, insomuch that when spelling no longer follows pronunciation, but is hardened into orthography, the pronunciation begins to move towards spelling. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 169.

So much so that: Her heart smote her on account of her ingratitude towards the Curate: so much so, that one afternoon . . . she . . . shook hands with him with rather a blushing face. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVI, 162.

Aldous silently assented; so much so that Hallin repented. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, III, 227.

So that: Let her be what she will, these ugly women will bring children, you know; so that we must prevent the marriage. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, IV, Ch. III, 208.

That odious Acres is to be in Bath to-day: so that, I protest, I shall be teased out of all spirits! SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (217).

In the centre of the chamber candlesticks were set, also brass, but polished, so that they shone like gold. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. I, 4.

Note. The use of *so as* instead of *so that* is vulgar.

If you can find any flaw in my title, so as it may go to the next heir. STEELE, *Tatler*, 66 (*Storm*, *Eng. Phil.*², 804).

I told him off so as he could hardly look me in the face. COMPT. MACK., *Sin. Street*, 897 (*Zachrisson*, *Gram. Changes in Pres.-day Eng.*, 59).

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.

54. Adverbial clauses of purpose open with: a) conjunctions: *because*, *lest*, *that*; b) the preposition *for* used as a conjunction, mostly followed by *that*; c) adverbial adjuncts used as conjunctions: 1) containing a noun: *for fear*, *on purpose*, *in order*, *to the end*, *to the intent*, all of them regularly followed by *that*, except *for fear*, which mostly appears without this conjunctive link (44); 2) containing the adverb *so*, regularly followed by *that*.
55. *Because* is now no more used to introduce an adverb. clause of purpose, except in the language of the illiterate. In Early Modern English it is found in this function frequently enough. See O. E. D., s. v. *because*. B, 2; W. ALDIS WRIGHT, *Bible Word-Book*, s. v. *because*; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 573.

The splitting rocks cover'd in the sinking sands | And would not dash me with their ragged sides, | Because thy flinty heart, more hard than they, | Might in thy palace perish Margaret. SHAK., *Henry VI*, B, III, 2, 99.

56. *Lest* opens clauses stating what is apprehended and will, or should, therefore, be avoided. It is common only in the higher literary style. Compare 38; also Ch. XLIX, 36, Obs. II.

They set a strong guard, lest any one should escape. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 113.

I will not make a noise, lest I should disturb you. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 423.

Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die. Bible, Gen., III, 3.

Let the boy go with us, lest he prove a traitor, and alarm the Colonna. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. I, 13.

Lord God of Hosts, be with us yet, | Lest we forget, lest we forget. RUDY. KIPL., Recessional.

57. I. In Early Modern English *lest* is sometimes followed by *that*; thus in: Hence; lest that the infection of his fortune take | Like hold on thee. SHAK., Lear, IV, 6, 238.

And leave us, Publius; lest that the people, | Rushing on us, should do your age some mischief. id., Jul. Cæs., III, 1, 92.

And you shall milk the tiny cow, | Lest that she should go dry. Nursery Story (O. E. D.).

II. In the older writers we sometimes find *least* as a secondary form of *lest*. *Least* may have arisen on the false assumption that *lest* is due to *least*. *Lest*, however, represents the Old English *lēst* *lēst*, and has, therefore, no connection with the superlative *least*. See SKEAT, Dict.; O. E. D.; JESP. Neg., 42.

But least you should not understand me well, | ... I would detain you here some month or two. SHAK., Merch., III, 2, 7. (Folio Edition.)

Love while thou art young, lest thou be disdained when thou art olde. THOMAS LODGE, Rosalynde (Pref. to 'As you like it' in Clar. Press Ed., 29.)

III. Clauses opening with *lest* sometimes imply other relations than that of purpose. As has been shown in 38, there is not unfrequently a relation of cause (reason, or ground). Various secondary notions may be traced in:

i. She brought him a little thick Dutch Bible, ... as a sword to fight the powers of darkness; and lest that might not be sufficient, the housekeeper gave him the Heidelberg catechism by way of dagger. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl., (120). (suggestive of condition; thus also in the two following examples):

He'd walk the journey in two days. If he was footsore and couldn't walk, I sent him, in the letter he got, the money to ride, lest he should have none of his own to spare. DICK., Hard Times, III, Ch. V, 115 a.

Charlotte's fist was by no means a light one; but lest it should not be effectual in calming Oliver's wrath, Mrs. Sowerberry plunged into the kitchen, and assisted to hold him with one hand, while she scratched his face with the other. id., Ol. Twist., Ch. VI, 69.

ii. Pellam the king ... fail'd of late | To send his tribute; wherefore Arthur call'd | His treasurer, one of many years, and spake, | "Go thou with him and him and bring it to us, | Lest we should set one truer on his throne." TEN., Balin & Balan, 7. (suggestive of a clause opening with *or else*.)

iii. It so happened that I had that morning taken the miniature I had found in the fatal field, from the secret place in which I usually kept it, in order more closely to examine it, lest any more convincing proof of its owner ...

might be discovered by a minuter investigation. LYTTON, *Pelham*, 364 (T.) (WESTERN, *Beibl. zur Anglia*, XXXVIII, I, 9) (suggestive of *to satisfy myself whether*.)

58. *That* opens clauses stating what end is compassed. When the clause contains a negative, it denotes what will or should be avoided, without, however, conveying the secondary idea that it is matter of apprehension. *That not* is not, therefore, equivalent to *lest* as described in 56. In ordinary language *that* as a final conjunction is as uncommon as its Dutch equivalent *op dat*. Compare Ch. XLIX, 36.

We sow that we may reap. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 112.

He labours that he may become rich. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³¹, § 423.

That he might not be seen by the crew, he took out his handkerchief and covered his face and his stars. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*.

The devoted servants were ordered from his presence that they might not see him die. *Il. Lond. News*.

59. *For (that)* is occasionally met with in Early Modern English to open an adverbial clause of purpose. In this function it is now quite obsolete.

i. For that our kingdom's earth should not be soil'd | With that dear blood which it hath fostered; | And for our eyes do hate the dire aspect | Of civil wounds plough'd up with neighbours' sword; | And for we think the eagle-winged pride | Of sky-aspiring and ambitious thoughts, ... set on you | To wake our peace, ... | Therefore, we banish you our territories. SHAK., *Rich.* II, I, 3, 125. (Observe that *for* which opens the second and third clauses stands without *that* (3), and indicates a causal relation.)

ii. Here stand we both, and aim we at the best: | And, for the time shall not seem tedious, | I'll tell thee what befell me on a day. *id.*, *Henry VI, C.* III, I, 9.

60. As to the adverbial conjunctives of purpose it may be observed that the conjunction *that* (or *lest*) with which they may or may not be furnished, is sometimes more or less detached from the rest which is then felt to belong to the head-clause. Compare 23, and 68; also Ch. XLIX, 36. When this break is made, the clause introduced by *that* (or *lest*) is to be apprehended as a subordinate statement standing by way of apposition to the preceding noun. When they are absent, the phrase goes with the subordinate clause. It is especially the following phrases that deserve mention: *to the end that*, frequent enough in Early Modern English, but now uncommon; e.g.: Dearly beloved brethren, the Scripture moveth us in sundry places ... that we should ... confess (our sins) with an humble, lowly, penitent and obedient heart; to the end that we may obtain forgiveness for the same. *Book of Com. Pray.*
for fear (that or lest) implies the same as *lest* as described in 56, but is more common in ordinary language; e.g.: i. I hesitate to come frequently, for fear that I should offend him. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXII, 213.
ii. Let us hide the brandy, for fear he may drink it all up. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2310.
We put the milk on the shelf, for fear the cat might get at it. *ib.*, § 117.

She sent me after you, for fear you should offend Mr. Pendennis. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXV, 376.

Father ... locked us out, for fear we should set ourselves afire or fall out of window. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 41.

iii. For fear lest day should look their shames upon, | They willfully themselves exile from light. SHAK., *Mids.*, III, 2, 385.

It was not allowed to any one ever to see the same number twice, presumably for fear lest the number should remember that he was a man and a brother. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. I, 2.

Note. The construction without either *that* or *lest* is the usual one; that with *lest* is uncommon and purely literary.

to the intent (that), literary and unusual in Present-day English; e.g.:

i. For the Lord had appointed to defeat the good counsel of Ahithophel to the intent that the Lord might bring evil upon Absalom. Bible, *Sam. B.*, XVII, 14.

Business disposed of, Mr. Swiveller was inwardly reminded of its being nigh dinner-time, and to the intent that his health might not be endangered by long abstinence, dispatched a message to the nearest eating-house, requiring an immediate supply of boiled beef and greens for two. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. VIII, 29*b*.

In brief, this Henry | Stirs up your land against you to the intent | That you may lose your English heritage. TEN., *Queen Mary*, V, I, (638*a*).

ii. Being praised, he (sc. the peacock) will presently set up his tail, chiefly against the sun, to the intent you may the better behold the beauty thereof. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXII, 209.

in order that; e.g.: I should be glad to fix what has brought us to Bath, in order that we may lie a little consistently. SHER., *Riv.*, II, I, (224).

He now ordered the doors to be thrown open, in order that all who came to pay their duty, might see the ceremony. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 43.

I was sent to stay with my aunt Prue in London, in order that I might attend one of the Schools of Art. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. II, 54.

Petersburg ... was the window which Peter the Great made, in order that Russia should look out upon Europe. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 373*b*.

on purpose that; e.g.: I may be placed where I am, on purpose that I may render essential help to the cause of God. SPURGEON, *Serm.* XXIII (O. E. D., II, *b*).

so that, the commonest of the conjunctives of purpose in ordinary language; e.g.: They upset buckets and benches, so that he might break his shins over them. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

It has been the wish of the present writer, all through this story, ... only to hint at the existence of wickedness in a light, easy and agreeable manner, so that nobody's fine feelings may be offended *ib.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 316.

I left two sums just a little wrong, so that Miss Slater shouldn't get suspicious BARRY PAIN, *Miss Slater*

Note *a*) Sometimes a clause introduced by *so that* may be understood to convey a relation of either consequence or purpose; thus, for example, that in: File = a string or wire, on which papers and documents are strung for preservation and reference. In recent use extended to various appliances for holding papers, so that they can be easily referred to. O. E. D., s.v. *file*, 3. (The use of *can* suggests a function of consequence, *may* being the typical auxiliary in clauses of purpose.)

β) The vulgar language has *so as for so that*; thus in: I should like Tom to be a bit of a scholar, so as he might be up to the tricks of these fellows as talk fine and write with a flourish. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. II, 3.

"What have you done to your neck?" — "Oh; my wife put that knot in it, so's I'd remember to get some things from town." P u n c h.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF CONDITION AND HYPOTHESIS.

61. Adverbial clauses of condition or hypothesis fall into two groups: a) such as express an idea of mere condition or hypothesis, with *if* as the typical conjunctive; b) such as express the ideas of condition and exception combined, with *unless* as the typical conjunctive. Those of the first group are often subdivided into those of open condition and those of rejected condition (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 305), or rejecting condition (JESPERSEN, Negation 36). Adverbial clauses of open condition "do not imply anything as to the fulfilment of the condition, such as *If you are right, I am wrong*, where the speaker does not let us know whether he thinks the other one to be in the right or not." (SWEET). Adverbial clauses of rejected condition express: 1) a supposition contrary to some fact known to the speaker, as in *If he were present (which he is not), I would speak to him*, or 2) a supposition regarding the future which is made merely for the sake of argument, as in *If it should rain, we had better stay in-doors*. Compare also Ch. XLIX, 13—14, 37—40.

62. The first group of these clauses are introduced by: a) conjunctions: *an(d), if, that*; b) the preposition *but* (or *only*) used as a conjunction, often followed by *that*; c) adverbial adjuncts used as conjunctions: 1) containing a noun: *in case, on condition*, often followed by *that*; 2) containing an adverb: *conditionally, only, so*, often followed by *that, so* sometimes followed by *as*; 3) consisting of a participle absolute: *provided, providing, supposing* often followed by *that* (Ch. XX); d) phrases that are equivalent to conjunctions: the imperatives *say* and *suppose*, the clauses (*if*) *so be (that, as), if case (be that)*.

The second group of these clauses are introduced by: a) the conjunction *unless*; b) the preposition *without* used as a conjunction; c) participles absolute used as conjunctions: *except, saving* (Ch. XX).

Note. The head-clause of adverbial clauses of condition or hypothesis is often called the consequent sentence. Also the terms *protasis*, for the conditional clause, and *apodosis*, for the head-clause, are in common use.

63. Of the doublets *and* and *an (an')* the former is the original form, and is all but regularly used before 1600. *An* then appeared occasionally, especially before *it*, as in *an' 't please you, an' 't were*, etc. As *and* as a co-ordinative conjunction was not at that time written *an*, modern writers have made a conventional

distinction between the two forms. The subordinative *an* fell into disuse in the course of the 17th century, and had almost entirely disappeared by the end of the 18th century, except in the language of servants in such turns of expression as *An't please your Honour; An you please; An't like you*. In Present-day English it survives only as an archaism, and in certain dialects of Scotland and the North of England. Both *and* and *an* are found in the earlier quartos of the dramatic works of SHAKESPEARE; the folios have *and* in almost every case, except for *an't* (= *and it*). The editors and commentators of SHAKESPEARE'S works (ROWE, POPE, THEOBALD, etc.), have a decided predilection for *an*.

As early as the time of SHAKESPEARE *an(d)* is frequently found connected with *if*, which goes far to show that it soon began to be misunderstood. See O. E. D., s. v. *and* and *an*; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 564; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*³, § 101; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*², III, 480; DEUTSCHBEIN, *System*, § 16, 4, Anm. 3; WESTERN, *De Eng. Bisætninger*, § 181.

i. An I may hide my face, let me play Thisby too. SHAK., *Mids.*, I, 2, 53. He's safe enough, sir, an he were but as sound. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, IV, 1, (267).

An you marry again — why, then, I'll go to sea again. *ib.*, III, 3, (248).

An' you were to go now to Clod-Hall, I am certain the old lady wouldn't know you. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (251).

An' we have any luck, we shall see the Devon monkerony in all the print-shops in Bath. *ib.*, III, 4, (251).

An he take the least alarm in that quarter, we are but lost men. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. II, 21.

An I could climb and lay my hand upon it, | Then were I wealthier than a leash of kings. TEN., *Ger. & Lyn.*, 50.

Take thou the jewels of this dead innocence, | And make them, an thou wilt, a tourney-prize. *id.*, *Last Tourn.*, 32.

ii. We could, an if we would ... There be, an if they might. SHAK., *Haml.*, I, V, 176—178.

And if I live to be a man, | My father's death revenged shall be. SCOTT, *Lay*, I, 90.

An if he live, we will have him of our band. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 553.

iii. If an she be rebel, I suppose you intend to betray her up to the court. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, II, 2 (WESTERN, *De Eng. Bisætninger*, § 181).

In Present-day English *an* in the meaning of *if* survives in the proverbial saying referred to in: "If ifs and ans were pots and pans," as the old jingle has it, "there'd be no trade for tinkers." *Rev. of Rev.*

64. *If* is the commonest conjunctive to introduce conditional or hypothetical clauses. It is found in the meaning of: a) *in case (that)*, Dutch *indien*, als, as in:

If he does it, he will be punished. O. E. D., s. v. *if*, 1, a, a.

If the prisoner committed the crime, he deserves death. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*²¹, § 427.

If our horse had not fallen, we should not have missed the train. *ib.*

If you have tears, prepare to shed them now. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.* III, 2, 173.

b) supposing (that), Dutch *verondersteld (dat)*, a *aangenomen (dat)* (71), as in:

If she wished to heighten the effect of her reception by these small discourtesies, she did not succeed. MRS. WARD, *TRES.*, III, Ch. XX, 170 *b*.

c) provided (that), Dutch *mits* (71), as in:

I don't want to take his life, if I clear my honour. SHER., *RIV.*, IV, 1, (258).
If only you are nice to her, she is sure to come round. SARAH GRAND, *HEAV. TWINS*, I, 142.

If is, besides, more or less frequently found in clauses in which the relation of condition is blended with that of:

d) time, so that it approaches to *now that*, *whenever (when at any time)*, so *surely as* (20, 26, 27), e. g.:

Was it well done, sir, if you're upon the subject, to deliver what I entrusted to yourself, to the care of another, sir? GOLDS., *SHE STOOPS*, IV, (218).

If they (sc. the great national councils of the continental monarchies) met, they met merely as our Convocation now meets, to go through some venerable forms. MAC., *HIST.*, I, Ch. I, 42.

If she so much as rustled the folds of her hood, he could hear the ill-looking man clap his hand upon his sword. DICK., *PICKW.*, II, 20 (MÄTZN. *ENG. GRAM.*, III, 479).

e) cause or reason, so that it approaches to *as* (34), or *since* (45); e. g.:

If you have made such a promise, I cannot, nor will I tempt you to break it. GOLDS., *VIC.*, 21 (FOELS—Koch. *Wis. Gram.*, § 451).

f) purpose, so that it approaches to final *that* (58; Ch. I, 17); e. g.:

If I am to tell a story, I must begin at the beginning. DICK., *CRICK.*, I, 2.

g) quality, so that it approaches to *in like manner as* (103, Obs. II, β); e. g.:

If he had loved her before, he now adored her. O. E. D., s. v. *if*, 1, *b*.

If this part of his character pleased Mr. Allworthy, it delighted Miss Bridget. FIELD., *TOM JONES*, I, Ch. X, 11 *b*.

If the dowager had been angry at the abrupt leave of absence he took, she was mightily pleased at his speedy return. THACK., *ESM.*, II, Ch. IX, 223.

If she (sc. Queen Elizabeth) was without love, she was without hate. GREEN, *SHORT HIST.*, VII, § 3, 376.

h) degree, so that it approaches to *so sure as*. (126, Obs. I); e. g.:

If I stand here, I saw him! SHAK., *MACB.*, III, 4, 73.

Note the idioms illustrated in the following examples: i. She's six and fifty, if she's an hour. SHER., *SCHOOL*, II, 2.

I have heard him, a hundred times if I have heard him once, say to regular cracksmen [etc.]. DICK., *GREAT EXPECT.*, Ch. XXV, 244.

That old lady must be eighty, if she is a day. DOR. GER., *THE ETERNAL WOMAN*, Ch. VII.

ii. If they have bread to eat, it's as much as they have. TROL., *LAST CHRON.*, I, Ch. X, 105.

iii. In my professional duty I shall not be wanting, sir, if I know it. DICK., *BLEAK HOUSE*, Ch. LI, 424.

Tom will not enter a room where Philip is, if he knows it. G. ELIOT, *MILL*, VI, Ch. I, 336.

iv. I'll smash your for this — see if I don't. ANSTEY, *VICE VERSA*, Ch. IX, 193.

For further illustration of certain idiomatic *if*-clauses see JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 26 ff.

65. Obs. I. A conditional clause with *if*, with the head-clause understood, is often used to express: 1) what is the subject of an idle wish (Ch. VII, 2, *b*; Ch. XLIX, 6); e. g.:

If I had only known! O. E. D., s. v. *if*, 7.

If there was only a staircase in the house, now, and regular doors to the rooms to go in at! DICK., *Crick.*, II, 42.

2) what is matter of surprise or indignation; e. g.:

If ever I heard the like of that! O. E. D., s. v. *if*, 7.

The wretch! if he has not smashed the window! *ib.*

II. *If* is understood in *please God* (= If it please God), and similar sayings (Ch. II, 16, *a*).

Don't you say almost every day, "This and that will happen, please God;" and "We shall begin to cut the grass soon, please God to send us a little more sunshine?" G. ELIOT, *A. D. Bede*, Ch. II, 19.

III. A clause opening with *if* is sometimes practically exchangeable for a subordinate statement; thus that in:

If I sent for the doctor at last, it was chiefly to break the abnormal tension of not sending. Pears' *Christm. Numb.* for 1912.

IV. In the head-clause of a conditional sentence the summarizing *then* is not so common as the Dutch *dan*. It is almost confined to those sentences in which there are more than one *if*-clause, or in which the *if*-clause is of great length; thus in:

Well, if he be returned, Mr. Novel, then shall I be pestered again with his boisterous sea-love. WYCH., *Plain Deal.*, II, 1, (412).

Yet, if she were not a cheat, | If Maud were all that she seem'd, | And her smile had all that I dream'd | Then the world were not so bitter | But a smile could make it sweet. TEN., *Maud*, I, VI, x.

George said that if it was going to make Harris eat more than Harris ordinarily ate, then he should protest against Harris having a bath at all. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. III, 32.

In like function we also find *so*, notably in the clauses referred to in 64, *g*, where it appears quite frequently; e. g.:

If his desires are many, so his deserts are great. THOM. LODGE, *Rosalynde* (Pref. to "As you like it" in *Clar. Press Ed.*, 29).

I'm much obliged to you, Captain Ussher, but if you can take care of yourself, so can I of myself. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XIII, 219.

If John had those sensations about Felix, so — when he was away from John — had Felix about himself. GALSW., *Freelands*, III, 12.

If the veneration for his grandfather is characteristic of the Kaiser, so no less is the friendship which ties him to his brother, Prince Henry of Prussia. *Windsor Mag.*, XXIV, No. 140, 350 *a*.

V. The use of *if that*, which may have been common enough in Middle English (O. E. D., 5), is now archaic. In the following examples it seems to be used for the sake of the metre:

Lend me a looking-glass; | If that her breath will mist or stain the stone, | Why, then she lives. SHAK., *Lear*, V, 3, 262.

Lorenzo and Salerio, welcome hither; | If that the youth of my new interest here | Have power to bid you welcome. *id.*, *Merch.*, III, 2, 223.

"That would I," said the Warrior Bold, | "If that my frame were bent and old."
SCOTT, *Brid. of Trierm.*, III, xvii.

If that I did not know philosophy | To be of all our vanities the mottiest, |
The merest word that ever fool'd the ear | From out the schoolman's jargon,
I should deem | The golden secret, the sought "Kalon" found, | And seated in
my soul. BYRON, *Manfr.*, III, 1, 9.

66. Through blending of two different constructions *that* sometimes stands at the head of a conditional clause. Thus such a sentence as *Dear John, speak to me — say what you will, that you do but speak* seems to be the result of the blending of *say what you will if you do but speak*, and *I am urgent in my request that you may but speak*. A more frequent instance of blending is seen in such a sentence as *It were well that he should come earlier*, which may be due to the confusion of *It were well if he came earlier*, and *It is well that he should come earlier*; e. g.:

It had been well, both for England and Scotland, that there had been more such good and moderate kings. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandf.*, I, 9a.

This is not the first occasion, but it were well that it should be the last, on which you have assumed a judgment on subjects beyond your scope. G. ELIOT, *Mid. Ch. XXXVII*, 277.

Compare: It had been as well for Arthur, if the honest Foker had remained for some time at college. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 193.

67. *But* and *but that* are applied in different functions.
a) *But* is equivalent to *if . . . not*. In this function it is used only archaically. In Late Modern English it is not uncommon after certain imprecations, and after the phrase *It shall (or will) go hard*. Compare O. E. D., 10—11.

I'll die for it, but some woman had the ring. SHAK., *Merch.*, V, 1, 208.

I would be sorry, sir, but the fool should be as oft with your master as with my mistress. id., *Twelfth Night*, III, 1, 44.

ii. Beshrew my heart, but I pity the man. id., *Mids.*, V, 1, 295.

Let me die, but I could give away all my wardrobe. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, III, 1, (278).

May this glass suffocate me, but a fine girl is worth all the priestcraft in the creation. GOLDS. *Vic.*, Ch. VII, (270).

Run me through, but I think you are one of the best (rogues) in London. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XI, 138.

"May I die," cried Montague, "but I am shocked!" DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XL, 319a.

May this cup be my last, but it is the best wine I have drunk at Pompeii! LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. III, 16a.

Compare: Let me die, if I have not run the risk already to speak like one of the vulgar. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, III, 1.

iii. *It shall go hard, but I will better the instruction. SHAK., *Merch.*, III, 1, 59.
And 't shall go hard, | But I will delve one yard below their mines. id., *Ham.*, III, 4, 208.

It shall go hard, but I will love my wife as little as, I perceive, you do your husband. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, I, 1, (239).

It shall go hard, but I will see him one day repaid. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. VI, 33.

It shall go hard, but I will elude her vigilance. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 3, (246).

** It will go hard, but I improve on my plan. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XVI, 194.

It will go hard with him, but he will better the instruction of his despots. Rev. of Rev., No. 193, 9a.

The O. E. D. (11, a) observes that this *but* is also found after "phrases of the nature of a threat," and adds the following comment: "*I'd burn the house down but I'd find it*, i. e. if I did not find it (without doing so) = even though I should have to burn the house down, I'd find it." Of this particular application of *but* no late instances have come to hand in Standard English. It may, however, survive in dialects. In the following example *but what* has a similar function:

I'd stood there till now but what I had it (sc. the sea-kale). TROL., Ori. Farm, II, Ch. XX, 262. (The speaker is an illiterate woman.)

b) *But that* opens clauses stating what has prevented the action or state mentioned in the head-clause from getting into fulfilment. It has, therefore, the same force as the group-preposition *but for*. Thus *We should have arrived sooner, but that we met with an accident* is practically equivalent to *We should have arrived sooner but for an accident*. *But that* differs from *if ... not* in that it represents an action or a state as a real fact, while the latter represents the non-fulfilment of an action or state as a mere supposition. The difference is brought out by the mood of the verb, which in the case of *but that* is the indicative, in the case of *if ... not* the (preterite) conditional. Compare *I would have told you my story, but that it is a sad one and contains another's secret*. (THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XX, 214) with *I would have told you my story, if it were not a sad one and contained another's secret*. For a clause with subordinative *but that* the spoken language mostly has an elliptical sentence with co-ordinative *but*. Thus the above sentence answers in Spoken English to *We should have arrived sooner, but we (did not because we) met with an accident*.

But that I am forbid | To tell the secrets of my prison-house, | I could a tale unfold whose lightest word | Would harrow up thy soul. SHAK., Hamlet, I, V, 13. Her face would have been beautiful, but that her mouth was large. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. I, 4.

We should be ashamed of spending so much time in pointing out so clear a distinction, but that Mr. Montagu seems altogether to overlook it. MAC., Bacon, (383 a).

Nor should I have mentioned the child's loss at all, but that even that loss was the means of a great worldly blessing to us. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 165. I should never have repeated these remarks, but that they are in truth complimentary to the young lady whom they concern. id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XII, 113. He would have rested against a huge stone, but that the old white-haired man prevented him. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. VI, 24.

But that I fear to give you offence, I should say that Herr Houzel is not very amiable. BUCH., That Wint. Night, Ch. VII, 66.

Note a) *But* is sometimes tinged with an idea of exception, i. e. equivalent to *unless* (74). See also O. E. D., 10: But I be deceived, | Our fine musician groweth amorous. SHAK., Taming of the Shrew, III, 1, 62.

β) In Late Middle and Early Modern English *but* is often found expanded

into *but if (that)* (O. E. D., s. v. *but* 10, b); e. g.: That knowestow wel thyself, but-if thou madde [= art going mad]. CHAUC., *Can t. Tales*, A, 3156.
Or elles I am but lost, but-if that I | Be lyk a wilde leoun foolhardy. *ib.* B, 3105.

But if remedee | Thou her afford, full shortly I her dead shall see. SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, III, III, 16 (O. E. D., 10).

;) With *but* as used in the examples under 67, a, compare *or*, as in: I am mistaken, or he returns your charity. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, Ch. IV, 143.

c) *Only that* is a not uncommon variant of *but that*. This use of *only* as part of a conjunctive word-group is, no doubt, due to the fact that in most of its primary applications as a pure adverb it is strictly synonymous, and practically interchangeable with *but*. Whether *only* in this conjunctive combination has assumed the same grammatical status as *but*, and is, accordingly, to be regarded as a preposition, is a question of no practical importance. Compare 157; and see STOF., *Taalstudie*, V, 161; JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 137.

Only that I see he don't know me, I could have sworn that was Jack! SHER., *Riv.*, V, 2, (276).

He would consider *master* as a sort of affront, only that you are an Englishman and know no better. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XV, 56 b.

He had nearly taken a British frigate with an old iron nine-pounder from a mud breastwork, only that his gun burst at the sixth discharge. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 364.

Only that I know you couldn't do without me, I'd leave the house this minute. THACK., *A Little Din.* at Tim., Ch. VI, (328).

I knew this from the moment in which I got your letter, — and only that I was a coward, I should have said so then. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. XXVIII, 377.

I wish I might see you on the bench to-morrow — only that we shouldn't know what to do without you. *id.*, *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. VIII, 94.

Opposite the fire-place was a table, which I should call a Pembroke, only that it was made of deal. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. II, 13.

I might not be so persistent, only that N. and Q. circulates all over the world. *Notes & Quer.*

Note a) Sometimes *only that* approaches to *though*; thus in: He would have believed his further progress by land impossible, only that it was scarce probable but what the inhabitants of the cavern had some mode of issuing from it otherwise than by the lake. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XVIII, 62 a.

I am going to ask you a question which, perhaps, I ought not to ask, only that I have known you so long that I almost feel that I am speaking to a sister. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XXXIX, 102.

β) Without *that*, this *only* may be apprehended as a copulative conjunctive (Ch. XI, 9): He wanted to take precedence of all the Lowland gentlemen then present, only my father would not suffer it. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XV, 56 b.

I would have half killed him, only poor Mary screamed and fainted. THACK., *Sam. Tim.*, Ch. XII, 163.

Two pretty young ladies waited for an answer, which they would have had, only the old lady began rattling on a hundred stories about the thirteen ladies above-named. *id.*, Ch. XXII, 232.

68. The observation made in 60 also applies to the conditional conjunctives *in case (that)*, and *on condition (that)*.

in case (that): Two armed men slept in the same chamber, in order to defend his person, in case he should be attacked by any one. SCOTT. He apparently thought it as well to say nothing, in case he should get the worst of it. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVII, 344. (In this example *in case* appears to have the value of *lest* (56).)

upon condition (that): i. And, Charles, upon condition thou wilt swear | To pay him tribute ... | Thou shalt be placed as viceroy under him. SHAK., *HENRY VI, A, V, 4, 129.*

ii. Mercy was offered to some prisoners on condition that they would bear evidence against Prideaux. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 220

NOTE. The definite article or some other qualifier, such as *this, that, or such*, is occasionally met with before *condition*, but in this case the expression loses its character of a conjunctive unit; e.g.:

On the condition that they should not bear arms for six months against the Spaniards. PRESCOTT, *Philip II*, I, Ch. VII, 124 (O. E. D.).

69. *Conditionally that*, now obsolete, seems at all times to have been uncommon.

I here entail | The crown to thee and to thine heirs for ever; | Conditionally, that here thou take an oath | To cease this civil war. SHAK., *HENRY VI, C, I, 1, 196.*

I give my vote and interest to Jonathan Brown ... conditionally that he fetches us another bottle. SCOTT, *Rob Roy* Ch. IV (O. E. D.).

70. a) *So* is not uncommon in Late Modern English; in the meaning of *provided*, Dutch *mits*; in that of *if*, Dutch *indien* or *als*, it is now rarely met with (O. E. D., s. v. *so*, 26).

i. DON PEDRO. — Lady, will you walk about with your friend? HERO. — So you walk softly and look sweetly and say nothing, I am yours for the walk. SHAK., *Much ado*, II, I, 91.

Say, he surrenders up to him his soul, | So he will spare him four and twenty years. MARL., *Doct. Faust*, III, 92.

Schiller seized the opportunity of retiring from the city, careless whither he went, so he got beyond the reach of turnkeys. CARL., *Life of Schil.*, I, 44. I feel persuaded that you are capable of the greatest things, so you but will. SHELLEY, *Let. to Keats*.

And so there lived some colour in your cheek, | There is not one among my gentlewomen | Were fit to wear your slipper for a glove. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 620. Make what noise you will with your tongues, so it be not treason. *id.*, *Queen Mary*, I, I, 7.

You are not without sense, cousin Eliza; but what you have, I suppose, in another year will be walled up alive in a French convent. However, it is not my business, and so it suits you, I don't much care. CH. BRONTE, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXII, 295.

So the need of the moment be met and the deed of the day be done, the concern of the practical man is ended. *The New Age*, No. 1176. 553 a.

ii. So thou hadst been with me, I could have taught my love to take thy father for mine. SHAK., *As you like it*, I, 2, II.

For this present, | I would not, so with love I might entreat you, | Be any further moved. *id.*, *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 166.

He would fly up in a passion of anger at a question, or sometimes because none was put, so he judged the company was not following the story. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. I, 17.

Note the frequent *so please you* (= if it please you) in the older writers; thus in: "How now, daughter and cousin! are you crept hither to see the

wrestling?" — "Ay, my liege, so please you give us leave." SHAK., As you like it, I, 2, 165.

b) *So that*, a strict synonym of *provided*, is frequent enough in the literary language of the present day (O. E. D., s. v. *so*, 26); e. g.:

Something must be fixed on. No matter what, so that something is chosen. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. XIV, 137.

Little cared the knight of St. John which party were uppermost — prince or people — so that his own objects were attained. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. IV, 104.

Not much caring what they laughed at, so that they laughed at any rate, he encouraged them in their merriment. DICK., Christmas Car., III, 69.

Note a) In Early Modern English, and archaically in Present-day English, *so that* occurs also in the sense of *if, in case (that)*; thus in: So that you had her wrinkles and I her money, I would she did as you say. SHAK., All's well, II, 4, 20.

And on the third day (I) will again be here, | So that I be not fall'n in fight. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 223.

And (I) would be altogether happy, Madam, | So that your sister were but look'd to closer. id., Queen Mary, I, 5, (592 a).

β) *So as* is far less common than *so that* (O. E. D., s. v. *so*, 30). In Late Modern English it seems to be vulgar; e. g.: So as thou livest in peace, die free from strife. SHAK., Rich. II, V, 6, 27.

I take any part you choose to give me, so as it be comic. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. XIV, 137.

He could play 'em a tune on any sort of pot you please, so as it was iron or block tin. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXVI, 226.

1. The participles found at the head of adverbial clauses of condition are:

provided, which implies that the fulfilment of a certain condition is insisted on. It is mostly furnished with the conjunction *that*; e. g.: i. Provided that all is safe, you may depart. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 113.

I got a promise of this fair one here | To have her love, provided that your fortune | Achieved her mistress. SHAK., Merch., III, 2, 208.

What matters if you are considered obtrusive, provided that you obtrude? THACK., Newc., I, Ch. VIII, §6.

The English landed gentry were always ready to pay, provided that they kept power. Manch. Guard., VIII, 22, 422 c.

ii. It is singular how long the rotten will hold together, provided you do not handle it roughly. CARLYLE, French Rev., I, II, Ch. III, 33.

providing, which implies the same notion as the preceding. It appears to be less common, and mostly stands without *that*, e. g.: i. He would ... bind him apprentice to some honest tradesman, providing he would mend his manners. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. III, 19.

The dispute ended in the guard assuring the passengers that they should have seats in a heavy coach which would pass that spot, providing it were not full. SCOTT, Mid-Loth., Ch. I, 21.

I for one would cheerfully forgive the alarm and disturbance to my poor house, providing the fair city were not brought into jeopardy for me. id., Fair Maid, Ch. VII, 70.

One party must not say to the other, "I will confer, providing you, on your part, will first subscribe to this, that or the other general principle or particular method." Westm. Gaz., No. 5329, 1 b.

"Would you object to my smoking a cigarette?" — "Certainly not, providing they are Ogden's guinea gold." *Graph., Advert.*

ii. The owners have unanimously expressed their willingness to proceed to arbitration ... providing that all sections ... were agreeable to this course. *Times* 2/10, 1901, 3/6 (O. E. D.).

supposing; e.g.: An answer in the negative was sufficient to have diverted their thoughts from Mr. Scrooge, supposing they had ever had any tendency that way. *DICK., Christm. Car., III, 72.*

Note a) It is sometimes used in the same function as the imperative *suppose* (72); thus in: Supposing you wore it (sc. the dress suit) to the ball, and took it off when we returned, I could replace it without troubling him at all about the matter. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 12.*

Supposing the lady of St. Joseph was not equal to her expectations? Supposing she did not fulfil her hopes and demands of the woman whom she had destined in her mind to be the wife of her son? How could she tell him? *TEMPLE THURSTON, City, III, Ch. VIII, 284*

β) The notion conveyed by *provided*, *providing*, or *supposing* is sometimes emphasized by *always*, placed either after or before these words. Observe a similar function of *always* in connexion with *saving*, etc. (155, Note β); e.g.: i. * He, therefore informed them that he should not take it ill of them if they made their peace with the new dynasty, provided always that they were prepared to rise in insurrection as soon as he should call on them to do so. *Mac., Hist., VII, Ch. XVIII, 1.*

This question is likely to drag on for many months, provided always that Mr. Redmond can be induced to believe that Mr. Asquith is not playing with him. *Westm. Gaz., No. 5243, 16c.*

** Pledge another glass to the fair Irene, the Tribune's sister — always provided they two are not one. *LYTTON, Rienzi, III, Ch. III, 139.*

Now my idea is that, if Englishmen advance the money for railway construction and other works, a certain portion of the English money thus lent should be spent in buying English goods — always provided, of course, that we can supply them as cheap and good as any of our competitors. *Rev. of Rev., No. 199, 369b.*

ii. What invariably attracts the man 'down on his luck' ... is the prospect of getting a really smart, well-fitting red coat for the asking — always providing the difficulty of passing the doctor is overcome. *Tit-bits, No. 1291, 368b.*

iii. The Fascists can reasonably claim that they have the country behind them — supposing always that the votes were fairly counted. *Manch. Guard., 11/4, 1924.*

given, apparently regularly furnished with *that*; e.g.: Given that Britain furnished the ships for a powerful Indian squadron, it would not be demanding too much of India, Ceylon, Singapore, and the Malay States, if we asked them to maintain that squadron adequately. *Westm. Gaz., No. 5555, 20c.*

saving, only used in the higher literary style; e.g.: For saving I bejoin'd | To her that is the fairest under heaven, | I seem as nothing in the mighty world. *TEN., Com. of Arth., 85.*

72. The imperatives *say* and *suppose* are used in stating a case for mere argument. Apparently they mostly stand without *that*.

say: i. Say that she were gone, | Given to the fire, a moiety of my rest | Might come to me again. *SHAK., Wint. Tale, II, 3, 6.*

ii. Say I do speak with her, my lord, what then? *id., Twelfth Night, I, 4, 23.*

Say I should succeed at the Bar, is that fame which would satisfy my longings? *THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVI, 380.*

suppose. Suppose she had danced, what then? SHER., Riv., II, 1.
 Suppose the old lady does not come to. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVII, 171.
 Suppose you come down to us for a week. id., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 68.
 Suppose we leave Mr. Wharton alone. Mrs. WARD, Marc., III, 13.
 Suppose Mr. Middlewick's views regarding his son are the same. H. J. BYRON, Our Boys, I, 1.

73. The phrase *if so be (that)* has been fairly common from the Early Modern English period to the present day, but it has long been confined to vulgar language or dialects. (FRANZ, Shak. Gram.², § 565, Anm. 1). *That* is frequently enough placed after it, but it appears to be mostly dispensed with.

i. But if so be | Thou darrest not this and that to prove more fortunes | Thou'rt tired, then, in a word, I also am | Longer to live most weary, and present | My throat to thee and to thy ancient malice. SHAK., Cor., IV, 5, 98.

I care not what I meet with in the way, if so be I can also meet with deliverance from my burden. BUNYAN, Pilg. Prog. (151),
 I would gladly bring you one (sc. a Manx cat), if so be you'd like to have it. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XIII, 145.

Old Twills wouldn't hire me for more than eleven months at a time, to keep me from being chargeable to the parish if so be I was disabled. HARDY, Mad. Crowd, Ch. VIII, 72.

it'll be a great benefit to the people ... if so be we get the pier. BIRMINGHAM, Advent. of Dr. Whitty, Ch. I, 4.

ii. If so be that he could get a woman to his mind, he'd marry himself. CONGREVE, Love for Love, IV, 3, (275).

The genteel thing is the genteel thing at any time; if so be that a gentleman bees in a concatenation accordingly. GOLDS., She stoops, I, (173).

I would serve the best man so that ever stepped between stem and stern, if so be that he struck me as Captain Oakum did. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. VI, 32.

The news seems too good to be true. But it may be true after all, and if so be that it is true, then indeed it is good news, of exceeding joy to the thirsty children of men. Rev. of Rev., No. 194, 198.

Note. The variants of this phrase *be it so (that)*, *so be it (that)*, are but rarely met with: i. And, my gracious duke, | Be it so she will not here before your grace | Consent to marry with Demetrius, | I beg the ancient privilege of Athens. SHAK., Mids., I, 1, 39.

ii. And this is the philosophy, the stoicism of women, who will face the fearsome emptiness of a whole desert of life, so be it that their heart is full and satisfied. TEMPLE THURSTON, City III, Ch. XVI, 356.

74. *Unless* answers to the Dutch *tenzij* and *tenware*, but is more common in ordinary spoken language.

Unless I hear the contrary, I will be here. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 111.

I would not believe it, unless I should see it. MASON, Eng. Gram.³¹, § 434.

A lie is nothing, unless one supports it. SHER., Riv., II, 1.

She was never satisfied with the day unless she spent the chief of it by the side of Mrs. Thorpe. JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. V, 24.

Unless I greatly deceive myself, the general effect of this chequered narrative will be to excite thankfulness in all religious minds. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 2.

75. Obs. I. Of some special interest are such clauses as contain the empty *it be* (or *might be*) standing before what constitutes their significant part. Compare the frequent Dutch *of het mocht zijn*.

Girls of nineteen do not care for lovers of one-and-twenty, unless it be when the fruit has had the advantage of some forcing apparatus or southern wall. TROLL, *Small House*, I, Ch. IV, 42.

The Lady Rosina was very religious; and I do not know that she was conspicuous in any other way, unless it might be that she somewhat resembled her father in her temper. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVII, 193.

A young man and a young woman do not meet like that unless it be that there is some good reason for it. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. VIII, 286.

The dropping of the empty words causes *unless* to stand immediately before the clause proper, and converts it into a preposition (Ch. LX, 97, Note); thus in:

The red room was ... very seldom slept in, I might say never, indeed, unless when a chance influx of visitors at Gateshead Hall rendered it necessary to turn to account all the accommodation it contained. CH. BRONTE, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 9.

II. In older English we not unfrequently find *unless* followed by *that*. He said ... he had no reason to think any of his bones injured, or that he had received any harm in his inside, unless that he felt something very odd in his stomach. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XV, 39.

For Fergus hardly a hope remained, unless that he might be made prisoner. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LIX, 148 b.

III. In Early English *'less* and *least* are occasionally met with in the sense of *unless*.

i. To whose integrity you must | In spite of all your caution trust, | And, 'less you fly beyond the seas | Can fit you with what heirs you please. BUTL., *Hud.*, (MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*, III, 485).

ii. And least thou yield to this that I entreat, | I cannot think but that thou hat'st my life. MARLOWE, *Jew of Malta*, III, 4 (*ib.*).

76. *Without* is now unusual in standard English, but appears to be fairly common in certain dialects. As appears from the following examples, it is strictly synonymous with *unless*.

If he can't be cured without I suck the poison from his wounds, I'm afraid he won't recover his senses till I lose mine. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, IV, 1, (266).

She never *will* have anything without I have mine just like it. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. VII, 81.

I needs must break | These bonds that so defame me: not without | She wills it. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 1411.

I'll have to walk, I expect, without I can pick up with a cart. GALSW., *Free-Lands*, Ch. IV, 27.

You musn't accept invitations from gentlemen without you can say you've got to ask your mother first. ED. WHARTON, *The Custom of the Court*, I, Ch. I, 9.

77. Also *except* is a strict synonym of *unless*. It appears to be more common in Early Modern English than it is in the language of the present generation.

Except they want to 'bathe in reeking wounds, | Or memorize another Golgotha, I cannot tell. SHAK., *Macb.*, I, 2, 38.

Jesus answered, | Thou couldest have no power at all against me, except it were given thee from above. Bible, *John*, XIX, 11.

No building is allowed to be erected without special permission, except it be constructed of brick. *Times*, 26/4, 1901, 4 d.

78. Adverbial clauses of condition sometimes occur in the shape of:
 a) optative sentences, notably such as express an idle wish (Ch. VII, 2, *b*; Ch. XLIX, 9); e. g.:

Had I known this, I would not have come. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 490.
 Should you find them, kindly let me know. O. E. D., s. v. *if*, 7.

Good luck had your good man, | For, were I dead, who is it would weep for me? TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 617.

Were the teller of an old tale to acknowledge all his sources, he would have to burden his book with bibliography. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, Pref.

Had he been able to carry out his own policy, he would have been by far the greatest minister that England has ever seen. *Lit. World*.

b) hortative sentences. Only such as are constructed with the auxiliary imperative *let* are at all common in ordinary English (Ch. XLIX, 12); e. g.:

i. Come death, come anguish, come a whole life of sorrow, as the end of this love, wouldst thou yet repent that thou hast loved? LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. II, 85.

ii. Let me hear another sound from you, and you'll keep your Christmas by losing your situation. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 7.

Let there be wavering on the British side, or provocation on the Russian side, and the door will instantly be open for partisans for war in this country and in France. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8461, 2*b*.

c) interrogative sentences, especially such as have the predicate in the conditional (Ch. I, 67, *d*); e. g.:

Did not hope prolong the duration of life, it would be very short indeed.

I began to speculate on what Uncle Maclroy would say, did Hector win the prize this year. MRS. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 80.

Looking at her unhappy parents, she felt that their unhappy lot would crush her with pity, did she not see the relief approaching. GISSING, *A Life's Morn.*, Ch. VII, 114.

Note. Unlike Dutch and German, English hardly suffers questions with the predicate in the present or perfect indicative to be used as conditional clauses. The following instances strike us as at variance with Present-day English idiom:

Go not my horse the better, I must become a borrower of the night. SHAK., *Mac b.*, III, 1, 25.

Prove it so, | Let Fortune go to hell for it. *id.*, *Merch.*, III, 2, 20.

Be you not ashamed to show, he'll not shame to tell you what it means. *id.*, *Ham l.*, III, 2, 155.

Will you do this, keep close within your chamber. *ib.*, IV, 7, 130.

Does the Countess of Carshalton want some one to organise and arrange a cotillon for her, she sends, as a matter of course, for Wynnie ... Is Mrs. Mortimer Browne getting up private theatricals, she is pretty sure to call in Wynnie as general supervisor and stage-manager. *Truth*, 24/2, 1909 (E. S., LXII, III, 410).

Does it rain a little, bridge is your refuge; does it shine a little, bridge keeps you cooler than tennis; does it do neither, nothing can stimulate you as does bridge. *ib.*, 15/6, 1910 (*ib.*).

Have we suffered at the hands of democratic government, we may make a last protest in our testament by refusing to leave money to charity. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6017, 11*a*.

d) imperative sentences. The connexion of the two members is,

indeed, almost regularly brought about by the co-ordinative *and* (Ch. x, 4); but the subordinate status of the first member appears from its rising intonation; e. g.:

The world is a looking glass and gives back to every man the reflection of his own face. Frown at it, and it will in turn frown upon you, laugh at it and with it, and it will be a jolly companion; and so let all young people take their choice. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 10.

Do you go about your work with some little confidence, and I doubt not but what you'll have your way. TROL., Small House, II, Ch. LII, 264.

β) In verse the second member of the complex sometimes stands without *and*; thus in:

The mighty chiefs (sc. Pitt and Fox) sleep side by side. | Drop upon Fox's grave the tear, | 'Twill trickle to his rival's bier. SCOTT, Marm., I, Introd., 186.
Give me good fortune, I will strike him dead. TEN., Lanc. & El., 1064.

γ) In the head-clause belonging to the imperative clause the predicate may stand in the preterite tense, which clearly shows that the latter is only imperative in form and not in meaning; e. g.:

Give John an inch, and he was sure to take several ell.

Give him a fact, he loaded you with thanks; propound a theory, you were rewarded with the most vivid abuse. BIRRELL, Obiter Dicta, 6 (KRUIS, Handb. 4, § 222).

δ) When the imperative clause stands after the head-clause, it implies a secondary relation of restriction; thus in:

There was something, indeed, rather masterly in his grasp of the fact that rain might be trusted to put out any fire — give it time. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XIX, 164.

79. Adverbial clauses of condition, notably such as are introduced by *if*, are often incomplete; thus those in:

We are not to judge of the feelings of others by what we might feel, if in their place. GOLDS., Vic.

Is this a boon so kindly given, | That being, thou wouldst be again, and go, | Thou know'st not, reck'st not, to what regions, so | On earth no more, but mingled with the skies? BYRON, Child's Har., II, iv.

But she never minded us, unless by keeping herself more closely out of sight. ASC. R. HOPE, Old Pot.

She could not walk down the Mall, unless under the protection of a body of soldiers. FRANK. MOORE, The Jes. Bride, Ch. VI, 52.

He measured six feet two, if an inch. II. Lond. News.

Once more we shall go to the country with that infernal Budget and the Peers on our backs, and we shall do no better, if as well, as in January. West m. Gaz., No. 5277, 4a.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF CONCESSION.

80. The conjunctives used to introduce adverbial clauses of concession are: a) conjunctions: *all*, *an(d)*, *(al)though*, *as*, *if*; b) adverbial adjuncts, 1) containing a noun: *despite*, followed by *that*, 2) containing the indefinite pronoun *all*: *for all*, often followed by *that*, 3) containing an adverb: *however* (*howsoever*), 4) containing a participle absolute: *notwithstanding*, often followed by *that*; c) phrases: *albeit*, *howbeit*, sometimes followed by *that*.

81. *All*, which seems to occur quite frequently as a concessive conjunction in Middle English, has long since lost this function. A. SCHMIDT registers only one instance in SHAKESPEARE.

And alle acorden as in hir sentence, | Al be ther in hir telling difference.
CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, B, 2138.

And never shall he more his wyf mistriste, | Though he the sooth of hir defeaute wiste; | Al had she taken preestes two or three. *ib.*, C, 371.

Thy head, all indirectly, gave direction. SHAK., *Rich. III*, IV, 4, 225.

Note. To a certain extent the old force survives in *albeit*, whose component parts have hardened into a unit (92), and in *although* (83). For the concessive force which sometimes dwells in the adverb *all* see 86, Obs. I, 89; 94 Note.

82. Like the conditional *an(d)*, the concessive *an(d)* has fallen into disuse in standard English.

Fortune is to be Honoured, and Respected, and it bee but for her Daughters, Confidence and Reputation. BACON, *Ess.*, 379 (FRANZ, *SHAK. Gram.*, § 564).
If I have broke anything, I'll pay for't, an it cost a pound. CONGREVE, *The Way of the World*, V, 2, (402).

83. *Although* and *though* are used without much distinction (FOWLER, *Mod. Eng. Usage*). The latter is, however, the commoner word, and is used to the exclusion of the former in clauses in which the conjunction is placed in immediate succession to the principal word of the predicate, put in front-position for emphasis (84, Obs. I), and in the combination *as though* (109).

(*Al*)*though* is found: a) in clauses expressing a present or past fact, as in:

Though it never put a scrap of gold or silver in my pocket, I believe it has done me good. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 7.

She looked back regretfully at Marlott and her father's house, although she had been so anxious to get away. HARDY, *Tess*, III, Ch. XVI, 131.

Although it is true that the State cannot wisely direct the management of most industries, ... nevertheless there is an enormous scope open to the Legislature. *Manch. Guard.*, 13 I, 1928, 22 d.

b) in clauses expressing a present or a future possibility, as in:

A lady does not degrade herself if she marry a gentleman, even though that gentleman's rank be less high than her own. TROL., *Castle Richm.*, Ch. IV, 62.

I'll come down to them for a day at Christmas, though it be only for a day. *id.*, *Small House*, I, Ch. XII, 136.

c) in clauses stating a case for mere argument, viz. one which the speaker knows to be contrary to fact, or one whose fulfilment he regards as improbable or impossible. In this case *although* is distinctly unusual. Compare Ch. XLIX, 39 f.

If Mr. Tigg had preferred any claim to high and honourable dealing, Jonas would have suspected him, though he had been a very model of probity. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVII, 224 b.

Though he were Admiral Hawke, he shall pay his score. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*, 69.

There was something childlike in her face; and there will be, I think, till she dies, though she should live a hundred years. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. L, 17.

84. Obs. I. In concessive clauses of the first or second description *though* is often placed in immediate succession to the principal word of the predicate, especially of a nominal predicate, which stands in front-position for emphasis. In this function *though* varies with *as* (85); e. g.:

Orphan though she was, she would have found some one to protect her, whom she might have loved again. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXX, 244 a.

Early in the day though it was, I felt myself dreamily lulled off into a musing fit. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. VI, 60.

This *though* is sometimes dispensed with, especially when the clause contains the auxiliary *may*; thus in:

Her husband — good man of business he may be — was *borné*, and hard, and poor, and thin. *Academy*.

II. When the concessive clause precedes the head-clause, it is often referred to in the latter by the adversative *yet*. The *yet* which may be found in the concessive clause is an adverb of time.

i. Though all men deny thee, yet will I not. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 112.

Although all shall be offended, yet will not I. Bible, *Mark*, XIV, 29.

ii. Though yet of Hamlet our dear brother's death | The memory be green ... Yet so far hath discretion fought with nature [etc.]. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 2, 5.

The adversative *yet* varies with *still*, which has practically the same force (Ch. XI, 9), and with *so*, mostly followed by *also*, without any distinctly adversative import; e. g.:

i. "Although I am a widower," said Mr. Pecksniff, "a widower with two daughters, still I am not encumbered." DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXX, 245 b.

ii. But though she was not high-minded, so also was she not ungenerous. TROL., *Belt Est.*, Ch. XXI, 275.

III. *Though* is sometimes found in a function approaching to that of *whereas* (123); thus in:

A hundred instances or experiments on one side, and fifty on another, afford a doubtful expectation of any event; though a hundred uniform experiments, with only one that is contradictory, reasonably beget a pretty strong degree of assurance. HUME, *Es.*, *Of Miracles*, I, 521.

The awful approach of the serpents across the sea, their first attack on the two children, and their turning on Laocoön himself, when he rushes to the aid of his sons, cannot find any expression in sculpture, though on these things the pathos and terror of the poetical expression mainly depend. E. A. GARDNER, *Handbk. of Greek Sculpture*, II, 470, i.

IV. In Early Modern English *though* is sometimes found followed by *that*. AL. SCHMIDT (*Shak. Lex.*) registers seven instances. See also O. E. D., 5.

Though that the queen on special cause is here, | Her army is moved on. *Lear*, IV, 6, 218.

85. *As* is used in concessive clauses that serve to affirm, explain or comment on some word in the head-clause placed in front-position for emphasis. This word may be:

a) a nominal or an adverb, in which case *as* varies with *though* (84, Obs. I); thus in:

i. Rich as he is, one would scarcely envy him. Courageous as I am by nature, I absolutely trembled at the idea. WILK. COL., *Woman*, III, 513.

Big a puzzle as it was (sc. this affair of the water-power), it hadn't got the better of Riley. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. III, 9.

ii. Much as we like Shakespeare's comedies, we cannot agree with Dr. Johnson that they are better than his tragedies. HAZLITT, *Char.*, *Twelfth Night*, 183. Long as he resided in India, intimately acquainted as he was with Indian politics and with the Indian character, and adored as he was by his Indian soldiery, he never learned to express himself with facility in any Indian tongue. MAC., *Clive*, (519*b*).

b) the unmodified form of a verb (compare 94); thus in:

Soften it as they would, their hearts were lighter. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 86.

Do as he might, and ride where he would, the fairy princess whom he was to rescue and win, had not yet appeared to honest Pen. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 40.

It will be observed that while the nominal or adverb in these clauses suggest a preceding *as* or *so*, actually sometimes used, especially in earlier English (104, *j*), such a word could not be thought of before the the unmodified verb-form.

86. Obs. I. Predicative nominals are occasionally found preceded by *all* in concessive clauses with *as*; thus in:

Taking the child, all ragged as he was, upon his knee — "What Bill, you chubby rogue!" cried he, "do you remember your old friend Burchell?" GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXX, (458).

In an instant she was kneeling at Mrs. Hamley's feet, holding the poor lady's hands, kissing them, murmuring soft words; which, all unmeaning as they were of aught but sympathy with the untold grief, did Mrs. Hamley good. MRS. GASK., *Wiv. and Daught.*, Ch. VIII, 73.

Get out of there, Monsieur, all pastor as you are, or I will send this soup at thy ugly head, and the saucepan afterwards. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. III, (211). He saw clearly that, all unworthy as he was, he might henceforth rest secure of her affection. ANSTEE, *Fal. Idol.*, Ch. V, 77.

This *as* seems to vary with *that*. Only one instance, however, has come to hand:

How conscious you must be, all beautiful that you are, that those charming airs serve only to heighten the bloom of your complexion! FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XIII, 38.

II. A more or less distinct concessive relation is sometimes discernible in other clauses with *as* than the above, such as:

The vivacity of this good lady, as it helped Edward out of this scrape, was like to have drawn him into one or two others. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXI, 152*a*. And a merry night we had too; and as we had no wine in the cupboard, we had plenty of ale, and gin-punch afterwards. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 40.

87. *If* is a colloquial variant of *though* in the three functions mentioned in 83. It does not, however, admit of being placed after the principal word of the predicate.

i. If they are poor, they are at any rate happy. O. E. D., 4, *a*.

If we had not very rich, we generally had very happy friends about us. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (236).

If we can't inherit a good name, at least we can do our best to leave one, my boy. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VII, 80.

He is very kind, if he is an earl. FRANCES BURNETT, *Little Lord*.

If he did say so, you needn't believe him. O. E. D., 4, a.

ii. If it cost her life, I will make that woman confess the truth about that money. Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, II, Ch. XVIII, 309.

iii. I would; have run away, if I had had to walk barefoot through the snow. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 215.

I couldn't be angry with him, if I tried. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 68.

I'd never say another lesson to Miss Pinch, if I was to be beat to death for it. *id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVI, 290 b.

88. *Despite that* appears to be rare. The O. E. D. registers no instances.

The amount of money in the family threatened to increase from year to year, despite that Mr. Middleton's good works were continued. L. ZANGWILL, *Beaut. Miss Brooke*, 33.

89. *For all*, mostly without *that*, is especially frequent in colloquial language. Compare Ch. XI, 10.

i. She's a good girl, Ephraim, and he is a fine man, for all that their ways are not the same as ours. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 231.

The Castle Inn fell slowly to decay. But for all that it suffered without, it was not the less prosperous within-doors. MISS BRADDON, *Audley*, I, Ch. XV, 162.

ii. That'll be a true story before long, for all the book says nothing about it. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVIII, 234 a.

I'm obliged to have the same gowns as Nancy, for all I'm five years older. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XI, 81.

For all Mr. Rochester sought her, as if she had been the most precious thing he had in the world, he never could hear a word of her. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 526.

I suffer for my follies and curse them, for all I make so light of them. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XX, 134.

There was no nobler-looking lady in the land, for all she was so little. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XXV, 178.

90. *However*, now practically obsolete as a subordinative conjunction, may have been fairly common in this function in Early Modern English. AL. SCHMIDT, (in the *Shak. Lex.*) registers four instances.

So is he now in execution | Of any bold or noble enterprise, | However he puts on this tardy form. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 303.

He murmur'd on till morn, howe'er | No living mortal could be near. SCOTT, *Marm.*, I, XXVI, 9.

FRANZ (E. S., XVIII) quotes the following example with *howsoever*:

Howsoever she was forced from her poise for a season, by snares laid for her vanity, Humphrey is certainly the north star to which the needle of her affection would have pointed at the long run. SMOL., *Humphr. Clinck*.

91. *Notwithstanding*, often followed by *that*, is especially met with in literary language; e. g.:

i. Notwithstanding — I confess — that appearances are against me, ... I make no doubt but I shall explain everything to your satisfaction. SHER., *School*, IV, 3, (419). (The intercalary phrase makes the use of *that* necessary.)

They were ages to Dolf, notwithstanding that he was basking in the smiles of the pretty Marie. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (145).

He was a little puzzled to find the door of his room locked on the inside, notwithstanding that he had positively seen it swing open as the footsteps entered. *ib.*, (118).

I was not stunned by the praise which sounded in my ears, notwithstanding that I was keenly alive to it. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XLVIII, 343 a.

Notwithstanding that natural science has been my proper business, I am afraid there is very little of the genuine naturalist in me. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, 7 a.

ii. Notwithstanding she's your wife, I And loves not me, be you . . . assured I I hate not you for her proud arrogance. SHAK., *Rich.* III, I, 3, 22.

And you did wisely and honestly, too, notwithstanding she is the greatest beauty in the parish. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, IV, Ch. II, 205.

92. a) The component parts of *albeit* appear in Middle English as separate words. In Present-day English the word is used only in the higher literary style, mostly without *that*.

i. It is a moral tale vertuous, | Al be it told som-tyme in sondry wyse. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, B., 2131.

But al-be-it so, that ful many a womman is badde . . . yet han men founde ful many a good womman. *ib.*, B., 2286.

ii. I will ease my heart, | Albeit I make a hazard of my head. SHAK., *Henry IV*, A, I, 3, 127.

There be many who deem him not, | Or will not deem him, wholly proven King | — Albeit in mine own heart I knew him King, | When I was frequent with him in my youth. TEN., *Gar. & Lyn.*, 121.

No, I doubt not that God will give me strength, | Albeit I have denied him. *id.*, *Queen Mary*, IV, 2, (629 b).

Albeit she was angry with Pen, against his mother she had no such feeling. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 215.

Maisey would have wept at the least encouragement, but Dick's indifference, albeit his hand was shaking as he picked up the pistol, restrained her. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. I, 9.

iii. From that day to this we have never met — albeit that he has had my best wishes. STRETTON, *Chequered Life*, I, 125 (O. E. D.)

Note. *Albe*, now quite obsolete, appears at all times to have been rare. No instances occur in SHAKESPEARE, or in the *Authorized Version*.

Ay, but his fear | Would ne'er be mask'd, allbe his vices were. BEN JONSON, *Sejanus*, IV, 5, 224.

And in their hearts, albe the work was rude, | It rais'd the thought of all-commanding might, | Combin'd with boundless love and mercy infinite. SOUTHEY, *A Tale of Paraguay*, IV, XIX.

b) *Howbeit* as a subordinative conjunction has, apparently, entirely disappeared from the language. The latest instance registered in the O. E. D. is dated 1634. A later instance is that in:

Our good father Eustace says that, howbeit we may not do well to receive all idle tales of goblins and spectres, yet there is warrant from holy Scripture to believe, that the fiends haunt wastes and solitary places. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XX, 231.

Note. SHAKESPEARE has a solitary instance with *howbeit that*: The Moor, howbeit that I endure him not, | Is of a constant, loving, noble nature. *Oth.*, II, I, 297.

93. A large group of concessive clauses are introduced by adverbs that are made up of the adverb *so*, *soever* or *ever*, and an interrogative pronoun or interrogative adverb. Compounds with *ever* are now the most familiar; those with *soever* occur only in dignified language, while those with *so*, although the oldest, are now seldom met with, except archaically in poetry. In vulgar language compounds of *soever* have undergone a phonetic corruption, resulting in such forms as *howsomever*, *howsomdever*, *whatsomever*, etc. For fuller details about these pronominal and adverbial compounds of *so* or (*so*)*ever* see Ch. XLI.

i. * "He's a scoundrel!" exclaimed Tom, "whoever he may be." DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. XXXI, 250 *b*.

With whatever luxuries a bachelor may be surrounded, he will always find his happiness incomplete, unless he has a wife and children. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. II, 21.

Whichever you do, whether you marry or abstain, you will repent. *ib.*, Ch. II, 19.

** Have is have, however men do catch. SHAK., *King John*, I, I, 173.

However and whenever we part from one another, I am sure we shall none of us forget poor Tiny Tim. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 89.

However miserable an old bachelor may be, he is far more happy than either a bad husband, or the husband of a bad wife. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. II, 27.

ii. Howsoever well instructed he might be in them himself, and howsoever useful to government he might think them. BOLINGBROKE, *Fragm. O. E. D.*, 2, *b*).

It would have cost my poor uncle no pang to accept Blanche's fortune, whencesoever it came. THACK., *Pend.*, II, XXXVI, 380.

iii. But evermo where so I go or ryde, | It is thyn awen clerk, swa have I seel! CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, A, 4239. (seel = bliss.)

"Nay," quod the Somnour, "lat him seye to me | What so him list." *ib.*, D, 1297.

And whatso He commands, that I must speak. SOUTHEY, *Joan of Arc*, I, 70 (O. E. D.).

We scarce can think that ye will try again | To seek your own land, whereso that may be. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 4*a*.

But whoso wandered, they would stay behind. *ib.*, *Prol.*, 19*a*.

iv. All men's faces are true, whatsome'er their hands are. SHAK., *Ant. & Cleop.*, II, 6, 102.

There are as good (sc. fellows) as any of them . . . , howsomdever, I object nothing to Captain Cleveland. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. XXXIV, 372.

Note. The adverbial compound *soever* is sometimes found separated from the pronoun or adverb it modifies; thus in:

He shewed that the follies of the stage and court had never been accounted too sacred for ridicule, how great soever the persons might be that patronised them. *Spect.*, XXXIV.

I have the implicit conviction that, if England should ever be engaged in a serious struggle with a Power of strength and means, in what condition soever that struggle might leave her, one of the outcomes would be to detach from her the Australian Colonies. ARCH. FORBES.

94. Another group of concessive clauses is formed by those in which an interrogative pronoun or adverb is placed in immediate suc-

cession to the unmodified form of the verb, which represents the main notion of the predicate, and is a descendant of an Old-English present subjunctive. The second verb of the predicate is either *will* or *may*, which seem to occur with equal frequency. The pronoun or adverb has the same indefinite meaning as the compounds with (*so*)*ever* mentioned in the preceding section. In structure and import these clauses are like those referred to in 84, Obs. I, and 85, *b*. Compare also Ch. XLIX, 12, Obs. III; 47, Obs. II; and KRUIS., *H a n d b k.*, § 1146.

Come what come may, | Time and the hour run through the roughest day. SHAK., *M a c b.*, I, 3, 146.

Say what I will to the contrary, he tells the story everywhere. THACK., *S a m. Titm.*, Ch. V, 55.

Be their import (sc. of the words) what it might, one thing was quite certain. WATTS DUNTON, *A y l w i n*, XVII, 475.

The massive person of Mr. Bradlaugh is entirely excluded from sight, crane your neck how you may. *G r a p h.*

Note. An occasional variant of *what* as used in the above examples is *all*, which may change places with the unmodified verb.

i. And I must think, do all I can, | That there was pleasure there. WORDSW., *Lines written in Early Spring*, 19.

ii. But her hair won't curl, all I can do with it. G. ELIOT, *M i l l*, I, Ch. II, 7. (= do all I can with it.)

95. Adverbial clauses of concession may have the form of: *a*) optative sentences, notably such as express an idle wish (Ch. VII, 2, *b*; Ch. XLIX, 9); e. g.:

He had now got one of his fingers into the infant's hand, which, by its gentle pressure, seeming to implore his assistance, had certainly out-pleaded the eloquence of Mrs. Debora, had it been ten times greater than it was. FIELD., *T o m J o n e s*, I, Ch. III, 4*a*.

I will alter this: this *shall* be altered, were there ten Mrs. Yorkes to do battle with. CH. BRONTË, *S h i r l e y*, II, Ch. XVI, 329.

What would you have of us? | Human life? | Were it our nearest, | Were it our dearest, | (Answer, O answer) | We give you his life. TEN., *V i c t.*, I.

Of all the parties in the field the National Liberals are not in a position to secure a majority, were all their candidates returned. *W e s t m. G a z.*, 11/11, 1922, 1*b*.

b) hortative sentences, such as are constructed with the auxiliary imperative *let* being especially common in ordinary language (78, *b*; Ch. XLIX, 12); e. g.:

i. Home is home, be it ever so homely. *P r o v.*

Live a thousand years, I shall not find myself so apt to die. SHAK., *J u l. C æ s.*, III, 1, 159.

Creep time ne'er so slow, | Yet it shall come for me to do thee good. *i d.*, *K i n g J o h n*, III, 3, 31.

You couldn't get a place, come ever so early. THACK., *N e w c.*, I, Ch. XXV, 285.

Well, if he be not dead, | Why wail ye for him thus? ye seem a child. | And be he dead, I count you for a fool; | Your wailing will not quicken him. TEN., *G e r. & E n.*, 548.

Well, she's asleep now; and have you a hundred gallants, neither they nor you can insult her any more. HARDY, *Return*, V, Ch. III, 409.

Be their import (sc. of the words) what it might, one thing was quite certain. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XVII, 475.

ii. Let him be the greatest villain in the world, I would not keep from wishing to do some little thing to benefit him. HUGH CONWAY, *Called back*, 200. For she would be an artist — let Catharine say what she would. MRS. WARD, *Rob Elsm.*, I, 153.

c) imperative sentences, the second member of the complex being all but regularly introduced by *and* (78, d; Ch. X, 4); e. g.:

Take any form but that, and my firm nerves | Shall never tremble SHAK., *Macb.*, III, 4, 102.

Be thou as chaste as ice, as pure as snow, thou shalt not escape calumny. id., *Hamlet*, III, 1, 140.

96. Adverbial clauses of concession are often incomplete. This applies to: a) those opening with conjunctives; e. g.:

I wrote a similar epitaph for my wife, though still living. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. II.

Tom professed himself, albeit a high-church man, a strong King William's man. THACK, *Esmer.*, I, Ch. X, 101.

As yet the New Learning, though scared by Luther's intemperate language, had steadily backed him in the struggle. CREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, Sect. V, 321.

And both thy brethren are in Arthur's hall, | Albeit neither loved with that full love | I feel for thee, nor worthy such a love. TEN., *Gar. & Lyn.*, 82. To gaze at one's only love through an open window is, no doubt, a delightful occupation, if a somewhat tantalizing one. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XIV, 137.

Albeit past his eighty-second birthday, Lord Tennyson's figure is only weakened, not broken by age. *Rev. of Rev.*

b) those opening with compounds of *ever*, or *soever*; e. g.:

There is no flock, however watched and tended, | But one dead lamb is there! | There is no fireside, howso'er defended, | But has one vacant chair! LONGF., *Resignation*.

John never smiled at any one's religious beliefs, howsoever foolish. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXVI, 283.

He realized only too painfully that slander, however actively contradicted, does leave a slur. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XXXI, 315.

Of some special interest is the frequent use of *what(so)ever* representing by itself a concessive clause, as in:

But now if all things whatsoever that we look upon, are emblems to us of the highest God, I add that more so than any of them is man such an emblem. CARL., *Hero Worship*, I, 9.

On any terms whatsoever, you will not grudge to wander in such a neighbourhood for a while. *ib.*, I, 2.

c) those that would have the form of hortative sentences; e. g.:

In the history of the world there will not again be any man, never so great, whom his fellowmen will take for a god. CARL., *Hero Worship*, II, 40.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF DISJUNCTIVE CONCESSION
(OR ALTERNATIVE HYPOTHESIS).

97. Adverbial clauses of disjunctive concession occur mostly in pairs. They are, as a rule, introduced by *whether*, the members being connected by the co-ordinative *or* (Ch. XI, 14 f); e. g.:

If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself. *Bible, John, VII, 17.*

There will be room left for doubt in regard to the intentions of the Government, whether the Bill is to be pressed forward as it stands, or whether certain concessions are to be made in matters of detail. *Times.*

Note. Sometimes there are more than two members; thus in:

She will probably contribute to reduce poor Catharine to all the desperate wretchedness of which a last volume is capable — whether by her imprudence, vulgarity, or jealousy — whether by intercepting her letters, ruining her character, or turning her out of doors. *JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. II, 8.*

98. Obs. I. The second clause is in the majority of cases incomplete. In this case the second *whether* is regularly suppressed.

Whether he succeed or fail, it will not matter to me. *MASON, Eng. Gram.³¹, § 587.*

He put her, whether she would or no, into an arm-chair, and knelt beside her. *Mrs. WARD, Marc., I, 257.*

Life tastes much the same, whether we quaff it from a golden goblet, or drink it from a stone mug. *JEROME, Idle Thoughts, 42.*

Whether the criticism be wise or foolish, important or insignificant, it is at least good-natured. *Lit. World.*

For discussion and illustration of the combination *whether ... or no* (or *not*) see Ch. LX, 84.

Also the first member is frequently incomplete. In this case also the first *whether* is often dispensed with; thus in:

i. Whether true or false, the reports will be believed. *ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 14.*

Whether dream or not, the same thing was repeated. *WASH. IRV., Dollf Heyl, (120).*

ii. Edinburgh has owed less to climate, soil, and the fostering care of rulers than any capital, Protestant or Catholic. *MAC., Popes, (559 a).*

Rain or shine, the King rode every day for hours. *THACK., Four Georges, III, 79.*

If Austin Caxton had been an angler of fishes, he could have filled his basket full any day, shine or rain. *LYTTON, Caxt., XII, Ch. I, 303.*

Fair or foul, she went to church thrice every Sunday. *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXI, 288.*

The preacher who is not an orator, throws out fine things, hit or miss, and does not know and feel and care whether he is hitting or missing. *READE, Never too late, I, Ch. VII, 83.*

No drop shall pass my lips, Jim, if you will swear, wet or shine, blow or snow, to come up here twice in every week. *CON. DOYLE, Rodn. Stone, I, Ch. III, 79.*

II. The use of *if* instead of *whether*, as in the following quotation, appears to be rare. No instances are given by the O. E. D.

He promised him that, if he fell on the field or survived it, he would act in a manner worthy of the name of George Osborne. THACK., VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. XXXV, 385.

III. It is but rarely that we find the clauses placed in juxtaposition without any conjunction, as in:

Whether in a late repentance, whether in the first association that comes back upon him, he puts his hands together as a child does when it says its prayers. DICK., BLEAK HOUSE, Ch. LV, 460.

IV. In verse the first member of the complex sometimes opens with *or*, especially when both members are incomplete. Instances, however, appear to be rare.

Or whether his fall enraged him, or how 'twas, he did so set his teeth and tear it (sc. the gilded butterfly). SHAK., COR., I, 3, 69.

Or false, or sooth, thy words of woe, | Clangillian's chieftain ne'er shall fear. SCOTT, GLENFINLAS, XXXIII.

But see, or proven or not, | Whether me likewise ye can overthrow. TEN., BALIN & BALAN, 37.

V. Also the placing of *that* after *whether* appears to be only exceptional; e. g.:

Whether that his own mighty strength at last | Feels the abhorr'd approaches of old age; | Or in some quarrel with the Persian King. MATTHEW ARNOLD, SOHRAB & RUSTUM, 79.

VI. Alternative hypothesis is in many cases closely related to copulative co-ordination, so that *whether ... or (whether)*, and *both ... and*, etc. are to a certain extent used indiscriminately. Thus in the following quotations *whether ... or* would bear replacing by *both ... and* without any material modification in sense:

In what I have to offer I shall speak freely, whether of myself or of my contemporaries. COLER., LECT., I, 34.

The absence of playfellows of my own age, the companionship of mature minds, alternated only by complete solitude, gave something precocious, whether to my imagination or my reason. LYTTON, CAXT., I, Ch. V, 22.

He had some strange notions, whether political or social, which rather frightened his father. id., MY NOV., I, Ch. X, 40.

She generally succeeded in making her husband share all her opinions, whether melancholy or cheerful. THACK., VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. XXV, 270.

In his eyes there was the expression which has always appealed to me more than any other expression, whether in human eyes, or in the eyes of animals. WATTS DUNTON, AYLWIN, XV, Ch. II, 415.

He must be able to shoot with precision, whether with rifle or cannon. Times.

Conversely the co-ordinative conjunctives in the following quotation might be replaced by *whether ... or*:

He is deeply conversant in the ancients, both Greek and Latin. BAIN, COMP., 143.

He is apt to indulge them in great liberties, both of speech and action. HUME, ES., II, 9.

He is deeply read in the writers, ancient and modern, who have treated on the subject. WASH. IRV., SKETCH-BOOK, XXI, 194.

They were men who, with all their faults, moral and intellectual, sincerely and earnestly desired the improvement of the condition of the human race. MAC., POPES, (560 a).

H. POUTSMA, I II.

Nearly all the words that English owes to the Greek language, indirectly as well as directly, were originally scientific or technical. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.* Ch. III, 100.

It corroborates information which reaches us from other sources, private as well as public. *Times*.

It follows also that, when the head-clause is negative, *whether . . . or* and *either . . . or* are not seldom practically interchangeable (Ch. XI, 14, *b*). Thus *whether . . . or* might stand for *either . . . or* in: There is nothing either good or bad, but thinking makes it so. SHAK., *Hamlet*, II, 2, 255.

From such a state of things no benefit, either commercial or political, could have been reaped by any except our Continental rivals. *Times*.

Also in sentences that are not negative *whether . . . or* is sometimes exchangeable for *either . . . or*; thus in:

A combat is a close encounter, whether between few or many, and is usually premeditated. WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v. *battle*.

99. Adverbial clauses of alternative hypothesis sometimes have the form of optative or hortative sentences; thus in:

Be it scroll, or be it book, | Into it, Knight, thou must not look. SCOTT, *Lay*, I, XXIII.

But be it hap, or be it harm, | We tread the pathway arm in arm. *id.*, *Brid. of Trierm.*, III, *Intro.*, III.

The government made up its mind that, come well or ill, it would not leave office without having made an effort in the direction I have indicated. LORD ROSEBURY, *Speech*.

The genuine Africander, be he Boer or Englishman, is steeped in tradition and history. MORN. *Leader*.

Note *willy-nilly*, a union of two sentences, which has hardened into an adverbial expression; e. g.: The eleven Spartans who insist on a morning bath willy-nilly, actually had their usual morning dip in the bathing pond despite the fact that 27 degrees of frost were registered. *II. Lond. News*. In the form *nilly* (= *nill he*) the Old English *nyllan* (= *will not*) survives. SHAKESPEARE has a few instances of *nill*. See O. E. D., s. v. *nill, will, willy-nilly*; JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 12.

And, will you, nill you, I will marry you. *Tam. of the Shrew*, II, 273. It is, will he, nill he, he goes. *Hamlet*, V, 1, 19.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF MANNER.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF QUALITY.

100. Adverbial clauses of quality denote: *a*) what an action or state is like; *b*) what an action or state is supposed to be like; *c*) what an action or state is unlike; *d*) a consequence by which the quality of the action or state mentioned in the head-clause becomes apparent.
101. Those of the first kind are introduced by the conjunction *as*, or by the grammatical hybrid *like* (Ch. III, 17, *d*; Ch. XL, 24).
102. *As* is used to introduce: *a*) full clauses, and such as have a

subject and a predicating verb, although some element(s) may have to be supplied from the head-clause; thus in:

i. Men fear death as children fear to go in the dark. BACON, *Ess*, II, *On Death*, 4.

They easily conquered the Hottentots and Bushmen, acting as we ourselves also acted invariably in similar circumstances. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. III, 42.

The lovers were ultimately glad that they had done as they did. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XV, 284.

I have a mind, some of these days, to serve him as he served Mademoiselle's hound. BUCH., *That Wint. Night*, Ch. VIII, 70.

ii. I don't feel at all as Tom does on that subject. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. III, 347.

I have only come to tell you how sorry I was to see you treated as you were by my uncle. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 36.

Note the idiom in: *α*) As you were! (= Return to the position in which you were before! = Dutch *Herstellen!*).

β) He consoled the unfortunate mother as best he might. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XV, 155. (= as best he could) (Ch. I, 59, *Obs.* II).

b) incomplete clauses with no other element than an adverb or a preposition-group. Compare 105, *d*.

You had better manage the business as before.

Spell this word as in French.

c) incomplete clauses made up of a pronoun and a preposition-group. This *as* varies with *like*, which may be as frequent. Compare 105, *b*.

The ball or orb was carried in the left hand, as the sceptre in the right hand. DEIGHTON, *Note to Macb.*, IV, 1, 121.

Sweet thoughts would swarm as bees about their queen. TEN., *Princ.*, I, 38. He takes to luxury as a fish to water. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daughter*, I, Ch. III, 23 *a*.

He (sc. the ambitious man) exults in it (sc. life), as the strong swimmer in the heaving billows, as the athlete in the wrestle, the soldier in the battle. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, IV, 65.

d) incomplete clauses containing two (pro)nouns placed in succession, one in the function of subject, the other in that of object. Compare 105, *c*.

This above all: to thine own self be true, | And it must follow, as the night the day, | Thou canst not then be false to any man. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 3, 79. It fascinates them as the snake the bird. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. XI, 58.

Note. The placing of two (pro)nouns in succession as in the above examples is mostly avoided, the finite verb of the head-clause or the verb *to do*, as *verbum vicarium*, being mostly put between them. See Ch. I, 74, *Obs.* V.

The childhood shows the man, | As morning shows the day. MILT., *Par. Reg.*, IV, 220.

I cannot consent to go on, unless you carry your gun as Winkle does his. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 164.

The man does not live and never *has* lived, ... who loved a woman as I love you. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. IV, 69.

They passed words to each other as players at a game pass counters. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. V, 91.

She was able to hope in silence, as women do for the men they love. HICHENS, *Gard. of A1.*, II, IV, Ch. XIX, 91.

e) less frequently incomplete clauses containing no other element than a (pro)noun, *like* being the usual conjunctive in this case. Compare 105, a.

"You'll be secret, Thomas?" — "As a coach-horse." SHER., *Riv.*, I, I, (213). He sobbed as a child. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 495.

Mr. Henry, of English birth, has been educated in Germany. He spoke German as a native. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 12.

Note. Possibly we must explain the use of *as* in the above examples by assuming that the comparison is one of degree, an adjective or adverb preceded by *as* being understood. *He spoke German as a native* would then be short for *He spoke German as well as a native*. The sentence would then convey a slightly different shade of meaning from *He spoke German like a native*, i. e. in the way a native speaks German.

It must, however, be admitted that the latter sentence is sometimes meant to convey the same meaning as the former. Thus *like* is used in the sense of *as well as* in:

He learned to speak English like a native. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. V, (239).

Sometimes the use of *as* before an unattended (pro)noun may be due to its approaching in meaning to *as if*, and suggesting such a phrase as *as it were (as)* (109 ff); thus, perhaps, in:

Spain rose as one man against the stranger. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, § 4, 825. (Thus also: The whole people stood together as one man. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 191, 451 b).

I feel as a sister to you. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. III, 345.

Indeed, we loved you as a son. *id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 106.

He had a scrap of paper with him, over which he wept and raged as one demented. *id.* *Den. Duv.*, Ch. II, (202).

Uncle Jack was like a book of reference to my father. Verily at times he looked him up as a book. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. II, 37. (The writer has *as* printed in italics.)

She sighed as one oppressed. HICHENS, *Gard. of A1.*, I, II, Ch. IX, 219.

A similar notion also shines forth in the construction illustrated by: The honest man bestowed a glance on Mr. Chuzzlewit, as who should say: "You see!" DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXI, 253 a.

Thus also before a predicative (pro)noun *as* may denote seeming similarity, as distinguished from *like* which implies actual similarity.

The bulk of his accumulations went to the Duchess of Marlborough, in whose immense wealth such a legacy was as a drop in the bucket. MAC., *Com. Dram.*, (588 b).

He became a little too fond of seeing himself surrounded by a small circle of admirers, to whom he was as a King, or rather as a God. MAC., *Addison*, (751 b).

She was as a woman who mourned for her husband. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. LXXIX, 228.

Their sufferings can be as nothing to our own. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, II, Ch. XVII, 223.

He was as a lost soul. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. IV, (224).

So she did not see the face, | Which then was as an angel's. TEN., Guin., 592.
 We know that what the child owes the parent is as nothing compared with the parent's debt to it. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XI, 206.
 He was as a harp. JACK LONDON, Martin Eden, I. Ch. II, 32.
 Just then she wanted to speak to some one with whom she could be as a little child. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., I, III, Ch. XIII, 313.
 I became as a child, a devotee to prayer. *ib.*, II, v, Ch. XXVI, 216.

In some connexions, however, the difference between *as* and *like* seems to be that the former implies a greater degree of similarity than the latter; thus, perhaps, in:

He was thanking his stars that he was not as Ribot. DU MAURIER, Tribby, I, 207.

Turkey is not as other Powers. Westm. Gaz., No. 6311, 2*a*.

A fact compared with which the fortunes of kings and emperors are as dust in the balance. Rev. of Rev., No. 229, 40*a*.

Madame begins to understand the Arabs ... Madame will soon be as the Arabs. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., II, vi, Ch. XXVII, 286.

But when all is said and done, *as* and *like* not seldom appear to be used indifferently. This becomes evident from the following pairs of examples:

i. He was himself struck to the ground, and lay for a time as one dead. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 178.

ii. Edward arose, and ... bore her away, lying like one dead, ... into his study. Mrs. GASK, A Dark Night's Work, Ch. II, (412).

i. At Rome we must do as the Romans. FROUDE, O. C., Ch. IX, 133.

ii. We must even do like other widows. GAY, Beg. Op., II, 1.

i. She was a married woman, and she must behave as one. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XI, 199.

ii. He has behaved like a gentleman. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. IV, 55.

i. You will be treated as a man — not as a mere hand. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XII, 102.

ii. He treated Emmy like a child. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 867.

Similarly in the following examples *like* would, undoubtedly, have been as appropriate as *as*.

As Chief, who hears his warder call, | "To arms! the foemen storm the wall," | The antler'd monarch of the waste | Sprung from his heathery couch in haste. SCOTT, Lady, I, II, I.

He, as other young men, had an undefined idea, that, as he must earn his bread, London should be his ground. TROL., Castle Richm., Ch. XXXII, 548.

For discussion and illustration see also Ch. LX, 23, *a*.

103. Obs. 1. After clauses introduced by *as*, a subordinate statement, or an infinitive-clause is often understood. Thus *He did as he was told* is short for *He did as he was told that he should do (or to do)*.

It turned out as I expected. MASON, Eng. Gram.³¹, § 418.

If the clause is without a grammatical subject, the subordinate statement, when actually expressed, would have to be announced by the anticipatory *if* (104, b; Ch. II, 19).

I insist on your behaving as becomes a young woman. SHER., Riv., IV, 2, (259). (= "... as it becomes a young woman that she should behave.)

II. The particulars indicated by the clause are sometimes referred to

by *so* in the head-clause. This is only commonly done: 1) before a predicative adjectival participle, as in:

The committee was not so constituted as he had expected. O. E. D., s.v. *as*, 6.

2) when the head-clause stands last (O. E. D., s.v. *as*, 7); as in:

i. As it is in the nature of a kite to devour little birds, so it is in the nature of such persons as Mrs. Wilkins to insult and tyrannise over little people. FIELD., Tom Jones, I, Ch. VI, 6 a.

As some men gaze with admiration at the colours of a tulip, or the wing of a butterfly, so I was by nature an admirer of happy human faces. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. I.

He knew that as they worshipped some gods from love, so they worshipped others from fear. MAC., War. Hist., (654 b).

It may be added that as in religion, so in politics few ... can resist the contagion of the popular superstition. id., Hallam's Const. Hist., (53 a). And as with individuals, so with kinds. SAINTSB., Ninet. Cent., Ch. I, 2.

And as with Ireland, so with her offspring in other lands. Manch. Guard., 12 11, 1926, 382 e.

ii. As these rude bones to us, are we to her | That will be. TEN., Princ., III, 279.

As the husband is, the wife is. id., LOCKSLEY, Hall, 47. (In this example *so* is incompatible with the regular word-order).

Special mention may be made of *so ... as*, and *as ... so* in the antiquated formulæ of swearing, as in:

So help me God, as I disseml not. As I truly fight, so defend me Heaven.

The placing of *so* in the subordinate clause before *as* is uncommon, and may sometimes be due to metrical or rhythmical considerations.

He poured his heart out to them, so as he never could in any other company. THACK., Es m., II, Ch. XV, 289.

I am able ... to draw | All creatures living beneath the sun. | ... After me so as you never saw. BROWNING, Pied Piper, VI.

III. *As* is often preceded by an adverb of degree, which must be considered to modify the absent antecedent *so*. In Present-day English it is especially *exactly*, *just*, *much*, *precisely*, and *quite*, which are thus used; in Early Modern English we also find *even* in this function, and this intensive is still occasionally met with in the higher literary language; e.g.:

i. Everything happened exactly as had been expected.

I will do just as you advise. E. PEACOCK, N. Brendon, I, 177 (O. E. D., s.v. *just*, I, c)

He involuntarily felt much as I did. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 108.

He leaves everything else precisely as he found it. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. LVI, 470.

"Perhaps you are right," says the other, reading his thoughts quite as he used to do in the old days. THACK., Es m., II, Ch. XIII, 259.

ii. Be it unto thee even as thou wilt. Bible, Matth., XV, 28.

Her voice had a touch of masculine quality, even as her shape and features. GISSING, A Life's Morn., Ch. XIV, 208.

IV. Also *same* frequently stands before *as*. From being originally an antecedent of *as* in the head-clause (Ch. XVI) it may pass into the subordinate clause. In such a sentence as *You look the same as*

you always did (JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, G, 128) it may be considered to belong to either.

In the following examples, however, *same* has been detached from the head-clause, has lost its antecedent force, and, as appears from its having discarded the definite article, has assumed the function of an intensive adverb, at the same time imparting a continuative character to the *as*-clause it modifies. *Same* as used in this function is uncommon in literary language, but is fairly frequent in colloquial style.

She has her good days and her bad days, same as a child. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XV.

He's put all his imagination into money — same as your aunts have put theirs into religion. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, I, Ch. I, 15.

Don't you remember you said you was a Liberal, same as your father? GALSW., *Silv. Box*, III, (85).

I'll put in some bread and water for him, same as you advised me to. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, E, 95.

That night Joe Barcomb came up to this 'ere Cauliflower public-house, same as he'd been told. *ib.*, F., 112.

She's got to make her living, same as everybody else. PUNCH, No. 3721, 346 b.

I'd turn all the Germans out of England, same as they would turn us out. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 71, 355.

V. Supplementing what has been said in Ch. VI, 5 about the words and word-groups that may be used in the function of predicative adnominal adjuncts, we may observe that they may also have the form of full clauses. Compare the examples in Ch. VI, 8, e.

Take me as I am, and make the best of me. DICK., *Black House*, Ch. L, 425. The Bill is to be pressed forward as it stands. *Times*.

Had Mr. Pelletan's outbursts been less grotesque, they might have wrought real mischief. As they stand, they can provoke nothing but ridicule. *ib.*

104. Adverbial clauses of quality that are introduced by *as*, are often continuative. We may distinguish the following varieties: a) such as occur parenthetically, and affirm or corroborate what is expressed by the sentence or clause they accompany; e. g.:

New Zealand, as Lord Onslow rather strikingly pointed out last night, has actually sent more men to South Africa in proportion to population than the mother-country herself. *Times*.

If it really was a supernatural apparition, as there was every reason to believe, it might be Hendrick Hudson. *WASH. IRV., Storm-Ship*, (87).

Note. Instead of a parenthesis with *as*, we often find one without *as*, which, of course is in a different grammatical relation to the rest of the sentence. It is worth observing that in such a parenthetical clause the use of anticipating *it* is necessary when its predicate has the rest of the sentence for its subject; e. g.:

i. It might be Hendrick Hudson, and his crew of the Half-moon; who, it was well-known, had once run aground in the upper part of the river. *WASH. IRV., Storm-Ship*, (87).

The public, it seems, have had the impudence to 'boo' some of this gentleman's productions on the first night. *Times*.

Prince Bismarck's health has, it is stated, greatly improved of late. *ib.*

The memorandum, it is understood, comments on the heavy loans incurred abroad. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/10, 1927, 321 c.

ii. He took occasion to ask the Secretary whether he knew anything about a certain Mrs. Rawdon Crawley, who had, he believed, made some noise in London. *THACK., Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXI, 350.

b) such as vary with continuative adnominal clauses that refer to a particular element, mostly a nominal, in the head-clause, and open with *which* (Ch. XVI, 2; Ch. XXXIX, 5). These clauses are without a grammatical subject when in the equivalent adnominal clause *which* would be the subject; e. g.:

i. He seemed a foreigner, as in fact he was. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*, 100, Note.

He was not sick, as some of the other passengers were. *THACK., Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 258.

Her pale face became paler; the circles under her eyes deepened, as they do when tears half gather without falling. *G. ELIOT, Ad. Bede*, Ch. II, 21.

He was the most simple-mannered man in the world — as these large-hearted and large-minded men are apt to be. *Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 8.

ii. The ships were frozen in, as not unfrequently happens in those regions. *BAIN, H. E. Gr.*, 39.

Hilliard hoped that Patty's father had gone to bed. As proved to be the case. *G. GISSING, Eve Madeley's Ransom*, Ch. XII.

An Admiralty Committee is inquiring into the matter, as is very necessary. *Manch. Guard.*, 20.1. 1928, 41 b.

Note. Clauses of this kind are sometimes incomplete, thus those in:

i. He was cordial, as always. *JOHN MORLEY, Life of Gladstone* (i.e. as (or which) he always was.)

They walked up and down, as of custom. *RUDY. KIPLING, Light*, Ch. XI, 153 (i.e. * as (or which) they did of custom.)

They will be able to claim benefit, as of right. *Manch. Guard.*, 7.10, 1927, 262 c (i.e. * as (or which) they will be able to do of right.)

ii. Behind it (sc. Rochester Bridge) rose the ancient castle, its towers roofless, and its massive walls crumbling away, but telling us proudly of its own might and strength, as, when, seven hundred years ago, it rang with the clash of arms, or resounded with the noise of feasting and revelry. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. V, 38. (i.e. as it had when etc.)

c) such as are practically equivalent to principal sentences opening with *so*. They not unfrequently contain the adverb *also*, which is rarely used in the corresponding sentence with *so*; e. g.:

The actions of very vain, heartless, pleasure-seeking people are very often improper (as are many of yours, my friend with the grave face and the spotless reputation). *THACK., Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 317.

His face rolled with fat, as also did all his limbs. *TROL., Orl. Farm*, I, Ch. VI, 64.

Womanliness has its degrees, as have most other things of this world. *DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom.*, Ch. IV.

The Duke and Duchess of Bedford are rapidly recovering from their attack of influenza, as is also their infant son. *Times*.

He had written good poetry, as also had Huxley. *ib.*

Note. This construction is usual only when both the head-clause and the subordinate clause are affirmative. Occasionally it is also

used when both are negative; in that case *as* answers to *nor* or *neither* in the corresponding principal sentence; thus in:

Old Pendennis had no special labours or bills to encounter on the morrow, as he had no affection at home to soothe him. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXX. 332.

d) such as are practically equivalent to principal sentences opening with *in like manner*, or *as well as*. Clauses of this type are mostly incomplete. Before (pro)nouns *like* mostly takes the place of *as*. Compare 107, b; also Ch. X, 26.

I was born free, as Cæsar. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 97.

We have to admit that the ordinary reader, as the ordinary picture-seer, requires to be guided by a name. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 21.

There, as throughout the Empire, local institutions will ultimately be moulded and worked by the people who live under them. TIMES.

They leave them to provide, as at present, for religious instruction. *ib.*

All her home subjects, as in France and Germany, are liable to conscription. Graph.

NOTE. When the subordinate clause precedes, *so* is placed in the head-clause, *as ... so* being practically exchangeable for *whether ... or*, or *both ... and*; thus in:

As politically, so commercially, Central Europe divides into two parties. Graph.

e) Such as are practically equivalent to principal sentences opening with *and*; e. g.:

When in your motion you are hot and dry — | As make your bouts more violent to that end — | And that he calls for drink, | I'll have prepared him | A chalice for the nonce. SHAK., *Hamlet*, IV, 7, 159.

It was beautiful and tragical to see him refuse one party after another — at least to those who could understand, as Helen didn't, the melancholy grandeur of his self-denial. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. IX, 99.

His face was permanently freckled, as his legs were permanently scratched. RUDY. KIPL., *Wee Willie Winkie*.

They complain that it (sc. the Government's Unemployment Bill) does not provide, as it clearly does not, for all cases of unemployment. *Manch. Guard.*, 7 10, 1927, 262 a.

f) such as suggest an adversative co-ordinate sentence, or a subordinate clause of attendant circumstances opening with *while* or *whereas* (121); e. g.:

Some natures delight in evil, as others are thought to delight in virtue. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, I, Ch. X, 12 b.

The vivacity of this good lady, as it helped Edward out of his scrape, was like to have drawn him into one or two others. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXI, 152 c. He thought ... of these things — as he should not have thought of them; — and he persevered. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, II, Ch. X, 129.

g) such as suggest an adverbial adjunct opening with such a phrase as *in the manner*.

She talked about giving him alms as to a menial! THACK., *Essex*, II, Ch. I, 160. (i. e. in the manner as alms are given to a menial.)

(This) inspired him with a certain uneasiness, as of a man who expects to part with a family ghost. GALSW., *Silv. Spoon*, I, Ch. I, 1. (i. e. in the manner of a man who expects etc.)

h) such as have the form of rhetorical questions; e. g.:

It is a common fancy that nature seems to sleep by night. It is a strange fancy, as who should know better than he? DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLVII, 364*b*.
I did not send back the venison, as why should I? THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 40.

Adèle had often pictured her wedding to herself, as what young girl has not? CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 246.

i) such as may be apprehended as approximate equivalents of certain adverbs or adverbial word-groups, the individual words of which they are composed not being thought of separately; thus *as a rule* (= generally), *as a matter of fact* (= however), *as it is* (or *was*) (= in the present circumstances, or however). For illustration see Ch. V, 12.

j) such as serve to affirm, explain, or comment on a word, mostly a nominal, in the head-clause placed in front-position for emphasis, the continuativeness being sometimes more or less problematical. e. g.:

"O filthy traitor!" — "Unmerciful lady as you are, I'm none." SHAK., *Lea r.*, III, 7, 33.

Ungrateful as you are — I own the soft impeachment. SHER, *Riv.*, V, 3, (284).
Crouch! wild beast as thou art! LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. XII, 69.

I will do my best to stop you, madman as you are. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 334.

Note *α*) The clause often implies a concessive function (85); thus in:
i. Rich as he is, one would scarcely envy him. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, 108.
Courageous as I am by nature, I absolutely trembled at the idea! WILK. COL., *Woman*, III, 513.

ii. Angel as she was, Dora began to lose her angelic temper. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLV, 467.

iii. Long as he resided in India, ... he never learned to express himself with facility in any Indian language. MAC., *Clive*, (519*b*).

Much as he had hurt her, she held out her hand to bid him a friendly good night. CH. BRONTË, *Villelle*, Ch. X, 116.

β) The same construction is also found with a present participle (35, Obs. II), or the unmodified verb-form (85), as the word commented on. In the case of the former it is a causal, in that of the latter it is a concessive function that is implied; e. g.:

i. The insidious advice, agreeing as it did with what is own terrors suggested, was readily received. MAC., *Clive*, (518*b*).

ii. Soften it as they would, their hearts were lighter. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 86.

γ) These sentences, however, differ from those with a nominal (or adverb) in a similar position in that they do not suggest any modification by *so*, *as*, *such* or *like*, which are not unfrequently met with before the latter. The placing of *so* before nominals, although by no means extinct, is now less common than it was in Early Modern English, when this appears to have been a normal practice.

So shaken as we are, so wan with care, | Find we a time for frighted peace to pant. SHAK., *Henry IV.*, A, I, I, I.

I am quite ashamed of you, Fanny, to make such a difficulty of obliging your

cousins in a trifle of this sort — so kind as they are to you. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XV, 153.

I can never understand how Bill Tidd, so poetic as he was, could ever take on with such a fat, odious, vulgar woman as Mrs. R. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 182.

So late as it was, the unwelcome visitor could not stop long. Mrs. GASK., *A Dark Night's Work*, Ch. VI, (458).

When agreement of that kind, so sweeping as it is, is proposed to us, we shall be delighted. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5567, 1c.

The concessive force is vague when, as in the following examples, the head-clause is understood:

And so ambitious as he was when a boy! LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, VII, Ch. XVI, 480.

"I suppose it is this — that Marie Bromar cares nothing for him." — "But so rich as he is! And they say, too, such a good-looking man!" TROL., *Gold. Lion*, Ch. XIV, 158.

Also *as* is common enough before nominals followed by an *as*-clause with a concessive meaning, examples being especially frequent in Early Modern English.

If Signor Leonato be her father, she would not have his head on her shoulders for all Messina, as like him as she is. SHAK., *Much ad do*, I, I, 116.

I warrant you, as late as it is, I'll find my lodging as well as any drunken bully of them all. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, IV, 4, (307).

Break your heart! I'd rather the Marygold should break her cable in a storm, as well as I love her. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 4, (260).

As young as you are, I am convinced you are no stranger to that passion. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. V, 9.

There was a flag upon the castle, and ships moving or lying anchored in the firth; both of which, for as far away as they were, I could distinguish clearly. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. II, (195).

As poor as I appear, I have friends of my own that will be blithe to help me. *ib.*, Ch. III, (201).

For discussion of this *so* and *as* see also KRUISINGA, *English Studies*, IX, II, 60: and especially STOFFEL, *Intensives & Down-Toners*, 78.

As-clauses standing after nominals that are modified by *such* or *like* appear to imply a causal relation, and to belong especially to Late Modern English; e. g.:

i. Well, then, would you like him for your husband, out and out? such a fine gentleman as he is! TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XIII, 225.

You must expect they will find instructors in that art. Such charming young ladies as they are! OPPENHEIM, *The Mischiefmaker*, Ch. VIII.

ii. (She) professed to be dreadfully frightened — like a hypocrite as she was. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 214.

This *as* varies with *that* (compare note ϵ); thus in:

But Hilda, like the Angel of Mercy that she was, whispered in the girl's ear [etc.]. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. I, 19.

δ) When the nominal is modified by *like*, the *as*-clause is frequently dispensed with as conveying little meaning, thus in:

Like a true Greek, he attached extreme importance to gymnastics; ... and like a true Greek, he did not suffer these corporeal exercises to absorb all his time and attention. LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.*, VI, Ch. I, 187.

Like a fool, I cried most bitterly. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 130.
He grieved, like an honest lad, to see his comrade left to face calamity alone.
MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VII, 42.

She went to bed like a good girl. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 21.

I swore to fulfil his last request. Like a coward I delayed. BUCH., *That Winter Night*, Ch. XII, 101.

Sometimes it appears to be rather a relation of consequence than of cause that is implied; thus in:

Just turn your head a little more to the right, Dorian, like a good boy. OSC. WILDE, *DOR. GRAY*, Ch. II, 29. (i.e. if you do so I will call you a good boy.)
Come along and introduce me, like a good fellow. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. I, 10.

A notion similar to that of *as if* is suggested by *like* in:

He was waiting for us, in fact, at the public-house; and asked me how I found myself, like an old acquaintance. DICK., *COP.*, Ch. III, 15*a* (i.e. as if he were an old acquaintance.)

And you couldn't so properly have said he wore a hat, as that he was covered in a-top, like an old building, with something pitchy. *ib.*, Ch. III, 15*a*.

Donkeys seem merely to disappear, like pins. *Westm. Gaz.*, 16/12, 1922, 11*b*.

Even *like* sometimes disappears, which makes the curtailment complete; e. g.:

Mr. Campbell, the minister of Essendean, was waiting for me by the garden-gate, good man. STEV., *KIDN.*, Ch. I, (191).

*) *That* is a frequent variant of *as* in these clauses, especially when a function of cause is implied and the word commented on is a noun. This predicative *that* is sometimes dispensed with.

i. * Ungrateful that I was, the happiness of home ceased to content me. LYTTON, *CAXT.*, IV, Ch. II, 87.

** I have encouraged him too much vain fool that I have been. KINGSLEY, *HYP.*, Ch. IV, 18*a*.

Dora disdained to reply, gentle creature that she was Mrs. WARD, *DAVID GRIEVE*, I, 279.

ii. The sailors face these dangers without a tremor, doing their duty like the men they are. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5317, 2*a*.

105. *Like* is used to introduce: a) incomplete clauses containing no other element than a (pro)noun. In this case *as* is unusual. Compare 102, *e*.

I warrant Dolly Sester, your honour's favourite, would blush like my waistcoat. SHER., *RIV.*, III, 4.

Anything you give Miss Tox will be hoarded and prized ... like a relic. DICK., *DOMB.*, Ch. V, 34.

She protested with tears in her eyes that she loved Miss Pecksniff like a sister. *id.*, *CHUZ.*, Ch. XXXII, 258*a*.

During the whole of this time, Scrooge had acted like a man out of his wits. *id.*, *CHRISTM. CAR.*, II, 40.

I'm more certain every moment that this immaculate matron is lying like a prospectus. *PUNCH*.

b) incomplete clauses made up of a (pro)noun and a preposition-group. In this case *as* may be as frequent. Compare 102, *c*.

By this time the rings had begun to fall from the debtor's irresolute hands, like leaves from a wintry tree. DICK., *LITTLE DOR.*, Ch. VI, 32*a*.

I should like to stick to it like a flea to a fleece. G. ELIOT, *M. i. d.*, Ch. XLI, 306. She took to the multiplication-table, as Mrs. D. expressed it, like ducks to water. EDNA LYALL, *Do n.*, I, 19.

When I started the present life, I already possessed a natural aptitude for business, and took to it like a duck to water. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 222, 554 *b.* The Arabs leapt up at her like dogs at a bone. HICHENS, *Gard. of A. I.*, III, Ch. XI, 283.

He was convinced that ... all these rumours of war would disappear like snow in the sunshine. *Manch. Guard.*, 3/2, 1928, 97 *c.*

c) incomplete clauses consisting of two (pro)nouns placed in succession, one in the function of subject the other in that of object. In this case *as* appears to be more common. Compare 102, *d.*

He is for ever with Margaret, ... and loves her like a cow her calf. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. VII, 36.

Ere yet we have shed our locks like trees their leaves. BAILEY, *Festus*, 129 (O. E. D., s. v. *like*, B, 6).

d) incomplete clauses containing no other element than an adverb or a preposition-group, *as* being in this case the ordinary conjunction. Compare 102, *b.*

Snow ... is descending in thick flakes, like in January. *Daily News*, 24/10, 1896, 7/4 (O. E. D., s. v. *like* B, 6).

I suppose it is like in other countries. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XII, 106.

She had not resisted him, like upon that other occasion. *ib.*, Ch. XXXV, 324.

You breakfast downstairs at half past nine, like this morning? *ib.*, Ch. XXVI, 237.

e) full clauses, but only in colloquial and vulgar language, *as* being in this case the ordinary conjunction. Compare 102, *a.*

I don't stand the winters like I used to do. LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 112.

I never see a young woman in any station conduct herself like you have conducted yourself. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LIX, 493.

I can't remember it quite like she said it. MISS MONTGOMERY, *Misunderstood*, Ch. II, 48 (FRANZ, *Shak. Gram²*, § 583).

106. Obs. I. *Like* always implies comparison, and is not, therefore, found before predicative adnominal adjuncts (Ch. VI). The difference between an incomplete clause consisting of *like* + noun and a pred. adnom. adjunct consisting of *as* + noun, is clearly brought out by comparing such sentences as *He lived in lodgings like a student* (Hij leefde op kamers als een student) and *He lived in lodgings as a student* (Hij woonde op kamers als student). See, however, Ch. LX, 23.

It is of some interest to compare the function of the predicating *as* (Ch. VI, 9) with that of *like* in the following examples:

Because you approached her as a goddess, she used you like a dog. FARQUHAR, *Recruit. Of.*, I, I, (258).

He (sc. Roosevelt) is not like March, who comes in as a lion, and goes out like a lamb. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 230, 104 *b.* (*As* appears to be improper.)

II. *Like* + (pro)noun is often virtually equivalent to an adverb of quality. Thus *He acted like an honest man* differs little from *He acted honestly*; and *Don't talk like that* is practically equivalent to *Don't talk so*.

You told me that you would bear this like a man. TROL., *Ori. Farm*, III, Ch. XIX, 250.

III. *Like* may be interpolated in such a sentence as:

The old familiar roar that came swelling up around me sounded the sweetest music I had heard for many a long day. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 75.

IV. Many collocations with *like* have become proverbial; thus those in:

She was singing away like a robin. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 38.

She was singing like a lark. *ib.*, Ch. V, 49.

Drinking like a fish. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. VIII, 111.

His coat fitted him like a glove. PUNCH.

107. *Like* is also found at the head of continuative clauses, which may be: a) full. In this case it is frequent enough in vulgar and colloquial language, but it is hardly tolerated in Standard English, which has *as*. For illustration see also STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 811.

It came into her mind to tell him a portion of the truth, like it had once been done before. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 20.

Did Il Christo travel about always, like we do? EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. XXII, 206.

"What do they do up there?" — "Sit and sing hymns, and say prayers." — "What, like they did at the funeral?" *id.*, *Don.*, I, 27.

One becomes used to being hard up, like you'd imagine a sensible man would. JEROME, *Diary of a Pilgr.*

They don't make any charge for programmes here, like they do at some theatres. PUNCH.

b) incomplete, with no other element than a (pro)noun. In this case its function approaches to that of a co-ordinative conjunctive. Thus *He was a miser, like his father* is almost equivalent to *He was a miser, and his father was one also*, or more correctly with the order reversed: *His father was a miser, and he was one also*. Compare 104, d; also Ch. X, 26.

He took snuff, like the Doctor. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

Its legs and feet, most delicately formed, were, like those upper members, bare. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 28.

He's dead too, isn't he, like your mother? HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XIX, 90.

108. Obs. I. In Early Modern English *as* was sometimes placed after *like*; e. g.:

The Pearch will set up his fins, much like as a Turkie-Cock will sometimes set up his tail. WALTON, *Compt. Angl.* (FRANZ, E. S., XVIII).

Then saith he to the man, Stretch forth thine hand. And he stretched it forth; and it was restored whole, like as the other. Bible, *Matth.*, XII, 13.

Like as is still found: 1) archaically in the higher literary language, as in:

They bore him to that hill when they had slain ... | His servants and his wives like as we saw. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Wand.*, 19.

She waxed for wrath and sorrow like as one mad. SWINB., *Atalanta*, *Argum.*

My spirit rises before it like as the lark awakened by the dawn. HALL CAINE, *Deemst.*, Ch. XLII, 303.

2) in vulgar language; e. g.:

"A poor boy," Charley said. "No father, no mother, no any one. Like as Tom might have been." DICK., *Bleak House* (FRANZ, E. S., XII).
Jim came into my back room, sat down on my sofy, like as you see him in that chair. BRET HARTE, *Luck of Roar. Camp* (ib.).

II. In archaic English *like* is sometimes found preceded by *even* emphasizing the notion of similarity it expresses; thus in:

'Tis unnatural, | Even like the deed that's done. SHAK., *Mac b.*, II, 4, II.

III. The construction used in the following example seems to be used only in colloquial or vulgar language:

I'm going where I won't be chivied about and pointed at, like what I am here. GALSW., *Freelands*, X, 86. (= ... as (or which) I am here.)

109. Clauses which denote what the action or state mentioned in the head-clause is supposed to be like, contain a clause expressing the condition or hypothesis on which the likeness depends. The words of the second member of the comparison are understood, being only suggested by the conjunction *as*, while the condition or hypothesis is expressed by a full or by an incomplete clause, mostly introduced by *if* or *though*. Thus *You look as if you have (or had) something to tell me* stands for *You look as you look (or would look) if you have (or had) something to tell me*. The second member of the comparison being but indistinctly present to the speaker's mind, the conjunctions *as* and *if* (or *though*) are thought of as one expression. The conjunctive word-groups *as if* and *as though* are used indiscriminately, but the latter is less familiar than the former. Compare ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 65, c.

i. He always seems as if he was measuring me for my coffin somehow. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 405.

He was holding his gun as if he wished his coat-pocket to save him the trouble of pulling the trigger. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.

He felt as if the ground were slipping beneath his feet. HALL CAINE, *Christ.*, II, 269.

ii. On this account I feel always, on a Saturday night, as though I also were released from some yoke of labour. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. III, 54.

They stood upon a bleak and desert moor, where monstrous masses of stone were cast about, as though it were the burial-place of giants. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 65.

Note especially *to make as if* (or *though*) -- *to pretend*, as in: What was it made her start back ... and make as if she would faint on his arm? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIII, 235.

He made as though he did not hear her. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nots.*, Ch. XXII, 202.

She made as if to hide Torpenhow. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. VII, 93.

In the following examples the conditional clause is incomplete:

She continued to lean upon his arm, as if still willing to receive his assistance. GOLDS., *Vic.*

I remember the scene as though yesterday. THACK., *Den. Du v.*, Ch. II, (204).
In the morning all the ordinary currents of conjecture were disturbed by the presence of a strange mourner, who had plashed among them as if from the moon. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXV, 244.

110. Obs. I. Sometimes *as* is found in the same function as *as if*: 1) in ordinary English, when the clause is incomplete; thus in:

She clung to George *as* by instinct. THACK., *VAN FAIR*, I, Ch. XXV, 263.

At the end of three months she woke up *as* out of a dream. *id.*, *DEN DUVE*, Ch. II, (200).

Its hair, and skirts, and tassels, were still agitated *as* by the hot vapour from an oven. DICK., *CHRISTMAS CAR.*, I, 19.

The spirit paused a moment, *as* observing his condition. *ib.*, IV, 76.

He wrote *as* with cheerful spirits — *as if* perfectly satisfied with his prospects.

LYTTON, *MY NOVEL*, I, VII, Ch. II, 440. (Observe the divided practice.)

In the following example *as* may be meant to convey the same notion as *as if*.

We seven stay'd at Christmas up to read; | And there we took one tutor *as* to read. TEN., *PRINC.*, *PROL.*, 177. (WALLACE, in *Macmillan's Eng. Clas.*, explains: *ostensibly for that purpose.*)

2) in older English, and, archaically, in Present-day English, also when the clause is full. See FRANZ, E. S., XVIII; O. E. D., s. v. *as*, I, b; 9.

One cried "God bless us!" and "Amen" the other; | *As* they had seen me with these hangman's hands. SHAK., *MACB.*, II, 2, 27.

Should I take riches from you, it would seem | *As* I did want a soul to bear that poverty. DRYDEN, *MAR. À LA MODE*, III, 1, (284).

The shapeless pair, | *As* they design'd to mock me, at my side | Take step for step. COWPER, *WINT. MORN. WALK*, 17.

(He) fronted Marmion where he sate, | *As* he his peer had been. SCOTT, *MARM.*, I, XXVIII.

The cows were lowing, *as* they asked to be delivered of their burden of milk. FLOR. MARRYAT, *BANKT. HEART*, I, 146.

The current phrase *as it were*, which is far more common than *as if it were*, exhibits a survival of the once common practice.

i. My valour is certainly going! it is sneaking off! — I feel it oozing out *as it were* at the palms of my hands! SHER., *RIV.*, V, 3, (281).

ii. Heaven places in his soul, *as if* it were a compass, a needle that always points to one end, — viz, to honour in that which those around him consider honourable. LYTTON, *CAXTONS*, III, Ch. 58.

This use of *as* is sometimes attended by inverted word-order; thus in:

A man lived who could measure it (sc. love) from end to end; foretell its term; handle the young cherub *as were* he a shot owl! MER., *RICH. FEV.*, Ch. XXIV, 176.

Dear man, *as were* I a Cantabrian provincial, I should say. COMPT. MACK., *SIN. STREET*, 802 (KRUIS., *HANDB.*, § 2171).

Started by the pigmy power of Montenegro, the war has gone on blithely, *as were* money of no account. *Eng. Rev.*, 1915 (*ib.*)

II. The adverbs of degree found before *as* when introducing clauses of quality of the first kind (103, Obs. III), may also be met with before *as if* or *as though*; e. g.:

The woman proceeded gently to tickle that withered chin of seventy, *much as though* it had been that of a four- or five-year-old child. DOR. GERARD, *ETERN. WOM.*, Ch. XV.

Thus also, in colloquial or vulgar English, we sometimes find *the same* placed before *as if*, as in:

A woman, with everything provided for her, and allowed to keep her own

money, the same as if it was settled on her, ... to go on i' this way, biting and snapping like a mad dog! G. ELIOT, *MILL*, Ch. XII, 111.

III. Especially in vulgar English *as if* is sometimes preceded by *like*; thus in:

My husband's tongue's been runnin' on you, like as if he w'ds light-headed. Ever since first he come a-courtin' on me. G. ELIOT, *MILL*, IV, Ch. III, 360.

When gentlemen of his age fall in love with girls, they are often like as if they were bewitched. CH. BRONTË, *JANE EYRE*, Ch. XXXVI, 525.

She was like as if she knew somehow how matters had gone on. *ib.*, Ch. XXXVI, 526.

He put down his feet so still and careful, like as if he was afraid of offending God at every step. KINGSLEY, *WESTW. HOLE*, Ch. XIV, 114 a.

In Early Modern English also *as* is found preceded by *like*; e. g.:

Yet once methought | It lifted up it head and did address | Itself to motion, like as it would speak. SHAK., *HAMLET*, I, 2, 217.

111. As some of the above examples show, these clauses opening with *as if* or *as though*, whether full or incomplete, may be continuative. Here follow a few more:

i. Even their peachy cheeks were puffed out and distended, as though they ought of right to be performing on celestial trumpets. DICK., *CHUZ*, Ch. XXV, 205 a.

She kisses me on both cheeks, as though she were my sister. RUDY. KIPL., *LIGHT*, Ch. XI, 146.

He stopped before he reached the end, as though he had lost interest in the subject. *ib.*, Ch. XI, 147.

ii. Its hair was white, as if with age. DICK., *CHRISTM. CAR.*, I, 28.

Emmy looked in quick challenge at Alf, as if to say, "You see how it is." SWINNERTON, *NOCTURNE*, III, Ch. XII, II, 245.

The Chevalier shivered again, as if with cold. BUCHANAN, *THAT WINT. NIGHT*, Ch. I, 19.

112. Clauses which denote what the action or state mentioned in the head-clause is unlike, refer to the adverb *otherwise*, or to the adjective *other*, and are normally introduced by the conjunction *than*; e. g.:

We do no otherwise than we are will'd. SHAK., *HENRY VI, A*, I, 3, 10.

How could the little man be otherwise than bewildered, after labouring so long to destroy his own identity? DICK., *CRICK*, II, 42.

There was no sort of coiffure that could make Miss Nancy's cheek and neck look otherwise than pretty. G. ELIOT, *SIL. MARN.*, Ch. XI, 80.

It was impossible to believe that she was otherwise than good. FRANKF. MOORE, *THE JESSAMY BRIDE*, Ch. XVI, 132.

ii. The provision then which we have here made is no other than Human Nature. FIELD., *TOM JONES*, I, Ch. I, 1 a.

No one could mistake him for other than a gentleman. TROL., *SMALL HOUSE*, I, Ch. XXIII, 274.

He did what seemed in his own eyes to be good, but was held by many to be nothing other than the work of a rebel. ANT. HOPE, *CHRON. OF COUNT ANTONIO*, Ch. I.

Further illustration is to be found in Ch. XL, 162 ff.

113. Obs. I. These clauses are almost invariably incomplete, as in all the above examples. Sometimes they are understood altogether, as in: H. POUTSMA, II.

Thy father was a worthy prince, | And merited, alas! a better fate; | But Heaven thought otherwise. ADDISON (WEBST., Dict.).

II. Instead of *otherwise than* we mostly find *differently from* or *differently to*. As to the construction of *different* the O. E. D. observes: "The usual construction is now with *from*; that with *to* (after *unlike*, *dissimilar to*) is found in writers of all ages, and is frequent colloquially, but is by many considered incorrect." See also FOWLER, Dict. of Mod. Eng. Usage; STORM, Eng. Phil.², 749, 751, 883; HODGSON, Errors, 112; SATTLER, Anglia, IV.

i. Dolf was like many other young reasoners of exceeding good hearts and giddy heads, who think after they act, and act differently from what they think. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl, (142).

Her husband felt differently from herself. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XXXVII, 271.
The French see these things differently from us. GALSW., In Chan c., III, Ch. X, 729.

ii. The Englishman of to-day thinks quite differently on this subject to the Englishman of 40 years ago. Lit World.

I have not the courage to educate my boy differently to his contemporaries. The Nation, XVIII, No. 21, 729 a.

In such a construction as is found in the following example *differently from* (or *to*) could not take the place of *otherwise than*:

I felt it impossible to treat you otherwise than as that dear child-friend of years ago. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. IV, 68.

Similarly *different from* (or *to*) mostly takes the place of *other than*; thus in:

It's a different sort of life to what she's been used to. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar n., Ch. IX, 62.

The change was to be brought about by an agency far different from what he would have anticipated. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. VI, 97.

It gave a different expression to her face from what it usually wore. *ib.*, I, Ch. IV, 69.

Compare: She seemed to Winnington to be thinking something other than the moment — the actual moment. Mrs. WARD, Delia Blanchflower, II, Ch. XVI, 155.

In certain functions only *different from* (or *to*) is available, as in others *other than* is the only suitable expression. See also the examples in Ch. XL, 167, b, 2.

i. I am different to you from what I am to other people. Miss BRADDON, My First Happy Christm., (67).

ii. Nobody could mistake him for other than a gentleman. TROL., Small House, I, Ch. XXIII, 274.

ii. He did what seemed in his own eyes to be good, but was held by many to be nothing other than the work of a rebel. ANT. HOPE, Chron. of Count Antonio, Ch. I.

III. Two other forms of catachresis deserve mention in this place, viz. *different than* and *other from* or *to*. According to FITZEDWARD HALL (Mod. Eng., III, 82), referred to in the O. E. D. (s. v. *different*, 1, b), the former is met with in quite a large array of writers of standard works; the latter appears to be less frequent. See also O. E. D., s. v. *another*, 5; and *other*, 6.

i. She too had one day hoped for a different lot than to be wedded to a little gentleman who rapped his teeth. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 18.

They were different than they would have been, had the grey lynx not come into their lives. CURWOOD, *Kazan the Wolf-dog*, Ch. XVIII, 206.

ii. I hope to live to be another man from what I was. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 76.

He seemed to be of another race to them. CON. DOYLE, *Rodney Stone*, I, Ch. II, 34.

She had been trained in another school from Caroline. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Captives*, II, Ch. II, 97.

114. Clauses which indicate the consequence through which a quality or state becomes apparent normally open with *that*. They point back to an antecedent *so* or *such*; e. g.:

The girl pulled the hood of a cloak she wore over her head and over her face, and, looking backward so that the front folds of this hood were turned down the river, kept the boat in that direction going before the tide. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. I, 3.

The seats and desks must be of such a kind that the pupils will naturally assume positions favourable for good breathing. RIPPMAUN, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 5.

115. Obs. I. In Early Modern English, and also in vulgar Late Modern English, *as that* is sometimes found for *that*. See FRANZ, E. S., XVIII; id., *Shak. Gram.*², § 572.

The power placed in the hands of a chief, in such a way as that the principle of unity in the government will be appreciated. *Transl. of Mercier's Fragm. Pol. and Hist.* (O. E. D., s. v. *as*, 19, c).

It is possible so to constitute a free government as that a single person shall possess a large share of power [etc.], HUME, E. S., III, 16.

I engaged to meet them there in the evening. But I so arranged it as that I should meet Ham first. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LI, 366 b.

II. Also *as* (without *that*) appears to have been in occasional or, perhaps, common use in Early Modern English; e. g.:

He handled the matter so, as he cut off their land-forces from their ships. BACON, *New Atlantis*, (282).

III. In the following quotation the antecedent *so* is understood, while the clause is introduced by *as*:

My lord, I warrant you we'll play our part, | As he shall think by our true diligence | He is no less than what we say he is. SHAK., *Tam. of the Shrew*, I, I, 69.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCES.

116. Adverbial clauses of attendant circumstances are introduced by:
a) the conjunction *that*; *b*) prepositions used as conjunctions: *but* (often followed by *that*), *without*; *c*) adverbial adjuncts used as conjunctions: 1) consisting of or containing a noun: *while*, *at the same time*, the latter followed by *that*, 2) consisting of an adverb: *besides* *moreover*, both regularly followed by *that*, 3) consisting of an adverb coupled to the conjunction *as*: *whereas*.

117. *That* is often met with to open clauses of this group, but only in connexion with the negative *not*. Also the head-clause contains a negative, mostly *never*, or a negative-implying word, such as *scarcely*, etc.; e. g.:

She never advanced a proposition that she did not immediately bristle up. DISR., Syb., I, Ch. I, 47.

I promised them that never a week should pass in future that I did not visit them. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 478.

I never saw her in the Piccadilly drawing-room that we did not pay her homage. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, III, 102.

Never has he been attacked in my presence that I have not uttered my protest against the injustice done him. AN. BESANT, *Autobiograph*, 125.

Scarcely a year passed that six or seven persons were not drowned under the very windows of the town. THOM. A. ADRICH, *The Cruise of the Dolphin*, (174).

118. *But* and *but that* are used only when the head-clause is negative, and are practically equivalent to *that ... not*. *But* is distinctly more usual than *but that*, the latter being, it appears, used only when the subject of the subordinate clause differs from that of the head-clause. The O. E. D.'s comment (s. v. *but*, 14) is "formerly sometimes *but that*."

i. * Collingwood never saw a vacant place in his estate, but he took an acorn out of his pocket and popped it in. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 195.

It never rains but it pours, ... so very speedily another chance occurred. *id.*, *Pen d.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 339.

I never hear the name, or read the name of Yarmouth, but I am reminded of a certain Sunday morning on the beach. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 21 a.

** I never meet a Scotchman, but my heart warms. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XIV, 88.

I never loved a woman, but she laughed at me. THACK., *Pen d.*, II, Ch. XII, 133.

I never see her, but she has something pretty to say to me. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. III, 206.

Amyas could not look him in the face, but Eustace must fancy that his eyes were on the scar. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XIV, 114 b.

After this scarcely a day passed, but Bernardine went to see Mr. Reffold. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. IX, 36.

ii. Never a day passed, but that cruel words were spoken between them. *Graph*.

In the following example *but* does not admit of being replaced by *that ... not*.

Had not you a sufficient field for your roguery in imposing on Sir Peter and supplanting your brother, but you must endeavour to seduce his wife? SHER., *School*, V, 3, (432).

119. Obs. I. Instead of *but (that)* we also find *but what*, which, although by some considered vulgar, is not unfrequent in ordinary style. Compare Ch. XIII, 4; Ch. XVI, 13.

I never do get particularly fond of anything in this world, but what something dreadful happens to it. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, IV, 70.

I never knew a doctor called into any case yet, but what it transpired that another day's delay would have rendered cure hopeless. *ib.*

II. When the subject of the subordinate clause is identical with that of the head-clause, it is sometimes suppressed; thus in:

He could not see | The bird of passage flying south but long'd | To follow.
TEN., PRINC., III, 194.

120. *Without*, rarely followed by *that*, was formerly common in literary use, but is now uncommon, and chiefly illiterate. O. E. D. s.v. *without*, C, 1, 2; STORM, Eng. Phil.², 1025; KRUIS, Handbk.⁴, § 1806.

i. I can't be put in jail without you are. MAR., Three Cutters.

The artist, of whatever kind, cannot produce a truthful work without he understands the laws of the phenomena he represents. SPENC., Educ., Ch. I, 33b.

Lemonade was brought in a bowl, and little cups of coffee, without sugar was handed about. GRAY HILL, With the Bedouins, 46.

One can't be a fool without one has at least tried to think. CONRAD, Chance, IV, 97.

He prefaced his reading of the Thirty-nine Articles by informing his parishioners that he read them because he could not have the living without he did so. Times.

ii. It was next to impossible that a casket could be thrown into her garden, or an interloper could cross her walks to seek it, without that she ... should have caught intimation of things extraordinary transpiring on her premises. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XII, 141.

121. *While* varies with *whilst*, which is, presumably, equally common (25, Obs. III). The clauses they introduce are continuative; in ordinary colloquial speech they are mostly replaced by such as open with *but*, or *and* (Ch. IX, 2, Note a).

We see daily how the false and worthless live and prosper, while the good are called away. THACK., PEND., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 416.

Note a) *While as* and *while that*, now obsolete, are met with in Early Modern English (25, Obs. IV).

Pirates may make cheap pennyworths of their pillage ... | While as the silly owner of the goods | Weeps over them. SHAK., Henry VI, B, I, I, 225.

β) The word-group *at the same time that* is sometimes used in a sense approximating to that of *while*; thus in:

On further reflection I find that it rather improves our sensibility for all the tender and agreeable passions; at the same time that it renders the mind incapable of the rougher and more boisterous emotions. HUME, Es., I, 6.

At the same time that science shows us all which can be known, it shows us the limits beyond which we can know nothing. SPENC., Educ., Ch. I, 39a.

122. Both *besides* and *moreover* require *that* when used as subordinate conjunctives. Both are now uncommon and antiquated in this function. The clauses they introduce are always continuative.

besides that: His horses are bred better; for, besides that they are fair with their feeding, they are taught their manage. SHAK., As you like it, I, 1, 10.

There was ample time to note these particulars, for, besides that they were sufficiently obvious without very close observation, some moments elapsed before any one broke silence. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. III, 11a.

moreover that: Moreover that we much did long to see you, | The need we have to use you did provoke | Our hasty sending. SHAK., Hamlet, II, 2, 2.

Note a) The vulgar language has *moreover than which*; thus in:

A nice night we've all had, moreover than which at a quarter to three lemon squashes gave out, and, as one of the waiters in a hoarse voice assured me, there wasn't a hounce of hice left on the premises. PUNCH.

β) With *besides that compare besides which*, as in the following example, in which *which* is, of course, a relative pronoun:

There is no need to fret over failure, when one hopes one may be allowed to redeem that failure later on. Besides which, life is very hard. BEATR. HAR., SHIPS, I, Ch. IX, 40.

123. *Whereas* has the same force as *while* (or *whilst*), but is more strictly literary.

Whereas he had received a very handsome fortune with his wife, he had now spent every penny of it. FIELD., TOM JONES, X, Ch. III, 5a.

I brought him up in ignorance of his father, whom he had always imagined to be a gentleman; whereas he was only a sergeant in a Line regiment. BESANT, ALL SORTS, Ch. XXIV, 169.

Note. Mention may here be made of the group-preposition *instead of*, which assumes conjunctive function in such incomplete clauses as: You ought to have told me this instead of I you. READE, CLOISTER, Ch. IX, 49.

Now they rule him instead of him them. SARAH GRAND, HEAV. TWINS, 42 (JESP., PROG., § 158, foot-note).

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF DEGREE.

124. Adverbial Clauses of degree denote: a) what the intensity of an action or state is like; b) what the intensity of an action or state is unlike; c) a consequence by which the intensity of an action or state becomes apparent.
125. Those of the first group are regularly introduced by the conjunction *as*. The following quotations are divided into certain groups, which will be commented on in the next §.

a) Having by this time cried as much as I possibly could, I began to think [etc.]. DICK., COP., Ch. V, 31 b.

I felt assured that she and my daughters were as anxious to return to Brompton Hall as I was. MARRYAT, OLLA PODRIDA.

He would have shrunk from pity as much as she did. BEATR. HAR., SHIPS, I, Ch. VII, 29.

I wish that I was as good as Jemima. RID. HAG., MEES. WILL, Ch. III, 32.

b) She shall smart for this, so sure as my name in Jonathan Meeson. *ib.*, Ch. II, 16.

He was truly anxious to protect and comfort his niece so well as he was able. HUGH WALPOLE, THE CAPTIVES, I, Ch. I, 9 (The use of antecedent *so* instead of *as*, in this and the preceding example is uncommon.)

c) Nor were we half so much courted as at Brompton Hall. MARRYAT, OLLA PODRIDA.

In this country literary success does not mean so much as it does in other countries. RID. HAG., MEES. WILL, Ch. IV, 40.

d) None are so deaf as those who will not hear. PROV.

No country suffered so much as England. *MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 9.*

The cable-tram had never seemed so slow to Clara as to-day. *DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XIV.*

e) There are a great many young ladies in the world... whom you wouldn't like half as well... as the beaming hostess of the Blue Dragon. *DICK., Chuz., Ch. III, 15 a.*

"But, my life, how wet you are, Mark!" — "I am. What do you consider yourself, sir?" — "Oh, not half as bad," said his fellow-traveller. *ib., Ch. XLI, 333 a.*

John was not as fair in his behaviour as might have been expected. *ib., Ch. XXXIX, 312 a,*

f) The top of the wall was not quite as broad as she had imagined. *DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XXIII.*

He really was not quite as old as he made himself out. *ib., Ch. IX.*

Even here she had not as many followers as she would have desired. *ib., Ch. III.*

So royally was never strong man born, | Nor queen so nobly bore as noble a thing | As this my son was. *SWINB., Atal. in Calydon, 241.*

Note the idioms in: i. It was as much as Tom could do to say his prayers without him. *DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXII, 257 b.*

The bravest and best of men often find it as much as they can do to be even decently patient. *EDNA LYALL, Knight Er., Ch. XXVII, 254.*

ii. If he outlived her a year it was as much as he did. *DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. II, 21.*

They've heard you already, and it's as much as my place is worth to allow this sort of thing in the Lobby. *Punch.*

iii. John shook his head again, as much as to say: "You're right there." *DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXVII, 255.*

"After school," says he, of course; after a pause and a look, as much as to say, "Make your will, and communicate your best wishes to your friends between this time and that." *THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 45.*

iv. There remained not so much as one of them. *Bible, Ezek., XIV, 28.*

She never so much as spoke to him all the evening. *THACK., Sam. Tim., Ch. IV, 43.*

How many of us have so much as heard of Alexander Hume? *Times.*

v. He was as good as his word. *DICK., Cop., Ch. VI, 43 a.*

vi. I'll as good as bet a guinea... that she'll let us go. *DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 13 b.*

You have as good as told me already. *Times.*

It is my belief that he had as good as forgotten his confidences. *STEV., Treas. Island, Ch. III, 28.*

vii. I thought as much! *SHER., Riv., IV, 2, (263).*

Our mother took him out of the dirt. I have heard her say as much. *READE, Never too late, I, Ch. I, 19.*

viii. As much as half a pound was lost in weighing. *Punch.*

As many as from 75,000 to 100,000 negroes were carried across the Atlantic in a twelvemonth. *Rev. of Rev.*

ix. It is not so much as that the people are living in an earthquake zone as that they themselves are dimly conscious that they are the earthquake. *Rev. of Rev., No. 191, 452 b.*

x. The beginning of the week was as bad as bad could be. *Westm. Gaz., No. 6011, 2 a.*

xi. "I suppose it is this — that Marie Bromar cares nothing for him." — "But so rich as he is! And they say, too, such a good-looking man!" *TROL., Gold. Lion, Ch. XIV, 158.*

And so ambitious as he was when a boy! LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, VII, Ch. XVI, 480.

With the idiom illustrated in vi compare that in: He is dead or all as dead. TEN., *Princ.*, VI, 154.

Note also the following comparisons, which have become more or less proverbial.

as agitated as a jelly. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XI.

as black as jet. O. E. D., s. v. *as*, A, 3.

as bold as a lion. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, VI, 58.

as bold as a lord. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 248.

as bold as a robin. *Punch*.

as clear as a balance-sheet. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XL, 302.

as clear as the noon-day. STEV., *Treas. Isl.*

as clear as mud. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. VI.

as cross as two sticks. *ib.*, Ch. XIII.

as dead as a door-nail. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

as dead as a stock-fish. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVI, 326.

as deaf as a post. FORSTER, *Life of Dick*.

as different as chalk and cheese. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XVI, 135.

as drunk as David's sow. *Notes & Quer.*

as drunk as a fly. *Punch*.

as fit as a flea. BRADBY, *Dick*, Ch. III, 31.

as fit as a fiddle. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 245.

as flat as tunes beaten on wood. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLVIII, 341.

as fresh as a rose. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 49.

as fresh as a bean. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 53.

His speeches are as full of meat as an egg. *Lit. World*.

as giddy as a drunken man. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 93.

as good as gold. *Punch*.

as happy as a rose-tree in sunshine. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 54.

as happy as an angel. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 93.

The household was ruled by his aunt Hannah, a woman as hard as nails. *Lit. World*.

The whole lot remained as the Doctor in his vexation expressed it, "hard and obstinate as nails." Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 39.

as light as a feather. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 93.

as mad as a hatter. See LEWIS CARROLL, *Alice in Wonderland*, Ch. VI.

as mad as a March hare. *ib.*

as meek as Moses. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*.

as merry as a school-boy. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 93.

as naughty as pinchbeck. *Punch*.

as plain as a pikestaff. *ib.*

The 'why' is plain as way to parish church. SHAK., *As you like it*, II, 7, 52.

as pleasant as a grain of sand in the eye. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXIV, 242.

as pleased as Punch. *ib.*, Ch. XL, 297.

The young people are as poor as church mice. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIII, 236.

as snug as a bug in a rug. *Times*.

as sound as a bell. SHAW, *Doct. Dil.*, I, 16.

as sure as fate. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 37.

as true as the dial to the sun. BUTLER, *Hud.*, III, II, 175.

as warm as toast. *Graph*.

as white as death. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XI.

A practically complete enumeration of such comparisons, arranged according to certain notions, and furnished with an extensive com-

mentary, has been attempted by T. HILDING SVARTENGREN in his inaugural dissertation (Lund, 1918).

126. Obs. I. As the quotations in the preceding § show, these clauses are often incomplete. Not unfrequently are they suppressed altogether; thus in:

From that time his reputation was established. It is not the only reputation that has been acquired as easily. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IX, 166.

Nothing would have done half as well. *id.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXIX, 312 a.

It was seldom that Caleb volunteered so long a speech. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XL, 299.

Sometimes a subordinate clause, to be supplied from the context, is understood (Ch. II, 19, a). Thus *John was not as fair in his behaviour as might have been expected* (DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXIX, 312 a) stands for **John was not as fair in his behaviour as it might have been expected that he would be fair*.

There are also instances of the head-clause being understood. This is especially the case in certain formulæ of attestation. O. E. D. s. v. *as*, B, 14. Thus *As I live, it's the great Hoggarty Diamond* (THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 23) may be interpreted: *So sure as I live, it's the great Hoggarty Diamond*. See also the next Obs.

That man is destined to be a prey to woman, as I am to go on 'Change every day. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 30.

He said that Christmas was a humbug, as I live! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 67.

Compare with the above the following example: *As sure as you stand there, this young lady is your lawful wedded wife*. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (473).

This *as* is sometimes liable to be taken in the sense of *if* (STOF., E. S., XXVIII); thus in:

I will not hear thy vain excuse; But, as thou lovest thy life, make speed from hence. SHAK., *Two Gent.*, III, I, 168.

His spiritual attendants regularly adjured him, as he loved his soul, to emancipate his brethren for whom Christ had died. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 23.

He ordered her, as she valued her life, to go home at once. FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. VII, 44.

Also in the following examples there is some concealed relation of condition and consequence between the two members; i. e. the fulfilment of what is expressed in the first member is represented as dependent on the fulfilment of what is expressed in the second:

So prosper I, as I swear perfect love! SHAK., *Rich.* III, II, I, 16. (= May I prosper only, if the love I swear is perfect, or: May I not prosper, if the love I swear is not perfect.)

So God help Warwick, as he loves the land... *id.*, *Henry VI*, B, I, I, 205.

So aid me Heaven, when at mine uttermost, | As I will make her truly my true wife! TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 502.

The *as*-clause in these constructions is often understood; thus in such phrases as *So may I prosper! So help me God!*

II. *As* is mostly preceded by an antecedent *as* or *so*.

In affirmative sentences the antecedent *as* marks equality of two persons or things as to what is expressed by the following word. It occurs in a stronger and in a weaker form. The former stands in

comparisons made merely to state equality; the latter in such as aim at the same time at bringing out a high degree of some quality by mentioning in the second member a person or thing in which it is typified. Compare *John is as poor as William* (= John's poverty is equal to William's) with *John is as poor as Job* (= John's poverty is as bad as Job's poverty, which has become proverbial). See STOFFEL, *Intensives & Down-toners*, 110 ff. The usual Dutch equivalent of the stronger *as* is *even*, that of the weaker *zoo*. It should, however, be observed that with many speakers the difference, if observed at all, is very slight, the adverb being in both cases weak-stressed. See SWEET, *Prim. of Spoken Eng.*, 91; KRUISINGA, *Handbk.*⁴, *Eng. Sounds*⁴, § 263.

Instances of the stronger *as* are found in the examples under 125, a). Instances of the weaker *as* in the idiomatic expressions and proverbial comparisons in 125.

In such a sentence as *In a country so large as the United States, there must be a great variety of climate*, the adverb *so* does not point to the clause *as the United States*, but to another opening with *that*, of the kind referred to under 124, c. This clause is understood, and but dimly, or even not at all present to the speaker's mind (133, Obs. III). The above sentence may be interpreted thus: **In a country like (or such as) the United States, which is so large that it is almost equal in size to the whole of Europe (or some such subaudition), there must be a great variety of climate.* A similar interpretation may be put on:

In so mighty a world as London, it will surprise my readers that I should not have found some means of staving off the last extremities of penury. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, II, 25.

We find it difficult to believe that, in a world so full of temptation as this, any gentleman whose life would have been virtuous, if he had not read Aristophanes and Juvenal, will be made vicious by reading them. MAC., *Com. Dram.*, (564 a).

In negative sentences, and in sentences which, although containing no negative word, are negative in purport, the weaker *so* implies merely inferiority of one person or thing to another as to what is expressed by the following word; the stronger *so* implies, besides, a high degree of this in the person or thing mentioned in the second member of the comparison. In the same kind of sentences we also meet *as*, notably in those of the second kind. The stronger *as* has come to be used more and more since the beginning of the 18th century, possibly to avoid the ambiguity which in the written or printed language attaches to *so*. Thus *He is not so* (with weak stress) *rich as his brother* = He is less rich than his brother. *He is not so* (with medium stress) *rich as his brother* = He is less rich than his brother, who is very rich indeed. The latter meaning may also be expressed by *He is not as rich as his brother*. See STOFFEL, *Intensives & Down-toners*, 109 ff; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*², 696 ff. Precise speakers would, however, distinguish between *You can't get one as good* (Dutch: *even goed*) and *You can't get one so good* (Dutch: *zoo goed*). To them the first sentence would imply *one*

that equals this, the second one that equals this whose excellence is beyond dispute.

In the written language it is not always easy to tell the weaker *so* and *as* from the stronger *so* and *as*. It is, therefore, not certain that the examples given under *c*), *d*), *e*) and *f*) in 125, which are severally meant as illustrations of the weaker and the stronger *so*, and the weaker and the stronger *as*, are rightly understood. Nor is it likely that these rather delicate distinctions are at all commonly observed by many speakers. Compare KRÜGER, *Synt.*, § 448; W. HORN, *Beibl. zur Anglia*, XVI, III, 76.

III. In certain collocations constituting prepositional or conjunctive expressions, there prevails some hesitation as to the use of the antecedent adverb, *as* being generally the one still most frequently found, but liable to be in course of time ousted by *so*. STOF., *Int. and Down-ton.*, 96, ff.

as (so) early = *already in (or at) the time of*: i. As early as the reign of Elizabeth. *MAC., Hist.*, I, 317 (O. E. D., s. v. *early*, 4).

As early as the fourteenth century, Froissart estimated the number of fighting men whom Ghent could bring into the field, at eighty thousand. *MOTL., Rise, Intr.*, XI, 32 a.

ii. So early as Christmas 1685, the agents informed the States-General that the plan of a general toleration had been arranged. *MAC., Hist.*, III, Ch. VII, 40. Burke, so early as 1790 declared in the House of Commons that twenty thousand pounds had been employed in corrupting the press. *id., War. Hist.*, (654 b.)

as (so) far back as = *already in (or at) the time of*: i. The defect was originally discovered in the Birmingham Small Arms Factory as far back as the end of 1896. *Daily Chron.*

As far back as 1894 and 1895 he wrote to the governing body concerning the danger from fires. *Times.*

ii. Admiral of the Fleet Sir Henry Keppel fought on the coasts of Spain so far back as 1834. *ib.*

as (so) late as = *no longer ago than*: i. The choice for Pope has fallen upon Cardinal Giacomo della Chiesa, who was made a member of the Sacred College as late as May last. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6630, 3 a.

ii. Sir Kenelm Digby left the barrister's bench for the Home Office so late as 1895. *Rev. of Rev.*

as (so) long ago as = *already in (or at) the time of*: i. As long ago as the year 1894 the Council of the Colonial Institute memorialized her Majesty Queen Victoria. *Times.*

ii. The question, in a different form, was asked so long ago as the Third Series. *Not. and Quer.*

His first work was published so long ago as 1827. *Lit. World.*

In the case of the following no instance of the alternative expression has been found, which, of course, is no proof that it does not occur, or, indeed, is not at least as frequent.

as far as = *to a place not farther than*: Most of you have travelled down the Great Western Railway as far as Swindon. *HUGHES, Tom Brown*, I, Ch. I, 5.

so lately as = *no longer ago than*: So lately as last Saturday Sir Alfred Milner informed President Steyn that the Imperial Government even now would be prepared to consider a definite suggestion for the termination of the present crisis. *Times.*

So lately as April, 1900, our ever-lamented Sovereign sent him four woollen scarves, *ib.*

so near as = *at no greater distance than*: If that thou be'st found | So near our public court as twenty miles, | Thou diest for it. SHAK., *As you like it*, I, 3, 46.

so recently as = *no longer ago than*: For his judgment his critic refers to the article which appeared from Mr. Garrett's pen so recently as 1 October. *Morn. Leader.*

As to the use of the antecedent adverb in the conjunctive expressions *as (so) long as*, *as (so) often as*, *as (so) soon as*, *as (so) surely as* see 27; for that in the conjunctive expressions *as (so) far as*, *as (so) nearly as*, *in as (so) far as* see 149. *Forasmuch as* and *for so much as* are used in different functions, see 47 and 149; in *inasmuch as* the antecedent *as* is never replaced by *so*, see 47.

IV. In affirmative sentences the weaker *as* is often suppressed, when the second member of the comparison does not contain a verb; thus in: There's the boy with the basket, punctual as clockwork! DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IX, 167.

And therewithal an answer vague as wind. TEN., *Princ.*, I, 44.

Uncle Tom's ears, stopped tight with either thumb, turned once more deaf as an adder's. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. XIII.

He turned pale as death. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XVI, 79 *b.*

For a moment she felt weak as a child, then strong as an Amazon. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, iv, Ch. XXV, 208.

In Early Modern English we also find, in this case, occasional instances of the suppression of the stronger *as*; and also of the weaker *as* when the second member contains a verb. See FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 579.

i. What should we speak of | When we are old as you? SHAK., *Cymb.*, III, 3, 35.

Woman's mind is charming as her person. FARQUHAR, *Constant Couple*, V, 3, (131).

ii. Pray him he will not be impertinent, but brief as he can. BEN JONSON, *Silent Woman*, II, 3, (189 *a.*)

Suppression of *as*, whether relatively strong or weak, is not, apparently, uncommon in Late Modern English when the second member contains a verb. Compare the last group of the examples in Obs. V.

i. The men waited for an instant, and then as another shot was fired, withdrew into the hills, silently as they had appeared. RUDY. KIPL., *Wee Willie Winkie*.

ii. Sir, I was courteous, every phrase well-oil'd, | As man's could be. TEN., *Princ.*, III, 117.

Shortly and simply as I could, I told what had brought me into such straits. HUGH CONWAY, *Called back.*, Ch. II, 20.

There also appears to be occasional omission of the stronger *as* if the comparison concerns different places, periods, or circumstances of the person or thing spoken about; thus in:

He was the personal friend of the landlord and landlady, and welcome to the bar as to the club-room. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 317.

She was lovely as ever. READE, *Never too late*, I Ch. VI, 61.

Sometimes an adverb appears to be understood together with the weaker *as*; thus in:

I shall never love any other trees as I love palm-trees. HICHENS, *Gard. of A l.*, II, vi, Ch. XXVIII, 288. (= as dearly as I love palm-trees.)

V. To express an equal degree of two qualities in one and the same person or thing, or group of persons or things, English mostly uses a complete, Dutch an incomplete clause. Exceptions are not, however, uncommon; e. g.:

i. The law was as weak as it was cruel. JOHN DENNIS, *Good words*.

She is as good as she is beautiful. THACK., *Pend*, I, Ch. VI, 67.

I'm sure she is as intellectual as she is beautiful; and I have no doubt she's as good as she is clever. *ib.*, I, Ch. XI, 117.

She is as good as she is beautiful. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 14.

He was as patient as he was strong. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 58.

ii. After such a year of trial, I might have flattered myself that I should not have been insulted with a new probation of my sincerity, as cruel as unnecessary! SHER., *Riv.*, V, I (272).

Yet was Rob Roy as wise as brave. WORDSW., *Rob Roy's Grave*, 13.

Mrs. Bold is a very beautiful woman, and as intelligent as beautiful. TROL., *Barth. Tow.* Ch. XXXVIII, 340.

He is as irresistible as fair. NETTLESHIP, *Dict. of Clas Ant.*, s.v. *Eros*.

When the sentence is negated, the antecedent *as* may, of course, be replaced by *so*; thus in:

He is not so wise as he is witty. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 568.

So much as when detached from the word(-group) it modifies is often enough followed by a simple adjective (Ch. XI, 6); thus in:

His talk was not witty, so much as charming. THACK., *Essm.*, II, Ch. XI, 242.

In the first member the antecedent *as* is sometimes wanting, not only when the second member is complete, but also when it is incomplete.

i. She is rich, and generous as she is rich. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, I, Ch. III, 19 a.

She can be brave as she is gentle. *ib.*, Ch. IV, 22 a.

God made thee good as thou art beautiful. TEN., *Holy Grail*, 136.

And why should I speak low, sailor, | About my own boy John? | If I was loud as I am proud, | I'd sing him over the town! SIDNEY DOBELL, *How's my Boy?* IV (*Rainbow*, I, 40).

His method of taking in Blackstone seemed absorbing as it was novel. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XVI, 109.

ii. Fortunately . . . the storm, which was brief as violent, began now to relax. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, III, Ch. IX, 83 b.

VI. The catachrestic use of *than*, instead of *as*, after an antecedent *so* is, no doubt, very rare, and must be set down to mere carelessness. It is said that nothing was so teasing to Lord Erskine than being constantly addressed by his second title of "Baron Clackmannan." Sir H. L. BULWER, *Hist. Char.*, II, 186. (HODGSON, *Er. in the Use of Eng.*, 124).

VII. The use of the intensive adverb *as* in the sense of *equally*, i. e. without a reference to a following subordinate clause of degree, also appears to be very rare.

Ah, well — they're all about as queer, one as the other! GALSW., *Friends*, Ch. XXX, 280.

VIII. In the language of the illiterate *as* is sometimes followed by a redundant *what*; e. g.:

They're just as quick with their tongues as what you are. MACKENZIE, C, 242 (*JESP.*, *Mod. Eng. Gr.*, III, 9.62).

127. Clauses which denote what the intensity of the action or state mentioned in the head-clause is unlike, stand after comparatives, and are, in ordinary English, regularly introduced by *than*; thus in: I love study more than ever. He is taller than his brother. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 420.

Scrooge resumed his labours in a more facetious temper than was usual with him. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 11.

To the joy of the school, he displayed a greater knowledge of Murat than Shalders had. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. I, 14.

I could not have chosen, among all my friends, one more discreet and serviceable than is Ricardo. BRIDGES, *Hum. of the Court*, II, 2, 1315.

128. Obs. I. These clauses always have some element understood. Frequently they are suppressed altogether; e. g.:

You could give your own message so much better. DICK., *Coop.*, Ch. v, 32b.

Sometimes a subordinate statement to be supplied from the context is understood. (Ch. II, 19). Thus *He behaved better than had been expected* stands for **He behaved better than it had been expected that he would behave*.

II. In vulgar English *nor* is often used instead of *than*. See STORM, Eng. Phil.², 810; JESPERSEN, *Negation*, 37.

Ye may like work better nor play, but I like play better nor work. G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, Ch. I, 7.

Another vulgar substitute for *than* is *as*, which appears to be far less common; e. g.:

I rather like him as otherwise. SCOTT, *St. Ronan's Well*, Ch. II (O. E. D., s. v. *as*, B, 4).

III. In Early Modern English *but* appears to have been in frequent use after a comparative; e. g.:

Nor cut thou less nor more | But just a pound of flesh. SHAK., *Merch.*, IV, 1, 318.

For *no sooner but* see 21. In Late Modern English *no more but* in the meaning of *only* appears to be still in common use; e. g.:

There remains no more but to thank you for your courteous attention. O. E. D., s. v. *but*, C, 5.

IV. When two qualities are compared, we mostly find an incomplete clause for the second member of the comparison in Dutch. In English this member is complete in the case of terminational, incomplete in the case of periphrastic comparison; e. g.:

i. The wall was in some places thicker than it was high. MISS BRADDON-Audley, I, Ch. J, 1.

ii. He is more witty than wise. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 109.

Note also the difference between *He was a better statesman than general* (i. e. His statesmanship was better than his generalship) and *He was a better statesman than a general* (i. e. His statesmanship was better than that of a general).

V. Some constructions with *than* deserve some special attention:

Any more than, sometimes replaced by *no more than*, is a frequent variant of the co-ordinative conjunctions *nor* or *neither* (Ch. X, 21, Obs. II). *Than* may be followed by a relative pronoun (Ch. XVI, 5, c, δ). Of a similar nature is the construction used in:

If I climb Hampstead Hill, than where Nature never exhibited a more magnificent prospect, I confess it fine; but [etc.]. GOLDSMITH (R. ASHE KING, OI. Golds., Ch. VII, 86).

Front-position of the *than*-clause appears to be very rare.

Than James Forsyte, notwithstanding all his 'Jonahisms', there was no saner man. GALSW., Man of Prop., I, Ch. VI, 85.

VI. Mention may here be made of the curious catachrestic use of *than* in the second member of a comparison, after to *prefer* in the first, due, no doubt, to the influence of *to like better*; e. g.:

She preferred to be praised for her taste than for her looks. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut paste, I, Ch. III, 40

STOFFEL (in E. S., XXXI, 117) mentions the following examples, all of them drawn from journalese:

Each power that finds its own claims inadmissible prefers to see the land occupied by Britain than by any one else. Rev. of Rev., 156, 1897, 536 b. But Mr. Blomfield is above all an architect and probably prefers to draw his buildings than to write about them. Acad., 4/12, 1897, 478 a.

We can well imagine, that many of our premier publishers would prefer to be omnibus conductors than to descend to American methods. Lit. World, 25/10, 1901, 295 c.

VII. In the language of the illiterate *than* is sometimes followed by a redundant *what*; e. g.:

You are nearer my age than what he is. SHAW, A, 187 (JESP., Mod. Eng. Gram., III, 9.62).

129. Clauses which denote a consequence through which the intensity of an action or state becomes apparent, open with: a) the conjunctions *as*, or *that*; b) the preposition *but* coupled with the conjunction *that*; c) the conjunctive word-groups *as if*, or *as though*.

130. *As* is common in Standard English of the present day only after an antecedent *such* not modifying an adjective, as in:

From the goodness of all about me I derived such consolation as I can never think of unmoved. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. LX, 499.

And now all the boys set up such a shout for Figs as would make you think he had been their darling champion through the whole battle. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. V, 46.

The correspondence which they kept up with England was, for the most part, such as tended to excite their feelings and to mislead their judgment. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 95.

The wealth of Clive was such as enabled him to vie with the first grandees of England. id., Clive, (525 b).

131. Obs. I. The use of *as* appears to be due to clauses of this kind being, at the first blush, like adnominal clauses referring to *such* (Ch. XVI, 11). This may also account for the subject being suppressed in them when it is identical with the noun with which *such* as connected attributively or predicatively. See the three last of the above examples. II. In Early Modern English *as* was also used in referring to *such* modifying an adjective, or to *so*. See O. E. D., s. v. *as*, B, 19, b; ABBOT, Shak. Gram.³, § 109; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.², § 572; WESTERN, De Eng. Bisæninger, § 178.

i. I feel such sharp dissession in my breast. | ... As I am sick with working of my thoughts. SHAK., Henry VI, A, V, 5, 84.

He broke forth into such a hideous yell, as made the whole company tremble SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIII, 84.

ii. Catesby ... finds the testy gentleman so hot, | As he will lose his head ere g.ve consent. SHAK., Rich. III, iii, 4, 41.

His largest vessel was so clumsy and unfit for service, as constrained him to bear away for Hispaniola. ROBERTSON, Hist. Amer., I, 203 (O. E. D., s. v. *as*, B, 19, a).

So much has passed between us as must make | Me bold, her fearful. SHELLEY, Cenci, II, 1, 123.

III. As *that*, used by way of transition from *as* to *that*, is said to be archaic (O. E. D., s. v. *as*, B, 19, c); e. g.:

He that is injured must so pardon, as that he must not pray to God to take revenge of his enemy. JER. TAYLOR, Worthy Com., IV, 4, (218). (FRANZ, SHAK. Gram.², § 572).

He ... wisely went only so far from the bustle of life as that he might easily find his way back. JOHNSON, Lives, Cowley (WESTERN, De Eng. Bisætninger, § 170).

He ... ordered Pipes to follow him at a small distance so as that they should be within call. SMOL., Per. Pickle, I, 272 (ib.).

My next business was to defend myself, to tell so well-digested a lie as that all mankind should believe it true. GODWIN, Cal. Wil., II, Ch. VI, 186.

Your informant seems to have given you no very clear idea of what you wish to hear, if he thinks that these discussions took place so lately as that I could have been of the party. SHELLEY, Banquet.

When these points were settled, and so far carried out as that I had begun to work in earnest, it occurred to me that, if I could retain my bedroom in Barnard's Inn, my life would be agreeably varied. DICK., Great Expect., Ch. XXIV, 234.

Mr. Pocket took me into the house and showed me my room: which was a pleasant one, and so furnished as that I could use it with comfort for my own private sitting-room. *ib.*, Ch. XXIII, 226.

132. *That* is the commonest conjunctive to introduce clauses of this description.

He ran so fast that I could not overtake him. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 565.

There are some faults so nearly allied to excellence, that we can scarce weed out the vice without eradicating the virtue. GOLDS., Good-nat. Man, I, (102).

He laughed so that the sound echoed up the dark stairs. Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve, II, 214.

She was reduced to such straits that her child was born in July in a lying-in hospital. MORN. Lead.

133. Obs. I. In Early Modern English such clauses sometimes stood without an antecedent *so*. Compare the Dutch *Het vriest dat het kraakt*.

At last I left them | P' the filthy-mantled pool beyond your cell, | There dancing up to the chins, that the foul lake | O'erstunk their feet. SHAK., Temp., IV, 1, 183.

The birds their notes renew, and bleating herds | Attest their joy, that hill and valley rings. MILTON, Par. Lost, II, 495.

Of this practice no clear instances seem to occur in Late Modern English: See however 51.

II. Also the practice of leaving out *that* at the head of the subordinate clause is chiefly met with in the older language. In Late Modern English it is distinctly rare, at least in the language of the educated; e. g.:
So full of artless jealousy is guilt, | It spills itself in fearing to be spilt.
SHAK., Hamlet, IV, 5, 20.

In sweet music is such art, | Killing care and grief of heart | Fall asleep, or hearing, die. id., Henry VIII, III, 1, 72.

I must confess, I am so much your friend, I would not deceive you. WYCH., Plain Deal., I, 1, (382).

Here lies our good Edmund, whose genius was such, | We scarcely can praise it or blame it too much. GOLDS., Retaliation, 30.

I have been considering that I am so strong and hearty I may continue to plague you a long time. SHER., Riv., II, 1, (232).

So wondrous wild, the whole might seem | The scenery of a fairy dream. SCOTT, Lady, I, XII, 23.

There often as he watch'd or seem'd to watch, | So still, the golden lizard on him paused, | A phantom made of many phantoms moved | Before him haunting him. TEN., En. Ard., 597.

Her heart beat so, she dared not look up. G. ELIOT, Ad. Bede, I, 263. T. (WESTERN, De Engelske Bisætninger, § 151, 3).

In vulgar language the suppression of *that* appears to be quite usual after an adjective (or adverb) modified by the demonstrative *that* instead of *so*. See Ch. XXXVI, 7, e.

i. Folks are that interfering, they're always fishing you out of the water. WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland, Ch. XVIII, 163.

I'm that hungry, I could eat ... a dog. HALL CAINE, The Woman thou gavest me, Ch. IX, 34.

ii. He drove his bow into them strings that glorious grand, that he'e'n a'most sawed the bass-viol into two pieces. HARDY, Return, I, Ch. V, 56.

III. Very often the clause is understood, or even absent from the speaker's thoughts; thus in such exclamations as *I am so glad you have come!*

As you have seen the camel so lately, and marked him so particularly, you can in all probability conduct us to him. GÜNTH., Leerboek.

Also in such a sentence as *In a street which is so crowded as the Strand, it is dangerous cycling at a rapid pace*, a similar clause opening with *that* is understood. Compare 126, Obs. II.

IV. In sentences like the last of the preceding observation an antecedent *as* is sometimes wrongly used for *so*. STOFFEL (Intens. & Down-ton., 76) cites the following instance:

It is somewhat difficult to speak of the Progress of the World in a month that has been characterized by as much retrogression as February 1898. Rev. of Rev.

v. What is ordinarily expressed in a *that*-clause, is sometimes found in a principal sentence preceding the sentence with *so* or *such*, and joined to it without any conjunctive.

Miss Baynes would have danced with a mopstick, she was so fond of dancing. THACK., Philip, 374 (Stof., Intens. & Down-ton., 74).

VI. In older English an adnominal clause is sometimes found to do the duty of an adverbial clause of consequence. Compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., III, 8.41 and 9.25.

H. POUTSMA, II.

Such an act | That blurs the grace and blush of modesty. SHAK., Hamlet, III, 4, 41.

Who is here so rude that would not be a Roman? If any, speak; for him have I offended. Who is here so vile that will not love his country? id., Julius Cæsar, III, 2, 30.

134. *But (that)* is often found after a negative head-clause. The clause it introduces, though containing no negative word, implies negation, so that *but (that)* is equivalent to *that not*. *But what*, though considered vulgar, is not unfrequent in ordinary English.

i. Happy in this, she is not yet so old, | But she may learn. SHAK., Merchant, III, 2, 163.

He is not so drunk, but he can perceive your impertinence. SMOL., Roderick Rand., Apol., 5.

It was not so dark, but I could see tears glittering in her eyes. DICK., Copperfield, Ch. XXXV, 258 b.

ii. The walls were not so completely destroyed, but that Doll could distinguish some traces of the scene of his childhood. WASH. IRV., Dolls Heil., (146).

Molly was not so absorbed in listening, but that she could glance round the room. MRS. GASK., Wives & Daughters, Ch. VI, 55.

The plantation was not so thick, but that she could see from it if any one was walking in the open grounds. FLOR. MARRYAT, Banker's Heart, II, 114.

You are not too ill, but that they (sc. these wonders) may be a happiness to you also. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. III, 11.

iii. There had been one man of that sort tried at the 'sises, not so long ago, but what there were people living who remembered it. G. ELIOT, Sil Marner, Ch. VIII, 54.

We were not so utterly cut off from the sounds of the far-booming world beyond, but what the intelligence of a change in the administration reached our ears. LYTTON, Caxton, XIII, Ch. V, 346.

He is not so tipsy at any rate, but what he knows his fault. TROL., Baruch Town, Ch. XLII, 370.

I don't think you are so much in love with her, but what you can do without her. id., Belt Est., Ch. XXVII, 353.

The gulf, however, was not in John's case so wide, nor so deep, but what... he felt a strange thrill of surprise and embarrassment. MAR. CRAWF., Lonely Parish, Ch. VI, 47.

Compare the following examples with *that not*: But there was no fighting man so obscure, that they did not know the details of his deeds and prospects. CON. DOYLE, Rodney Stone, I, Ch. VII, 184.

Memory was not so utterly torpid in Silas, that it could not be awakened by these words. G. ELIOT, Sil Marner, Ch. VII, 49.

135. *As if* and *as though* introduce clauses containing matter which the speaker knows to be contrary to fact. Compare 109.

So far from intending you any wrong, I have always loved you as well as if you had been my own mother. FIELD., Joseph Andros, I, Ch. VI, 13.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF ALTERNATIVE AGREEMENT.

136. Adverbial clauses of alternative agreement open with the conjunction *as*, or with the conjunctive word-group *according as*.

137. *As* as a conjunction of this function has fallen into disuse; it survives in the phrase *as the case may be*.

i. Stones whose rates are either rich or poor, | As fancy values them. SHAK., *Meas. for Meas.*, II, 2, 151.

Our state may, indeed, be more or less imbittered, as our duration may be more or less contracted. JOHNSON, *Rambler*, CLXIII (O. E. D., s. v. *as*, B, 8, b).

ii. (These peculiarities) are felt as archaisms, vulgarisms, provincialisms, or affectations, as the case may be, by the majority of educated speakers. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 6.

Note. The absence of comparatives sometimes obscures the meaning of *as*. See STOFFEL, E. S., XXVIII; ABBOT, SHAK. *Gram.*³, § 109; FRANZ, SHAK. *Gram.*², § 578.

And, sister, as the winds give benefit. | And convoy is assistant, do not sleep, | But let me hear from you. SHAK., *Hamlet*, I, 3, 2. (i. e. as the winds give more or less benefit.)

138. *According as* is the usual conjunctive to open these clauses.

Every form of government may become good or bad, according as it is well or ill administered. HUME, E. S., III, 13.

He is said to have worn a coat blue on one side and white on the other, according as the Spanish or French party happened to be dominant. NOT and QUER.

In such examples as the following we may use either *that* or *who*, according as we wish to show that we are thinking of the persons collectively or individually. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2138.

We shall approach it (sc. another appeal to the country) in good heart or the reverse, according as ... we have made our position clear and definite. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5243, 1 c.

Note. Before subordinate questions *according as* is mostly replaced by *according as to*, sometimes by *according to*; e. g.:

i. The day had been one long struggle between mist and sun, a continual lightening and darkening, big with momentary elations and more tenacious disappointments, according as to which of the two antagonists got the upper hand. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XVIII.

Still there does remain an enormous amount (sc. of evidence) that must be accepted or not, according as to whether or no credence can be placed on the unsupported testimony of Miss Smithers. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*², Ch. XXI, 230.

ii. A sound is often different according to whether it is strongly stressed or not. WYLD, *Growth of Eng.*, Ch. II, 27.

Vowel differently pronounced according to whether it is followed by another vowel or by a consonant. *ib.*, Ch. VI, 72.

Consonant lost or retained according to whether a consonant or vowel follows. *ib.*

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF PROPORTIONATE AGREEMENT.

139. These clauses open with: a) the conjunction *as*, or the more explicit conjunctive word-groups *in degree as*, *in measure as*, *in proportion as*; b) the adverbial adjuncts *the*, or *by how much*, the former referred to in the head-clause by a correlative *the*, the latter by a correlative (*by*) *so much*, or *the*.

140. *As* is rather vague in meaning. A proportionate increase or decrease is expressed by it quite clearly only when both the

head-clause and the subordinate clause contain a comparative degree, or any such verb as *to extend*, *to advance*, *to increase*, *to enlarge*, *to lessen*, *to diminish*, *to decrease*, distinctly indicative of increasing or decreasing (16, Obs. V, 7); e. g.:

i. As I grew richer, I grew more ambitious. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, I, 169.

The mother was the second daughter in a large family, that grew more numerous as pounds grew fewer. ANNIE BESANT, *Auto b.*, 15.

The lady became gay as the baronet grew earnest. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XIII, 89. (The positives have the force of comparatives.)

ii. As I weakened, my antagonist gained strength. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XII, (301).

The resistance of water to a body moving through it varies as the square of the velocity. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 15*b*. (varies = increases and decreases.)
To loyal hearts the value of all gifts | Must vary as the giver's. TEN., *Lanc. & E.*, 1208.

One advances in modesty as one advances in knowledge. ANNIE BESANT, *Auto b.*, 198.

The cold strengthens as the day lengthens. *Times*.

Note. As may have the same meaning in the following passage, although obscured owing to the absence of a comparative, or a verb implying a comparative:

As Cæsar loved me, I weep for him; as he was fortunate, I rejoice at it; as he was valiant, I honour him. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2. (In the following words: *but, as he was ambitious, I slew him*, the word, of course, means *because*.)

141. What may implicitly be expressed by *as*, is explicitly indicated by *in degree as*, *in measure as*, and *in proportion as*. The last word-group is by far the most frequent. It deserves to be noted that there are, as a rule, no comparatives, or verbs implying a comparative.

i. His humid eyes seemed to look within in degree as they grew dim to things without. HALL CAINE, *Deemst.*, Ch. I, 8.

ii. His irritability increased in measure as he perceived the medicine was doing him good. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XLIII, 290.

iii. His feelings are deep in proportion as the fancies are vivid. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XII, Ch. VIII, 397.

In proportion as he took in wine, he overflowed with kindness. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XI, 242.

In proportion as his face had become thinner and more worn, his eyes appeared to have gathered intensity. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. XVIII, 280.

Only in proportion as men draw certain rude, empirical inferences respecting human nature, are they enabled to understand even the simplest facts of social life. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 29*b*.

142. Of the conjunctives mentioned in 139, *b* only *the* is in current use in Present-day English. Both members of the complex are often incomplete through the suppression of *to be*; e. g.:

i. The more I learn, the more I wish to learn. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 420.

The poorer the guest, the better pleased he ever is with being treated. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I.

ii. The more haste, the worse speed. The more laws, the more offenders. The more the merrier.

Note. The comparative in the clause is sometimes followed by *that*; thus in:

The further that thou fliest now, | So far am I behind. Mrs. CAR. NORTON, *The Arab and his Horse*, II.

The sooner that the Government was undeceived on this point, the better it would be for the welfare of South Africa. Rev. of Rev.

143. *By how much* with its correlatives *by so much, so much the, or the*, seem to have entirely disappeared from Late Modern English. See FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 581.

By how much better than my word I am, | By so much shall I falsify men's hopes. SHAK., *Henry IV*, A, 1, 2, 234.

Which would be so much the more dangerous, | By how much the estate is green and yet ungovern'd. id., *Rich. III*, II, 2, 126.

You are the better at proverbs, by how much 'A fool's bolt is soon shot.' id., *Henry V*, III, 7, 132.

By how much the worse man he represented his brother to be, so much the greater would his own offence appear to Allworthy. FIELD, *Tom Jones*, I, 41 (WESTERN, *De Eng. Bisætninger*, § 180).

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF RESTRICTION.

144. The conjunctives used to introduce these clauses are the following: a) conjunctions: *as, that*; b) the preposition *in* coupled with *that*; c) adverbial adjuncts used as conjunctions: 1) containing an adverb followed by *as*: *as far as, as nearly as, (in) so far as*; 2) containing an indefinite pronoun: *for aught (anything, all, what)*, sometimes followed by *that*.

145. *As* occurs as a more or less vaguely restrictive conjunction: a) in certain collocations that perform the function of prepositions, such as *as affecting, as compared with* (varying with *compared with, and comparing with*), *as concerning, as distinct from, as opposed to, as regards, as regarded, as respects, as touching*; e. g.:

i. Russia considers it her duty to guard them against alien interference, especially as affecting Manchuria. *Times*.

ii. The lifting power of the new dock will be about 8.500 tons, as compared with 4.500 tons of the former one. *Times*.

Compared with the last season, there is an improvement in the catch of the whales. *ib.*

This payment will make ... a total distribution of 10 per cent. for the year-comparing with 12 per cent. for the last four years. *Manch. Guard.*, 31.10, 1925, 358 a.

iii. *As* concerns a substantive, its subjective genitive universally may be expressed prepositively. F. HALL, *Mod Eng.*, 50 (O. E. D., s. v. *concern*, 2, c).

iv. *Battle* = the main body, as distinct from the van and rear (Obs.). WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v. *battle*.

v. The mark † is used to indicate literary as opposed to colloquial. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, II, Pref.

vi. As regards the cricket, the Englishmen have no reason to be dissatisfied with their performance. *Times*, 1897, 713 *d*.

He had been in earlier years a poor man as regarded his income. *TROL., Small House*, I, Ch. XII, 142.

it is declared that a good wife is a crown to her husband, but Mrs. Crawley had been much more than a crown to him. As had regarded all the inner life of the man, — all that portion of his life which had not been passed in the pulpit or in pastoral teaching, — she had been crown, throne and sceptre all in one. *id., Last Chron.*, I, Ch. I, 6.

vii. As respects natural religion, it is not easy to see that a philosopher of the present day is more favourably situated than Thales or Simonides. *Mac., Popes*, (543 *a*).

viii. Under such circumstances Lady Mason must of course have been innocent as touching Mr. Furnival. *TROL., Ori. Farm*, III, Ch. I, 4.

Compare with the above: In truth, Plato is a very difficult, and, as far as regards matter, somewhat repulsive writer. *LEWES, Hist. Philos.*, VI, Ch. I, 186. Mr. Brontë wished to make his children hardy, and indifferent to the pleasures of eating and dress. In the latter he succeeded as far as regarded his daughters. *Mrs. GASK., Life of Charl. Brontë*, 38.

Note. As has entirely lost its individual meaning in other prepositional word-groups in which it stands before a preposition, such as *as against*, *as between*, *as for*, *as to*. *As against*, *as between*, and *as for* severally vary with *against*, *between*, and *for*. For a discussion of the difference in use or meaning see Ch. LX, 39 ff.

i. * The principles involved in the question of free trade as against protection go to the root of many of the most urgent and practical problems of the day. *Times*.

** Breadstuffs reached a total of \$ 324,706,060 against \$ 191,090,341 in 1896-97. *ib.*

ii. * How can you speak of kindness as between us? *EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norsemen*, Ch. XXVIII, 255.

By variation of pressure the lungs produce also all differences of stress, whether as between words or groups of words, in a sentence, or between syllables in a word. *LLOYD, North. Eng.*, § 4.

** Peace had been concluded between Great Britain and France. *Mac., Clive*.

iii. * As for John, he had little enough of enjoyment of the pretty spot. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal.*, Ch. XI, 112.

** For John — two minutes of such a gaze as his might in a man's deep heart do the work of years. *ib.*, Ch. XIII, 134.

For health, I have so far got on very fairly. *Mrs. GASK., Life of Charl. Brontë*, 366.

iv. As to that matter, I don't believe one half of it myself. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Book, Leg. of Sleepy Hollow, Postscript*.

Thus also *as* is devoid of any semantic significance when placed before *how* or *why*. The former combination is pronounced archaic by the O. E. D., s. v. *as*, 30. See, however, *STOF., E. S.*, XXIX, 86; the latter is branded by the same authority as illiterate.

i. "As I was saying, you sent me to comfort Mrs. Molly — my wife, I mean — but what d'ye think, sir? she was better comforted before I came." — "As how?" *FARQUHAR, Rec. Of.*, I, 2, (260).

"When I'm of age, I'll prove my confidence too." — "As how?" *THACK., Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 76.

** The mistress of the house made her voluntary appearance before Mr. Pounce, and ... told him, she hoped his honour would pardon her husband,

who was a very nonsense man, for the sake of his poor family; that, indeed, if he could be ruined alone, she should be very willing of it; for because as why, his worship very well knew he deserved it. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, III. Ch. XII. 196.

Nor can *as* be said to stand for any distinct notion after *whether*, as in: The key-note of the entire system, whether as applied to teachers or to taught, is organisation. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. XVI. 299.

b) in the phrase *as boys, children, dogs* (any noun) *go* (O. E. D., s. v. *go*, 15); e. g.:

She's not a bad servant, as servants go. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 281. Rather a handsome boy, I think, my lord, as boys go. FRANCES BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 86.

She is a good daughter, as daughters go. OPPENHEIM, *The Mischief-maker*, Ch. I.

c) after the prepositional *but* in the meaning of *except*, but only in literary and archaic diction. This application of *as* is not registered in the O. E. D., but appears to be frequent enough; e. g.:

I never valued fortune, but as it was subservient to my pleasure. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, V, 2, (303).

Wealth is nothing, but as it is bestowed, and knowledge nothing, but as it is communicated. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. XXXV. 203.

You can have no reason ... for wishing Fanny *not* to be of the party, but as it relates to yourself, to your own comfort. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. VIII. 81.

Mrs. Rushworth ... thought nothing of consequence, but as related to her own and her son's concerns. *ib.*, Ch. VIII. 78.

Yea, let all good things await | Him who cares not to be great. | But as he saves or serves the state. TEN., *Ode Duke of Wel.*, 200.

146. Obs. I. In SHAKESPEARE we find also instances of *as* with the force of *as (so) far as* in other connexions. See STOF., E. S., XXIX; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 578.

Why, Hal, thou knowest, as thou art but man, I dare: but as thou art prince, I fear thee as I fear the roaring of the lion's whelp. HENRY IV, A. III. 3, 165.

II. In Vulgar English of the present day *as* is sometimes used in a restrictive sense where Standard English has *that* (147); e. g.:

Do you feature the rest of your family, as you know of? G. ELIOT, *Brother Jac.*

You see the congregation got so large in Parry's time, the people stood in the aisles; but there's never any crowd now, as I can see. *id.*, *Scenes*, I, Ch. I, 10.

"Did he forgive her?" — "Not as I know." HARDY, *Judge*, VI, Ch. XI, 516.

In Early Modern English this use of *as* may also have been common in the language of the educated; thus in:

Tell me, heavenly bow, | If Venus or her son, as thou dost know, | Do now attend the queen? SHAK., *Temp.*, IV, 1, 87.

147. *That* seems to occur only after a negative head-clause; thus in:

Her brother took a book sometimes, but never read it, that I saw. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IX, 64 *b*.

Her mother had never named her own kindred to her before, that she could remember. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 112.

"Has Catherine come back yet?" — "Not that I know of." *id.*, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 14. Note. In the following example *that* is, perhaps, best understood as a relative pronoun: "And is that all?" — "All *that* I know of." *TROL., Castle Richm.*, Ch. XII, 216. (*All*, although not a negative, implies a negative in this connexion, being equivalent to *the only thing*.)

148. *In that* expresses a blending of restriction and cause (41). Sometimes the idea of restriction in *in that* comes so much to the fore that it is practically equivalent to *in so far as*. Thus *in so far as* could be substituted for *in that*, without involving a perceptible modification of meaning, in:

In appearance it resembles all other trains, except in that it has hardly any third-class carriages. *R. H. BENSON, An Average Man*, I, Ch. IV, 1, 58. Saxon, Angle, and Jute, all were alike in that none had the least reverence for priest, or for church. *BESANT, Lond.*, I, Ch. I, 3.

Wiedeman was much older than his colleagues, and he differed from them in that he devoted the whole of his time to his master. *Rev. of Rev.*

Conversely *in so far as* could be replaced by *in that* in:

The American dislike of England only possessed real importance in so far as it was a native product. *Times*.

149. For an explanation of the way in which the adverbial expressions followed by *as* have come to be used as conjunctives, see 27.

As far as and *so far as* are used indiscriminately, although the latter is often objected to by rigid grammarians, and is, perhaps, eschewed by careful writers and speakers. *STOF., Intens. & Downton.*, 90 f.; *O. E. D.*, s. v. *go*, 43, b.

i. Ruth intimated that, as far as she could judge, he was a very eligible swain. *DICK., Chuz.*, Ch. XLVI, 354 a.

The Act is good as far as it goes. *Times*.

As far as relates to habitual drunkards, it is calculated to create no small commotion in the dipsomaniac fraternity. *Rev. of Rev.*

ii. I am bound, so far as my own knowledge goes, to speak well of the establishment. *DICK., Chuz.*, Ch. XXVII, 223 a.

We did not repent so far as I could learn. *BESANT, Lond.*, I, 35.

So far as I could see, Miss Slater was all intellect and gloom. *BARRY PAIN, Miss Slater*.

Lord Roberts' report about Wepener is, so far as it goes, satisfactory. *MORNING LEAD*.

So far as possible, Miss Jay has allowed Buchanan to speak for himself. *Acad. & Lit.*

As near (ly) as seems to be the only, or at least most frequent form.

He took about ten yards at every stride, as near as I could guess. *SWIFT, GUL.*, II, Ch. I, (139a).

A Bard, whose name sounded like Crumlinwallinwer, has sung his praises, in a piece which was called, as nearly as I could catch it, Mewlinwillinwodd. *DICK., Bleak House*, Ch. XVII, 147.

In so far as is a variant of *as (so) far as*. Compare the Dutch *in zover als* and *voor zover als*. Of *in as far as* no instances have been found.

I agree with you, in so far as you adopt his opinion. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 597.

In so far as the modern girl is an improvement on the girls of other days, it is a joy to contemplate her. SARAH GRAND, Man of Maid, 11.

The outlines of the proposal, in so far as they interest the general public, are well-known. Times.

150. After the conjunctive word-groups *for aught*, *for anything*, *for all* the relative pronoun *that* is clearly understood. The relative is now only occasionally met with, but it is evident that *for aught*, etc. may also be considered to be an adverbial adjunct belonging to the head-clause, the following clause then modifying adnominally the indefinite pronoun. *What* in this phrase may be considered to open a substantive clause. *For aught* is slightly antiquated, having been supplanted by *for anything (that)*, which in its turn is, in Present-day Spoken English, giving way to *for all (that)*, and *for what*. Compare STOF., Stud., A, 7.

for aught (that): i. Ay me! for aught that I could ever read, | Could ever hear by tale or history, | The course of true love never did run smooth. SHAK., Mid s., I, I, 132.

You have him that is better than me ... — braver, for aught that I know. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXI, 233.

ii. For aught I see, fortune has used us both alike. DRYDEN, Mar. à la Mode, I, I, (244).

For aught I know or care, the plot may be an exactly opposite one. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. II, 8*b*.

They might burn the Jews' quarter to-morrow, for aught I care. *ib*.

For aught he knew, the father might be a vulgar purse-proud tradesman. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XI, 94.

For aught anybody knows to the contrary, they or their sons are living on this island in splendour to this day. BESANT, The World went very well then, Ch. I, 9.

for anything (that): i. If you be not too much cloyed with fat meat, our humble author will continue the story, with Sir John in it, and make you merry with fair Katharine of France: where, for anything I know, Falstaff shall die of a sweat. SHAK., Henry IV, B, V, 5, 146.

She may not be able to take her bonnet off, for anything I can tell. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XLV, 349*a*.

ii. Pen might have a large bank at his command, for anything that the other knew. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXI, 330.

For anything that he knew, Mrs. Winterfield might leave everything she possessed to her niece. TROL., Belt. Est., Ch. VII, 35.

for all. A mother-in-law who is a perfect Turk and Tartar, for all I hear. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVII, 173.

We might be off the shore of America, for all I could tell. Mrs. CRAIK, A Hero, 6.

For all he knew or cared, her attitude towards this subject of marriage was the usual one assumed by women. JEROME, John Ingerfield, 37.

The consideration was left blank, and, for all I know, it is blank still. Law Times, XCIV, 559/2 (O. E. D., s.v. *for*, 26, *b*).

for what: The boys are dead, for what we know. LITTON, Night & Morn., 38.

The very finest tree in the whole forest may be marked, for what you know, and may be down with a crash ere long. THACK., Van., Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 127.

151. Obs. I. *For aught*, etc. is always preceded by an affirmative clause, *as* (or *so*) *far as* taking its place when the head-clause is negative. Thus we say *He may be dead, for aught I know*, but *He is not dead, as (or so) far as I know*.

II. *For aught*, etc. *I know* (*appears, I can tell*, etc.) is often followed by *to the contrary*; thus in:

They may be missing, for aught I know to the contrary. GOLDSM., *She stops*, III (STOF., *Stud.*, A, 7).

With a face that might have been carved out of *lignum vitae*, for anything that appeared to the contrary. DICK., *Nickl.*, I, 177 (*ib.*, 8).

For all I knew to the contrary, there might be a warrant out against me. HUGH CONWAY, *Dark Days*, 167 (*ib.*, 8).

He may be a descendant of the great John Knox himself, for what we know to the contrary. PUNCH, 1860, 104 a (*ib.*).

III. It is interesting to the Dutch student that the Dutch *voor mijn part* = *for aught* (etc.) *I care*, and the English (*as*) *for my part* = *as regards myself* = *Ik voor mij*.

As for my part, it appeared to me one of the vilest instances of unprovoked ingratitude I had ever met with. GOLDS., *Vic.*, XV, (322).

For my part, I pulled at it madly, as if my impatient efforts were ever likely to move it. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

For my part, I thought it most advisable to be off. *ib.*

In the following example, however, the phrase has the same meaning as the Dutch *voor mijn part*.

Would he were gelt that had it, for my part, | Since you do take it, love, so much at heart! SHAK., *Merch.*, V, 1, 143.

Observe also that *for me* may convey the same notion thus in:

She may go to Bath, or she may go to Jericho, for me. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 168.

IV. In the clauses opening with *for aught*, etc. the ordinary verbs are *to care, to know, or to tell*. When the predicate is formed by another verb *for* seems to be usually replaced by *by*, which, of course, stands for a somewhat different notion; e. g.:

By what he could make out, this Duke of Wellington was no better than he should be. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I. Ch. VII, 54.

ADVERBIAL CLAUSES OF EXCEPTION,

152. Adverbial Clauses of Exception open with: *a*) the conjunction *than*; *b*) the prepositions *but* or *save* used as conjunctions, sometimes followed by *that*; *c*) adverbial adjuncts used as conjunctions: 1) the participles absolute *barring, except, saving*, 2) the adverb *only*, mostly followed by *that*.

NOTE. When adverbial clauses of exception are full, they answer to arrestive sentences in adversative co-ordination. Compare the quotations in 156 with those in Ch. XI, 7.

153. The conjunction *than* is to a certain extent found to express an idea of exception after *other, otherwise, or else* in a negative, or interrogative sentence, or in a conditional clause. The clause introduced by *than* is always incomplete; e. g.:

It was scarce probable but what the inhabitants of the cavern had some mode of issuing from it otherwise than by the lake. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XVIII, 62*a*. The singer was none other than Signor Donati. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant* Ch. XVII, 148.

He said that he would never upon any consideration start for a trip upon any other day than a Friday. JEROME, *Diary*, 66.

Their refusal to accept the king's invitation to witness the Spithead review was not due to Mr. Fisher's influence, or to anything else than the fact that they did not feel it proper to appear in the Royal presence, until they had replaced the clothes they had worn on board the Saxon by a more suitable costume. *Times*.

The army is giving no thought to anything else than crushing the tyrant and avenging Gordon's murder. *ib*.

Note *a*) After *no more* in the sense of *nothing else*, the conjunction *than* has the same meaning; thus in: There was no more to be done than to pack my things.

β) The construction (*not*) *other than* + infinitive seems to be an unusual one; e. g.: With such a letter as that before him Frank could not do other than consent to her proposal. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XLIII, 567 (ordinary English: could only consent).

Jane was too frightened to do other than scream. S. BARING GOULD, *The Red-haired Girl* (SWAEN, *Sel.*, I, 159). (ordinary English: Jane could only scream; she was too frightened.)

154. Obs. I. Instead of *than*, we often meet *but*, occasionally *except* or *save* (= *saving*), especially after *else*. In Older English *but* seems to have been more frequent than it is now; e. g.:

i. Thou shalt have none other gods but me. *Author. Vers.*

Had I taken the pin to any other person but Mr. Polonius, Lady Drum would never have noticed me. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 66.

How long could I love any other but him? *id. Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXIV, 270. There remains no more but to thank you for your courteous attention. O. E. D. s. v. *but*, 5.

ii. If I had done nothing else in my life but bring them together, I should not have lived in vain. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 192.

What could she do else but love him? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXIII, 363. The ordained agencies for teaching have been mumbling little else but dead formulas. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 23*a*.

iii. Friendship is constant in all other things | Save in the office and affairs of love. SHAK., *Much ado*, II, I, 183.

Did you see any one else except himself? TROLLOPE, (*MALMSTEDT. Stud.*, 37).

We can do no more except fight. RUDY. KIPLING (*ib*.)

II. The grammatical status of *but*, *except* and *save*, when followed by noun or pronoun, is uncertain; i. e. they may in this case be apprehended either as conjunctions or as prepositions. The result is a frequent vacillation in the form of the pronouns that are capable of inflection for case. Thus "*nobody else went but me (or I)* is variously analysed as = *nobody else went except me* and *nobody else went except (that) I (went)*, and as these mean precisely the same thing, both are pronounced grammatically correct." O. E. D., s. v. *but*. See also O. E. D., s. v. *except*, B, 1, Note; and *save*, 1, b; FOWLER, *Dict. of Mod. Eng. Usage*, s. v. *but*; and compare Ch. XXXII, 7.

155. *But, except, or save (or saving)* regularly takes the place of *than* when *other(wise)* or *else* is not expressed; they occur also after affirmative sentences. The clause introduced by *but, except, or save (or saving)* is always incomplete.

but. i. * Whence but from the author of all ill could spring so deep a malice? MASON, Eng. Gram.²¹, § 534.

What does he do, ma'am, but ask for a few coals? DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XXIII, 213.

** Little is left to us but the air we breathe. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. I, 9. I can't bear that he should hear it from any one but me. DICK., Chuz., Ch. LIII, 414 b.

Do you think we have nothing to do but to eat your fish? CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 305.

Meanwhile it seemed that nothing moved in the world but she. Mrs. WARD, Helbeck of Bannisdale, I, 303.

ii. Any one but a fool would understand. Everybody but you has signed. O. E. D., s. v. *but*, C, I, b.

I wish you had borrowed anybody's horses but Mr. Boldwood's. HARDY, Madding Crowd, Ch. XXXII, 251.

except. i. The rabble of mankind ... know nothing of liberty except the name. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XIX, (354).

I take no orders except from the King. SHAW, Saint Joan, I, (5).

ii. The city was strongly fortified on all sides except here. O. E. D., s. v. *except*, 3.

save. i. A prophet is not without honour, save in his own country, and in his own house. Bible, Matthew, XIII, 57.

None, save those with them, know how much of real nobility there is among the social-democrats. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 362.

ii. And here he shall wear his crown by sea and land, | In every place, save here in Italy. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., I, 3, 88.

Note α) For discussion and illustration of *I cannot but, I cannot choose but, or I cannot help but* + infinitive see Ch. LV, 44. For illustration of the idiom in such a sentence as *Whom should I meet but our cousin?* see Ch. I, 44, b, 4.

β) The excepting force of the participles is sometimes emphasized by *always*. Compare the like function of *always* after *provided, providing, or supposing* 71, Note β.

Most of the family quarrels that I have seen in life (saving always those arising from money disputes ...) spring out of jealousy and envy. THACK., Es m., II, Ch. V, 193.

156. *But that, except that, save that (or saving that), and barring that*, take the place of *than* or *but*, etc., when the clause is full. In clauses of this description *that* is but rarely absent. Instances with *but what* appear to be very rare.

but (that): i. * Here we live in an old rumbling mansion for all the world like an inn, but that we never see company. GOLDS., She Stoops, I, (167). But that at certain periods they swallowed food together from a common trough, it might have been old Charon's boat, conveying melancholy shades to judgment. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXIII, 191 b.

Why are tutors engaged, but that children should be taught. THACK., Virg., Ch V, 57.

I don't believe God wants anything, but that people should be good. G. ELIOT, *Dav. Grieve*, III, 233.

It cannot be but that I shall be saved. TEN., *St. Simeon Stylites*, 151.

After all, what is there to say but that the whole affair must be forgotten.

EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXXIII, 254.

•• But I can tell you that of late this duke | Hath ta'en displeasure 'gainst his gentle niece, | Grounded upon no other argument | But that the people praise her for her virtues. SHAK., *As you like it*, I, 2, 292.

He had expected nothing else, but that his grandson should be timid or shy. FRANCES BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 107.

ii. We learn no other but the confident tyrant | Keeps still in Dunsinane. SHAK., *Macb.*, V, 4, 8.

Here nothing would satisfy her, but she must elbow through the crowd and speak to me. THACK., *Esm.*, III, Ch. III, 335.

Nothing would content him but I must come. CONC. Oxf. Dict.

iii. It can hardly be but what I shall learn the truth there. TROL., *Last Chron.*, II, Ch. LX, 228.

Monsignore ... never administered the Viaticum but what the Church was the richer for a legacy. OUIDA, *Idalia*, 217 (WESTERN, *De Engelske Bisætninger*, § 157).

barring that: Barring that he's a Protestant, of course he's a very good match for her. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. XV, 260.

I don't know that I ever saw a gentleman do (this) ... barring that he was a teetotaller. id., *Orl. Farm*, I, Ch. IX, 114.

Barring that she seldom says a word about anything but the way the rheumatism has her tormented, her Irish as as good as you'd hear. BIRMINGHAM. *Advent. of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. V, 122.

except that: The cases are quite parallel, except that A is a younger man than B. O. E. D., s.v. *except*.

Miss Blimber presented exactly the same appearance she had presented yesterday, except that she wore a shawl. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 108.

With their true natural delicacy they abstained from comment, except that Diana asked me if I was sure I was well enough to travel. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 519.

We lay there a long time in silence, except that Webb groaned every now and then. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

save that: It is no great matter what Mrs. Hominy said, save that she had learnt it from the cant of a class, and a large class, of her countrymen. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXII, 189 b.

There seemed no order in these latter views, save that they were in the Future. id., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 90.

The Somersetshire peasants behaved themselves as if they had been veteran soldiers, save only that they levelled their pieces too high. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 177.

They were sturdy boys, save that their faces had the paleness which was the result of their occupation. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, B, 64.

She would not be content | Save that I wedded her. TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 1304.

saving that: But saving that he sometimes looked up quickly at the poor erections on the hill, he gave him no clue to what was passing in his mind. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXIII, 192 a.

The following example is worth registering here on account of the cumulative restriction and the absence of *that*.

Tawno leaped into the saddle, where he really looked like Gunnar of Hliatharænd, save and except the complexion of Gunnar was florid, whereas that of Tawno

was of nearly Mulatto darkness. BORROW (FOWLER, King's Eng., 357). Note. Sometimes we find *except*, *save*, or *saving* followed by another conjunction than *that*. In that case, however, there is clearly a suppression of a clause opening with *that*. Thus *Mrs. Acland did not seem to remember her existence, save when she wanted her help in needlework*. (Mrs. ALEX, Life Int., I, Ch. IV, 65) stands for **Mrs Acland did not seem to remember her existence, save that she remembered her existence when she wanted her help in needlework*.

157. *Only that* answers to the co-ordinative *only* (Ch. XI, 9) in like manner as *but that* answers to the co-ordinative *but*. It is by some taken exception to. See STOFFEL, Taalstudie, V, 161; and compare 67; Ch. LX, 37.

He would have believed his further progress by land impossible, only that it was scarce possible but what the inhabitants of the cavern had some mode of issuing from it otherwise than by the lake. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. XVIII, 62 a.

So long as you know how to set about it, you can do with us what you like — only that you must know how to set about it. DOR. GERARD, The Etern. Wom., Ch. XVIII.

They are to him what the liver is to some people — only that they are beyond the reach of mineral waters. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XII, 221. I've nothing against the man — only that I hate him. *ib.*, II, Ch. VIII, 149.

I might not be so persistent, only that N. and Q. circulates all over the world. Notes & Queries.

Note a) According to the O. E. D. (s. v. *only*, B, 2, b), the omission of *that* is now obsolete.

Only he is very melancholy, he would be agreeable. H. MARTIN, Helen of Glenross, II, 226 (O. E. D.).

β) The use of *only* in the meaning of *except* before a (pro)noun, as in the following examples, is, apparently, very unusual. It is not registered in the O. E. D.:

I have written day and night, I may say, ever since Sunday morning, only church-time or the like of that. RICHARDSON, Clar. Harl., I, 248 (STOF., Taalst., V, 161).

In Woodview there was nothing only Margaret, who had come to console and persuade her to come down-stairs. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. III, 24.

158. In conclusion mention may be made of the construction with *beyond that*, which comes near to that with *except that*; e. g.:

His letter gave no information beyond that he was ill. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIII, 237.

CHAPTER XVIII.

INFINITIVE-CLAUSES.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Infinitive-clauses in general	1— 3
Infinitive-clauses answering to Subordinate Statements . . .	4—13
Infinitive-clauses answering to Subordinate Questions . . .	14—15
Infinitive-clauses answering to Attributive Adnominal Adjuncts or Clauses	16—17
Infinitive-clauses answering to Adverbial Adjuncts or Clauses	18—28
Infinitive-clauses representing Predicative Adnominal Adjuncts	29—44
Accusative + Infinitive	30—38
Prepositional Accusative + Infinitive	39—40
Nominative + Infinitive	41—44
<i>FOR</i> + (pro)noun + Infinitive-clause	45—52

INFINITIVE-CLAUSES IN GENERAL.

1. The action or state expressed by an infinitive(-clause) is necessarily associated with a person or thing (or number of persons or things) by way of subject. This person or thing (or number of persons or things) is not indicated in any way in the sentence:
a) when indefinite, as in:

It is more blessed to give than to receive. *Bible*, Acts, XX, 35.

To err is human, to forgive divine. *POPE*, *Es. on Crit.*, II, 325.

Where ignorance is bliss, 'Tis folly to be wise. *GRAY*, *Eton Col.*, 100.

b) when indistinctly present to the speaker's mind, or readily suggested by the context, as in:

It was then proposed to begin a general conversation. *FIELD.*, *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch VI, 45.

It was determined to send a force against them. *MAC.*, *Clive*, (509 *b*).

To cut the delinquent son off with a shilling was like delivering him over to his evil propensities. *G. ELIOT*, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. III, (530).

2. When this person or thing (or number of persons or things) is indicated, this is done by a (pronoun, mostly forming part of the head-clause: *a*) by a (pronoun in the nominative, or in the objective case, as in:

i. Martin was evidently highly pleased at the invitation, and promised to be up without fail. *HUGHES*, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 241.

You must not judge hastily or vulgarly of snobs; to do so shows that you are yourself a snob. *THACK.*, *Snobs*, Pref., 13.

ii. To hear Scrooge expending all the earnestness of his nature on such subjects, ... and to see his heightened and excited face, would have been a surprise to his business friends in the city indeed. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*, II, 33.

Mr. Reffold signed to the nurse to withdraw. *BEATR. HAR.*, *Ships*, I, Ch. VIII, 33.

Send it to be framed. *RID. HAG.*, *Mees. Will.*

b) by a noun in the genitive, or by a possessive pronoun, as in:

To see Steerforth walk before us, arm-in-arm with Miss Creakle, was one of the sights of my life. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 45 *a*.

To hang about a stable, and to collect a gang of the most disreputable dogs to be found in the town, and lead them out to march round the slums to fight other disreputable dogs, is *MONTMORENCY'S* idea of life. *JEROME*, *Three Men*, Ch. II, 22.

In the following types of sentences, to be discussed below, (22, Obs. VII; 45 ff) the subject-indicating word is part of the infinitive-clause.

i. The caul was put up in a raffle down in our part of the country to fifty members, at half-a-crown a head, the winner to spend five shillings. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. I, 2 *a*.

ii. For me to interfere either way would be at once idle and perilous: Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 147.

3. Infinitive clauses mostly answer to: *a*) subordinate statements, *b*) subordinate questions, *c*) attributive adnominal adjuncts and clauses, *d*) adverbial adjuncts and clauses, *e*) predicative adnominal adjuncts. See the examples in Ch. IX, 17.

There are also infinitive-clauses that answer to substantive clauses. These are of little interest and are, therefore, dismissed in this place with a few words. They open, one and all, with *where*, or a compound of *where*. They are uncommon, and are used only in literary diction; e. g.:

The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air have nests; but the Son of Man hath not where to lay his head. *Bible*, *Matth.*, VIII, 20.

They struggled with difficulties and wants, not having where to lay their head. *SWIFT*, *Tale of a Tub*, *Martin*, (95 *a*).

(I had) the happy expectation of . . . reaping the benefit of his promise to lend me wherewithal to pass examination. *SMOL.*, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVI, 102.

(He) . . . Had not on earth whereon to lay His head. *BURNS*, *Cotter's Sat. Night*, XV.

She had stolen from her little hoard wherewithal to make some small purchases. *LYTTON*, *Night & Morn.*, 342.

It yields me wherewithal to carry out, my North-West patent. *KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XIII, 109 *a*.

Note. *Wherewithal* sometimes assumes substantive function, being preceded by the definite article or, occasionally some other modifier. In this case the infinitive is sometimes understood.

A . . . hope . . . that this day's post would have brought the wherewithal to build up new expectations. *HT. MARTINEAU*, *Manch. Strike*, Ch. XII, 127 (O. E. D., 2, c).

Our English girls, when they have got the wherewithal, do in the second generation easily assume the aristocratic manner and appearance. *BESANT*, *Demoniac*, Ch. III (ib.).

When peace does come to the Orange River Colony, and the burgher can be permitted to return to his farm, if he is given stock and other wherewithal to recoup himself for the losses of the war, his mind will, in the majority of cases, be so bent on his own welfare that the promptings of dissatisfaction and rebellion will find no room. *Times*.

INFINITIVE-CLAUSES ANSWERING TO SUBORDINATE STATEMENTS.

4. Infinitive clauses answering to subordinate statements, are used in English very much in the same way as they are in Dutch. They often vary with gerund-clauses, but almost exclusively with such as do not contain a subject-indicating word. For details see Ch. XIX.
5. Infinitive-statements representing the subject of the head-clause stand either before or after the latter. When they have back-position, they are mostly announced by *it* (Ch. II, 10 ff).

i. To see Dobbin holding the infant, and to hear Amelia's laugh of triumph as she watched him, would have done any man good who had a sense of humour. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXV, 391.

To be on the safe side is always the best. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XIV.

ii. It was absolutely necessary to strike some daring blow. MAC., Clive, (505 b).

It is easier to keep a crown than to regain one.

Note the idiom in: It was as much as I could do to keep pace with the donkey. DICK., Cop., Ch. XII, 89 a. (Dutch: Ik kon den ezel haast niet bijhouden.)

It was all she could do to keep back her tears. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XIV. (Dutch: Zij kon haar tranen haast niet tegenhouden.)

6. When the infinitive-statement represents the nominal part of the predicate, the subject often has the same form. In this case the copula *to be* is tinged with the signification of *to mean* (Ch. I, 5).

i. The chaplain's errand was to inform us that Mr. Thornhill had provided music and refreshments. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. VIII, (282).

The object of his diplomacy was at this time simply to get money. MAC., War. Hist., (605 b).

ii. To represent him as a man of stainless virtue is to make him ridiculous. *ib.*, (595 b).

To degrade human learning was to attack the very base of the New Learning. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VI, § 5, 321.

We were generally such shy boys that to say good day to us was to inflict upon us the greatest moral torture, if you expected us to say good morning in return. MISS BRADDON, My First Happy Christmas.

To advertise in a small way is to throw away your money. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, A, 20.

Note. Complexes with a predicative infinitive(-clause) sometimes admit of being turned into complexes with a subjective infinitive(-clause), in which the latter is represented by anticipating *it* in the head-clause: thus:

The old gentleman was in so savage a mood, that his humour was to contradict everybody. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XVIII, 196 (= ... that it was his humour to contradict everybody.)

7. Infinitive-statements representing the non-prepositional object are found, in the main, after the same kinds of verbs in English as in Dutch. Their subject-indicating word is either the subject or the person-object of the head-clause.

i. I always loved to be at church a good while before the rest of the congregation. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. IV, (257).

The week which had opened thus for Tressady, promised to be one of lively interest. MRS. WARD, Tres., Ch. V, 30 b.

ii. She entreated us to remain. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 397, N.

The doctor called to us to fetch some water. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 236.

Sir Miles asked us to dine with him. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XI, 71.

Note a) After *to beg* the infinitive-statement mostly appears as the representative of the non-prepositional object through the suppression

of such a word as *leave*, *permission*, to which, if actually expressed, it would stand in the adnominal relation. The construction is very common in mercantile correspondence. See also Ch. XIX, 19, a.

He begged to send his love to his mother. G. ELIOT, *BROTHER JAC.*, Ch. III, (53:). In reply to your letter of the 4th inst., I beg to say that [etc.]. *BUSINESS LETTER WRITER*.

β) Such an infinitive-statement may stand in an incomplete clause after *than*, as in:

Some know better than to be gulled by platform arguments. *TIMES*.

8. Contrary to Dutch practice, an infinitive(-statement) is, however, impossible, or at least highly unusual: a) after verbs expressing a perceiving when the person or thing connected with the action or state that would be expressed by the infinitive, is indefinite. Thus for such a sentence as *Wij hoorden luide om hulp roepen* an Englishman does not say **We heard call loudly for assistance*. In translating such sentences with an indefinite infinitive(-statement), various turns of expression may be chosen, according to circumstances; viz.: 1) an accusative with infinitive (or present participle), which would occasion the interpolation of an indefinite (pro)noun; e. g.:

We heard somebody (a man) call(ing) loudly for assistance.

2) a noun of action, or a gerund, the latter unfrequently; e. g.:

We heard loud calls for assistance.

We heard firing towards midday. *THACK., ESSEX*, Ch. V, 45.

She heard running. *MRS. WARD, TREAS.*, III, Ch. XXIII, 191 b.

They could hear singing inside the placarded hoarding. *HARDY, JUDE*, V, Ch. VIII, 395.

b) after verbs expressing a judging or declaring (31, c), i. e. after the equivalents of such Dutch verbs as *gelooven*, *meenen*, *zich verbeelden*, *vermoeden*, etc., and *verklaren*, *zeggen*, *bekennen*, *verzekeren*, etc. Thus for *Hij meent (verklaart) het zeker te weten* an Englishman does not say **He thinks (says) to know it for certain*. The English idiom mostly requires a full subordinate statement after verbs of this description. Sometimes a gerund-construction is possible. (Ch. XIX, 18 a.) For the full subordinate statement in the following quotations, the Dutch would prefer or, at least, might use an infinitive-clause:

i. *to believe*: Tow-woose answered he believed he could furnish him. *FIELD., JOS. ANDR.*, I, Ch. XVII, 43.

In the second girl he recognized — or believed that he recognized — Eve Madeley. *GISSING, EVE MADELEY'S RANSOM*, Ch. V.

to fancy: She had suited her discourses to what she fancied were his especial spiritual needs. *KINGSLEY, HYP.*, Ch. XIV, 71.

He fancies he can carry all before him where women are concerned. *MRS. WOOD, EAST LYNNE*, I, 24.

Note. *To fancy* in the imperative mood is mostly construed with a

gerund(-clause). This also applies to *to fancy* in the sense of *to have a liking for*. (Ch. XIX, 18, c).

to imagine: He imagined he should get a considerable sum of money on this occasion. FIELD., JOS. ANDREWS, I, Ch. XV, 39.

The Boers had, or imagined that they had, a list of grievances as long as an Irishman's. FROUDE, O.C., Ch. III, 45.

to suppose: I suppose I have seen a good deal in my time. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XIII, 60 a.

Did he suppose that he could meet any of those monkish rascals in the street without being knocked down? *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 72 a.

to think: I even felt, or thought I felt, a slight degree of military ardour. MARRYAT, Pet. Simple, Ch. I, 3 b.

When the boat came near the shore, they thought they recognized one of the convicts that were in her. Story of Two Englishmen (GÜNTH., Leerb.).

ii. *to affirm*: I am not a Joseph, nor a Scipio, but I can safely affirm that I never in my life seduced any woman. BYRON, Note to Ch. Harold, II, XXIII.

to boast: I don't boast that I possess all these things. TROL., Orl. Farm, I, Ch. II, 32.

to confess: She sang a French song, which George confessed he did not understand. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 35.

Note. *To confess* in the sense of *to plead guilty* (Dutch *er voor uitkomen*) requires *to*, which may be followed by a gerund-clause (Ch. XIX, 42). Compare O. E. D., s.v. *confess*, 6, b.

to declare: He declared he had now a second reason to desire life. FIELD., JOS. ANDREWS, I, Ch. XV, 39.

The stable-keeper had declared that he would never do any more business with Dunstan Cass. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar. n., Ch. IV, 30.

to own: I own I was a little nettled by some of his last observations. EMILY LAWLESS, Col. of the Emp., Ch. IV.

Note. *To own*, like *to confess*, in the sense of *to plead guilty*, requires *to*, which may be followed by a gerund-clause (Ch. XIX, 42). Compare O. E. D., s.v. *own*, 5, b.

to protest: He protested he would not leave Joseph in his present condition. FIELD., JOS. ANDREWS, I, Ch. XV, 39.

to say: He says he is not in Mr. Tulkinghorn's office. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VII, 54.

to vow: He vowed that he had totally forgotten it. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 31.

c) after verbs expressing a commanding, when the recipient of the command is not mentioned. Thus for *De koning beval niet langer te dralen, maar het huis onmiddellijk af te breken* we could not say **The king ordered to delay no longer, but to pull down the house immediately*. The ordinary equivalent of infinitive(-statements) of the above description is either a full clause or an accusative + passive infinitive; e.g.: *The king ordered that there should be no delay. The king ordered the house to be pulled down immediately.*

9. Obs. 1. Instances of the Dutch practice are now and then met with after some of the above verbs; 1) as regards verbs expressing a perceiving, archaically or dialectically after *to hear*, which may be

followed: *a*) by an infinitive, chiefly *to say* or *to tell* + objective subordinate statement (Ch. III, 30, *b*; Ch. LV, 36, Obs. III), as in:

- i. I heard say your lordship was sick. SHAK., Henry IV, B, I, 2, 118.
- ii. I never heard tell that we were put here to get pleasure out of life. CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 231.

β) by an infinitive, mostly *to tell*, *to speak*, or *to talk* + *of* + (pro)-noun, as in:

- i. I asked him if he had ever heard tell of a house they called the House of Shaws. STEV., Kidn., Ch. II, (196).

I've 'eard tell of dumb dawgs, HERB. JENKINS, Bindle, Ch. V, 72.

- ii. I like to hear speak of the country, and trees, and suchlike things. Mrs. GASK., North & South, Ch. XIII, 77.

- iii. He had heard talk of Marner's miserliness. G. ELIOT, Sil. Mar'n., Ch. IV, 28.

Note. In the following example *talk* may also be understood as a noun: There came officers from Hexton, in whose company our little lord was made to hear talk and to drink. THACK., Esm., I, Ch. XI, 113.

2) as regards verbs expressing a judging or declaring, after: *to affect*, as in: He affected to know nothing of the matter. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. I, 10.

to believe, after the saying *make believe*, as in: He made believe to box her ears. Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve, I, 146.

to claim, as in: A jeweller at Neuchâtel claims to have invented a clock which is worked by perpetual motion. Manch. Guard., 3/2, 1928, 86c.

to let on, as in: Mr. O'Flaherty is not so ferocious as he often lets on to be. Manch. Guard., 10/6, 1927, 452d.

to pretend, as in: You drank the shrub, and now you pretend to have broken the bottle. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 44.

Note. The use of the infinitive may be due to the fact that *to pretend* in the meaning of *to lay claim* requires an infinitive-construction (Ch. XIX, 43, *a*, 2), as in: I do not pretend to possess equal frankness with your ladyship. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. LVI, 347.

to profess, as in: Pope professed to have learned his poetry from Dryden. BAIN, Eng. Comp., 45.

There is ... nothing it (sc. the world) professes to condemn with such severity as the pursuit of wealth. DICK., Christm. Car., II, 42.

The statues only profess to represent to us the outer form of the body. GREEN, Sh. Hist., Ch. VI. Sect. iv, 314.

to purport, as in: So much was seen from the copy of a report purporting to be extracted from a newspaper. MER, Rich. Fev., Ch. XVI, 113.

to say, as in: I trust I may say, without undue conceit, to have made considerable progress in my school-task ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. X, 203.

3) as to the verbs of commanding, archaically after.

to bid, as in: The monarch saw, and shook, | And bade no more rejoice. BYRON, Vis. of Belsh., III.

Stephen bade advance his trumpeters. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. VIII, 114.

And the damsel bidden rise arose. TEN., Merl. & Viv., 67.

He bade pull alongside. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho! Ch. XVIII, 136b.

He bade light the peat-stack under me. id., Herew., Ch. I, 17a.

to cry (out), as in: Some cried after him to return. BUNYAN, Pilg. Prog. (144).

The captain saw the danger, and cried out to lower the sail. WASH. IRV. Dolf Heyl. (126).

Your gentlemen-at-arms ... cry | To have the gates set wide again. TEN., Queen Mary, II, 4, (603 a).
to let, as in: Arthur... let proclaim a joust | At Camelot. TEN., Lanc. & E1, 76.

II. There appears to be nothing unusual in the use of the infinitive-construction after certain verbs of judging or declaring, when the time-sphere of the infinitive is posterior to that of the preceding verb; thus in the case of:

to doubt, as in: "I can keep you in reasonable check now," I reflected, "and I don't doubt to be able to do it hereafter." CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXV, 334.

I do not doubt | To find, at some place I shall come at, arms | On loan. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 219.

Note. This applies also to the group-verb *to make no doubt*, as in: I make no doubt to be too hard for her. GOLDS., She stoops, I, (172).

forswear, as in: She hath forsworn to love. SHAK, Rom. & Jul., I, 1, 227.

to promise, as in: Martin was evidently highly pleased at the invitation, and promised to be up without fail. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. III, 241.

to swear, as in: He swore not to see him again. HARDY, Jude, VI, Ch. XI, 515.

I swear to observe the constitution and to defend the integrity of the national territory. II. Lond. News, No. 3689, 5.

Sikes swears to kill Oliver at the first opportunity. Daily Mail.

to think, in the meaning of *to expect*, as in: You must not think to surmount her pride by your humility. FARQUHAR, Recruit. OI., I, 1, (258).

He thought to better his circumstances by marrying a young woman of the French nation. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 11.

I thought to pass away before, and yet alive I am. TEN., May Queen, Concl.

Of all men upon earth, this was he whom she most dreaded, and whom she had least thought to see. CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 207.

She had thought to be so happy at Rede Place. Mrs. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Ogländer, Ch. XI, 151.

Thus also in the case of tense-shifting, i.e. when the notion of completed action is not expressed by the finite verb, but by the infinitive (Ch. LV, 59 ff), as in:

Who thought to have seen you in Sicily? DRYDEN, Mar. à la Mode, I, 1, (240).

I did not think to have had witnesses of my bad singing. *ib.*, I, 1, (238).

I never thought to have had a scamp for my son. GALSW., Country House, II, Ch. XII, 206.

Note α) Occasionally the infinitive is also found after *to think* in its ordinary application of *to believe*, *to imagine*; thus in: The maiden paused, as if again | She thought to catch the distant strain. SCOTT, Lady, I, XVII.

Never before had she seen so soft a light as the one she had thought to surprise in those hard blue eyes. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XX.

My eye travelled over that problem of the New East, which, for some generations at least, we thought to have settled. LAURENCE HOUSMAN, Angels & Ministers, II, 54.

β) The infinitive-construction varies with a gerund-construction with *of* after *to think* in the meaning of *to intend*, *to make up one's mind*, or *to call to mind* (*to remember*, *to bethink oneself*), the latter con-

struction being, presumably, the ordinary one in Late Modern English (Ch. XIX, 37, *a*); e. g.:

i. * Thou must not think to absent thyself from such a solemn occasion. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXIII, 250.

Sweet was the scene, yet soon he thought to flee, | More restless than the swallow in the skies. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, XXVII.

And day by day she (sc. Enid) thought to tell Geraint. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 65. He thought at first to put an end to the commotion by diminishing the authorized issue of the new coin from £ 108,000 to £ 40,000. D. LAING PURVES, *Life of Swift*, 30.

The relief she felt was so great, that she did not think to question Mrs. Randal about him. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Traffic*, IV, Ch. IV, 243.

I thought to give your treatment a trial. *Rev. of Rev.*, *Advertisement*.

** Did you think to ask him how his father is? No, I didn't think of it. O. E. D., s. v. *think*, II, 5, c.

I wish you had thought to pick up the lamp. JEROME, *Bummel*, Ch. III, 45, (T).

ii. Where do you think of going? DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, I, 243.

Then, without doubt, you are thinking of selecting for her a suitable husband of her own rank. BUCHANAN, *That Wint. Night*, Ch. I, 14.

to threaten, as in: He threatened to flog Figs violently, of course. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 46.

to 'vow, as in: But these you had vowed never to grant, while your daughter was living. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (474).

They vowed never to give themselves up to the king and his soldiers. *Robin Hood*.

III. As to the verbs of judging and declaring it may be observed:

a) that the infinitive(-clause) may sometimes be apprehended as a concealed accusative + infinitive with the accusative, a reflexive pronoun, understood (34, Obs. III); thus in:

I don't profess to be clear about dates. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 *a*.

The following lists of instances do not profess to be exhaustive. MICHAEL MACMILLAN, *Marmion*, 324.

b) that many admit of being construed with a gerund (Ch. XIX, 18, *a*, 20).

IV. Most verbs that imply a communication of our thoughts or wishes, and are attended by a person-object, either without or with *to*, are freely construed with an infinitive(-clause). See also the second group of examples in 7; and compare Ch. III, 45; Ch. XIX, 19.

I cried to the groom not to do anything till I had asked Brian to spare him. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. IX, 152.

She ... motioned her father to begin a conversation with Philammon. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XV, 73 *b*.

One of the Zouaves angrily shouted to them to be quiet. HICHENS, *Gard. of A.*, I, I, Ch. I, 12.

He signed to Sigrid to begin the next dance. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXII, 202.

10. After *to try*, especially when in the infinitive or imperative, the objective infinitive-statement is often replaced by an (incomplete) sentence or clause, connected with this verb, by way of hendiadys, by *and* (Ch. X, 14); e. g.:

I will try and be as brief as possible. *III. Mag.*

Try and get out of the house. MRS. ALEX, *Life Int.*, I, Ch. II, 37.

For the use of a gerund(-clause) after *to try* see Ch. X, 14; Ch. XIX, 20.

11. Infinitive-statements representing the prepositional object are often hard to tell from such as represent the non-prepositional object, or from infinitive-clauses representing an adverbial adjunct. Thus the infinitive-statement in *They strove to burst the door* (MAC., Clive, 513 *b*) should be regarded as representative of a prepositional object, because *to strive* requires such an object with *for*, as in *to strive for the truth* (WEBST, Dict.). But the above sentence differs little from *They tried to burst the door*, in which the infinitive-clause represents a non-prepositional object, nor yet from *They struggled in order to burst the door*, in which it stands for an adverbial adjunct

Similarly *He was satisfied to have found the vulnerable point* (MISS YONGE, Heir of Redc., I, Ch. V, 70) will bear two interpretations, viz.: *He was satisfied at having found the vulnerable point*, and *He was satisfied because he had found the vulnerable point*. If we consider this quotation as equivalent to the first sentence, the infinitive-clause, contained in it may be set down as the representative of a prepositional object, if as equivalent to the second, the infinitive-clause stands for an adverbial adjunct. Compare Ch. XIX, 26.

Of an uncertain grammatical function is also the infinitive-clause in:

The ghost was greatly pleased to find him in this mood. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 72.

He himself takes pains to destroy its evidential value. HUXL., Lect. and Es., 84 *b*.

He grieved to see his comrade left to face calamity alone. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. VII, 42.

I can't trouble to hold it for you. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. X, 43.

12. Of especial interest is the infinitive(-clause) in the function of the prepositional object after *to come*, as in:

Pray, Mr. Puff, how came Sir Christopher Hatton never to ask that question before? SHER., Critic, II, 2, (464).

Whenever I fall into trouble or fall in love, I shall always tell you, if you'll let me — even when I come to fall in love in earnest? DICK., Cop., Ch. XIX, 138 *a*.

How came you to care that we should know beforehand? EDNA LYALL, We Two, I, 40.

How did you come to be taking my pheasant's nest? SWEET, Old Chap. All I ever got was advice upon the duties and responsibilities of wealth, when it arrived, and entreaties that I would not neglect those with claims upon me when I came to be a rich man. JEROME, Sketches.

To come, as used in the above examples serves as a kind of auxiliary of aspect. See Ch. I, 2, 12, Obs. III; Ch. XLV, 13, *d*, 4; 26; Ch. LI, 15; Ch. LIX, 93, *d*. This applies also to *fall*, *to get*, and *to grow* when followed by an infinitive(-clause) as in:

i. William fell to be in ill terms with his mother. BURNET, *Own Time*, I, 443 (O. E. D., s. v. *fall*, 40, d).

The memory of his faults had already fallen to be one of those old aches. STEVENSON, *Misadv. J. Nicholson*, Ch. IV, 6 (ib.)

ii. When I got to be a man and lost my illusions [etc.]. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, G, 115.

iii. He had grown to have an extreme fancy for my wife as well as my little boy. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXV, 902.

Cranford had so long piqued itself on being an honest and moral town, that it had grown to fancy itself too genteel and well-bred to be otherwise. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 180.

He grew to believe that his denial had borne its intended fruit. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 81.

In the biblical phrase *it came to pass*, the verb *to come* indicates little more than an adverbial relation of attendant circumstances (Ch. XLV, 26; Ch. LIX, 93 ff); thus in:

Thus it came to pass that this movement of pity towards Sally Oates heightened the repulsion between him and his neighbours. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. II, 15.

So it came to pass that Dick was made free of the New and Honourable Fraternity of War-correspondents. RUDY. KIPLING, *Light*, Ch. II, 22.

13. Infinitive-statements representing an apposition are of two kinds:

a) such as answer to appositions of the first kind (Ch. IV, 10, h); e. g.:

There was, then, some end in existence, something to live for! to kiss a woman's hand and die! MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XIV, 92.

But one course was open to me — to cut his acquaintance. THACK., *Snoobs*, Ch. I, 14.

I am conscious that a duty devolves upon me, to omit no detail. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. of Sherl. Holm.*, II, E, 243.

b) such as answer to appositions of the second kind (Ch. IV, 31, c); e. g.:

Young Johnson had the misfortune to be much afflicted with the scrofula or king's evil. BOSW., *Life of Johnson*.

Personally I think that the only art worth cultivating is the art to be interesting. SARAH GRAND, *Our man. nat.*, Pref., 8.

If Mr. Brough would do me the honour to come in and take a whack [etc.]. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 15.

He never took the trouble to look at me. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XXII.

INFINITIVE-CLAUSES ANSWERING TO SUBORDINATE QUESTIONS.

14. Infinitive-clauses answering to subordinate questions are introduced by interrogative pronouns, interrogative adverbs, or the conjunction *whether*; i. e. by the same words as open full subordinate questions, except *if*. They are of more frequent occurrence in English than in Dutch, but for the rest require little comment. Infinitive-questions represent:

a) *the subject*; e.g.: How to do it was the question. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 387.

b) *the nominal part of the predicate*; e.g.: The great difficulty was how, (when, where) to cross the river.

c) *the non-prepositional object*; e.g.: The little doctor scarcely knew whether to rejoice or be sorry at the tidings. WASH. IRV., DOLF HEYL., (149).

I didn't know whether to laugh or cry. STEV., Kidn., Ch. III, (203).

He had a great deal more money than he knew what to do with. RHODA BROUGHTON, Mamma, Ch. XXV, 201.

d) *the prepositional object*, the preposition of the governing word(-group) being thrown out; e.g.: I was in several minds how to dress myself on the important day. DICK., Cop., Ch. XLI, 294 a.

I was in two minds whether to run away or stop. STEV., Kidn., Ch. II, (198).

She hesitated what to reply. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Novels., Ch. XVI, 134.

Let's think seriously what to do. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XII, 99.

e) *an attributive adnominal adjunct*, the preposition, which may be appositional *of*, being retained; e.g.: Every one has his own ideas about how to spend an evening with combined profit and pleasure. ANSTEY, Fal. Id., Ch. XV, 205.

I have been a good deal worried to-day about the question of what luggage to take with me. JEROME, Diary Pilgrim., 14.

I'll tell you a very good idea of how pass the time. *ib.*, 17.

It (sc. the French proverb) is the same thing as our old English problem of how to "hold with the hare and hunt with the hounds." MANCH. GUARD., 16, 12, 1927, 463 d).

15. Obs. I Curious is the use of infinitive-questions opening with *how* after *to forget*, *to know*, *to learn*, and *to teach*, where little more than the forgetting, possessing, acquiring, or imparting of an art or trick is in question; e.g.:

i. Last night at dinner I heard you say that you had probably forgotten how to read, as you hadn't read anything for so long. E. F. BENSON, Dodo Wonders, Ch. III, 4.

ii. Amelia hanging down her head, blushed, as only ladies of seventeen know how to blush. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 29.

It was not her fault, if she did not know how to read. G. MOORE, Esth. Wat., Ch. III, 20.

Cabmen and omnibus-drivers are not allowed to take the box, before they have shown that they know how to drive. Times.

iii. This was how she had never learned how to read. G. MOORE, Esth. Wat., Ch. III, 22.

Sir Thomas swearing every oath in and out of the Bible at him for his clumsiness, and for not having learnt how to shoot better. EMILY LAWLESS, Colonel of the Empire, Ch. VII.

iv. Dr. Swishem should have taught us how to write. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, M, 206.

A young man was sent to Socrates to learn oratory. On being introduced to the philosopher, he talked so incessantly that Socrates asked for double fees. "Why charge me double?" said the young fellow. — "Because," said Socrates, "I must teach you two sciences; the one how to hold your tongue, and the other how to speak." E. J. HARDY, How to be happy though married, Ch. XXII, 210.

Also an ordinary infinitive(-clause) without *how* is, however, found after these verbs when used in the above sense; thus in:

i. He well knows to still the winds when they roar. MILTON, *Comus*, 87.
 ii. He had very early learned to read and write. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. III, 5.

In his turn he learned from them to skate on the canals. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 101.

The chances are that the majority of the party have never learned to swim. *Times*.

iii. He taught them to fly kites and shoot marbles. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 34.

They have never taught you to read or write? LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 291.
 Note. In such a sentence as the following *how* would, of course, be out of place: They had learnt to swim like fishes. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IX, 189.

II. After *to learn* and *to teach* we also meet with a gerund-clause, evidently implying a mere receiving, or giving of instruction (Ch. XIX, 20); e. g.:

I never learned drawing. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. III, 146.

Who were the boys who learnt dancing last term? ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. VI, 125.

Robinson had been learning boxing lately. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, J, 141.

ii. She set up a school of children, and taught singing to some of them. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. VII, 381.

He taught the boy boxing, and shooting, and the arts of fence. MER; *Riv. Fe v.*, Ch. I, 5.

III. An infinitive(-clause) without *how* is used to the exclusion of either an infinitive-question or a gerund(-clause) after *to learn* and *to teach*, when any idea of receiving instruction is excluded; thus in:

i. Poor Campion had learned to hate its flaccid smile with a deadly hatred. ANSTEY, *Fal. Idol*, Ch. XIV, 179.

Many long and weary years, of long and weary struggles, were passed before men learned to suspect the vanity of their efforts. LEWES, *Hist. Philos.*, *Intr.*, 20.

ii. They could not teach him to game, swear, drink, nor any other genteel vice the town abounded with. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. IV, 7.

Do you insult me, monster? I'll teach you to vex your mother, I will. GOLDS., *She stoops*, III, (202).

INFINITIVE-CLAUSES ANSWERING TO ATTRIBUTIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCTS OR CLAUSES.

16. Infinitive-clauses answering to attributive adnominal adjuncts or clauses may be divided into the following groups: a) those representing an adnominal adjunct consisting of a (pro)noun preceded by a preposition; the preposition of the governing word being merged in *to*; e. g.:

I had perhaps less reason to be surprised than either of my companions. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 38. (Compare: I'll give him reasons for it. SHAK., *Twelfth Night*, I, 5, 325. The reason of the motion of the balance in a wheel-watch is by motion of the next wheel. HALL., in WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v. *reason*, I.)

His misdeeds had been half sanctified by his desire to devote himself and all he possessed to the furtherance of the divine scheme. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. LIII, 389. (Compare: An eager desire after anything WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *thirst*. Miss Brontë related to my husband a curious instance illustrative of this eager desire for riches. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Charl. Brontë*, 9. His predominant passion was desire of money. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 220.)

b) those representing an adnominal clause introduced by a relative pronoun. These clauses are more frequent in English than they are in Dutch; see especially the second group of the following examples:

i. If a dear girl has no dear mamma to settle matters with the young man, she must do it for herself. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 28.

Scrooge was not a man to be frightened by echoes. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

There's nothing to keep us here any longer. ANSTEY, *Fal. Idol.*, Ch. XV, 206.

There really was nothing to say against the plan. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XIII.

ii. Don't be the one to stir up the past against the boy. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 64.

George was the first to recover himself. READE, *Never too Late*, I, Ch. III, 50.

His behaviour had been of a nature to amply justify his uncle's conduct. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XX, 205.

Miss Earhart, ... the first woman to fly the Atlantic. *Manch. Guard.*, 226, 1928, 484 d.

Note the idioms in; He has so much to say for himself. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2, (259). (Dutch: Hij is zoo onderhoudend.)

A handful or so of volumes may remain as a living force in literature for many years to come. *Acad. & Lit.*

The year before a rich man had wanted to marry her, and she would have nothing to say to him. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. III, 28. (Dutch: zij wilde niets van hem wcten.)

Miss Jess Collings will have nothing to say to intoxicants. *Tit-bits*, No. 1291, 387 a. (Dutch: moet niets hebben van bedwelmende dranken.)

"This boat never seems to go out." I said for something to say. *Westm. Gaz.* (Dutch: zei ik om iets te zeggen.)

c) those representing an adnominal clause introduced by a conjunctive adverb, or an equivalent word-group, as in:

i. She brought him a little thick Dutch Bible with brass clasps, as a sword wherewith to fight the powers of darkness. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (120).

I have a poor bill of fare whereon to exercise my culinary powers this morning. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XVII, 84 b.

I have not brought you here for the sole purpose of asking for assistance, whereby to educate young and deserving musicians. *Lit. World.*

ii. They had chosen a charming retreat in which to fulfil that lofty mission. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XII, 58 b.

Do you fancy that burdening the world with noisy likenesses of your precious self is a thing of which to be proud? *ib.*, Ch. XIII, 64 a.

These people have a very narrow margin on which to subsist. *Times.*

17. Obs. I. In the infinitive-clauses of the last kind the relative pronoun is often left out, in which case the preposition is shifted to the end of the sentence; e. g.:

There remained a sum of £ 600 for the girls to live on. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 26.

Our militia was not in any case a body to be particularly proud of. MC. CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 119.

It was an odd sort of thing for a man to be travelling with. JEROME, Sketches. Note the idiom in: The lawyer would have no bowels of compassion to speak of. GRANT ALLEN, The Tents of Shem, Ch. XVII. (Dutch: de moeite waard om van te spreken, noemenswaard.)

Sometimes both the relative pronoun and the preposition seem to be suppressed; the infinitive-clause then assumes the character of an apposition. Thus *To beg the question is not the way to settle it* (MAC., South. Col., (99*b*)) seems to stand for *To beg the question is not the way in which to settle it (in which it should be settled)*. A similar interpretation may be put upon:

She had plenty of time to put to herself disquieting questions. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XIV.

These infinitive-clauses may also be regarded as belonging to an adjective or verb understood. See Obs. III.

II. In most adnominal clauses there is a more or less prominent idea of purpose. The idea of purpose sometimes comes so much to the fore that the clause may also be regarded as representative of an adverbial adjunct of purpose (23). This may be the case: 1) with such as belong to nouns that are construed with certain fixed prepositions before ordinary nouns; e.g.:

About this time the Hungarians had been making a desperate attempt to throw off the domination of Austria. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 113. (Compare: They had all made some sort of attempt at evening-dress. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XI.)

His struggles to submit himself to the divine will after a disaster are described with an amiable garrulity. MAC., Hist., III, Ch. VII, 10. (Compare: The American struggle for independence.)

2) With such as belong to pronouns, or to nouns that are not construed with any fixed preposition; e.g.:

She gave him this letter to post. MASON, Eng. Gram.³¹

He wanted somebody to look after him. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 42.

I have a desk to put my books on. GÜNTH., Leerb.

Of some interest in this connexion are certain infinitive-clauses belonging to a noun that is the object of *to have*, as in:

The Lord Mayor of London has a host of duties to discharge. ESCOTT, England, Ch. V, 64.

It remains to be seen whether the squire has a heart to appeal to. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., II, 80.

These clauses are often confounded with those in which *to have* is used as a synonym of *must* (Ch. I, 32), as in:

I have to acknowledge two letters from you. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XX, 220.

The difference of meaning is clearly brought out by comparing such pairs of sentences as: *I have much money to spend* and *I have to spend much money*. *I have a tale to tell* and *I have to tell a tale*. It is aptly illustrated by the following examples cited by STOFFEL in E. S. XXXI, 112:

Speeches may broadly be divided into two kinds. There is the speech a man makes when he has something to say, and the speech he endeavours to make when he has to say something. Lit. World, 10/5, 1901, 440 a.

It is a sad thing to have to send round the hat, but it is lucky to have a hat to send round, and still more so to possess so generous and thorough-going a friend to urge the appeal as Mr. Henry Irving. Punch, 11/6, 1887, 280 b.

Sometimes the two constructions convey practically the same notion. Thus it is a matter of indifference whether we say *I have no end of calls to make* or *I have to make no end of calls*. In the case of *have* being stressed the first word-order would, however, be out of place. The distinction cannot be made when the object is placed in front-position, as in the case of its being an interrogative or relative pronoun. Thus *What has he to do*, and *the thing which he has to do* bear two interpretations. For discussion and illustration see also Ch. I, 33, Obs. III; Ch. LV, 75; and compare JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., II, 15.851.

This is also the place to call attention to certain sentences with an adverbial adjunct which are constructed on the analogy of sentences like *I have much to do*; e. g.:

If we are ill, he (sc. the doctor) won't have such a distance to come. TROL., Small House, II, Ch. XLIV, 171.

I didn't get home till near one, and some of us had further to go. SWEET, Railway Excursion.

Mr. Jukes had not long to wait. Pall Mall Gaz.

III. Many infinitive-clauses, especially such as belong to group *b* (16), may also be regarded as representing a prepositional object belonging to an adjective or a verb understood. Thus *I have not the courage to do it myself* (DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XI) seems to be elliptical for *I have not the courage necessary to do it myself*. Similarly *Henderson was thus in a position to know exactly who played croquet on Sundays and who did not* (ib., Ch. XIII) may be considered as short for *Henderson was thus in a position enabling him to know* [etc.]. A similar ellipsis may be assumed in:

My wife had scarce patience to hear me to the end. GOLDS, Vic., Ch., XV, (321). (ellipsis: *sufficient*.)

I fear there is no legal evidence to detain him. ib., Ch. XXI, (463). (ellipsis: *authorizing us*.)

Scrooge was not a man to be frightened by echoes. DICK., Christm. Car., I. (ellipsis: *liable*.)

The epithet *spherical* is simply a Greek locution to indicate the perfect equality and absolute unity of God, and of which a sphere may be the image. LEWES, Hist. Philos., III, Ch. II, 61. (ellipsis: *used*.)

This was not a moment to give way to nervous fancies. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XIV. (ellipsis: *suitable*.)

Sometimes such an adjective occurs attributively before the noun modified; thus in:

Grimworth was a good place to set up shopkeeping in. G. ELIOT, Broth. Jac., Ch. II, (496).

IV. Of some interest are sentences in which the infinitive is in the perfect tense, while the predicate in the head-clause is in the present or preterite; e. g.:

This was certainly a long speech to have been made by a smile which crossed Mr. Scott's face but for a moment, but every word of it was there expressed, and every word of it was there read. TROLL, *Three Clerks*, Ch. XXIX, 360. Princess Victoria is the third member of the Royal Family to have been overtaken by influenza recently. *Manch. Guard.*, 24, 1926, 264 *d*. Mrs. Runciman is the twelfth woman to have been elected since women became eligible for election to Parliament. *ib.*, 16/3, 1928, 207 *b*.

INFINITIVE-CLAUSES ANSWERING TO ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OR CLAUSES.

18. These clauses are not always easy to distinguish from those representing a prepositional object (11). By far the majority of them are indicative of a relation of purpose; in some this relation is mixed with other notions; in not a few it is difficult to discern a relation of purpose. For discussion of the various relations that may be implied in these infinitive-clauses in SHAKESPEARE see ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*³, § 356.

The absence of conjunctives to indicate the precise nature of the adverbial relation leaves room for some diversity in classification.

19. Infinitive-clauses of time mostly answer to full clauses opening with *until* or *till*; e. g.:

I hope you . . . will live to see many young men of four thousand a year come into the neighbourhood. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. I, 9.

I waited to be told. DICK, *Bleak House*, Ch. XIII, 109.

I doubt whether one of these will live to be free. *ib.*, Ch. V, 35.

I hope I shall live to join their hands. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. LII, 384.

He rose to be an inspector of police. *Daily Chron.*

Note. In the following example the construction with *and* is, by way of hendiadys, substituted for that with *to*: There is no fear in him; let him not die; | For he will live, and laugh at this hereafter. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, I, 191.

Such as answer to clauses introduced by *when* or *as*, sometimes imply an additional relation of cause or reason; e. g.:

I could not but smile to hear her talk in this lofty strain. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. III, (253).

Scrooge hung his head to hear his own words quoted by the Spirit. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 61.

She could hardly believe her senses to see the austere gentleman, dead silent, dropping tear upon tear before her eyes. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 4.

There are also infinitive-clauses which suggest full clauses opening with *while*; e. g.:

Tressady had hard work to keep the sister quiet. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. IV, 29 *a*.

20. Infinitive-clauses of cause mostly stand with verbs and (participial) adjectives expressing a certain state of mind. These verbs and adjectives are generally construed with the preposition *at*, and, accordingly, the clause may perhaps, more properly be regarded

as representative of a prepositional object. Compare Ch. XIX, 23 and 26. In most of them the relation of cause is more or less markedly mixed with that of time; e. g.:

If I blush, | It is to see a nobleman want manners. SHAK., *Henry VIII*, III, 2, 308.
Sir Anthony will stare to see the captain here. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1, (213).

I was so vexed to see him stand up with her. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 16.

I rejoice to see you. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 39.

I have only come to tell you how sorry I was to see you treated as you were by my uncle. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 36.

21. Of rather frequent occurrence are those infinitive-clauses which state the ground of the statement made in the head-clause; e. g.:
He is a foolish man to throw away such a chance. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 372.

I must have been born with a silver spoon in my mouth, I am sure, to have ever come across Pecksniff. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. VI, 47 a.

How rich you must be to wear such splendid things! THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 45.

You're in luck to come to-day. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 91.

Fool! to have looked for common sense on such an earth as this! KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XVII, 87 a.

You ought to consider yourself singularly fortunate to have such a chance offered you. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, II, Ch. VI, 103.

You are an angel to care for me. *id.*, *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XI, 182.

Note. In most of the above infinitive-clauses there is also an idea of restriction (27). Thus *I must have been born with a silver spoon, to have ever come across Pecksniff* not only may be understood to mean ... *because I have come across Pecksniff*, but in so far as *I have come across Pecksniff*.

22. Those expressing a relation of consequence seem to occur only after questions; e. g.:

I can't conceive what the wenches see in him, to be so foolishly fond as they are. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. VII, 14.

What crime, madam, have I committed, to be treated thus? SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (220).

Where have you been not to hear that? LYTTON, *Pomp.*, IV, Ch. VII, 107 b.

What have we done, to be served like this? ANSTAY, *Fal. Idol*, Ch. VII, 106.

23. Of great frequency are infinitive-clauses of purpose; e. g.:

He toils to earn a living. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 372, 4.

When we reflect on the various schemes this gentleman has laid to seduce innocence, perhaps some one more artful than the rest has been found to deceive him. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (472).

To know intense joy without a strong bodily frame, one must have an enthusiastic soul. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXIX, 205.

The better to set this fear at rest, I changed the form of my inquiries. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, Ch. II, (195).

Note the idiom in: She gave it to be understood that Lady Mildred's affections were engaged: NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVI, 107. (Dutch: *liet doorschemeren*.)

ii. Branwell, meantime, not to be behind his sister, had written to Wordsworth. FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. VII, 44. (Dutch; *om niet achter te blijven bij zijn zuster*.)

iii. The men, not to be outdone, met together and decided to give a musical and dramatic entertainment. Rev. of Rev., No. 231, 268 a. (Dutch: om niet onder te doen.)

iv. That is not to say that Father William lost anything, when he was presented last week at the Barn theatre. II. Lond. News, No. 3923, 111 a. (Dutch: dat wil niet zeggen.)

v. Finally, to crown all, Moore wrote [here follows a letter]. STEPH. GWYNN, Thom. Moore, Ch. I, 20. (Dutch: om de kroon op het werk te zetten).

The idiom illustrated in the following examples appears to be archaic: What had he to do, to chide at me? SHAK., As you like it, III, 5, 128. (= What business had he.)

What, the devil, had I to do, ever to beget sons? CONGREVE, Love for Love, IV, 2, (271).

What has Catharine to do, to instruct such a fellow as he? SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. III, 39.

24. Obs. I. The relation of purpose is sometimes obscured, and mixed with other relations: 1) with that of condition in:

I would have given any money, to have been allowed to wrap myself up over-night, and sleep in my hat and boots. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 14 a.

I would not stay away, to be made private secretary to the Prime Minister. TROL., Small House, II, Ch. XLVII, 201.

2) with that of concession in:

To have been made lady of the manor of the cove for ever, Mally couldn't have spoken a word now. TROL., Malachi's Cove (Sel. Short Stor., I, 292).

He would not have let Sybil take it, to save his life. ANSTEY, Fal. Id., Ch. XII, 157.

3) with that of result, or attendant circumstances in:

In an hour the forces of Surajah Dowlah were dispersed, never to reassemble. MAC., Clive, (519 a).

After getting some work in London, he has returned to Birmingham, to find his lady-love flown. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XXII, 238.

He came home from an afternoon stroll, to find a letter on the table waiting for him. CON. DOYLE, Advent. of Sherl. Holm., Noble Bachelor, 117. Once, when he was seven years old, the little fellow woke up at night, to see a lady bending over him. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. I, 4.

In the following quotation the relation of purpose is protected by the adverb *only*: The survivors might well apprehend that they had escaped the shot and the sword, only to perish by famine. MAC., Hist., VII, Ch. XVIII, 26.

Note. Also the word-group consisting of *to be* + noun, which sometimes replaces a predicative adjunct after verbs of choosing or appointing, is a kind of infinitive-clause of purpose (Ch. VI, 19); e.g.: He was promoted to be a lieutenant. Graph.

4 with that of restriction in: His notable little wife, too, had enough to do, to attend to her housekeeping. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 356.

II. After certain verbs, especially *to come, to go, to send, to stay (stop)*, and *to write*, we sometimes find an infinitive-clause of purpose replaced by an (incomplete) co-ordinate sentence or clause (Ch. X, 9-12): e.g.:

You will come and see us sometimes, won't you? O. E. D., s. v. *and*, 10.

H. POUTSMA, II.

She had better let me go and seek my fortune. MRS. ALEX., *Life Int.*, I Ch. VI, 97.

I should like to send and get my sketches. RUDY. KIPLING, *Light*, Ch. III, 40. Stay and help your sister. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XL, 297.

Sometimes he would stop and talk with the children. FRANCES BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 176.

I must write and tell him. MRS. ALEX., *Life Int.*, II, Ch. I, 14.

For the use of a verbal in *-ing* after *to go* see Ch. XIX, 63, Obs. I. III. The phrase *to be going* often represents the action or state expressed by the following infinitive-clause as intended, with the idea of *going* entirely lost sight of, and the idea of purpose in the following infinitive-clause obscured. See also Ch. L, 69.

I am not going to make myself anxious about him. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I. Ch. VI, 53.

He was not going to be beholden to his wife's sisters. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, Ch. VIII, 65.

If you were going to be charitable, you could have looked out some really poor person. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot*.

A further sense-development of *to be going* is that of representing the action or state expressed by the following infinitive-clause as immediately impending, with further obscuration of both the idea of going and the relation of purpose. In this sense *to be going* even admits of being connected with a subject indicating an inanimate thing, as in: *The concert is going to begin*, *It is going to rain*; e. g.: I don't believe he remembers more than once in a year that he's going to be rich some day. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XVIII.

Note. According to ARONSTEIN (*Die Periph. Form im Eng.*, *Anglia* XLII, 14, foot-note) the phrase was not used in this faded meaning by SHAKESPEARE. Thus *are you going* must not be understood in the sense of *are you about* in: Are you now going to dispatch this deed? RICH., III, I, 3, 341.

Also in connexion with other forms of the verb *to go* the notion of purpose may be obscured; thus in: As we expected our landlord the next day, my wife went to make the venison-pasty. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. VI, (268). I go to watch thy slumbers, and woe with him that shall intrude on them! SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. V, 51.

Having lost his first wife, Emerson married again in 1835, and went to live at Concord. BETTANY, *Introd. to Emerson*, *Repres. Men*.

IV. Infinitive-clauses of purpose are sometimes preceded by adverbial word-groups rendering the idea of purpose more explicit. See also 28, a, N. In this function we find.

in order, as in: I winked upon my daughters, in order to prevent their compliance. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. V, (261).

on purpose, as in: I made a voyage to Grand Cairo, on purpose to take the measure of a pyramid. ADDISON, *Spect.*, I.

I went out myself, on purpose to know the truth of it. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 324.

with intent, as in: He was brought up on charges of forging and uttering securities, with intent to defraud. *Times*.

In older English *for* was often used for the same purpose (Ch. LV, 3; LX, 85); e. g.:

And specially, from every shires ende | Of Engelond, to Caunterbury they wende, | The holy blisful martir for to seke. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, A, 15—17.

Vertue gives her selfe light, through darknesse for to wade. SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, I, I, XII.

Are ye come out as against a thief with swords and staves for to take me? Bible, *Matth.*, XXVI, 55.

This *for* is also met with when any idea of purpose is absent (STOF., *Stud.*, A, VII. 48 ff); thus in:

And if yow liketh alle, by oon assent, | Now for to stonden at my jugement. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, A, 779.

Forbid the sea for to obey the moon. SHAK., *Wint. Tale*, I, 2, 427.

It is now lawful for to put them (sc. the silver pieces) into the treasury. Bible, *Matth.*, XXVII, 6.

Some dialects have preserved this *for* to this day; thus we find it in: He got me them papers as I wanted fur to curry me through. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XLI, 291 a

Em'ly, my dear, I am come fur to bring fo'giveness. *ib.*, Ch. XLI, 291 b.

V. The head-clause of infinitive-clauses of purpose is sometimes understood. Thus in *To be sincere, you have not done your best* there is an ellipsis of *I must tell you*, or a sentence of like import. This suppression is especially found with certain proverbial sayings, such as in: i. To make a long story short, the company broke up, and returned to the more important concern of the election. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 49. (Dutch: om kort te gaan.)

To cut a long tale short, I was half mad with the continual choppings and changings. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 97.

To cut short a long story, my cousin afterwards got entangled in attempts the failure of which is historically known. LYTON, *My Novel*, II, ix, Ch. III, 87.

To make short of a long story, I am afraid I have wanted an object. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LI, 425

ii. To do Sybil justice, the real bitterness for her lay in the fact that it was her lover who had done all this. ANSTEY, *Fal. Idol*, Ch. VII, 102.

iii. To be sincere, I had strong suspicious that some absurd proposal was preparing. GOLDS., *Vic.*

iv. Good Mr. Turner was, not to mince matters, an ass. NORRIS, *My friend Jim*, Ch. I, 12. (Dutch: om er geen doekjes om te winden.)

That, to put it bluntly, was a lie. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4943, 2 a.

v. To give an instance: Spinoza was a very religious man, although his doctrine amounted to atheism. LEWES, *Hist. Philos.*, III, Ch. II, 65.

vi. Their expositions of the real meaning of that which is written in the Epistles (to leave aside all questions concerning the Old Testament) are nothing more than deductions which, at any rate, profess to be the result of strictly scientific thinking. HUXL., *Lect. and Es.*, 96 a. (Dutch: nog daargelaten.)

vii. He is, not to put too fine an edge upon it, a thorough-paced scoundrel. O. E. D., s.v. *edge*, 2, a. (Dutch: om er niet veel van te zeggen, om geen erger woord te gebruiken, op zijn zachtst uitgedrukt.)

The feelings of Liberals were, not to put too fine a point upon it, very mixed indeed. *Daily Chron.*

He was, not to put too fine a point upon it, ... hard up! DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XI, 87.

viii. She had become one of those London girls to whom rest, not to say pleasure, is unknown. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. III, 23.

Master Tom looked upon this habiliment with considerable respect, not to say fear. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 23.

ix. History records no parallel to the free grant, not to mention the further assistance by way of loan. *Times*. (Dutch: om te zwijgen van, gezwegen van)

x. To tell you the truth, he had some forty stout countrymen of his with him, who might have been troublesome to a perplexed prefect; not to mention that it is always as well to keep on good terms with these Goths. KINGSLEY, *Hy p.*, Ch. II, 7*b*.

To tell the truth, though, about the pin, although I mentioned it almost the last thing in the previous chapter, I assure you it was by no means the last thing in my thoughts. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 47.

But to say truth, I think that not one of the enormous mass of objections and obstacles which have been raised, is of any very great value. HUXL., *Darw.*, Ch. XI, 469.

To speak truth, if I thought I had a chance to better myself where I was going, I would go with a good will. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, Ch. I, (191). Truth to tell, good looks are the exception, not the rule, in Naples. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. I, 8.

Truly to speak, and with no addition, | We go to gain a little patch of ground | That hath in it no profit but the name. SHAK., *Hamlet*, IV, 4, 16. (archaic.)

He thought even yet, the sooth to speak, | That, if she loved the harp to hear, | He could make music to her ear. SCOTT, *Lay*, *Introd.*, 57. (archaic.)

xi. She lived, so to put it, in her own right. *Athen.*, No. 4511, 531*b*. (Dutch: om het zoo eens uit te drukken.)

xii. He cheered her, and raised her up and forgave her so to speak. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 206. (Dutch: om zoo te zeggen.)

But a good deal that the sea brings is eaten raw, so to speak. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5261, 7*a*.

Now, however, Goldsmith was about to break covert, so to say, to have henceforth the dogs of envy and detraction in full cry after him. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Golds.*, Ch. II, 131.

The poor things (sc. flowers) withered, and faded, and pined away; they almost, so to say, panted for draught. Miss MITFORD, *Our Village*, Ch. VI, 49.

xiii. During the century and a half which followed the Conquest, there is, to speak strictly, no English history. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 13. (Dutch: strikt genomen.)

xiv. But to return to the things and thoughts of earth. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. III, 88.

But to return to Dickens' interview with Mr. Hall. MARZIALS, *Life of Dick.*, Ch. III, 42.

To resume. WILK. COL., *Woman*, II, Ch. X, 1, 310.

xv. To start with, we will grant that we are paid to attend on our master's guests. *Westm. Gaz.*

xvi. To crown all, there was a story, full ten years old now, which had lost nothing in the telling, of his treatment of a cattle-drover. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XI, 90.

VI. Some infinitive-clauses of purpose have hardened into adverbial adjuncts. Thus *to spare* (= in excess to what is needed), *to wit* (= namely), *to conclude* (= in conclusion), *to be sure* (= certainly); e. g.:

I see a long low wooden house, with room enough and to spare. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXXVIII, 371.

Apart from the ordinary antipathy to inactivity on the field, there are two special causes for the present activity — to wit, the indignity of the Colenso reverse, and the knowledge that our comrades-in-arms must be becoming sorely pressed at Ladysmith. *Daily Chron.*

And to conclude | The victory fell on us. *SHAK, Mac b, I, 2, 57.*

It was very unkind of her to be well in your absence, to be sure. *SHER., Riv., II, 1.*

VII. The infinitive-clauses mentioned under V and VI, being disconnected from any word in the head-clause, may be called *absolute*. Some of them vary with participle adverbial clauses that have not a subject-indicating word (Ch. XX, 7, Obs. II).

In like manner infinitive-clauses of the following type bear some resemblance to adverbial participle-clauses with a subject-indicating (pro)noun, mostly called *nominatives absolute* (Ch. XX, 8) See also 2, b.

My father's friend. . . and I never to have seen you! *LYTTON, My Novel, II, IX, Ch. XVII, 145.*

In regard to the Albanian problem Austria and Italy agreed on the principle of nationality, the country to be neutralized under the guarantee of the Great Powers. *Every Man (KRUIS., Handbk., § 392).*

Thus the following regiments will march past as detailed below: Hon. Artillery Company — Commanded by the Lord Mayor in person. Every private to carry a pint of turtle-soup in his water-bottle. *Punch, 9, 7, 1881, 9.*

25. Infinitive clauses of condition and hypothesis are found in two varieties: a) those which mark an open condition, i.e. one implying nothing as to fulfilment; e.g.:

If I can perceive her regard for him, he must be a simpleton indeed, not to discover it too. *JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. VI, 25.*

She'll be frightened to death, to sleep alone. *JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, N, 244.*

Perhaps we do best to abide by the bare facts. *W. RALEIGH, Shakespeare, Ch. II, 31.*

b) those which mark a condition that is a mere conception of the mind. Thus *To look at Montmorency, you would imagine that he was an angel* (*JEROME, Three men, Ch. II, 21*) = *If you were to look at Montmorency, you would* (etc.); e.g.:

To hear him talk, one would suppose he was master here. *MASON, Eng. Gram., § 196.*

To hear him, you would think he had passed half his life in Australia. *READE, Never too late, I, Ch. IX, 98.*

Only to look upon him as he passed, you would say that you had seen a strong man in his youth. *BESANT, By Celia's Arbour, I, Ch. I, 2.*

It would seem — to look at the man, as he sat there — that he had grown old before his time. *Mrs. WOOD, East Lynne, I, Ch. I, 1.*

Note. The relation of condition or hypothesis is mixed: 1) with that of instrumentality in such a sentence as: *You will do well to consider the alternative*, which admits of a twofold interpretation, viz: *You will do well if you consider the alternative*, but also: *You will do well by considering the alternative*. A similar twofold interpretation may be put on:

It was added that the Governor would do well to avail himself of the assistance of Nuncomar in the investigation. *Mac, War. Hist., (604 b).*

The Government would do well to remember that the device has been wonderfully successful. *Times*.

2) with that of restriction in such a sentence as: *He was not much to look at* (ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot*), which may be understood as a blending of *He was not much if you looked at him*, and *He was not much so far as his looks were concerned*. Similar notions can be discerned in:

She was a wonderful object to look at in her night attire. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. V, 46.

These agricultural gentlemen are delicate customers to deal with. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. X, 63.

26. Infinitive-clauses denoting a relation of degree as manifested by a consequence, fall into two groups: a) such as refer to *enough* or *sufficient(ly)*, as in:

i. Do you assnuate that I am old enough to be your mother? FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. VI, 13. (*assnuate* is vulgar for *insinuate*.)

Poor wretch, he looked pale and ill enough to have been almost on the point of death. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, L, 198.

ii. * This is sufficient to feed a hundred men. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.* We cannot hope to kill sufficient flies to reduce seriously their total numbers. *Graph.*, No. 2323, 1022 a.

** The slope ... was just sufficiently steep to keep the attention aroused. TYNDALL, *Glac.*, I, Ch. XXII, 153 (O. E. D.).

Note. In the following example the use of *as* before the infinitive seems to be uncalled-for: Mr. Hudson ... had placed sufficient confidence in her as to bestow upon her the honour of a latch-key. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Traffic*, III, Ch. XIV, 215.

b) such as refer to *too*, as in:

I was sure Mr. Babcock was too much the gentleman to mention it again. ANSTEY, *Fal. Idol*, Ch. XVI, 209.

He is too cool and experienced a man of the world to think of marrying her. Mrs. ALEX., *Life Int.*, II, Ch. I, 18.

Note. In the following sentences the infinitive-clause may, perhaps, be said to indicate a kind of effect, the head-clause indicating circumstances which have not stood in the way of the fact mentioned in the infinitive-clause taking effect:

The man was a fool, and a very extraordinary arsonite, to have an accomplice at all. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. X, 64.

The tall one looked extraordinarily severe, and the short one extraordinarily glum, Mark thought, to have young men. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, Ch. II, IV, 21.

27. Infinitives-clauses of restriction occur chiefly: a) after *quick* (*slow*), *first* (*last*), and words or word-groups of a similar import; e. g.:

He was by nature rash, irritable, quick to feel for his own dignity and slow to sympathise with the sufferings of others. I. SCHMIDT, *Gram.*³, § 353.

It created a coldness which others were not slow to take advantage of. JEROME, *Sketches*.

Oxford, always first to recognize, if not always first to produce, the greatest achievements of English literature, gave him its D. C. L. in 1839. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 51.

b) after *wrong* and *right*, and words or word-groups of a similar import; e. g.:

Mrs. Bennet wondered at their coming, and thought them very wrong to give so much trouble. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XII, 63.

The plain man, looking at the problem as it exists to-day, is right to hold that he is not dealing with the Bishops of yesterday. Times.

Note a) The relation of restriction implied in the above examples is very vague, and this applies also to the following: Thou crowest loudly to be but a chicken. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XVIII, 181. (= considering that thou art but a chicken.)

He told them that he did well to meditate on these great things. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. III, 29. (approximately: in so far as he meditated on these great things.) I never saw such a thing as paraffine oil is to ooze. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. IV, 34. (approximately: so far as oozing is concerned.)

β) After the words mentioned under a) and b) the gerund-construction is a frequent variant of the infinitive-construction. See Ch. XIX, 65.

28. In conclusion we must observe that infinitive-clauses are often used in incomplete clauses of quality, degree, or exception, to represent various elements of the sentence.

Thus *You tie her down so as to provide for successful swindling* (RID. HAG., *Mees*, Will, Ch. VI, 59) may be expanded into **You tie her down so as you tie her down to provide for successful swindling*, in which *to provide for successful swindling* is an infinitive-clause of purpose.

I have no choice but to accept the fact (ib.), Ch. XXI, 225 may be expanded into **I have no choice, but (except) that I have the choice to accept the fact*, in which *to accept the fact* is an adnominal infinitive-clause representing an apposition.

He did nothing but laugh may be expanded into **He did nothing but (except) that he did laugh*, in which *laugh* represents the object.

The analyses into which the above examples are forced are admittedly rather unsatisfactory, or even far-fetched, yet it seems difficult to find such as would give a more rational account of the way in which they are constructed.

Some infinitive-clauses of the above description are catalogued here: a) such as refer to the determinative *such* or the adverb *so*, indicating a quality, and open with *as*, as in:

i. Her education had not been such as to make her intolerant. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*

His (Locke's) language is always such as to be intelligible to a plain understanding. TH. B. SHAW, *Hist. Eng. Lit.*, Ch. XIV, § 3, 273.

ii. The sheet may be folded so as to fit a small envelope. HOOPER AND GRAHAM, *Home-Trade*, Ch. III, 12.

In 'oo' the lips are brought together so as almost to close it (sc. the mouth). SWEET, *Princ. of Phon.*, § 14.

It (sc. the trap) was so constructed as to hold the limbs without injuring them. id., *Old Chapel*.

The corresponding delineations of succeeding ages should be so managed as to show how each belief, institution, custom, and arrangement was modified. SPENC., *Educ.*, 29 b.

Note. In the above examples *so* and *as* belong to different members

of the sentence. When *so* passes into the infinitive-clause, the word-group *so as* assumes the meaning of *in order*; thus in:

I would have gone from home on the wedding-day, *so as* not to see the atrocious sacrifice of broken faith. Mrs. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, I, Ch. II, 231. My dear mother wished to see him before she consented to the arrangement, *so as* to be able to form her own judgment as to whether he was a fit and proper companion for me. JEROME, *Variety Patter*, 142.

Some sentences are ambiguous. The meaning of the following example becomes changed if a comma is placed after *about*:

The wooden-legged man turned me about *so as* to exhibit the placard. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 41 *b*.

Compare also Ch. XVII, 60.

b) such as refer to an imaginary *so* indicating quality, and open with the conjunctive word-groups *as if* or *as though* (Ch. XVII, 109), as in:

I saw my mother involuntarily put out her trembling hand, *as if* to interpose between us. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 60 *a*.

Sir Thomas looks *as if* to ask what the dash is that to you? THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. VI, 75.

She opened her lips, *as though* to speak. M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XXIII.

Note the idiom in: He made *as if* to change his cosy position. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XLIV, 448.

He made *as if* to leap from the bed. RUDY. KIPL., *Light*, Ch. IX, 120. (Dutch: Hij deed alsof hij van het bed wilde springen.)

c) such as refer to the determinative *such*, or the adverb *so*, indicating intensity, and open with *as*. Note that when the Dutch has an analogous construction after the adverb *zoo*, the correlative *als* is left out.

i. The rain descended in *such* torrents *as* absolutely to spatter up and smoke along the ground. WASH. IRV., *Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 83).

No sooner was the new industry fairly started, than the machinery laid down for the purpose of carrying it on, was rated at such a figure *as* almost to absorb the margin of profit on which the manufacturers had reckoned. *Times*.

ii. I asked the carrier to be *so* good *as* to reach me my pocket-handkerchief. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 32 *a*.

She turned to thank the gentleman for taking *so* much trouble *as* to bring her home. *ib.*, Ch. II, 10 *a*.

Note. Infinitive-constructions of this description are not so frequent in Dutch as they are in English. They are impossible after *zulk*, and also in many connexions after *zoo*. Thus a full clause would be used in translating the following sentences:

Grimm, the German antiquary, goes *so* far *as* to deny that any man Odin ever existed. CARL., *Hero Worship*, I, 22.

So preoccupied was she *as* not to hear the sound of footsteps. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*

The wind was roaring *so* *as* to drown all other sounds. G. ELIOT, *Mill III*, Ch. IX, 243.

β) In SHAKESPEARE the infinitive(-clause) sometimes stands without *as*. Instances seem to be rare in Late Modern English.

I'll make so bold to call. *Mac b.*, II, 3, 55.

Are you so gospell'd, | To pray for this good man and for his issue? *ib.*, III, 1, 89.

And one thing more, that you be never so hardy to come again in his affairs. *Twelfth Night*, II, 2, 8

I would thou wert so happy by thy stay, | To hear true shrift. *Rom. & Jul.*, I, 1, 164.

She was not so unwilling to comply with their brother's proposal. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. VIII, 44.

γ) In DICKENS, and, perhaps, other writers, we find occasional instances of *to* being dropped before the infinitive (Ch. LV, 46, b).

If you'll be so good as give me your keys, my dear, I'll attend to all this sort of thing in future. *Co p.*, Ch. IV, 24 b.

δ) The use of a participle-construction after an adjective modified by *so*, as in the following example, appears to be very rare:

Sit down at once, and don't be so rude, shouting names at people in the street. E. F. BENSON, *Dodo wonders*, Ch. V, 82.

d) such as refer to the adverb of degree *as*, modifying *much*, and open with *as*; e. g.:

Then she would pat me on the arm and smooth my dress, as much as to assure me that she had a good opinion of me. *Dick*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXX, 253.

e) such as refer to a comparative, and open with *than*.

Sooner than yield he resolved to die. *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2322.

I cannot do better than to try to give you an idea of our modern industrial system. *BELLAMY*, *Look Back w.*

She might do worse than to accept for a while the harsh shelter of the work-house. *G. MOORE*, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XVIII, 115.

Note the idiom in: Gwen knew better than to argue the point. *L. B. WALFORD*, *Stay-at-homes*, Ch. I. (Dutch: *G. was te verstandig om over het punt te redetwisten*.)

I knew better than to disturb it. *JAMES PAYN*, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, N, 234.

You'll learn better than to torment your uncle. *HABBERTON*, *Helen's Babies*, 39. (Dutch: *afleeren*.)

In the following example the comparative has passed into the infinitive-clause, *further than* + infinitive being equivalent to *beyond* + gerund: The English Duke took little part in that vast siege of Lille, further than to cover the besieging lines. *THACK.*, *Esm.*, II, Ch. XIV, 275.

You have nothing to do with the master of Thornfield, further than to receive the salary he gives you for teaching his protégée. *CH. BRONTE*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVIII, 196.

f) such as refer to a negative word and open with *but*, *save*, *except*, or *excepting*; e. g.:

i. He did nothing but laugh. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, 108, N.

If I had done nothing else in my life but bring them together, I should not have lived in vain. *LYTTON*, *Night and Morn.*, 192.

What could she do else but love him? *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXIV, 363.

Do you think we have nothing to do but to eat your fish? *CON. DOYLE*, *Ref.*, 305.

ii. Nothing I have, and nothing I need, save to serve noble kings and earls. *KINGSLEY*, *Herew.*, Ch. III, 25 b.

We have no duties provided for us, save to eat and sleep. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. II, 31.

iii. I can't do anything hardly, except write. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. IV, 28. You never did anything in your life, except make yourself agreeable. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 11.

iv. Everything is permitted to him, excepting to be heavy and prosaic. SCOTT, *Brid. of Trierm.*, Pref.

Note the idiom in: The crest-fallen women had nothing for it but to obey. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XIV 144.

He could not but feel that he was a great match for any farmer's daughter. READE, *Never too Late*, I, Ch. II, 37.

He could not choose but love her. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXV, 186. (archaic.)

We could not help but love each other. HALL CAINE, *Christian*, IV, Ch. XV, 282 a. (archaic.)

There was no help for them but to obey. *Story of Rob Roy*.

I had no alternative but to make you my confidant. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, II, Ch. VI, 187.

INFINITIVE-CLAUSES REPRESENTING PREDICATIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCTS.

29. These clauses modify: *a*) a non-prepositional object; *b*) a prepositional object; *c*) the subject.

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

30. *a*) A non-prepositional object with a predicative adnominal infinitive-clause is mostly called an accusative with infinitive. A sentence containing an accusative with infinitive is equivalent to, although not always convertible into, or exchangeable for, a complex sentence with a subordinate statement. Thus *I saw the stone fall into the water = I saw that the stone fell into the water. I know him to be innocent = I know that he is innocent. I do not wish you to quit the army = I do not wish that you should quit the army. He commanded the bridge to be lowered = He commanded that the bridge should be lowered.*

But for the following sentences, although resembling the above in structure, it would not be possible to substitute others with a subordinate statement:

It is my wish to have my boy make some figure in the world. GOLDS., *Vic.*

I have known him walk with Tiny Tim on his shoulder very fast indeed. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 87.

I took him to be nearer sixty than fifty. *id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 39.

Bertha made me believe that he was really the object of her secret ridicule. G. ELIOT, *The Lifted Veil*.

Conversely the construction with a full clause could not be exchanged for an accusative with infinitive in:

The carrier proposed that my pocket handkerchief should be laid upon the horse's back to dry. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 32 a.

I prophesy you will like her enormously. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. II, 9*a*.

b) A comparison of the two constructions brings out the fact that the accusative answers to the subject and the infinitive to the predicate of the corresponding subordinate statement.

c) It may, furthermore, be observed that the logical object of the verb that is followed by an accusative with infinitive, is not the idea expressed by the (pro)noun in the accusative, but the complex of the ideas expressed by this (pro)noun and the infinitive with its adjuncts. Accordingly, we sometimes find the accusative with infinitive varying with a gerund(-clause) preceded by a genitive or a possessive pronoun, the common case of the noun often taking the place of the genitive, and the objective of the personal pronoun occasionally replacing the possessive pronoun (Ch. XIX, 70). Compare the following quotations with those with the same verbs given below:

i. to apprehend: The weather is so very bad that the liveliest imagination can scarcely apprehend its ever being fine again. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. IV, 50.

to recollect: I recollect your saying one night [etc.]. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLV, 265.

to remember: I remember his doing so. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXI, 222. I remember her sitting down by one of the tombstones. Miss BRAD., *My first happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I).

to understand: I can hardly understand a young Frenchman's not entering the army. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. V, 79.

ii. to like: I don't at all like your going such a way off. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LI, 310.

I don't think the minister will like your having given her a novel to read. Mrs. GASK., *Cous. Phil.*, II, 51.

iii. to bear: I cannot bear your remaining at Belthorpe, like a jewel in a sty. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XX, 137.

to endure: I shall not tamely endure your saying anything that may impinge upon the honourable feelings of a gentleman under my roof. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XI, 46*b*.

But in the majority of cases the two constructions are not exchangeable one for the other. See also Ch. XIX, 70.

d) After verbs of perceiving, and after *to have* the accusative with infinitive mostly expresses a somewhat different relation from that of a non-prepositional object followed by an ordinary noun or adjective used as a predicative adnominal adjunct of the first kind. See 32, I, and compare the examples in 31, *a* and *b* with:

I hope I see you well. ONIONS, *Advanc. Eng. Synt.*, § 34.

I cannot have my son ill. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXII, 350.

The relation is the same when the infinitive has the value of a present participle (Ch. XX, 18), as in:

One day I told Pasteur what was passing in my mind; he laughed outright, the only time I have seen him laugh. *Il. Lond. News*.

After the other verbs that may be construed with an accusative with infinitive, the infinitive stands in the same relation to the other elements of the sentence as an ordinary noun or adjective. Compare, for instance, the examples with *to acknowledge*, *to believe*, *to declare*, *to imagine*, and those with *to want* and *to wish* (Ch. VI, 16 and 21) with those with the same verbs given below.

e) In some sentences containing an accusative with infinitive, the relations between the different elements may be understood in another way. Thus the infinitive-clause may be regarded:

1) as representing a restrictive attributive adnominal adjunct in:

I never saw a female wear a shawl more carelessly than you. BEATR. HAR., SHIPS, I, Ch. V, 21. (= a female that wears etc.)

He was asked what time it was he saw the person steal away from the rick. MER., Rich. F. ev., Ch. XI, 70.

Note a) In such a sentence as *He wanted somebody to look after him* (DICK., BLEAK HOUSE, Ch. VI, 42) the infinitive-clause is purely adnominal. The verb *to want*, indeed, here does not express a desiring but a needing.

β) Conversely substitution of the accusative + infinitive for the construction used in the following example would entail an appreciable modification of meaning:

I will not suffer in my company a man who speaks lightly of religion. G. ELIOT, SCENES, III, Ch. I, 185.

2) as representative of an adverbial adjunct of time in:

He beheld Peregril sally forth with his donkey unusually laden. WASH. IRV., ALHAMBRA, 24. (= as he sallied forth.)

Arthur Pendennis chose to watch Miss Bell dance her first quadrille with Mr. Pynsent for a partner. THACK., PENN., I, Ch. XXVI, 272.

f) It is only verbs that govern one non-prepositional object which can take an accusative + infinitive, as the term is understood in these pages. Such as normally require two non-prepositional objects, and also such as are normally furnished with a non-prepositional and a prepositional object are, accordingly, excluded from the following discussions. Many of them, indeed, are frequently followed by a construction which, on the surface, resembles an accusative + infinitive, but the analysis of sentences containing such a construction will be found to differ considerably from those containing a genuine accusative + infinitive.

In the majority of cases there is not, therefore, an accusative + infinitive in sentences in which a verb indicating an allowing, a commanding, or requesting is followed by a person-object and an active infinitive, as in *He allowed (told, or requested) me to leave the room*. This naturally applies also to those in which the predicate is formed by any of the other verbs, mentioned in Ch. III, 45, which are construed with a non-prepositional person-object and a thing-object in the shape of an infinitive(-clause) or a subordinate statement. Thus there is no accusative + infinitive in *I advised (beckoned, or signed) him to come*

a little nearer. Compare MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.², III, 27. Some verbs of this description, however, sometimes occur in a combination in which their meaning is modified in such a way that the (pro)noun + infinitive by which they are followed can hardly be distinguished from an accusative + infinitive. For further comment and for illustration see below.

Again no real accusative + infinitive is to be found in sentences in which the predicate is formed by such verbs as *to bring, to get, to leave, to persuade, to press, to urge*, and numerous others commented on in Ch. XIX, 43, which govern a non-prepositional object and a prepositional object with *to*. Thus in:

The star-seers tell us that we feel a secret and uncontrollable antipathy to those whose astral influences destine them to work us evil. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. IV, 107.

I will cut him, and get my husband to cut him too. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. V, 56.

I leave you to imagine the agreeable feelings with which Philip went to Mr. Deane the next day. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VIII, 397. (Compare Ch. XIX, 43, a.)

The doctor had tried every means to persuade him to return to the farm. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (113).

They solemnly pledged themselves to protect the Good Estate. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, V, Ch. I, 195.

Robert Beaufort pressed him to stay. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 435.

He urged me not to come. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 435.

But, as in the case of the verbs governing two non-prepositional objects, a modified interpretation of the verb may bring the construction within the purview of the accusative + infinitive. Thus *to bring* may be apprehended to convey a meaning similar to that of *to cause* in:

This brought the scarce credible old time to smite at his breast. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. IV, 79.

This may also be said of *to win* in:

See these clots of virgin gold! | Sever'd from the sparry mould, | Nature's mystic alchemy | In the mine thus bade them lie; | And their orient smile can win | Kings to stoop, and saints to sin. SCOTT, *Brid. of Trierm.*, III, xxvi.

In the following example *to aim*, which is mostly construed with *at* (Ch. XIX, 27), approaches in meaning to *to intend*, no doubt an unusual application of this verb:

In requesting your permission to address the following pages to you, which, as they aim themselves to be critical, require every protection and allowance that approving taste or friendly prejudice can give them, I yet venture to mention no other motive than the gratification of private friendship and esteem. SHER., *Critic*, To Mrs. Grenville.

31. The verbs which are more or less frequently found construed with an accusative + infinitive may be divided into the following groups: a) verbs that express an activity of our physical organs, i. e. a discovering, a watching, or a hearing, such as:

to behold: He beheld her die while she was still a child. ETHEL COLBURN MAYNE, *Byron*, Ch. I, 13.

to discern: The East India proprietors stood by Hastings, discerning him to be the best man for their interests in a stormy time. DEIGHTON, Note to Mac., War. Hist., 155.

to discover: While she had discovered herself to be an Englishwoman, he had discovered her to be a Spaniard. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXVI, 209*b*.

to feel: i. I felt the air fan my cheek. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, 249. I saw into her pitiless soul, ... and felt it clothe me round like an air I was obliged to breathe. G. ELIOT, Lifted Veil, Ch. I, (412).

ii. I felt this to be a foolish weakness. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, 249.

I felt this to be very true. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. III, 16.

Doubtless Hilda also felt the latter result of her intercourse with Lady Mildred to be highly desirable. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. I, 13.

to find: I found this plan to tell through life. MRS. CRAIK, A Hero, 8.

You'll find the lock go the better for a little oil. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXIX, 310*b*.

ii. I found him to be a grave, keen personage of uncertain age. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VII, 125.

to hear: It was fascinating to hear him talk. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 43.

to note: He noted there two ancient warders stand. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Proud King, 94*a*.

to observe: I generally observe such men to retain a certain freshness. DICK., Cop, Ch. II, 7*a*.

I have observed two of them (sc. young ladies of the court) pay you no small attention during the last half-hour. CH. BRONTË, Villetta, Ch. XX, 275.

I had observed her give a little start now and then. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, III, Ch. II, 252.

to overhear: He overheard his young master mention our names with great commendation. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XII, (302).

to perceive: i. We perceived the dogs and horsemen come sweeping along. *ib.*, Ch. V, (260).

ii. Our guest at last perceived himself to be known. *ib.*, Ch. XXX, (454)

When the figure got nearer, I perceived it to be a woman. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. III, 62.

to see: I have seen artists paint their own portraits. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 43.

You never saw Tom Bakewell set fire to that rick. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. IX, 56.

survey: Ye friends to truth, ye statesmen, who survey | The rich men's joys increase, the poor's decay — | 'Tis yours to judge, how wide the limits stand | Between a splendid and happy land. GOLDS., Des. Vil., 265-6.

to watch: Arthur Pendennis chose to watch Miss Bell dance her first quadrille with Mr. Pynsent for a partner. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVI, 272.

Under the glittering hollies Iseult stands | Watching her children play. MATTHEW ARNOLD, Trist. & Is., III, 23,

His round black eyes watched his mistress undress. GALSW., White Monkey, I, Ch. III, 30.

She lay in her hiding-place to watch them pass. BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night, Ch. III, 32.

b) to have in a meaning approaching to that of *to experience*. See O. E. D., s. v. *have*, 18.

We often had the traveller or stranger visit us to taste our gooseberry wine. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. I, (236).

Have any of you fellows ever had that happen to you? MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XIV, 265.

I had two dogs die of snakebite. GALSW., Escape, II IV, (52).

Been in Egypt, cove? I had a boy die there. WARWICK DEEPING, S u v l a John, II, 3, 19.

c) verbs that express a judging, a knowing, a remembering, an understanding, a declaring, or a guaranteeing; such as:

to acknowledge: We acknowledge thee to be the Lord. Com. Prayer, Te Deum Laudamus.

to admit: This is a task he admits to be difficult. Times.

to affirm: I am bound to believe that Jesus implicitly affirmed himself to possess a "knowledge of the unseen world." Huxl., Lect. and Es., 86a.

to allege: Give me at least an inkling of the infamy you allege me to have committed. Times.

allow: He will allow them to understand the mysteries of their craft. LAMB, Es. of El., A Bachelor's Complaint, (260).

to apprehend: He asked the surgeon if he apprehended him to be in any danger. FIELD., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. XIII, 32.

to assume: We may assume him to have flourished about the 80th. Olympiad. LEWES, Hist. Philos., I, Ch. III, 32.

He was by no means such a fool as Jim has hastily assumed him to be. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. VIII, 56.

to attest: He attested this to be the same which had been taken from him. FIELD., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. XV, 39.

to avow: (He) frankly avowed himself to be Wilfred of Ivanhoe. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XXVIII, 281.

to believe: There was ... a preference which I never believed him to deserve. JANE AUSTEN, Emma, Ch. XLIX, 401.

The incidents of life, and love-making especially, I believe to resemble each other so much that [etc.]. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVIII, 186.

to conclude: He ... concluded her to be a witch. FIELD., Jos. Andr., IV, Ch. XIV, 247.

to confess: A great scholar all confess you to be already. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. I, 11.

to condemn: They all condemned him to be guilty of death. Bible, Mark, XIV, 64.

to conjecture: My friend conjectures this to have been the founder of that sect of laughing philosophers since called Merry Andrews. FIELD., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. II, 3.

to construe: He was exceedingly incensed against Wilson for the affront which he construed him to have put upon his soldiers. SCOTT, Heart of Mid-Loth., Ch. III, 42.

to consider: I consider him to have acted disgracefully. O. E. D., s. v., consider, 10, b.

He considers the right moment to have arrived. Westm. Gaz., No. 6389, 1 b.

to declare: She was without that enthusiasm for the great and good, which I should have declared to be the highest element of character. G. ELIOT, Lifted Veil, Ch. I, (403.)

to deny: She constantly denied his conspiracy to be at all known to her. HUME, Hist. of England, 42 (MÄRTZ., Eng. Gram.², III, 28).

to determine: The picture had been found in a lumber-room, and elevated to its present situation by the squire, who at once determined it to be the armour of the family hero. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXIII, 221.

to expect: He could scarcely, in such circumstances, expect them to defend the cause. MAC., Hist., VII, Ch. XVIII, 1.

I expected the travellers to be here by this time. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, 249.

to fancy: It was only in Anne that she could fancy the mother to revive again. JANE AUSTEN, Pers., Ch. I, 4.

We must fancy our American traveller to be a handsome young fellow. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 7.

to give out: He had given himself out to be such. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXV, 262.

to grant: I understand your present feelings against the existing state of things, which I grant to be a little hard in your case. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXXIX, 337.

to guarantee: We will guarantee these rules to be perfectly accurate. Punch.

Can you guarantee these to wear well? Daily Mail.

to guess: One might guess Mr. George to have been a trooper once upon a time. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXI, 181.

She rightly guessed this to signify that he appreciated her services. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XVII.

to hold: Every man instinctively holds every woman to be a true woman, until she reveals herself as the contrary. *ib.*, Ch. XXI.

He held water to be the beginning of things. LEWES, Hist. Philos., Ch. I, 29.

to idealize: The Colonist finds that the Mother Country is not all he idealized her to be. Lit. World.

to imagine: I had not imagined such inquiries to be necessary on your side. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. LII, 314.

What hast thou imagined Glaucus to resemble? LYTTON, Pom p., III, Ch. II, 65 b.

interpret: I interpret the English language to include the Scottish. Eng. Rev., Nov. 1912, 613.

to judge: I judged him to be about sixty years of age. G. GISSING, Christopherson.

I judge her to be of a submissive temper. G. ELIOT, Broth. Jac.

to know: i. I beg, before you leave France, I may have the pleasure of knowing you retract your opinion. STERNE, Sent. Journey, Character, Versailles.

The horse upon which Edward rode, he said he knew to belong to Vich Ian Vohr. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. XXXI, 93 a.

He knew her to come of respectable people. BUTLER, The Way of all Flesh, Ch. LXX, 324.

My friend knows him to have backed the beaten horse. Punch.

ii. I know him to be honest. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 194.

There is no patriot in France who, knowing me to have been a prisoner in the Bastille, would touch me, except, to overwhelm me with embraces or carry me in triumph DICK. (WENDT, Synt., I, 45).

I know it to be all true. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 30.

to maintain: Of all the delicacies in the whole *mundus edibilis* I will maintain it to be the most delicious. LAMB, Es. of El., Roast Pig., (257).

Thales, in searching for the origin of things, was led ... to maintain Water to be that origin. LEWES, Hist. Philos., II, Ch. I, 36.

to make out: He pointed to the washing-stand, which I had made out to be like Mrs. Gummidge. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 23 b.

These dire results, as Lord Rosebery would make them out to be, have practically come to pass already. Times.

to presume: The man presumed the stone to be ancient. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XI, 99.

- I should not object to the drawbacks . . . presuming them to be of some se.
TROL., Dr. Thorne, Ch. IV, 67.
- proclaim*: Winifred's story proclaimed her aunt to be a worthy member
of a flunkey society. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. III, 58.
- to profess*: He . . . professed himself to be snugly lodged. BOLDREWOOD,
Col. Reformer, 220 (O. E. D., 2).
- to pronounce*: The gentlemen pronounced him to be a fine figure of a
man. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. III, 14.
- to remember*: Sir William remembered the coat to have been frequently
worn by his nephew. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XXXI, (413).
- to report*: The Scotch lowlands were not, in the eleventh century, the
poor and barbarous country which some have reported them to be. KINGSLEY
Herew., Ch. II, 20a.
- to represent*: If he is as deserving and sincere as you represent him to
be, he will never give you up so. SHER., Riv., I, 2, (217).
- to state*: We stated the law of the progress of science to be this. LEWES,
Hist. Philos., I, Ch. I, 29.
He had stated something to be impossible. TYNDALL (in SPENCER, Educ.,
Ch. II, 65b).
- to suppose*: Suppose some twelve months, after the above conversation
took place, to have passed in the life of our poor Amelia. THACK., Van
Fair, I, Ch. XXXV, 391.
- Supposing a certain woman to be one of the fools. MER., Ormout, Ch. III, 60.
- to suspect*: She suspected them to be playing high. JANE AUSTEN,
Pride and Prej., Ch. VIII, 40.
- to take*: I took him to be nearer sixty than fifty. DICK., Bleak House,
Ch. VI, 39.
- Molly took the rebuke to refer altogether to her bad grammar. MER., Rich.
Fev., Ch. XX, 130.
- to think*: Who would have thought the old man to have had so much
blood in him? SHAK., Macb., V, I, 45. (The use of the perfect tense in the
infinitive seems to be uncalled-for.)
- to trust*: The lady trusted love to be eternal. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch.
XXIV, 176.
- You may trust me to take care of papa. Miss BRADDON, *Lady Audley*, II,
Ch. X, 198.
- You may trust me to look after her. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch.
VIII, 132.
- Mr. Mackail's functions, as professor, will be critical, not constructive, and
we can trust him to perform them well. Acad., No. 1763, 155a.
- Note. In the following example *to trust* is an intransitive, governing the
preposition *to* (Ch. XIX, 43, a, 1): When the warder came back to take her
out, she did not trust herself to speak, or even to look at him. GALSW.,
FreeLands, Ch. XXXII, 300.
- to understand*: If William had read and weighed the words which were
submitted to him by his Secretary, he would probably have understood them
to mean that Glencoe was to be occupied by troops. Mac., Hist., VII, Ch.
Ch. XVIII, 18.
- We understand Portia to hesitate for a word which shall describe herself
appropriately. Note to SHAK., *Merch.*, III, 2, 159, fn Clar. Pr. Ed.
I understand you to have been in the habit of reading to your father. DICK.,
Hard Times, Ch. VII, 21a.
- The French ambassador did not understand Lord Palmerston to be merely
indulging in the irresponsible gossip of private life. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*,
Ch. X, 117.

to vouch: Your squire Jocelyn knows him well, and will vouch him o be brother Ambrose. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch., XXVII, 265.

to warrant: It's a capital prescription, sir. I takes it reg'lar, and I can warrant it to drive away any illness as is caused by too much jollity. DICK, *Pickw.*, Ch. XX, 179.

I will warrant him never to forget aught that he should recollect. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 18 a.

I can warrant it (sc. the wood of the yew-tree) to furnish plenty of exercise in patience. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6029, 4 b.

d) verbs that express a revealing or showing, such as:

to betoken: The man glanced at the parish clerk, whose air of consciousness and importance plainly betokened him to be the person referred to. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 6 b.

to betray: His features and bearing betrayed him, in a moment, to be a Frenchman. MRS. GASK, *Life of Charl. Brontë*, 214.

to disclose: It is difficult for a man to believe in the advantage of a truth which will disclose him to have been a liar. G. ELIOT, *Brother Jacob*, Ch. III, (543).

to discover: This look ... discovered him to feel some complacency in his own perspicacity. JOHNS., *Ras.*, Ch. II, 12.

to indicate: This indicated him to be the host of the tavern. LYTTON, *Pomp.*, II, Ch. I, 39 a.

to prove: This speech proves him to have possessed not merely strong sense and a manly spirit, but talents both for disquisition and declamation. MAC., *Clive*, (537 b).

to show: i. I will show you the stain vanish in a moment. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, *Introd.*, 10. (The absence of *to* before the infinitive is exceptional.)

He used his power in such a manner as clearly showed him to have sought it, not for the sake of power or patronage, but from a wish to establish a great and durable reputation by means of eminent services rendered to the state. MAC., *Wil. Pitt*, (287 b).

ii. These works showed him to be a man of taste, sense and learning. id., *Addison*, (754 a).

These notes show him to have been, in his own domain, an accomplished scholar. *ib.*, (735 a).

The census of Greece taken last year (1896) shows the number of inhabitants to be 2.430.807. *Times*.

e) verbs that express a causing, such as:

to cause: He caused the troops to press onwards. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 397, N.

This almost caused Jemima to faint with terror. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 8.

He caused a little quarto book to be made. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. III, 36.

The lion's roar causes the other animals to be silent, and his prey to tremble. *Cassell's Concise Cycl.*, s.v. *lion*.

to do: We ... do thee ... to know that [etc.]. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXI, 323. (archaic; see below, 35, *Obs.* III.)

to necessitate: If any one, by doing wrong, necessitated another to do wrong to circumvent him. MARRYAT, *Peter Simple*, 305 (O. E. D., I, a).

to make: It is not easy to make a simile go on all fours. MAC., *Pilg. Prog.*, (136 a).

It might be pleasant to them to remember upon Christmas Day who made lame beggars walk and blind men see. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 67.

Many of these histories were sufficient to make the *hair* of a respectable young lady like Augusta stand positively on end. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. V, 48. Why did not you make your mother put you into an architect's or a builder's office. MRS. ALEX., Life Int., I, Ch. II, 44.

to occasion: She asked Matilda what occasioned Manfred to take Theodore for a spectre. HOR. WALPOLE, Castle of Otranto, Ch. IV, 143.

(His) renown in all games of chivalry ... had occasioned him to be eagerly received into the company of the challengers. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. VII, 66.

The morning's post brought a heavy correspondence, which would occasion her to pass a busy day. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. V, 37.

to set: (She) set her sad will no less to chime with his. TEN., En. Ard., 247. He accused him of being a materialist, and set his whole spiritual pack of sages to worry and bark at him. LYTTON, Caxt., XIII, Ch. V, 346.

(This) set Britain and her colonies to quarrel. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXXIV, 890.

f) verbs that express a desiring or requiring, such as:

to appoint: I appointed them to be here, at half-past eleven. DICK., Pickw., Ch. LIII, 490.

A gracious answer was returned by the Soldan (= sultan), who appointed the meeting to take place near the Diamond of the Desert. Story of the Talisman, 48.

to choose: I should rather choose a wife of mine to have the usual number of limbs. SHER., Riv., III, 1, (241).

I thought you would not choose Sir Peter to come up without announcing him. id., School, IV, 3, (411).

to desire: She desired the child to conduct her. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XXXI. (466).

One day last week she desired me to write some verses on her ponies. SHER., School, II, 2, (378).

to intend: I do not intend him to know anything about it for a year or two. MRS. ALEX., Life Int., I, Ch. XVI, 269.

to mean: Mr. Freely meant her to have a house so pretty and comfortable that she need not envy even a wool-factor's wife. G. ELIOT, Broth. Jac., Ch. III, (533).

I mean him to live. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. XII, 346.

to need: You oughtn't to need me tell you that necktie and that complexion simply scream against each other. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XVI.

Under the very nose of John was the best place for that secret bottle of pills, had she needed it not to be seen. TEMPLE THURSTON, City, III, Ch. VII, 278.

to require: We do require you to send a priest. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XXV.

This letter requires twenty guineas to be left at the bar of the Talbot inn. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. Man, IV, (149).

to want: His aunt used to badger him, and want him to dance entirely to her piping (?), Austr. Millionaire, 9.

to will: They will'd me to say so. SHAK., Henry VIII, III, 1, 18.

They will'd me to wait thy arrival. HOR. WALPOLE, Castle of Otranto, Ch. III, 99.

Her Highness will'd me to send you word, that she wished you as great good-hap and safety to your ship, as if she were there in person. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol, Ch. XI, 97b.

While he stood there, she held her breath, "willing" him to go away again. MRS. WARD, The Mating of Lydia, ProI., Ch. I, 22.

to wish: You would not wish me to quit the army? SHER., Riv., II, 1, (233). Mr. Winkle was holding his gun as if he wished his coat-pocket to save him the trouble of pulling the trigger. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 163.

Miss Barbary wished Esther only to know what would be serviceable to her. *id.*, Bleak House, Ch. III, 13.

g) verbs that express a liking or disliking, such as:

to dislike: Yet he was jealous, though he did not show it, | For jealousy dislikes the world to know it. BYRON, Don Juan, I, LXV.

to hate: I hate him to be flogged. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. VII, 32*a*.

She hated him to see the child. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. XXVI, 182.

to like: I like a knave to meet with his deserts. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, 249. I like boys to be quiet. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 124.

I do not like him to come here so often. *ib.*, § 2328.

I like Rienzi to harangue the mob about old Rome. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. I, 82.

I don't like women to smoke. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXVI, 332.

to loathe: He (*sc.* Milton) did not loathe the Sire to laud the Son. BYRON, Don Juan, Dedic., X.

to love: I love it (*sc.* the sunshine) on the breezy sea | To glance on sail and oar. Mrs. MARY HOWITT, The Sunshine (Rainbow, I, 8).

to prefer: Of course I would have preferred you to enjoy yourself. JAMES PAIN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, G. 124.

h) verbs that express an allowing, a commanding, or a requesting, such as:

to allow: I should not allow myself to be swerved from the path of duty, even by my papa and mamma, were they still living. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXVI, 264*a*.

to ask: My lord, we but ask that lawful heritage to be restored to us. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. VIII.

to beg: I beg it to be noticed that I confine this observation neither to young people nor to little people. DICK., Chimes, I, I.

to bid: He bid his horses to be prepared. LAMB., Tales, Lear, 155.

to command: He commanded the bridge to be lowered. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 397.

to dictate: What conscience dictates to be done. POPE, Universal Prayer.

to direct: Finally the master directed an issue to be tried. Law Times (O. E. D.).

to forbid: The governor of the Castle forbad the Church Service to be performed. KNIGHT, Sch. Hist. Eng., Ch. IV, 115 (O. E. D., 1*d*).

to let: He had let himself be fooled. G. ELIOT, Broth. Jac., Ch. III, (545). Do you think I am going to let you be marched about by that learned doctor? RID. HAG, Mees. Will., Ch. XVII, 170.

to order: Hastings ordered the fallen minister to be set at liberty. MAC., War. Hast., (605*b*).

to permit: The nabob had slept off his debauch, and permitted the door to be opened. *id.*, Clive, (514*a*).

to prescribe: Doctors frequently prescribe it to be used in this way. Advertisement.

to suffer: I won't suffer this barrow to be moved another step. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 164.

i) the following which do not answer to a general description: with all of them the construction under discussion appears to be extremely uncommon.

to fear: We fear not you and yours to bear us war. MORRIS, *Earthy Par.*, Wand., 4a.

to hinder: What hinders me | To take such bloody vengeance on you both? TEN., *Princ.*, IV, 512.

That need not hinder you to tell me. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. IX, 46.

Note. The usual construction is that with *from* + gerund. See Ch. XIX, 32.

to hope: And from the paintings my eye strayed to the painter, as I assumed and hoped her to be. R. AUSTIN, *Freeman*, *The Cat's Eye*, Ch. IV, 48.

Note. Also the construction with the meaningless *to be* dispensed with, as in the following example. is, no doubt, very rare: It was the very extremity of his stupidity, indeed, that almost inclined me to hope him innocent. OSWALD CRAWFURD, *The Revelations of Inspector Morgan*, 162.

to prevent: She prevents even the chemists, who beset his chamber, to turn their mercury into his gold. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, I, 1, (243).

Note. For the ordinary construction see Ch. XIX, 32.

to read: He had read those glances to mean that it was Claudina who had broken them (sc. the art-treasures). TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. VI, 260.

to send: God save the King. | Send him victorious, | Happy and glorious, | Long to reign over us. CAREY, *National Anthem*.

Note. The use of *to send* in this function is now obsolete, and seems to survive only in the above example. See the O.E.D., s.v. *send*, 7, b. According to another, perhaps more reasonable, interpretation, the infinitive-clause indicates a relation of purpose or result.

to wait: It breathes the spirit of the morning; its moisture, its repose, its obscurity, waiting the miracle of light to kindle it into smiles. HAZLITT, *On a Landscape of Nicolas Poussin* (PEACOCK, *Sel. Eng. Es.*, 255).

Note. The ordinary construction is that with *for* + gerund (40, a).

to withhold: What cause withholds you then, to mourn for him? SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 108.

Note. The ordinary construction is that with *from* + gerund (Ch. XIX, 32).

OBSERVATIONS ON THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE --- INFINITIVE.

THE VERBS OF THE FIRST GROUP.

32. Obs. I. The accusative + infinitive after these verbs is, in many cases, to be considered as a variety of the construction found after verbs of perceiving or discovering consisting of a (pro)noun furnished with a predicative adnominal adjunct. See Ch. VI, 1, b; 13—14. It is, however, of a more extensive area, in so far as it is also met with after verbs which express an observing or watching, which, from their meaning, are never followed by an adjective or noun, i.e. a word denoting a state.

II. It is of some interest to point to a feature which distinguishes the accusative + infinitive after the verbs of the first group from that with which those of the other groups may or must be construed; i.e. it is only with the former that eliminating the infinitive leaves an intelligible rest, as the accusative by itself may also be considered as the object of the preceding verb. Compare, for example, *I saw*

him fall into the water with *I wish you to copy this letter*. See also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 174,3.

III. As has already been hinted at in *Obs.* I, verbs that indicate a watching naturally admit of the construction only with an infinitive denoting an action, or the getting into a state. It is equally natural that the time-sphere of these verbs always coincides with that of the infinitive.

These observations apply, of course, with equal strictness to *to hear* when denoting a sense-impression, as in *I heard the clock strike*; also to *to see*, in so far as it indicates a kind of watching. Thus we can say *I saw him fall into the water*, *I saw him turn pale*, because *to see* denotes an activity of the visual organs at the time of the action expressed by *to fall into the water* and *to turn pale* respectively. But **I saw him be pale*, instead of *I saw that he was pale*, is impossible. In the case of verbs which express a discovering, however, the infinitive(-clause) is often enough represented by *to be* followed by a nominal. See the examples in 31, *a*. Also *to see* is occasionally used to indicate a discovering, and may then be construed with an accusative followed by *to be* + nominal; thus in:

The next person I came across was a dapper little man in a beautiful wig, whom I saw to be a barber on his rounds. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, Ch. II, (196).

What is there to show to-day that Parliament is the normal executive organ for an advanced Republic. Do we see it to be so in the United States or in France? FRED. HARRISON, *On Society*, Lect. III, 64.

William Morris in his Sagas, like Homer in his Iliad, has so drawn human life that we see it to be greater than we knew. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 57, 533.

It is, indeed, in no small part their sufferings in the past which have made them the brutal, arrogant, domineering people that we see them to be to-day. *ib.*, No. 89, 384.

Nor is this construction, apparently, very unusual with *to see* when it denotes an activity of the reasoning faculties, as in:

I see it to be so. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, (144).

She was truly a high-minded person, of that order who always do what they see to be right. *MER., Rich. Rev.*, Ch. XLII, 422.

Mr. Price informs me that, though the peril of a strike still threatens, he believes that the men see their position to be so untenable as to fail in gaining public sympathy. *Standard*.

The verb *to be* having no semantic significance, it is but natural that it is occasionally dispensed with: the nominal then assumes the nature of an ordinary predicative adnominal adjunct (Ch. VI, 13); thus in:

Slipping furtively into a first-class carriage, he turned to his newspaper, and discovered himself the hero of a European sensation. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5382, 2c.

IV. When the person or thing indicated by the accusative is to be represented as undergoing the action expressed by the following verbal, the past participle takes the place of the infinitive, i. e. the auxiliary of the passive voice is dropped. It is worth observing that in this case the Dutch retains the infinitive; e. g.:

I saw him thrown out of his trap. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 331.

I perceived him led through the outward hall as a prisoner. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XVII, 112.

What was his discomfiture when he heard the chain and bolts withdrawn! DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVI, 146.

"I want to know his name," I heard said once more. *id.*, Cop., Ch. XXXI, 225 *b*.

I had heard a great deal said of Chesney Wold. *id.*, Bleak House, Ch. VII, 54.

I felt an arm slipped within mine. G. ELIOT, Lifted Veil, Ch. I, (412).

They built their castles of dissolving sand | To watch them overflow'd. TEN., En. Ard., 20.

He watched the map of Europe transformed not once but many times. Manch. Guard., 4, 2, 1926, 81 *b*.

Once or twice I noticed the hat eyed with a cruel smile. Mrs. CRAIK, A Hero, 70.

I have often heard Dean Stanley harshly spoken of, I have often heard his honesty roughly challenged. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 225 *b*.

He had never seen a human being killed. READE, Cloister, Ch. X, 57.

It is a military term they have often heard used. Times.

We see various kinds of Bills carried by substantial majorities. Westm. Gaz., No. 6223, 1 *c*.

To see may also be construed with an accusative + past participle when it is used as a synonym of: *a*) *to have*. Thus SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2359) has *I will see it done* = *I will have it done*.

They wished to see him expelled from Parliament. MAC., Clive, (537 *a*).

β) *to cause, to attend to*; *e. g.*: See these letters delivered. SHAK., Merch., II, 2, 123.

Isn't there anybody here that will see a simple message carried for a poor wretch like me? DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XXXIX, 90 *b*.

Mr. Yorke had seen it kept in good repair. CH. BRONTE, Shirley, I, Ch. XI, 244.

I will see this fellow placed in some sort of shelter, BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night, Ch. VI, 56.

It is worth observing that, while an accusative with an active infinitive is quite usual after *to see* in the first of the above meanings, it is, apparently, impossible after *to see* in the second; *i. e.* the construction with a subordinate statement is regularly used instead. See also Ch. III, 54, *b*.

IV. Verbs expressing a discovering may, of course, be associated with a state resulting from a completed action; they may, accordingly be followed by a verb in one of the perfect tenses. In this case the construction used is rarely the accusative + infinitive, a subordinate statement introduced by *that* being almost regularly used instead. In fact, such a sentence as **I saw (discovered, perceived, found, etc.) him to have shut the door* would hardly pass for good English. See, however, the following examples:

It was when they turned into the welcome shade of the cool old hall, that Mr. Lorry observed a great change to have come over the doctor. DICK., (WENDT, Synt., I, 45).

Dickens often gets verbose, rings the changes on a point which he sees to have caught his readers. FR. HARRISON (*ib.*).

Compare: He had seen that the Indian mail had come in. EMMA MARSHALL, *Mrs. Mainwaring's Journ.*, Bk. I, 20.

With these verbs the construction with a subordinate statement is common enough in the case of there being no disparity of time-sphere between the two actions or states concerned.

You will see that the prisoner is innocent. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, 68 a. I saw also that he looked this way, and that way. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, (143). The squire, perceiving that he was on every side undone, now finding that no hopes were left from flattery or dissimulation, concluded that his wisest way would be to turn and face his pursuers. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (469). He saw that the coast rose in heights and cliffs. WASH. *IRV.*, *Dolf Heyl.* (128). He felt that for the first time she took notice of him. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. IV, 30 a.

In the first revelation she almost felt that she could do it. BUCHANAN, *That Wint. Night*, Ch. XIII, 105.

Verbs which express a watching, however, are, apparently, rarely, if ever construed with a subordinate statement. Thus for *I have seen artists paint their own portraits*, cited above, we could hardly say **I have seen that artists painted their own portraits*.

Also *to hear*, when denoting a sense-impression, can hardly be construed with a subordinate statement. When this verb is followed by such a statement, it is used in another meaning, i. e. as a synonym of *to be told*. See also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 174, 3.

We hear that you have been successful. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 126. I heard that the bells rang. *ib.*, § 174, 3.

I hear you are a good speaker. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. V, 34 a.

VI. It is worth noting that in Dutch the accusative + infinitive is quite common after most verbs that express a watching or a hearing, but rare after those which express a discovering. Thus the Dutch has *Ik zag hem in het water vallen, ik hoorde hem een lied zingen*, but **Ik ontdekte hem een Spanjaard te zijn* is impossible.

THE VERB *TO HAVE*.

33. Obs. I. As regards the accusative + infinitive, *to have* is, to a large extent, characterized by the same grammatical features as *to see*, of which, as we have seen in 33, Obs. IV, it is sometimes a strict synonym.

I. The accusative is rarely followed by *to be* + nominal. Such a sentence as **I had them be ready by nine o'clock* would accordingly be pronounced bad English by most grammarians. Instances are, however, occasionally met with, especially in connexions with *will*, expressed or implied; thus:

I would not have it be so. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, XI, Ch. VII, 276.

Father, I do regard what you say; but you would not have me be false. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. XXXIX, 522.

I would have you be very civil to Mrs. Val. TROL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. XXXIV, 427.

I will have thee be a gentleman. THACK., *Den. Du v.*, Ch. VIII, (288).

It really grieves me to have you be so naughty. Mrs. BEECH. STOWE, *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, Ch. XXV, :39 (O. E. D., s. v. *grieve*).

I can't bear to have people be sorry. BAR. v. HUTTEN, P a m, Ch. X, 56.

II. As after the verbs of perceiving, so after *to have*, the past participle without the auxiliary *to be* is substituted for the infinitive, when the person or thing indicated by the accusative is to be represented as the object of what is expressed by the following verbal; e. g.:

The poor have the gospel preached to them. Bible, Matth. XI, 5.
Is it not provoking to have the most ill-natured things said of one? SHER., School.

King Charles the First had his head cut off. DICK., C o p., Ch. XIV, 101 a.
She shall have her weekly allowance paid and no more. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XLI, 307.

He had also had some very plain language addressed to him by a parent. BARRY PAIN, The Culminating Point.

He does not require to have the analogies pointed out to him. SWEET, A. S. Prim., Pref., 8.

The enemy ... has had wrenched from him some of the strongest defences on this front. Westm. Gaz., No. 7577, 2 b.

To have + accusative + past participle often does the same duty as a passive construction, replacing the latter especially in those cases in which it is not available, or would be at variance with established idiom. Thus a passive construction could hardly take the place of that used in the above examples; and *I had this watch given to me* is certainly more in harmony with idiom than *I was given this watch*. For further discussion see also Ch. XLVII, 46.

III. *To have* is apt to assume some special meaning in connexion with *will*. Thus we find it in a sense approaching to that of: 1) *to make, to cause*, in: I'll have these players | Play something like the murder of my father | Before mine uncle. SHAK., Haml., 1, 2, 624.

I'll have them fly to India for gold, | Ransack the ocean for orient pearl. MARL., Doct. Faust., 1, 80.

2) *to allow, to suffer*, in: I would have none touch my dead save myself and her favourite sister. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 126.

I won't have you say such things. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., 1, Ch. VI, 103.

Note. Occasionally we find *to have* convey a similar secondary meaning in other constructions, thus in: Don't sulk! I won't have it. BARRY PAIN, The Culminating Point.

Don't you go talking to Mr. Hardy in the way you do, Marcella! I don't like it, and I won't have it. Mrs. WARD, Marc., 1, 37.

;) *to sanction* (Dutch: *goed vinden*) in: They (sc. the augurers) would not have you to stir forth to-day. SHAK., Jul. Cæs., II, 2, 38.

I would not have him waste his heart on me. LYTTON, My Novel, II, XI, Ch. VII, 277.

Would you have your father s op here useless and despised? BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night, Ch. II, 22.

Note. Sometimes *would have* is almost equivalent to *should like*; thus in: Seriously, I would have you be on your guard. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XXVI, 145.

An idiot is a human being, sir, and has an immortal soul, I'd have you to know. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., 1, Ch. VI, 103.

IV. As has already been observed in 30, a, the accusative + infinitive cannot be replaced by a construction with a subordinate statement

after *to have*. It is of some interest to observe that the Dutch *hebben* is, in this respect, the very opposite of *to have*: it is more frequently construed with a subordinate statement, than with an accusative + infinitive. Thus *Wij hebben het wel gehad dat er meer dan tien personen op bezoek waren* (= *We have occasionally had as many as ten persons visit us*) is a more frequent construction than *Zij hadden mooie schilderijen aan de wand hangen* (= *They had fine pictures hanging against the wall*).

THE VERBS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH GROUPS.

34. Obs. I. After these verbs the accusative + infinitive is common only in describing a person or thing to be in a state, i. e. with the infinitive represented by the copula *to be*. The construction is uncommon with an infinitive expressing an action, especially an incompleting action. This restriction does not apply to *to expect*. For illustration of the infinitive expressing an action see the examples under *to affirm, to allege, to allow, to assume, to consider, to construe, to expect, to guess, to interpret, to know, to remember, to suppose, to take, to think, to trust, to understand, to warrant; to prove, to show*. Still rarer are instances in which the infinitive is in the passive voice, as in:

Wheaten flour was an antiquated term, and he knew it to be only used in the Book of Exodus. *Times*.

II. The Dutch equivalents of the verbs belonging to group *c*) and *d*) are seldom found with an accusative + infinitive. *Elk meent zijn uil een valk te zijn, Ik heet het u liegen, Ik vind u dien hoed mooi staan*, are familiar instances. Conversely some of them are often followed by an infinitive-clause representing the non-prepositional object, which is only exceptionally met with after the English verbs (8, 9).

III. When the subject of the infinitive-clause is identical with that of the head-clause, it is, naturally, a reflexive pronoun. After many verbs the reflexive pronoun is dispensed with, which reduces the sentence to one of the type described in 9, Obs. II. In the case of some verbs the reflexive pronoun appears to be in regular use; with a few usage is unsettled.

So far as the available evidence goes, the reflexive pronoun is regularly used after:

to avow, as in: He frankly avowed himself to be Wilfred of Ivanhoe. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XXVIII, 281.

to boast, as in: He boasted himself to be possessed of a bull of matchless merit. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. X, 44a.

The descendants of the victors of Senlac boasted themselves to be Englishmen. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § 6, 88 (O. E. D., s. v. *boast*, 4).

to give out, as in: He had given himself out to be such. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXV, 262.

to imagine, as in: I imagine myself to have made a discovery. BUTLER, *Erewhon*, Ch. I, 1.

to own, as in: He owned himself to be the Earl of Argyle. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 129.

to show, as in: She showed herself to possess an ordinary woman's face. HARDY, Under the Greenwood Tree, II, Ch. VI, 132.

Usage is unsettled after:

to confess, as in: i. He confessed himself to be the father of the child. FIELD., Tom Jones, IV, Ch. XI, 57 a.

He confessed himself to have been totally mistaken in his opinion of their circumstances. JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. XXX, 239.

ii. They confess to have seen in recent events a great light. The New Age, No. 1174, 497 a. (Compare Ch. XIX, 42).

to profess, as in: i. A free Portugese gamekeeper who professes himself to be unworthy to communicate directly with any person confesses himself to be a snob. THACK., Snobs, Ch. IV, 27.

ii. Miss Briggs professed to be much touched by the honest affection which pervaded the composition. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XXV, 271.

She professed to be dreadfully frightened. *ib.*, Ch. XX, 214.

Dost Mahomed professed to be a sincere friend of the English Government and people. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. IV, 45.

Note. For *to profess* in the sense of *to lay claim to* (some quality, feeling, etc.) see Ch. XIX, 20.

To expect never takes the reflexive pronoun, e.g.: They expected to be victorious. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 68 a.

As regards the practice with *to set up*, nothing definite can be said, only one example having come to hand. I don't set up to be a lady-killer. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 131. (Compare, however: The Wincauntons set themselves up as judges of their neighbours. Murray's Mag., X, 728 (O. E. D., s.v. *set*, 154, cc b).)

In the case of *to prove* the dropping of the reflexive pronoun causes an appreciable difference in meaning, as appears from a comparison of *He proved to be innocent* (= *It appeared that he was innocent*, Dutch: Hij bleek onschuldig te zijn) with *He proved himself to be innocent* (= *He produced evidence to the effect that he was innocent*, Dutch: Hij bewees onschuldig te zijn); e.g.:

You know who Beverley proves to be? SHER., Riv., V, 1, (273).

The missing witness ... proves to be ... the same person who had called on Mr. Roger Morton. LYTTON, Night & Morn., 437.

He began to wonder whether it would prove to be an unwelcome love-letter. EDNA LYALL, Knight Err., Ch. XXXI, 313.

IV. *To be*, being devoid of all semantic significance, is often dispensed with; the absence causing the construction to assume the character of the predicative adnominal adjunct described in Ch. VI, 16. In that place it has been shown that, in many cases, the constructions with and without *to be* vary with such as contain the conjunction *as* or the preposition *for* as connecting links. In this place it is sufficient to observe: 1) that the reflexive pronoun is never dropped when *to be* is absent; thus in the case of:

to acknowledge, as in: He had been brought to acknowledge himself incapable of giving the young people even a decent support. JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. XXX, 239.

to approve, as in: He was only twenty-five years old when he approved himself ripe for military command. MAC., Clive, (540 b).

to confess, as in: When Valentine confesses himself in his senses, he must make over his inheritance to his younger brother. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, V, 1, (291).

He had been induced falsely to confess himself guilty. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. VI, 246.

He confessed himself obliged to leave the regiment. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 316.

He had confessed himself a fool in comparison with Felix Graham. TROL., *Orl. Farm.*, III, Ch. XXVI, 346.

He was obliged to confess himself worn out. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XXIII, 200b.

to imagine, as in: He imagined himself sought after by the English. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (144).

to know, as in: Mary knew herself to blame. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 243.

Clara knew herself dismissed. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. X.

to own, as in: He owned himself outdone. *Robin Hood* (GÜNTH., *Handbk.*)

to profess, as in: She professed herself contented with the reference. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, II, Ch. I, 16.

M. Witte professes himself immensely surprised at the result. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 189, 226b.

to prove, as in: The time had come when he was to prove himself a man of genius. MAC., *Addison*, (754a).

to show, as in: Mme Albani who had recently shown herself in only indifferent voice, suddenly seemed to have become her own self again. *Daily Mail*.

2) that the dropping of *to be* may concern the Expanded Form of the Infinitive, as in: I can suppose some one asking, "Do you mean to say that Shakespeare meant all this?" *Bookman*, No. 265, 54a.

3) that both *to be* and the reflexive pronoun, are sometimes dispensed with; thus especially after:

to declare, as in: At last the victory declared for the two adventurers. *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*, Ch. XIII, (303).

All of us declared against the proposal. *SMOL.*, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XI, 66.

The French bishops declared in favour of making terms with the State. *Rev. of Rev.*, No 201, 237a,

to pronounce, as in: Baron v. Hammerstein, the Russian Minister of Agriculture, pronounced against it on behalf of the Government. *Times*.

to prove, as in: A rumour does not always prove a fact. *MAC.*, *South. Col.*, (99b).

This gun proved of the greatest service to us. *RID. HAG.*, *King Sol. Mines*, 144.

She proved a real treasure to her second husband. *MRS. ALEX.*, *For his Sake*, I, Ch. III, 43.

V. *To know* is regularly construed with an accusative + infinitive when it is used in a meaning approaching to that of *to observe*. In this meaning it is chiefly found in the perfect or pluperfect tense; thus in all the examples given in Ch. V, 36. Compare also Ch. LV, and O. E. D., s. v. *know*, 11, d. When modified by *never* the preterite appears, however, to be the ordinary tense. Partaking of the nature of the verbs mentioned under 31, a), the verb often dispenses with *to* before the following infinitive; e. g.:

i. I have known him walk with Tiny Tim on his shoulder very fast indeed. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 87.

ii. I never knew the Duke to fail THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXII, 343.

Your never knew me to deny it. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Land.*, II, Ch. XIII, 228.

iii. * I have known an American to be forced to pay fifteen shillings for a journey barely exceeding two miles. GOOD WORDS.

** I never knew a doctor called into any case yet, but what it transpired that another day's delay would have rendered cure hopeless. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts, On being Idle*, 70.

VI. The accusative + infinitive is, apparently, never used after certain common verbs of declaring, such as *to answer*, *to observe*, *to reply*, *to say*, after the majority of the verbs mentioned in 31, c) and d), it is, indeed uncommon, except in purely literary and somewhat artificial language. Conversely the alternative construction, that with a subordinate statement, is unusual after *to consider* and *to pronounce*, as in:

Sir Austin considered that the schools were corrupt. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 8.

I consider that I have fully performed my part of the compact. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. XII, 125. (Owing to the identity of the subjects in the two members of this sentence the construction with an accusative + infinitive would be impossible.)

The physicians pronounced that his body presented an aspect of perfect health. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 904 a.

To idealize and *to take* do not, apparently, admit of this construction. The infinitive having no future tense, the full clause is obligatory when the time-sphere of the subordinate clause is posterior to that of the head-clause; thus in:

You know you will be punished, if you break the law. MOLLOY, *The Irish Difficulty*, Ch. IV, § 2, 44.

Lady Homartyn ... is incapable of believing that she won't always be able to have week-end parties at Claverings. WELLS, *Britling*, I, Ch. II, § 5, 46.

After *to expect*, which naturally implies posteriority of the action or state to the mental activity it expresses, the accusative + infinitive can, of course, be freely used; thus in:

With the growing rivalry of the Australian Continent we may fully expect the land of the Maple Leaf (sc. Canada) to be more in evidence than ever. *West. Gaz.*, No. 6029, 10 a.

In conclusion it may be observed that Early Modern English appears to have been freer in the use of the accusative + infinitive than Present-day English. Thus ONIONS (*Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68, a) observes that "ISAAC WALTON (1653, A. D.) could write: Bacon observes the pike to be the longest-lived of any freshwater fish."

THE VERBS OF THE FIFTH GROUP.

35. Obs. I. After the verbs *to cause* and *to occasion* the infinitive(-clause) may express either an action or a state; after *to make* a state is almost regularly expressed without the copula *to be*; e. g.:

i. Much learning doth make thee mad. Bible, *Acts*, XXVI, 24.

He made the water wine. *ib.*, JOHN, IV, 46.

It were to be wished that we made laws the protector, but not the tyrant of the people. *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*, Ch. XXVII, (427).

ii. He (*sc.* Mussolini) cannot make his followers be orderly. *MANCH. GUARD.*, VIII, 2, 423 *d.* (*To be orderly* is, however, practically equivalent to *to conduct oneself in an orderly way.*)

II. When the object of the effort is to be represented as undergoing an action, we find a passive infinitive(-clause) after *to cause* and *to occasion*, a past participle(-clause) after *to make*; e. g.:

i. On the following morning Mr. Loftus caused Paradyne to be arrested. *Mrs. Wood*, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 50.

The mild weather will occasion the tender plant to be placed in the open air.

ii. He made his power felt. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 397.

There were not wanting others (*sc.* considerations) which would make such suggestions favourably listened to. *SCOTT*, *Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. IV, 48. The judge made it understood that, if he were left to himself, he would dress for dinner. *TROL.*, *Orl. Farm*, II, Ch. XXIV, 314.

In the following example, in which *to let* is archaically used in a meaning similar to that of *to cause*, the active infinitive does duty for the passive. The construction, which may have been quite common in earlier English is, but for the word-order, parallel to that which would be used in Dutch:

The King | Had let proclaim a tournament. *TEN.*, *PeI. & Et.*, 10. (= The king had caused a tournament to be proclaimed.)

III. It is almost exclusively in older English that we find instances of an accusative + infinitive after *to do*; thus in:

They have done her understonde. *GOWER* (*ABBOT*, *Shak. Gram.*³, § 303).

I woot wel she wol do me slee som day | Som neighebor. *CHAUC.*, *Cant. Tales*, B, 3108.

A fatal plague which many did to die. *SPENSER* (*WEBST.*, *Dict.*, 5).

And, as she fled, her mantle she did fall. *SHAK.*, *Mids.*, V, 1, 141. (In this example *did* is by some commentators understood to be the ordinary *to do*, which for metrical reasons is, especially in the other writers, often placed before the infinitive (Ch. I, 70, a). The verb *to fall* is by them apprehended in a causative meaning (Ch. XLVI, 38). *To do* may have been meant for the same purpose in *till death us do part* in the Form of Solemnization of Matrimony in the Book of Common Prayer)

The old usage has kept its ground in the quaint and almost obsolete expression *We do you to wit.* *O. E. D.*, s. v. *do*, 22.

A recent instance occurs in: His assertion that man and ape were descended from the same stock did the interest of the multitude awaken. *Morn. Leader.*

Compare also: You do (= make) me proud. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 107.

IV. The construction with a subordinate statement is very rare after these verbs. The following is the only instance that has come to hand:

In my laboratory I find that water of Lethe which causes that I forget everything but the joy of making experiments. *ROBERT BOYLE* (*SEYMOUR BRYANT*, *The Public School System* Ch. IV, 41).

V. In conclusion it may be observed that the construction after *to necessitate*, *to occasion*, and *to set* admits of another interpretation

than that which views it as an accusative + infinitive: i. e. the infinitive-clause may also be apprehended as the representative of a prepositional object with *to*.

THE VERBS OF THE SIXTH GROUP.

36. Obs. I. After verbs of desiring the accusative with infinitive may express either a state or an action. In expressing a state, the copula *to be* is sometimes found wanting (Ch. VI, 21); thus in:

Her father, though he wished her married, was forced to confess Katherine would ill answer this character. LAMB, *Tales, Taming*, 198.

It was my wife whom you wanted dead just now. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 239.

He looked at her with eyes that once more made her wish herself well out of the room. DOR. GERARD. *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. VIII.

II. When the object of desiring is *to be* represented as undergoing an action we find: 1) mostly a passive-infinitive(-clause), as in:

Christ desired his mysteries to be spread abroad as openly as was possible. GREEN.

2) rather frequently a past-participle(-clause), especially after *to want* and *to wish*; thus in:

i. If politics did anything for those who most need things done. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXXIII, 302.

ii. He pretended to want a pen mended. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 48 a.

He wanted the opposition house of Bacon smashed. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXII, 345.

These farmers want repairs done. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. III, 26.

I want him brought to Merlebank. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. XXVII, 249.

iii. I think there is something I could wish said or wrote. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LI, 367 a.

Mr. Osborne wished a tree cut down. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. VIII, 76.

Monkley told the Baron that he did not wish anything said about Sylvester's father. COMPT. MACK., *Sylv. Scarlett*, Ch. II, 68.

At what hour would you wish the ceremony performed? OSC. WILDE, *Import. of being Earn.*, II, 88.

III. The alternative construction with a subordinate statement is only in literary use, and in the case of some verbs, such as *to choose*, *to intend*, *to mean*, *to need*, and *to want*, distinctly unusual. Compare also Ch. XLIX, 20—21. Here follow some examples with a subordinate statement after:

to choose: I did not choose that my wife should be passed over by them. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 117.

to desire: He desired that the boy might be left behind under his care. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. III, 7.

I desire that you do your duty. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. L, 9.

I desire, young woman, you will not pollute him further. THACK., *Lov. the Wid.*, Ch. VI, 113.

I desire that she come back. id., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVI, 170.

to intend: Fate did not intend that I should remain long an English soldier. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 65.

I intended that they (sc. the tradesmen) should all be paid ... I intended that you should pay them. TROL., *Orley Farm*, I, Ch. III, 41.

Do you intend that we shall never know? SHAW, *You never can tell*, I, 224.

to mean: He had meant that she should tell him all. TROL., *Orley Farm*, II, Ch. XXV, 327.

to require: His (sc. the poet's) character requires that he estimate the happiness and misery of every condition, observe the power of all passions in all their combinations. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. X, 61.

to want: She did not want that Harry should quarrel with his aunt for her sake. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVIII, 187.

I wanted that you should have the old place, to do just what you pleased with it. TROL., *Belt Est.*, Ch. XXX, 409.

He seems to want that his wife should suspect the new crime he has in hand. HUDSON, *Note to Macb.*, III, 3, 59.

to will: What wilt thou that I shall do unto thee? Bible, *Luke*, XVIII, 41.

Will you that I should sing of love? LYTTON, *Pompey*, III, Ch. II, 64 a.

to wish: She wishes that you would set this diamond neatly. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 23.

Haven't you ambition enough to wish that your husband should be something better than a Middlemarch doctor? G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLIII, 323

Observe, however, that this construction is the only one in use after *to wish* in sentences expressing an idle wish, as in:

I wish it were true. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 296.

I wish he would come. *id.*, *Spoken English*, 43.

One sometimes wishes that Americans would not be so thorough. *Manch. Guard.*

THE VERBS OF THE SEVENTH GROUP.

37. Obs. I. After the verbs of liking and disliking the accusative + infinitive is the ordinary construction, both when a state and an action is in question.

II. The use of the bare past participle instead of the passive infinitive, as in the following examples, is uncommon:

I should like that answered. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, II, (509).

You must tell us exactly what you would like done. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. of Sherl. Holm.*, II, D, 191.

Men like shopping made easy. *Evening News.*

III. The alternative construction with a subordinate statement is met with only in literary diction, and is distinctly unusual. Instances of this construction have been found in the case of:

to like: The captain himself would like that we should get the reward for his death sooner than a stranger. GAY, *Beg. Op.*

William did not like she should come away. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. II, 14.

So then, Socrates, you would not like that it should be allowed you to accomplish in the State whatever seems fit to you. LEWES, *Hist. of Phil.*, Appendix, B, 327.

He was proud of her and would have liked that she should be nice to him. HUGH WALPOLE, *The Green Mirror*, III, Ch. III, 392.

to love: I love that beauty should go beautifully. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 680.

I do not love your Grace should call me coward. *id.*, Queen Mary, II, 4, (603 *b*).

to prefer: It was evident from the tone of his voice that he would have preferred that all the Ormes should have remained away. TROL., Ori. Farm., II, Ch. XXV, 324.

He preferred that Master Godfrey should be vexed. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., I, Ch. III, 28.

Perhaps you would prefer that Joseph came with us. CON. DOYLE, Mem. of Sherl. Holm., II, D, 191.

THE VERBS OF THE EIGHTH GROUP.

38. Obs. I. As has been observed in 30, *f*), the (pro)noun + infinitive that stands with verbs which express an allowing, a commanding, or a requesting, is not, in the majority of cases to be regarded as a genuine accusative + infinitive. The term is only applicable when the (pro)noun in this connexion does not indicate the recipient of a permission, command, or request. This is regularly the case when the infinitive is passive, as in all the examples in 31, *h*); also when the (pro)noun denotes a thing (or animal), irrespective of the voice of the infinitive; thus in the following examples, in which the infinitive is in the active voice:

I hope, my love, you have too great a regard for me to permit disappointment thus to undermine a life which I prize as my own. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XXVIII, (429).

The instructor of a school may suffer some things to pass unnoticed which he does not allow, and may allow certain practices at least for a time, which he would by no means directly permit. WEBST., Dict., *s.v. permit*.

What a pack of fools, to let a few rats and mice frighten them out of good quarters! WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl., (113).

I had never allowed my diseased condition to betray itself G. ELIOT, The Lifted Veil, Ch. I, (409).

Bill asked her if she would like to let the signatures stand over till the morrow. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. X, 100.

She ordered it (*sc. the fly*) to come at half-past two. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XXVI, 236.

Mr. Blaber had ordered the horse to be ready at half-past two. WARWICK DEEPING, Suvia John, III, 3, 33.

Occasionally a person-indicating (pro)noun in connexion with an active infinitive cannot be regarded to indicate the recipient of a permission; thus, in such a sentence as *He suffered the prisoner to escape*. In this case the combination should, accordingly, be considered as a genuine accusative + infinitive. Here follow some examples.

Your betters have endured me say my mind. SHAK., Tam. of the Shrew, IV, 3, 75.

O, you and I have heard our fathers say, | There was a Brutus once that would have brook'd | The eternal (i. e. infernal) devil to keep his state in Rome | As easily as a king. *id.*, Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 159.

You suffer him to be equally imperious as a lover. SHER., Riv., I, 2, (218).

But my friends ... must, and will, endure me both to speak and write of them and their opinions. G. WAKEFIELD, Answer to Priestly, 14 (O. E. D., *s.v. endure*, 4).

Sam dropped behind to let his master get out of hearing. DICK., *PICKW.*, Ch. LII, 477.

Mr. Freely declared his resolution never to allow his wife to wait in the shop. G. ELIOT, *BROTH. JAC.*, (394).

God allows men like Morgan to succeed. EDNA LYALL, *HARDY NORS.*, Ch. IX, 28.

It is not often that the pro(noun) + infinitive after a verb of commanding admits of being understood as an accusative + infinitive. The following are the only instances that have come to hand:

Wilt thou that we command fire to come down from heaven? Bible, Luke, IX, 54.

Leaving the carriage at the posting-house and ordering fresh horses to be ready, my companion gave me his arm, and we went towards home. DICK., *BLEAK HOUSE*, Ch. LVI, 475.

Zehowah commanded the singing and the dancing to cease. MAR. CRAWF. (GÜNTH., *MAN.*, § 603).

What distinguishes the above examples from those with a spurious accusative + infinitive may be seen from the analysis to which two such sentences as *She ordered the fly to come at half past six* and *She ordered her servant to come at half past six* may be subjected. The former evidently stands for *She ordered (or gave orders) that the fly should come at half past six*, the latter for *She ordered her servant that she should come at half past six*. In the former the noun goes with the subordinate clause, in the latter it is kept in the head-clause. The former is, accordingly, on a par with such sentences as *I think (declare, know, etc.) him to be innocent*, *I want (like, etc.) boys to enjoy themselves*, all of them containing a genuine accusative + infinitive; the latter is not.

II. The above examples show that the use of the accusative + infinitive after these verbs is independent of the nature of the infinitive-clause, which may correspond to either a verbal or a nominal predicate.

III. Substitution of the bare past participle for the passive infinitive appears to be distinctly unusual. The following are the only instances that have come to hand:

He stood to it that Mr. Carlyle had ordered the work done in another way. Mrs. WOOD, *EAST LYNNE*, I, 257.

I ordered my bill made out. SAVAGE, *MY OFFICIAL WIFE*, 185.

He had ordered a big wreath laid on the grave. GALSW., *SILV. SPOON*, II, Ch. X, 198.

I will not even bear a lie told to another in my presence by this man. HICHENS, *GARD. OF AL.*, I, III, Ch. XI, 262.

According to KRÜGER (*Syntax*², II, 4, § 2561) the practice is common in American English.

IV. It is only in the case of verbs which indicate a commanding or requesting that the alternative construction with a subordinate statement is in common, although, in some cases, literary use. After the verbs which denote an allowing this construction appears to be unusual. For the rest the choice depends largely on the general construction of the sentence, the particular verb used, so that adequate treatment of the subject cannot be given in the limited space that can be allotted to it. Compare also Ch. XLIX, 20—21.

- i. I have ordered that a lunch of bread and cheese shall be served to all. CH. BRONTE, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 32.
I order that the obsolete guns be returned into store. PUNCH, 1889, 85 c.
- ii. I have ... to beg that you will have the goodness to order a proper monument erected to his memory. J. SMITHEMAN (O. E. D., s. v. *order*, II, 6).
The Russian delegates report that they have requested that the next meeting shall be held on Russian soil. WESTM. GAZ., No. 7637, 1 a.
- iii. Nor can I suffer that a man should trust me. COLERIDGE, *Pic.*, III, 3, (523).

PREPOSITIONAL ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

39. When a verb with a preposition bears the same relation to a (pro)noun + infinitive(-clause) as any of the verbs mentioned in 31, the construction used may be called a *prepositional accusative with infinitive*. Thus *We look to the Royal Commission to tell us what may be done* (Times) answers to *We expect the Royal Commission to tell us* [etc.]. Similarly *Shall I ring for the shutters to be closed?* (Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 80) corresponds to *Shall I cause the shutters to be closed?*

As in the case of the accusative with infinitive, the ideas expressed by the prepositional object and the infinitive(-clause) form a kind of unit, which sometimes becomes apparent from the fact that this construction may be replaced by one in which a genitive (or possessive pronoun) is followed by a gerund(-clause). Compare *We can arrange for you and Molly to meet* (Mrs. GASK., *Wives and Daughters*, Ch. X, 94) with *He had arranged for our assembling there* (JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, L, 197). Compare JESPERSEN, *Phil. of Gram.*, 118.

It follows that the collocation *preposition + infinitive-clause* may also be considered to represent a prepositional object.

Some combinations in which a prepositional object is followed by an infinitive(-clause), may be interpreted in another way. Thus the following sentences bear a close analogy to those with *to get*, *to press*, *to persuade* etc., commented on in 30:

I prevailed on your wife to join in the deceit. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (475).
I could not prevail with her to dance with him again. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XVIII, 105.

He urged upon me to be instant in my prayers. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. I, (193).
We cannot call on a child so young to bear witness in a court of justice. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXII, 222.

The following sentences may be compared to those with *to tell*, *to command* followed by an active infinitive (38, Obs. 1):

With the other hand he signed to Tom to make no noise. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. L, 390 a.

Louvois beckons to him to advance. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 20.

The infinitive(-clause) may be considered to stand adnominally with the preceding noun in:

I don't know of anybody to go to it. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 77.
(= ... anybody who might be inclined to go to it.)

40. a) The preposition found in the prepositional accusative with infinitive is mostly *for*; thus in the following examples with:

to arrange: I have arranged for her to go to a high-school. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXII, 197.

to ask: He only asked for some chance to happen by which he might show his fidelity to her. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. VIII, 64.

to beg: Your father has begged for her to come. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XI, 114.

to care: I don't care for him to see any of my usual work. JEROME, *Diary of a Pilgrimage* (STOF., *Stu d.*, A, 75).

to listen: He stood listening for the summons to be repeated. STEVENSON (GÜNTH., *Man.*, § 606).

to long: Pen longed for the three years to be over. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 174.

I can't think now of those mornings on the Heath without longing for it to come back again. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. III, 15a.

to look: Our fathers didn't look for a Dutchman to rule us. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. V, 367.

When I looked for the summer to begin, the rains were still incessant. HALL CAINE; *Deemster*, Ch. XLII, 303.

They are looking for you to sing. OPPENHEIM, *The Mischiefmaker*, Ch. VIII.

to ring: Shall I ring for the shutters to be closed? Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 80.

She rang for the gas to be lit. Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, II, 137.

to send: She sent for her to come and show herself before she set out. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XI, 111.

to wait: He appeared to be waiting for her to get up. *ib.*, Ch. X, 104.

He waited for them to begin the conversation. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXV, 187a.

- b) The same construction is also found after certain nominal predicates, such as:

anxious, as in: Elizabeth saw that he was anxious for her sister and herself to get acquainted. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLV, 263.

impatient, as in: We held our breath when we heard that the coat was ordered; we were impatient for it to be fitted. BARING GOULD (GÜNTH., *Drie Talen*, XVI).

willing, as in: When Dyson had got accustomed to the sound, he declared himself willing for Humphrey to try again. Miss MONTGOMERY, *Misunderstood* (STOF., *Stu d.*, A, 71).

in a hurry, as in: No doubt you are in a hurry for her to go on with her ordinary schooling. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norse m.*, Ch. XXII, 197.

- c) Other prepositions are comparatively rare. Here follow some instances with:

upon: I count upon you to help me in this matter. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. VIII, 222.

You may depend on me to do my very best. Sir F. C. BURNAND, *Three Swindles* (*Pall Mall Gazette*).

I look upon foxes to be the most blessed dispensation of a benign Providence. BOURCICAULT, *Lond. Assur.*, 3 (MÄTZN., *Eng Gram.*², III, 27)

to: I look to you, Frithiof, to carry out the aims in which I myself have failed. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. IV, 39.

Trust to me to show you an honourable road to a speedy and glorious revenge. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXV, 81 a. (For the transitive *to trust* followed by a (p̄ro)noun + infinitive see 31, j).

41. Obs. I. In some combinations we find *for* replacing the preposition with which the verb or adjective is ordinarily construed. Thus it stands severally for *to*, *of*, and *with* in:

i. The subsequent history of the Rand we must leave for other pens to tell. *Rev. of Rev.* (Compare: The rest we may leave to the tribes to accomplish. GRANT ALLEN, *The Tents of Shem*, Ch. XVIII.)

ii. I'm not afraid for them to see it. DICK, *Christm. Car.*, IV, 82.
She's not worthy for you to speak to. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XI, 127.
You're afraid for us to go to your old fortune-teller. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, II, 32.

iii. I think you would have made as much fuss about me, and been pleased for me to love you, as would have satisfied even you. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, V, Ch. III, 302.

II. Sometimes the construction with a *for*-adjunct + infinitive(-clause) takes the place of that with an accusative + infinitive; thus in the following examples with *to like*, *to want*, and *to wish*, where there is not, apparently, the least call for it:

i. But you'd like better for us both to stay at home together. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. III, 21.

ii. I want for you and me to see everything as we seed it then from fust to last. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XIV, Ch. II, 394.

iii. I am clear in wishing heartily to keep my old friends, and for them to love my future wife for my sake. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XII, 128.

Papa wished for her to be at the marriage very much indeed. *ib.*, Ch. XIII, 139.

III. Of apparently rare occurrence is the use of a bare infinitive in the prepositional accusative + infinitive. In the following examples, all of them taken from *English Studies*, IX, IV, 15; and X, 1, 9, it is the verbs *to listen (to)* and *to look (at)* which are furnished with this construction, and there is, accordingly some probability that in them the practice is due to the influence of respectively *to hear* and *to see*.

i. It was my privilege a few years ago to listen to Sir Ernest Shackleton speak of his expedition across the Antarctic Continent. IRVING BABBITT, *Rousseau and Romanticism*, 277.

A half-an-hour of to-day I spent in a punt under a copper beech out of the pouring rain listening to Lady—'s gamekeeper at A—talk about beasts and local politics. BARBELLION, *The Journal of a Disappointed Man*, Entry for June, 1907.

ii. "Look at Glorvina enter a room", Mrs. O'Dowd would say, "and compare her with that poor Mrs. Osborne, who couldn't say bo to a goose." THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 83.

I can take off my shirt and tear it, | And so make a ripping razzly noise, |
And the people will say, | "Look at him tear his shirt." CARL SANDBLURG, *Sel. Poems*, 186.

NOMINATIVE WITH INFINITIVE.

42. When a sentence containing a non-prepositional accusative with infinitive is thrown into the passive voice, the infinitive(-clause) becomes a modifier of the subject, wherefore the altered construction may be termed a *nominative with infinitive*. This construction, which is but rarely used in Dutch, is very frequent in English, perhaps owing to the want of an exact equivalent of the indefinite *men* (German *man*, French *on*). It is, in the main, found with the same groups of verbs as the accusative + infinitive. There are, however, a good many verbs governing this latter construction which do not admit of being constructed with the nominative + infinitive. Thus it is, apparently, never, or hardly, ever, found after verbs of watching, and (dis)liking. Nor would it be easy to find instances after *to have*, *to cause*, *to occasion*, *to wish* and, no doubt, some other verbs, although strict synonyms of them are more or less frequently found furnished with it.

The nominative with infinitive is more or less common after:
a) verbs that express a discovering and the verb *to hear*, as is shown by the following examples with:

to discover: He was discovered to be proud. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 14.

to feel: There come occasions when falsehood is felt to be inconvenient. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. III, (541).

to find: (One) of our relations was found to be a person of very bad character. GOLES., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (237).

to hear: Presently he is heard to drive away. DICK, *Bleak House*. Ch. VII, 55.

to see: Oscar ... was seen to be sun-burnt. HALL CAINE, *Prod. Son*, I.

b) verbs that express a judging, a knowing, a remembering, an understanding, or a declaring, including a good many that are rarely or never construed with an accusative + infinitive. Thus this latter construction has not been met with after *to announce*, *to assert*, *to describe*, *to fable*, *to interpret*, *to reputed*, *to rumour*, *to say*, all of which are included among the following verbs that have been found to admit of the nominative + infinitive:

to admit: The critic in *Poets' Country* admits the village in decay to be Irish. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Golds.*, Ch. XVI, 196.

to allow: Miss Arabella Wilmot was allowed by all ... to be completely pretty. GOLES., *Vic.*, Ch. II, (241).

to announce: He was announced to give a lecture on "As you like it" *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 359 *b*

He was announced to deliver a lecture on International Arbitration. *ib.*, No. 204, 571 *b*.

to assert. Four hungry jackdaws, ... which he was currently asserted to have hatched upon his own person. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 238.

to believe: What I shall tell of him is generally believed to be true. SCOTT,

Mr. Pickwick was believed to be meditating a letter to the Times. *Punch*.
to declare: Motors in skilful and competent hands are declared by good authorities to be more easily controlled than a spirited pair of horses. *Times*.
to describe: The first effects are described to me to have resembled insanity. SHELLEY, Let. to the Editor of the *Quart. Rev.*
to doom: He was not doomed to prosper in love. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 90.

to esteem: Mr. Joseph Andrews was esteemed to be the only son of Gaffer and Gammer Andrews. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. II, 2.

to expect: All the population are expected to be back again by Christmas. *Times*.

to fable: He (sc. Oberon) and Titania, his wife, are fabled to have inhabited India. WEBST., *Dict.*, Appendix, s.v. *Oberon*.

to interpret: This was interpreted to mean that he would be a catch. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XVIII, 120.

to know: Were not men known to have married their housekeepers? DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XX.

Antonie van der Heijden is seldom known to miss his aim. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 131).

to presume: The greater part of modern English literature has been written by men who were classically educated, and for readers who were presumed to have more or less knowledge of Latin. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. III, 94.

Genius is presumed to be derived from mothers. ANDREW LANG, *Alfr. Ten.*, Ch. I, 2. (*To be* is the copula, not the auxiliary of the passive voice.)

to pronounce: Her manners were pronounced to be very bad indeed. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. VIII, 38.

to report: He is reported to have been much affected. *Graph*.
 He is also reported to have resided at the court of the tyrant Polycrates, in Samos. LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.*, II, Ch. I, 35.

to repute: The republican sentiments which he was reputed to entertain. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 6.

to rumour: He was rumoured to have died at Nice. *Times*.

to say: The place was said to have been built in the days of King Henry the Eighth. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 1 b.

He is said to have produced a great impression on his audience. MAC., *Clive*, (537 b).

to state: She had written from that spot where she was stated to have been. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XL, 292 b.

Her complement was 55, every one of whom is stated to have perished. *Times*. (The reference is to some ship)

The Princessa Mafalda is stated to have remained afloat four hours after it sent out the first S. O. S. call. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/10, 1927, 324 d.

to suppose: And when am I supposed to have performed this trifling feat? ANSTEY, *Fal. Idol.*, Ch. VII, 105.

to think: The picture was thought by the servants to have something natural about it. *Wash. Irv.*

to trust: She (sc. the cow) belonged to the breed that might be trusted to annoy. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXXVII, 333.

A friend of mine and a connection of my family may be trusted to use her utmost discretion. L. B. WALFORD, *Stay-at-homes*, Ch. I.

He may be trusted to stamp out from the Regiment any practices of the kind which may have prevailed prior to his coming. *Punch*.

to understand: Ripton was understood to say he devoted that corner to old briefs on important cases. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XVI, 114.

to warrant: For the sharpest needle, best Whitechapel, warranted not to cut in the eye, was not sharper than Scrooge: blunt as he took it in his head to be. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 71.

c) verbs that express a showing, such as:

to prove: The report was proved to be unfounded.

to show: He was shown to be the real offender.

to ascertain: Jem was ascertained to be the murderer. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXI, 222.

d) verbs that express a causing, such as:

to make: The actual teaching of Christ was made to supersede the mysterious dogmas of the older ecclesiastical teaching. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § IV, 314.

It soon appeared that Jacob could not be made to quit his dear brother except by force. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. III, (546).

e) verbs which express a desiring or requiring, such as:

to mean: I wasn't meant to read it (sc. the paper)... There had been letters sometimes that she was not meant to see. TEMPLE THURSTON, *City*, III, Ch. II, 230.

to want: He was wanted to bleed the prince. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 43.

f) verbs that express an allowing, a requesting, or a commanding:

to allow: He was unable to resist a movement of indignation that had never been allowed to satisfy itself. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. III, (545).

to entreat: The muses are earnestly entreated to weep over the urn of Cæsar. MAC., *Will. Pitt*, (228a).

to order: When the prisoners were ordered to enter the cell, they imagined that the soldiers were joking. *id.*, *Clive*, (513b).

to permit: Every one knows how subalterns are, by brother subalterns, softened and not permitted to be ferocious. RUDY. KIPL., *Plain Tales*, XX, 153.

to tell: I was told to bring the keys as soon as you was alone, miss. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 42.

43. Obs. I. It will have been observed that most of the examples given under 42, f) go back to active sentences with two non-prepositional objects, the (pronoun) object being distinctly felt to indicate the recipient of a permission, command, or request. The construction is indeed, freely extended to other verbs which, although similarly governing two non-prepositional objects, do not admit of being constructed with an accusative + infinitive; thus:

He was advised to travel for his health. MAC., *Wil. Pitt*, (288a).

There is, however, no nominative + infinitive in sentences in which the passive voice of such verbs as *to bring*, *to get*, *to persuade*, etc. (30. f) is followed by an infinitive, the latter being in this construction as distinctly a prepositional object as in the corresponding active sentences; thus in:

My awkward daughter-in-law, who you know is designed to be his wife, is grown fond of Tattle. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 2, (233).

He was directly invited to join their party. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XI, 59.

But it seemed as if I was destined to offend all the men that day. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 31.

II. After verbs of judging or declaring the copula *to be* is often dispensed with; thus in:

The picture is considered a perfect likeness. *DICK.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. VII, 54.

Pen was pronounced a tremendous fellow. *THACK.*, *Pen d.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 188.
William II of Germany is reckoned the most active sovereign in Europe. *Graph*.

A not unfrequent variant of the nominative + infinitive after these verbs is the construction illustrated by the following example:

The Chairman at the Worcestershire Quarter Sessions is reported as having said in his address to the Grand Jury that [etc.]. *Man ch. Guard.*, VI, 14, 275 *b*.
For further comment and illustration see Ch. VI, 15 *f*.

III. The passive voice in the head-clause may be followed by a passive voice of the infinitive. This double passive occurs not only as a grammatical modification of a sentence with an accusative + passive infinitive, as in *The judge ordered the court to be cleared*, but is also met with as the passive conversion of a sentence in which an active verb is followed by an active infinitive in the objective relation to the former, as in *They attempted to conceal the truth*. The altered form of the first example is *The court was ordered to be cleared*, that of the second *The truth was attempted to be concealed*. Double passives of the first type may be quite common, those of the second type appear to be unusual. For further discussion and illustration see Ch. LV, 88.

i. A footman and two housemaids are believed to have been dismissed. *MER.*, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XIII, 83.

None of these races can be shown to have been originated by the action of changes in what are commonly called external circumstances. *HUXLEY*, *Darwiniana*, Ch. II, 43.

In a Jihad (i. e. Holy War) all infidels alike are commanded to be slain. *GRANT ALLEN*, *The Tents of Shem*, Ch. XVIII.

It (sc. Mrs. *HARDY*'s life of her husband) is expected to be published without any great delay. *Man ch. Guard.*, 2/3, 1928, 176.

ii. A satisfaction which was but feebly attempted to be concealed under a cold invitation to her to defer her departure. *JANE AUSTEN*, *Sense & Sens.*, Ch. V, 29.

The monopoly plan has been applied to tobacco, camphor and salt, and is proposed to be applied to sago and sugar. *Daily Mail*.

It is stated that a reconciliation is hoped to be effected through the good offices of an exalted Italian personage. *Man ch. Guard.*, 4/2, 1927, 81 *b*.

44. Also instances of a nominative with infinitive answering to a prepositional accusative + infinitive are common enough. Such a construction is, for example, found in:

The knowledge gained then should be invaluable to him in his new position, which he may safely be looked upon to fill with satisfaction to all concerned. *Il. Lond. News*.

During the coming year Germany for the first time will be called upon to pay the standard annuity of £ 125,000,000 under the Dawes Plan. *Man ch. Guard.*, 28 10, 1927, 321 *c*.

Mr. Wilson ... may be counted on to make as much trouble as he can. *ib.*, 28 10, 1927, 321 *c*

FOR + (PRO)NOUN + INFINITIVE(-CLAUSE).

45. Infinitive-clauses whose subject-indicating word is a (pro)noun preceded by the preposition *for*, may be divided into: *a*) such as answer to subordinate statements; *b*) such as answer to attributive adnominal adjuncts or clauses; *c*) such as answer to adverbial adjuncts or clauses.

For a more detailed discussion of this remarkable construction than could very well be spared for it in this place, see Ch. LX, 65 ff.

46. Those which answer to subordinate statements represent:

a) *the subject*, as in: *i*. It was impossible for Pulteney not to discern the motive of such an offer. *MAC., Wil. Pitt, (289 b)*

It was very agreeable for them to come down with their portmanteaus. *MARRYAT, Olla Podrida.*

It was very hard for Abel Fletcher to have for his only son such a sickly creature as I. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. I, 6.*

It is easier for a man to describe a man than a woman. *MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. II, 34.*

When I was at El-Largani it was permitted for people to stay in the *hôtellerie*, on payment of a small weekly sum, for as long as they pleased. *HICHENS, Gard. of A.I., II, V, Ch. XXVI, 220.*

ii. Behold how good and pleasant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity. *Bible, Psalm, CXXXIII, I.*

It is hardly necessary for us to say that this is an excellent book excellently translated. *MAC., Popes, (541).*

It was rather absurd for an English usher to be spouting and glowing about a French officer. *MER., Ormont, Ch. I, 10.*

It's all very well for you to talk. *RUDY. KIPL., Light, Ch. V, 66.*

It is no uncommon thing for the mind thus to fail at the last. *RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XXI, 225.*

It is not so usual as you seem to think for me to receive distinguished foreigners in a state of obvious excitement. *ANSTEY, Fallen Idol, Ch. IX, 123.*

It has been a custom among us for the eldest son to take the name of his father's favourite commander. *CON. DOYLE, Rodn. Stone, I, Ch. I, 13.*

Since when has it been a crime for one man to behave rudely to another if rudeness implies no violence? *Manch. Guard., 28/10, 1927, 323 b.*

It is exceptional indeed for a British employer to get an improvement on machinery suggested by a workman. *Rev. of Rev.*

iii. Monmouth should have felt that it was not for him to fly. *MAC., Hist. II, Ch. V, 178.*

'Tis for me to kneel, not for you: 'tis for me to be thankful that I can make you happy. *THACK., Es m., III, Ch. II, 32.*

It is hardly for you to blame me with severity. *TROL., Small House, I, Ch. XXIII, 282.*

It was for women to fight their fight now. *MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXV, 185.*

It is for me to receive your words, not to judge them. *READE, Never too Late, I, Ch. VI, 77.*

b) *the non-prepositional object* as in: *i*. Many circumstances might make it more eligible for them to be married privately in town than to pursue their first plan. *JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XLVI, 268.*

You may make it necessary for me to send my daughter abroad again. *DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXVIII, 276 a.*

His business and near prospect of marriage made it difficult for him to leave home. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jacob*, Ch. III, (532).

I would make it death | For any male thing but to peep at us. TEN., *Princ.*, *ProL.*, 151.

ii. But you'd like better for us both to stay at home together. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. III, 21.

He esteemed it almost as a personal insult for his hearers not to laugh. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXV, 186.

c) *the nominal part of the predicate*, as in: Molly found out to her dismay that the plan was for her to return with Lord Cumnor and Lady Harriet. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XIV, 141.

The crux of the matter is not only for the flying-machine to be able to raise itself, but to keep its balance in the air and enable the aeronaut to descend in safety. Rev. of Rev.

The rule has been for the champion to win his title young, and keep it till old, or at least middle-aged. *Manch. Guard.*, 2 12, 1927, 421 d.

47. Obs. I. It will have been observed that the word-group *for* + (pro)-noun in the above examples belongs partly to the head-clause, partly to the subordinate clause.

It belongs rather to the former than to the latter in the examples mentioned under a, i), a, iii), and b, i); rather to the latter than to the former in the examples mentioned under a, ii), b, ii), and c). In some of these latter examples the connexion of the *for*-adjunct with the head-clause is of the slightest. Sometimes it is absent altogether; thus in:

It was a terrible speech for her to make. TROL., *Bel. Est.*, Ch. XXIII, 300. After all it was no uncommon thing for an earl's daughter to marry a commoner. *id.*, *Castle Richm.*, Ch. III, 42.

The absence of all connexion is beyond a doubt: 1) when the infinitive has front-position, as in:

For a Protestant to become a Catholic, unless he was converted at heart to the truth of Catholic doctrines, would be a mortal sin. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. XIV, 207.

For me to interfere either way would be at once idle and perilous. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 47.

For mamma to have taken it into her head that some evil is going to happen is so very absurd that I have felt quite cross with her. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 41.

For a priest of the Church of England to show the white feather in the hour of need, is to unpreach in one minute all that he has been preaching his life long. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 137 b.

2) when it is preceded by the conjunctions *as* or *than*, or the conjunctive preposition *but*, as in:

i. For a holy person to be humble, for one whom all men esteem as a saint, to fear lest himself become a devil, is as hard as for a prince to submit himself to be guided by tutors. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 85.

ii. What could be better than for you to go? ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 68 d.

There is no greater crime than for a woman who is ill-used and unhappy to show that she is so. THACK., *Em.*, I, Ch. XI, 109.

I don't know anything more painful than for a man to marry his superior in age or his inferior in station. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 85.

iii. There was nothing now but for him and the footman to get into the carriage. SARAH GRAND, *Our man. nat.*, 8.

3) when the nominal part of the predicate is also accompanied by *to* + (pro)noun, as in:

Of what use can it be to either of us for you to be thinking of that which can never be. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. XXIII, 303.

It would have been delightful to me for us to have worked together. HUXL., *Life and Letters*, II, 400.

II. The occasion of placing *for* + (pro)noun before an infinitive(-clause) standing before the head-clause may be to obviate the vagueness that might otherwise attach to it. Thus although it is not difficult for us to understand that the speaker of the words *To cut the delinquent short* [etc.] cited above (1, b), thinks of himself in connection with the action of cutting off, he might have told us so by placing the word-group *for me* before *to cut*. Conversely the word-group *for me* in *For me to interfere either way would be at once idle and perilous*. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 147) might have been suppressed, as being readily suggested by the context.

III. *For* as used in most of the examples in 46 is almost without semantic significance, its chief function being that of connecting the (pro)noun with the infinitive (Ch. VI, 15). In the examples mentioned under 46, a, iii), however, it has practically the value of an adjective, or adjectival word-group. Thus *It was for women to fight their fight now* approaches to *It was incumbent on women to fight their fight now*. For detailed discussion see Ch. LX, 46 f.

IV. Infinitive-clauses with a *for*-adjunct (Ch. LX, 65 ff) imply an adverbial relation of condition when the predicate in the head-clause stands in the conditional mood, as in:

For the author of a book abruptly to address his readers as 'you' would be uncolloquial as well as unliterary. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2097.

It would have been better for him to stay away. TROL., *Orl. Farm*, III, Ch. XVI, 202

This made him feel that in any event it would be well for them to change their residence. *ib.*, 210.

For the party ... to vote as it feels inclined from time to time, without regard to the circumstances, would be to treat the situation with levity. *Manch. Guard.*, 18, I, 1924, 42 b

V. Probably owing to the convenience which the use of a *for*-adjunct + infinitive offers, and its consequent great frequency, we repeatedly find this construction taking the place of one with another preposition of a vague meaning, especially *in*, *of*, or *to*. This appears from a comparison of the following groups of sentences:

i. * Nor is it natural in her to avoid her fellow-creatures, Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. IV, 87.

** It is positively weak of you to attach importance to such a trifle. MARIE CORELLI, *So. of Sat.*, I, Ch. X, 140.

*** In 'Nowhere' it was lawful to every man to be of what religion he would. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § IV, 319.

ii. It is natural for me to wish putting my children forward in the world. GOLDS., *Vic.*

It is wrong for a man to say that he is certain of the objective truth of any proposition, unless he can produce evidence which logically justifies that certainty. Huxl., Lect. & Es, 108 b.

It would be imprudent for her to travel for another week Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XI, 185.

It is worth noting that, whereas the *for*-adjunct goes with the infinitive-clause, the adjuncts with the alternative prepositions belong strictly to the head-clause.

VI. Instead of an infinitive we sometimes find a present participle. Instances appear to be unfrequent.

For a man of business taking holidays disappointed her faith in him. MER., Ormont, Ch. II, 30.

VII. The use of a gerund instead of an infinitive is, apparently, more common. See also Ch. XIX, 7; 68; Ch. LX, 71, Obs. iv.

He said that it was rather useless his remaining. TROL., Last Chron., I, Ch. XXII, 245.

It's all very well your laughing, but I hate such folly. id., Small House, II, Ch. XLI, 136.

It was no use my talking. ib., II, Ch. LI, 251.

It is rather remarkable your knowing them. Mrs. ALEX., A life Interest, Ch. XIX, 68.

In this construction the common case often takes the place of the genitive, but the use of the objective personal pronoun instead of the possessive pronoun is vulgar.

It's no good my mother nagging at one. TROL., Belt Est., Ch. XVII, 224.

'Tis no use him frettin' over me. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XXXII, 299. (Compare: It was of no use for him to tell himself that the small house at Allington was better than Courcy Castle. TROL., Small House, I, Ch. XVIII, 208.)

48. Infinitive-clauses with a *for*-adjunct (45) which answer to attributive adnominal adjuncts may be divided into three groups, viz.: a) such as represent an adjunct consisting of a (pro)noun preceded by a preposition. Compare the infinitive-clauses described under 16, a. They are equivalent to, although not necessarily interchangeable with gerund-clauses with a subject-indicating word. Thus *I might have made arrangements for you to stay with me* is equivalent to *I might have made arrangements for your staying with me*. Further examples are found in:

He sent his permission for them to come. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej*, Ch. L, 307.

With all her winning smiles she could scarcely lead him to feel impatience for the wedding to take place at Michaelmas. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught*, Ch. XI, 109.

He gave orders to Benson for Ripton's box to be packed and ready before noon. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VII, 42.

The tendency for the picture to supplant the written word has long been manifest. *Manch. Guard*, 16/3, 1928, 202 c.

Compare: Christopherson must have watched for my coming. GISSING, *Christopherson*.

b) such as represent a clause introduced by a relative pronoun. Thus *There are several letters for you to write* is equivalent to *There are several letters which you have to write*. Compare the infinitive clauses described under 16, b. Of a similar description are those contained in :

There remains only an act of justice for me to do. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XXXI, (476). I have a little spare money for that room for her to lay out. Mrs. GASK., Wiv. and Daught., Ch. XII, 129.

It is possible that he will have business for me to see to. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norseem., Ch. IX, 76.

The question for us now to solve is the sequence of events [etc.]. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm, Blue Carb.

c) such as represent a clause introduced by a conjunctive adverb or equivalent word-group, the latter being represented by a preposition placed at the end of the clause. Thus *Here is a piece of paper for you to write the answer on* is equivalent to *Here is a piece of paper on which you can write the answer*. Compare the infinitive-clauses described in 16, c and 17, Obs. I. Of the same nature are those in :

Some time ago I left a landscape for you to put a figure in. ANSTEY, Fal. Idol, Ch. VII, 106.

The horse is just the thing for you to try your hand at riding on. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. I, 19.

49. Obs. I. In the infinitive-clauses mentioned under c) the preposition sometimes appears to be understood. Thus *The day was fixed for Richard to depart* (MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXV, 184) seems to stand for *The day was fixed for Richard to depart on* (= on which Richard was to depart). Compare 17, Obs. I.

ii. In some of the quotations cited in the preceding §, *for* + (pronoun + infinitive(-clause)) may also be regarded as an adverbial clause of purpose. Thus *I might have made arrangements for you to stay with me* may be interpreted to be equivalent to *I might have made arrangements, (so) that you might have stayed with me*. Similarly *Some time ago I left a landscape for you to put a figure in* may be interpreted to mean *Some time ago I left a landscape, (so) that you might put a figure in it*.

iii. The infinitive in the quotations cited under b) and c), may also be considered as representative of the subject of a nominal predicate; i. e. *There are several letters for you to write* may be understood to stand for *There are several letters which it is for you to write*; and *Here is a piece of paper for you to write the answer on* for *Here is a piece of paper, and it is for you to write the answer on it*.

50. Infinitive-clauses with a *for*-adjunct (45) which answer to adverbial adjuncts or clauses, are expressive of: a) a relation of ground (21), as in :

I must have made a real hit this time, for that woman to be as civil as all that. ANSTEY, Fal. Idol, Ch. VI, 89.

The secret must indeed be written with indecent plainness on her face for

him to venture to make sport of it. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XXIII.

b) a relation of purpose (23), as in :

He brought it with him for us to see. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 284.

He went down and held my lord's stirrups for him to mount. THACK., *Esmond*, Ch. V, 43.

I intend it (sc. the money) for Harry Esmond to go to college. *ib.*, I, Ch. IX, 92.

A man can only do humbly and fearfully that which the Maker who created him has appointed for him to do. MISS BRADDON, *Lady Audley's Secret*, II, Ch. X, 200.

The slab recording his eulogistic and loving appreciation of Laura Seymour had been placed over her grave for all the world to read late in 1879. *Not. and Quer.*

How little time it takes for things to happen! EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsemen*, Ch. X, 82.

Note. The relation of purpose is mixed: 1) with that of consequence in: You had only to mention her name at afternoon teas for any woman in the room to rise up and call her — well not blessed. RUDY. KIPL., *Plain Tales*, II, 19.

2) with that of restriction in: The wind sits fair for news to go to Ireland. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³¹, § 372.

c) a relation of condition (25, *a* and *b*), as in :

i. We shall be glad for you to stop as long as you like. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XVIII, 135 *b*.

ii. One pointing to the lady said such foul and devilish things as I should be ashamed either for me to speak, or you to hear. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. VII, 58 *b*.

I should be sorry for you to misapprehend me for a moment. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXIV, 250.

Barbara would have given her head for her father to go out. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 80.

Would it improve our position, do you think, for Bruncker to throw the attorney out of the window? JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, L, 205.

d) a relation of quality as manifested by a consequence, as in :

Are they upon such terms as for her to disclose the real truth? JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLVI, 274.

e) a relation of degree as manifested by a consequence (26, *a*) and *b*), as in :

i. They swaggered about the little streets of Wychester as if the ground was not good enough for them to tread upon. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *The Great Unknown*.

They had stayed long enough for Frithiof to get a pretty clear idea of the work which lay before him. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsemen*, Ch. XIII, 108. This never happened to be finished in time for them to go into the frying-pan. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XVII.

ii. The house was too far for people to come and dine with us. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

They (sc. the small bonnets) had become too general for her to refuse admittance to such a thing within her doors. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. VIII, 62.

She was too much astonished at his sudden appearance for any thought of shyness to intervene. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Novels*, Ch. XII, 96.

Note. Of particular interest to the Dutch student are those of the examples mentioned under *e, ii*) in which *for* + (pro)noun does not belong to the head-clause. In translating them a clause opening with *dan dat* would be used. Thus for *He was too much accustomed to deeds of violence for the agitation he had at first expressed to be of long continuance* (STOF., *Handl.*, III, § 44) the Dutch would have *Hij was te zeer gewend aan daden van geweld dan dat de agitatie waaraan hij in den beginne uiting had gegeven lang kon duren.*

CHAPTER XIX.

GERUND-CLAUSES.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Gerund-clauses in general	1— 8
Gerund-clauses not containing a Subject-indicating (Pro)noun	9—67
Gerund-clauses that answer to Subordinate Statements .	9—47
Gerund-clauses that answer to Attributive Adnominal Adjuncts or Clauses.	48—56
Gerund-clauses that answer to Adverbial Adjuncts or Clauses	57—67
Gerund-clauses containing a Subject-indicating (Pro)noun .	68—74
Gerund-clauses that answer to Subordinate Statements .	68—72
Gerund-clauses that answer to Attributive Adnominal Adjuncts or Clauses.	73
Gerund-clauses that answer to Adverbial Adjuncts or Clauses	74

GERUND-CLAUSES IN GENERAL.

1. The action or state denoted by a gerund-clause is necessarily associated with a person, animal or thing originating it. This originator of the action or state is not indicated in any way in generalizing or indefinite statements or questions, such as. *Playing with fire is dangerous. Is swimming a healthy exercise?*

Every vowel can have its pitch raised or lowered by varying the length of the vocal chords. SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, § 60.

2. In specializing statements and questions it is mostly indicated:
a) by some (pro)noun in the context, not modifying the gerund;
b) by a genitive, or a possessive pronoun modifying the gerund adnominally. In the following examples the subject-indicating word of the gerund(-clause) is printed in spaced type.
3. The (pro)noun in the context not modifying the gerund may be:
a) the subject of the head-clause, as in:

I am glad of having met you. BAIN, *Comp.*, 170.

The Snobkys suddenly determined upon leaving town. THACK., *Snobs*, Ch IV, 29*b*.

Dolf felt struck with awe on entering into the presence of this learned man. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (106).

b) the object, either non-prepositional or prepositional, of the head-clause, as in:

i. I thank you for assembling here. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. IV, 29*b*.

Not that I blame you for going. *id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIX, 339.

I could admire your brother very much for being so strong and active. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. IV, 76.

ii. She was grateful to her uncle for saying [etc.]. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLIII, 243.

What should I render to the Lord for having given me two such sons? KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVIII, 213*a*.

I hope you are not angry with me for coming. Mrs. ALEX., *Life Int.*, I, Ch. IX, 146.

c) a genitive (or its periphrastic equivalent), or a possessive pronoun, to be found in the head-clause, as in:

The liberty of the people consists in being governed by laws which they have made themselves. COWLEY, *Es.*, Lib. I.

My wife observed that rising too early would hurt her daughters' eyes. GOLDS. *Vic.*, Ch. X, (288).

My first impulse on hearing this humble tale of affliction was to visit the cottage of the mourner. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XI, 109.

Pray make my excuses to Pratt for not keeping my engagement. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 285.

Note. Sometimes the (pro)noun is understood, being readily suggested by the context, or the circumstances of the case described; thus in:
Walking out, drinking tea, country dances and forfeit shortened the rest of the day. *GOLDS., Vic., Ch. II, (242).*

It is no good talking about it now. *RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. IV, 39.*

Listening to the Chela's conversation was better than remaining there. *ANSTEV, Fal. Id., Ch. VIII, 118.*

Observe the practically regular omission of the (pro)noun in such expressions as *at the (or this) moment of writing, at the time of writing*, as in:

The scheme at the moment of writing awaits the approval of the Chancery judge in Chambers. *Rev. of Rev., No. 218, 126 a.*

The Belgian Government has met the Chamber with a programme which at this moment of writing is being hotly debated in Brussels. *ib., No. 204, 564 a.*

At the moment of going to press there is delivered on my counter a further batch of important books. *ib., No. 204, 564 a.*

It is this question which is in discussion, and at the time of writing it is not yet settled. *ib., No. 206, 129 a.*

4. a) In specializing statements and questions a genitive or a possessive pronoun is normally placed before the gerund, when the subject of the action or state expressed by it is not indicated or suggested in any way by the context. This has been done in:
Paul was quite alarmed at Mr. Feeder's yawning. *DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 104.*

Sometimes I fancied that Peggotty objected to my mother's wearing all her pretty dresses. *id., Cop., Ch. II, 11 b.*

He was robbed in the interval between ringing his bell and the servant's answering it. *Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. X, 190.* (Compare the last gerund with the first.)

b) Such a genitive or possessive pronoun is often put before the gerund, when there is no indication of its subject further than a genitive or possessive pronoun in the head-clause.

From the moment of his first speaking to us, his voice had connected itself with an association in my mind that I could not define. *DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 39.*

Their greatness seems to consist in their never having done anything to distinguish themselves. *ib., Ch. VII, 54.*

c) As in the majority of cases the subject of the head-clause indicates the originator of the action or state denoted by the gerund(-clause), the following examples do not express what they are intended to express and are, accordingly, to be branded as incorrect or, at least, exceptionable English:

My coffee comes into my chamber every morning without asking for it. *ADDISON, Spect., XII.* (Rewritten: without my asking for it.)

I thought you would not choose Sir Peter to come up without announcing him. *SHER., School IV, 3, (411).* (Rewritten: without my announcing him, or: without his being announced.)

I find they (sc. my little productions) circulate more by giving copies to the friends of the parties. *ib., i, 1, (370).*

These two great cities fell into the hands of The French without firing a shot.

THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XIV, 272. (Rewritten: without their firing a shot, or: without a shot being fired).

Many people had, after hard begging, thrown her pence. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 21.

When everything was coming near to her grasp, when there seemed a fair chance of realizing her ambitions, she had suddenly fallen ill. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. III, 11.

Let your son and heir try it before sending him to college. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, I, 16.

The following are instances of extreme slovenliness:

On attempting to extract the ball, the patient to began sink. NICHOL & M'CORNIC (STRONG, LOGEMAN & WHEELER, *Introd.*, Ch. VIII, 147).

Since writing the above, dearest Lizzy, something has occurred of a most unexpected and serious nature. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVI, 266.

Sometimes it is rather a word(-group) in the head-clause than the subject-indicating word of the gerund(-clause) that is understood. Thus the word-group *to us* is understood in:

On entering the amphitheatre, new objects of wonder presented themselves. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 49.

For discussion of slipshod gerund-constructions see also ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 186.

d) Conversely, a possessive pronoun is sometimes found before the gerund without being absolutely necessary; thus in:

Her sister, however, assured her of her being perfectly well. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 279.

The first (i.e. Heine's 'Ardinghella') I hated for its having undertaken to exhibit sensuality and mystical abstruseness, ennobled and supported by creative art. CARL., *Life of Schil.*, II, 126.

All the drains were choked, it appeared, from their being so very narrow. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

5. Instead of the genitive or possessive pronoun we often find the common case or the objective of a personal pronoun before this verbal in *ing*. Thus for *You must excuse the boy's (his) saying so* we also meet with *You must excuse the boy (him) saying so*.

Some grammarians, MASON (*Eng. Gram*²¹, § 494), ONIONS (*Adv. Eng. Synt.*, 183*b*), KRÜGER (*Synt.*², II, 4, § 2685); SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2328) hold that this changes the grammatical character of the verbal, and that it should in this case be regarded as a present participle. For reasons set forth in Ch. LVI, 34 ff, the present writer cannot endorse this view: to him the verbal form in *ing* in question is a gerund irrespective of the form of the noun or pronoun by which it is modified; except, of course, in constructions in which it varies with the infinitive, as in *You don't want me interfering in your life* (MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XXV, 177); *I have seen him kissing her a dozen times* (BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, I, 267).

Some details about the respective areas of incidence of the two constructions, which for the sake of convenience, will here be called construction-A and construction-B respectively, will, no doubt, be acceptable also in this place. Fuller information about the subject is

to be found in Ch. LVI, 34—37. Students interested in the history of the two constructions may find an exhaustive exposition of the subject in a paper contributed by Dr. W. VAN DER GAAFF to *English Studies*, X, No 2 en No 3.

a) Construction-B is, naturally, the only possible one in the case of the word preceding the gerund having no genitive; thus in: You will oblige me by all leaving the room. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 414. I have my doubts as to this being true. *ib.*

You seem to understand me by each at once her choppy fingers laying upon her skinny lips. SHAK., *Mac b.*, I, 3, 44.

b) Construction-B is almost regularly used when the word preceding the gerund is a noun the genitive of which is seldom used, i. e., in general the name of an inanimate thing; thus in: The jealousy of his contemporaries prevented justice being done to him during his lifetime. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 494.

I am afraid of mischief resulting from this. *ib.*

On some brandy being administered to him, he revived. *ib.*

There was a story of money having been buried there. *ib.*

The comparative frequency with which, in this case, one meets with construction-A, even in the latest English, seems to show that the natural tendency of placing a genitive before the substantival verbal in *ing*, still lingers in the minds of many Englishmen.

The utmost that was in the power of a lawyer was to prevent the law's taking effect. FIELD., *Jos. And r.*, IV, Ch. III, 207.

Mr. Darcy ... was divided between admiration of the brilliancy which exercise had given to her complexion, and doubt as to the occasion's justifying her coming so far alone. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. VII, 36.

She played till Fanny's eyes, straying to the window on the weather's being evidently fair, spoke what she felt must be done. *id.*, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XXII, 213.

I told him of the church's being so very well worth seeing. *id.*, *Pers.*, Ch. XIV, 133.

The extreme pleasure I felt at the news of the Reform Bill's being thrown out by the House of Lords, convinced me that I have not yet lost my 'penchant' for politics. CH. BRONTË (Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 75).

What harm in a thing's being false? KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 64 a.

The fact of the pencil's falling in the schoolroom the previous evening occurred to him. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VIII, 112.

At the instant of the train's stopping he had opened the door. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Antag.*, Ch. IX, 82.

There is a real danger of our literature's being americanized. FOWLER, *The King's Eng.*, Ch. I, 24.

His mother kicked a little at first against the money's having gone to him as she said "over his papa's head." BUTLER, *The Way of all Flesh*, Ch. LXXXIII, 381.

The newspapers nearly every day contain reports of deaths resulting from the explosion of paraffin-oil lamps, or from fires caused by the lamp's overturning. *Tit-bits*.

The longer the delays and the more obvious the hesitations, the poorer will be the chance of the treaty's accomplishing its object — the abolition of war — by moral force alone. *Manch. Guard.*, 29, 6, 1928, 502 a.

c) Construction-B is distinctly more frequent than construction-A

when the modifier of the gerund is a noun or pronoun the genitive of which is unusual, i. e. the name of an animal, or an indefinite pronoun denoting a person; thus in:

i. Besides the probability of a snake dropping upon your head, or a rat getting into your breeches-pocket in search of food, there was the animal and chemical odour to be faced. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

ii. He was surprised at anybody speaking to him. THACK., *Snoobs*, Ch. III, 24.

The following examples, accordingly, represent unusual practice:

i. The case of a bird's being run into in flight, and killed, by a motor-car is comparatively rare. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5613, 13*a*.

ii. You can't expect to ride your new crotchet without anybody's trying to stick a nettle under his tail. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VII, 313.

I should like to feel that there's a chance of some one's knowing the truth when I come into the room this evening. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Land.*, II, Ch. XIII, 243.

It's a thousand to one against anybody's finding it out by accident. *ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 126.

With the best intentions ... it is not possible ... to do anything without everybody's knowing. GALSW., *Free-lands*, Ch. XVIII, 159.

d) Construction-B appears also to be preferred to construction-A in the case of the modifier of the gerund being the name of a person. Practice varies, however, largely with different writers, some showing even a pronounced partiality for the A-construction. According to CURME (*E. S.* XLV, V, 368) it is even the ordinary one in American English.

i. The old sexton even expressed a doubt as to Shakespeare having been born in her house. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVI, 262.

There would be nothing more remarkable in his taking a stroll at night than there would be in any other middle-aged gentleman turning out after dark. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 2.

Only think of Johnny Eames being at Guestwick Manor! TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XXXIII, 28.

I don't approve of young men getting engaged until they have some prospect of being able to marry. ANSTEY, *Voices Populi*.

I'm against any woman living with any man whom she definitely dislikes. GALSW., *In Chanc.*, II, Ch. XII, (658).

One could not in so many words resent one's own brother being made a fuss of. *id.*, *Free-lands*, II, 11.

ii. Bingley urged Mr. Jones's being sent for immediately. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. VIII, 44.

Never had she entertained a hope of Wickham's meaning to marry her. *ib.*, Ch. XLVI, 272.

On the gentlemen's appearing, her colour increased. *ib.*, Ch. LIII, 328.

I may not have my objections to a young man's keeping company with me. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 111.

As to clever people's hating each other, I think *a little* extra talent does sometimes make people jealous. OL. WEND. HOLMES, *Autocr. of the Breakf.-Table*, I, 9*b*.

They insisted on Little Billee's walking between them. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, 189. Married men bully their wives, grumble at the dinner, and insist on the children's going to bed. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, II, 30.

e) The construction with the objective of a personal pronoun is not nearly so frequent as that with a possessive pronoun. In literary English it is, in fact, distinctly unusual; in dialect speech, on the other hand, it appears to be the rule; and in colloquial English it is common when the pronoun is emphatic. Instances with *him* or *them* standing before the gerund appear to be less frequent than such as have *me* or *you*.

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2328) observes that "in the following examples we could hardly alter the possessives: *in honour of its being Christmas day; when metal came into use, men were able to make their knives much longer, without their being afraid of their breaking*. In the last sentence the *their* could be omitted, but not changed into *them*." (It is only the first *their* which could be dispensed with: omission of the second *their* would render the sentence incorrect (4, c). For further examples with *its* + gerund see Ch. XL, 63.

In some of the following examples the use of the B-construction may be due to the influence of the participle-construction found in similar connexions (Ch. XX, 32, Obs. I).

Sometimes also the verb may be understood to have two objects: a person-(or indirect) object represented by the (pro)noun in the objective case, and a thing-(or direct) object represented by the gerund (19).

I forgive him sinking my own poor truck. WYCHERLEY, *Plain Deal*, I, 1, (378).

Excuse me putting in a word or two. DICK., *Domb*, Ch. I, 7.

Pardon me saying it. TEN., *Princ*, I, 154.

Why did you not prevent me making such an egregious fool of myself? KINGSLEY, *Hyp*, Ch. XIII, 70 b.

If you will excuse me saying so, I don't think I could have made such a mistake. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 180.

He likes you so much that he does not mind you being inexperienced. PHILIPS, *Mrs. Bouverie*, 42.

They have been looking forward to us coming back. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXXI, 296.

The girds at Ferguson are composed ... and circulated solely to afford him the peculiarly Caledonian amusement of laughing at us laughing at him being laughed at by some one else. *Punch*, No. 3886, 524 a.

Compare: You must excuse my not being convinced by assurances only. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej*, Ch. XVIII, 99.

Mrs. Sedley had forgiven his breaking the punch-bowl. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 48.

6. Obs. I. When the gerund-clause represents the subject of the predicate in the head-clause, construction-A is almost regularly used wherever possible. Thus it would hardly do to replace it by the B-construction in:

i. Jane's marrying so greatly must throw them in the way of other rich men. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej*, Ch. XVIII, 102.

My girl's singing, after that little odious governess's, ... is unbearable. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 196.

Volumnia's finishing the sentence restores her to favour. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XL, 348.

ii. His accompanying them was a double advantage. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXI, 119.

His endeavouring to hoist himself up to a very high window-seat and his slipping down again appeared to prepare Toots's mind for the reception of a discovery. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 105.

Exceptions are rare and can sometimes be accounted for in some way or other. Thus in *And is a wench having a bastard all your news?* (FIELD., *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. X, 55*b*) the verbal in *ing* may be felt as the participle, the sentence being, perhaps, apprehended to be equivalent to *And is a wench who has a bastard all your news?*

A similar analysis may, perhaps, account for the use of construction-B in the following example quoted from JESPERSEN, *Tract XXV* of the Society for Pure English (See also KRUISINGA's comment on this sentence in *English Studies*, IX, III, 92): *Is the lady bothering you any reason for you to come bothering me?* SHAW. In *Young gentlemen calling at my apartments might cause remarks.* (M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XI) the use of the B-construction is, perhaps, also due to a condition being implied, the sentence being practically equivalent to *If young gentlemen called at my apartments, it might cause remarks* (Obs. VI).

In *I feel a bit unstrung, that beast caterwauling over yonder was just more than I could put up with* (CON. DOYLE, *Trag. of the Korosko*, Ch. I, 27) it may be the comparative infrequency of the name of an animal before a gerund that is responsible for the use of the B-construction.

II. Construction-A is hardly practicable when the preceding modifier of the gerund consists of more members than one, or is followed by some adjunct; thus it could not very well replace the B-construction in:

On the general and his staff appearing. O. E. D. s.v. *ing*.

Talk of us girls being vain, what are we to you? ТНАСК., *Es m.*, III, Ch. II, 323.

Will you vote for any Home Rule Bill which may pass Parliament being submitted to a poll of the people before it comes into operation. *Spectator* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5472).

Conversely we never find *us (you or them) all (or both)*, instead of *our (your or their) all (or both)*, before a gerund (Ch. XXXIII, 9); e.g.:

I have more than half an expectation of our all going abroad. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma*, Ch. XLIII, 343.

Emily was confused by our all observing her. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 71*b*.

Your mother will feel your both going away. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XVI, 161.

III. There seems to be a tendency to use construction-B after verbs which also admit of being construed with an accusative + infinitive, apparently owing to the latter often varying with an indubitable accusative + present participle (Ch. XX, 18 ff); e.g.:

I do not like him coming here so often. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2328.

I don't like my daughter playing hockey. CHESTERTON, (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3841, 793*a*).

I remember you telling me ... that sick people repelled you. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XIII, 68. (See, however, Ch. XVIII, 30, c).

In *As I am your father's friend, you might, for his sake, wish to*

prevent them murdering me. (TROL., Mac d., Ch. XIII, 214) the use of the B-construction may be due to the fact that *to prevent* is often construed with objective + *from* + gerund, two such sentences as *He prevented their (or them) murdering me* and *He prevented them from murdering me* differing but slightly, if at all, in meaning. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2332.

IV. In the case of the modifier of the gerund being a noun, the B-construction is, most probably, often preferred, because it is without the ambiguity which often attaches to the A-construction owing to the phonetic sameness of the genitive singular and the plural of almost all nouns. Thus in the spoken language *I insist on the boy going to bed at once* admits of only one interpretation, while the addition of the sibilant might render the sentence ambiguous.

V. Adjectives partially converted into nouns, when used to indicate a class of persons in a generalizing way (Ch. XXIX, 14), have no genitive, so that they can form no part of the A-construction.

I am not surprised at young or old falling in love with her. THACK, Pen d., I, Ch. XI, 117.

VI. Sometimes there is an appreciable semantic difference between the two constructions, as appears from a comparison of *Paul was quite alarmed at Mr. Feeder's yawning* (DICK., Dom b., Ch. XII, 104) with *Paul was quite alarmed at Mr. Feeder yawning*; and of *What do you think of my sister's singing?* with *What do you think of my sister singing?*

It will be observed that in the last example, *What do you think of my sister singing?* the B-construction is suggestive of a conditional clause: *What would you think if my sister sang?* differing from it chiefly in that the relation of condition is not implied, but explicitly expressed. The fact that some notion of a condition is in the speaker's mind may also account for the B-construction being used in the following examples quoted by MURRAY in the O. E. D., s. v. *ing*:

Papa did not care about them learning. THACK., Es m., I, 242.

What is the excuse of me speaking? READE, Har d Cash., II, 332.

7. a) Gerund-clauses containing a subject-indicating word sometimes vary with infinitive-clauses preceded by a (pro)noun in the objective case, i. e. they are sometimes used: 1) for an accusative + infinitive (Ch. XVIII, 30, c); 2) for a prepositional accusative + infinitive (Ch. XVIII, 39); 3) for an infinitive-clause with *for* + (pro)noun constituting some element of the head-clause (Ch. XVIII, 47). Compare the following pairs of examples:

i. There is no use my getting up till you are done. MOORE, Est h. Wat e r s, Ch. II, 10.

ii. There is no use for me to cry about the matter. KINGSLEY, We st w. Ho l, Ch. XIV, 118 b.

i. Anyhow it's worth while my having a game of golf-croquet with you. E. F. BENSON, Mr. Te d d y, Ch. II, 50.

ii. I feel quite certain it is worth while for you to be very industrious with your painting, *ib.*, Ch. II, 49.

i. It (sc. the letter) was not for your reading. BRIDGES, Hum. of the Court, I, 817 (Apparently a rare construction.)

ii. She sat in her bedroom, writing her secret thoughts for Wilfrid some day to read. GISSING, A Life's Morning, Ch. VII, 112.

Compare also the examples in Ch. XVIII, 46, a, ii with those in Ch. XIX, 68, ii.

1 No instances have been found of an interchanging of gerund-clauses of the above description with infinitive-clauses with *for* + (pro)noun not constituting an element of the head-clause. Compare the examples in Ch. XVIII, 47, Obs. I with those in Ch. XIX, 6, Obs. I.

b) Much more frequently is a gerund(-clause) found to vary with an infinitive(-clause) when it does not open with a subject-indicating word. Thus *I do not intend asking you for advice* = *I do not intend to ask you for advice*.

Sometimes the two constructions convey different shades of meaning, sometimes it is difficult to see any distinction. In some connections there is a more or less marked preference for either one or the other, in some the two seem to be used quite indifferently. It is with a consideration of these niceties that we shall be chiefly concerned in the following discussions.

c) It is impossible to replace a gerund(-clause) by an infinitive(-clause) when it is preceded by any other adnominal modifier than a noun (in the genitive or not), or a possessive (or objective personal) pronoun, as in *the doubling of this consonant, this doubling of this consonant*.

Note especially the idioms in: i. There is no being shot at without a little risk. SHER., Riv., V, 3, (279).

He was so high and conceited that there was no enduring him. JANE AUSTEN *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 17.

There was no believing a word she uttered. HALL CAINE, *Christ*, I, 15.

There was no mistaking the real nature of the trial through which he had passed. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XIV, 142.

Thus also when *never* takes the place of *no*, there is no alternative infinitive-construction, as in: There was never believing half of what that Bob said. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 18.

ii. It's snug lying in the Abbey. SHER., Riv., V, 3, (279).

It was awkward walking with both hands filled. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. IV, 33.

It's fine talking. *id.*, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VI, 47.

It was easy talking till you came to that. *id.*, *Mill*, II, Ch. III, 146. (Compare: It is very easy to talk. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. IV, 15 b.)

It is ill dancing with a heavy heart. *ib.*, VI, Ch. X, 407.

It's bad teaching an old dog tricks. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XIII, 103.

It's ill writing on one's back. THACK., (*ANDR. LANG, Ten.*, Ch. VI, 99).

8. Gerund-clauses are used in three grammatical functions, i.e. they answer to: a) subordinate statements, b) attributive adnominal adjuncts or clauses, c) adverbial adjuncts or clauses.

Thus *I remember having seen him* (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 325),

You would like to decide your own hour of getting up (DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XI), *She will not think the worse of you for being simply dressed* (JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXIX, 161) answer respectively to: *I remember that I have seen him, You would like to decide your own hour at which you get up. She will not think the worse of you because you are simply dressed.*

It must not, however, be supposed that the exchanging of a full clause for a gerund-clause is often possible, or vice versa; on the contrary, each construction mostly has its peculiar area of incidence. In the following discussions no attempt has been made to ascertain the cases where interchanging is, or is not, possible. Indeed, any detailed comparison of the two idioms would require an immense amount of time and labour, and swell the bulk of this grammar beyond practical limits.

A gerund(-clause) may also correspond to a predicative adnominal adjunct forming an adjunct of the object of the sentence (Ch. VI, 1). Only the verbs *to call* and *to make* have, however been found furnished with this construction. The subject may, therefore, be at once dismissed in this place.

i. I call this robbing Peter to pay Paul. PROV.

This, Sir Lucius, I call being ill-used. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 4, (252).

England is politically attached to that process which some call proceeding step by step, and others call taking two bites of a cherry. *Lond. News*, No. 3718, 124 a.

ii. I wanted you to ask me questions; it made telling easier. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. I, 26.

This made running difficult. WALPOLE, *Fortitude*, I, Ch. II (KRUIS., *English Studies*, IX, vi, 198).

GERUND-CLAUSES NOT CONTAINING A SUBJECT-INDICATING (PRO)NOUN.

SUCH AS ANSWER TO SUBORDINATE STATEMENTS.

9. A gerund(-clause) in the function of the subject either precedes or follows the head-clause. In the latter case it is announced by the anticipatory *it*. Gerunds that constitute simple elements of the sentence are rarely placed in end-position.
 - i. Playing with fire is dangerous.
Swimming is a healthy exercise.
 - ii. It is jolly having you home again. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 22.
10. With regard to the use of subjective gerunds or gerund-clauses, as compared with subjective infinitives or infinitive-clauses, when placed in front, the following observations may be made:

a) The gerund-construction is preferred in stating a general fact, and also in representing an action or state as permanent or customary at a certain time. This preference is especially observed in the case of gerunds constituting a simple element of the sentence. Compare SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2326; also DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, § 94. It is in harmony with this principle that the gerund is used in:

Hating one's neighbour is forbidden by the Gospel. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 368.

Talking mends no holes. Proverb.

Reading maketh a full man, conference a ready man, and writing an exact man. BACON, *Es.*, *On Studies*, 136.

Speaking well of all mankind is the worst kind of detraction. WYCH, *Plain Deal.*, I, I, 376).

Telling truth is a quality as prejudicial to a man that would thrive in the world, as square play to a cheat. *ib.*, I, I, (383).

There was a time when sermon-making was not so palatable to you as it seems to be at present. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 322.

There is nothing so bad as parting with one's friends. *ib.*, Ch. LIII, 323.

He (sc. Dr. Burney) seems to have thought that going to court was like going to heaven. MAC., *Mad. d'Arblay* (715*b*).

Travelling was recommended to her. *ib.*, (723*a*).

A sorrow's crown of sorrow is remembering happier things. TEN., *Locksley Hall*, 76.

Bullying was the least of the ill practices current among us. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, 6*a*.

Travelling in Australia was made an inexpensive process to us. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. XI, 147.

Drinking the waters was only a small portion of the torture I experienced during that memorable month. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, V, 73.

Arranging flowers is a favourite pastime of mine. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 55.

b) The infinitive construction is preferred in referring to special circumstances of an action or state. Thus *To delay is dangerous* (BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 24) is almost equivalent to *To delay is dangerous in the present circumstances*. Changing the tense of the verb to *be* in *Playing with fire is dangerous* would probably entail the substitution of the infinitive for the gerund: *To play with fire was (will be, would be) dangerous*.

It follows that when some notion of condition is implied, the infinitive will mostly be used in preference to the gerund. Thus *To do this properly requires time* (MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, 247) clearly suggests some such sentence as *If you wish to do this properly, you must take your time over it*. Some vague notion of condition is discernible in some of the following examples:

To pity, without the power to relieve, is still more painful than to ask and be denied. SHER., *School*, V, I, (423).

These parties were acceptable to all: to avoid a family circle was even more desirable to such as did think, than such as did not. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LI, 311.

To be guarded at such a time is very difficult. *ib.*, Ch. XLVII, 285.

To trace all the turns and doublings of his course, during the year 1689 and the earlier part of 1690, would be wearisome. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, VII, Ch. XVIII, 2.

To see her asleep would have been a pretty sight. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 213.

Her voice was so low and sweet, that to hear it was like listening to sweet music. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXI, 213.

To live amidst general regard, though it be but the regard of working people, is like sitting "in the sunshine, calm and sweet." *CH. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXII, 450.

To know myself had been all along my constant study. *BURNS*, *Let. to Dr. Moore*, 55*a*.

To offer a man friendship when love is in his heart is like giving a loaf of bread to one who is dying of thirst. *FRANF. MOORE*, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. IX, 80.

To hang about a stable, and collect a gang of the most disreputable dogs to be found in the town, and lead them out to march round the slums to fight other disreputable dogs, is Montmorency's idea of "life." *JEROME*, *Three Men*, Ch. II, 22.

To work hard, but without too great method, to drink hard, but with perfect method, and to talk nineteen to the dozen, anywhere except at home — was his mode of life. *GALSW.*, *Freelands*, Ch. XIII, 111—2.

Note. An apt illustration of the difference which may be observed between the subjective gerund and infinitive is given by *KRUISINGA* (*Handb.*, § 489): "we can say *To talk for hours at a stretch is more exhausting than you seem to think*. It would be said, for example, by a man who had spoken for a long time. But the gerund *talking* would be substituted if the observation was made in the course of a conversation on the physical effects of speaking for a long time by persons not thinking of their own experiences."

For illustration see also Ch. XVIII, 2 and 5.

c) These distinctions are, however, far from being regularly observed — naturally so. Here follow some examples in which, according to the above theory, the alternative construction would seem to be more appropriate. See especially *CURME*, *Hist. of the Eng. Ger. in E. S.* XLV, 378 ff.

i. Staring about aimlessly will do no good. *ONIONS*, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 180.

Crying will not help you out of the difficulty. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, 247.

Seeing how fresh and simple and happy your life is out here makes me more out of heart than ever with my own home. *EDNA LYALL*, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. II, 20.

ii. To love one's enemies is a Christian duty. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 388.

To err is human, to forgive divine. *POPE*, *Es. on Crit.*, II, 325.

Among the Highlanders generally, to rob was thought as least as honourable an employment as to cultivate the soil. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, VII, Ch. XVIII, 5.

To possess a ghost is a distinction above titles. *MER.*, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. I, 4.

To seem injured is always a luxury; sometimes a necessity, whether among boys or men. *ib.*, Ch. VII, 44.

a) An infinitive(-clause) can hardly be replaced by a gerund (-clause): 1) in adverbial clauses of exception belonging to specializing statements, as in:

There is nothing left but to submit. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 196.

There is nothing for it but to pay. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XX, 210.

There was nothing left for it but to drive home again. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norse., Ch. XXX, 267.

There remains no more but to thank you for your courteous attention. O. E. D., s. v. *but*, 5.

Compare with these examples: In this world there is nothing but meeting and parting. READE, Never too Late, Ch. IX, 95.

It is only a fool who talks as if there were nothing in the world but marrying and giving in marriage. BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night, Ch. VIII, 71.

2) when negated, as in:

Not to have hope is the poorest of all conditions. PROVERB.

For not to desire or admire, if a man could learn it, were more | Than to walk all day like the sultan of old in a garden of spice. TEN., MAUD, I, IV, VII.

Not to follow your leader whithersoever he may think proper to lead; to back out of an expedition because the end of it frowns dubious, and the present fruit of it is discomfort; to quit a comrade on the road, and return home without him; these are tricks which no boy of spirit could be guilty of. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. III, 16.

3) On the other had the gerund-construction seems to be the rule: 1) in both the first and the second member of a comparison. See, however, Ch. XVIII, 47, Obs. I, 2.

i. Joe Miller never made such a joke as sending it to Bob's will be. DICK., Christm. Car., V, 95.

Clear knowledge of what one does not know is just as important as knowing what one does know. HUXLEY, Pref. to Hume (Introd. to HUXLEY, Es.)

Nothing ruins the voice so soon as straining it before it has reached maturity. Mrs. ALEX., A life Int., I, Ch. III, 53.

There is nothing makes a man look so supremely ridiculous as losing his hat. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, V, 73.

ii. Listening to the Chela's conversation was better than remaining there. ANSTEY, A Fallen Idol, Ch. III, 118.

Even if I only sat on the doorstep, it would be better than lying in this close hot room, tossing from side to side, unable to sleep. HUGH CONWAY, Called back, Ch. I, 9

There is nothing irritates me more than seeing other people doing nothing when I am working. JEROME, Three Men, Ch. IV, 42.

That's better than painting the thing merely to pique Maisie. RUDY. KIPL., Light, Ch. VIII, 108.

Doing anything is better than doing nothing. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXXVIII, 358.

Considerations of euphony have, no doubt acted as an additional factor towards the gerund being preferred to the infinitive in:

Nothing is more disagreeable than having to discuss money matters. TROL. Belt. Est., Ch. X, 118.

But the infinitive appears frequently enough in such comparisons; thus in the following examples, in some of which this construction may have been preferred owing to the implied notion of condition:

Nothing can be a greater indication of meanness of heart in any man than to see him destitute of it. HUME, Es., III, 23.

There is nothing so easy as to forget. SHER., Riv., I, 2, (220).

Nothing would be more disadvantageous to a young lady than to be known as a novel-writer. Mac., Mad. d'Arblay, (105 a).

The thing was as impossible as to mould my irregular features to his correct and elastic pattern. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 490.

In my opinion, to give inflections without explaining their use is as absurd as it would be to teach the names of the different parts of a machine without explaining their use. SWEET, *A. S. Prim.*, Pref., 7.

X 2) when a notion of cause or reason is implied, as in :

Losing his fortune drove him mad. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³¹, § 198.

Talking of great occasions and the Muses reminds me of our good Rienzi's invitation to the Lateran. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. III, 83.

Speaking of comic songs and parties reminds me of a curious incident, at which I once assisted. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. VIII, 93.

He said that bringing home that trout had saved him from a whacking. *ib.*, Ch. XVII, 224.

In the following example the infinitive may have been preferred owing to the additional notion of condition that is implied :

One would have thought that to come down in the world would have cowed him a little. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nobs.*, Ch. XXII, 202.

11. a) When the head-clause precedes, the gerund-construction is less common than the infinitive-construction, except for sentences which open with certain negative locutions, for which see 12. Substituting a gerund for the infinitive in the following examples would cause them to clash with idiomatic propriety :

It is more blessed to give than to take. *Bible*, *Acts*, XX, 35.

It is better to dwell in a corner of a house-top than with a brawling woman in a wide house. *id.*, *Prov.*, XXI, 9.

It was starvation to offend her. WASH. IRV., *Doll Heyl.*, (108).

It will be my endeavour to relate the history of the people as well as the history of the government. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 3.

It was absolutely necessary to strike some daring blow. *id.*, *Clive*, (505 *b*).

It was not fair to treat you so. ANSTEY, *Fallen Idol*, Ch. VII, 119.

It is a dangerous habit to finger loaded firearms in the pocket of one's dressing-gown. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. of Sherl. Holm.*, I, E, 223,

b) When the gerund is used, it is felt, together with its complements, to do duty as a repeated subject, the gerund(-clause) being added to explain what is meant by the indistinct *it*. Thus in the following examples the gerund(-clause) performs the same function as the nouns placed in back-position in *It is entirely of the earth, that passion* (BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 28), *He was a wonderful man, that uncle of yours* (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2100) :

It was not pleasant coming near him. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 984.

It will be a sad thing, parting with her. *ib.*, Ch. XXXIII, 339.

It is tough work fagging away at a language with no master but a lexicon. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXVIII, 408.

It is very delightful being towed up by a launch. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XVI, 211.

I asked the landlord of an inn up the river once if it did not injure him, listening to the tales that the fishermen about there told him. *ib.*, Ch. XVII, 218.

It's a horrid feeling not being able to control oneself. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nobs.*, Ch. XVI, 146.

It was never any fun playing with him when we were children. *ib.*, Ch. XIX, 175.

It is wretched having him so far away, and not knowing what is happening to him. *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 123.

It is hard work climbing up to the Ideals. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VI, 23. It was difficult enough getting acquainted with her. JACK LONDON, *Mart. Eden*, I, Ch. II, 22.

It was a shock just now meeting you. VACHELL, *Quinnneys*, II, Ch. XV, II, 186.

For further discussion and illustration of the repeated subject see Ch. II, 43. Compare also Ch. IV, 10.

Note a). It will be observed that in these constructions no systematic practice is observed as to the use of the comma.

β) The above construction should be carefully distinguished from that in which a gerund preceded by an adjective is the nominal part of the predicate (7, c, ii), as in:

It is ill dancing with a heavy heart. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. X, 407.

12. The negative locutions referred to in the preceding §, after which the gerund-construction is the rule, are *It is no good*, *It is (of) no (little, not any, etc.) use*, and phrases of a similar import, thus in:

i. It is no good hiding the truth. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. III, 31.

It is no good saying pretty things to him if he really can read thoughts. ANSTEY, *Fal. Idol*, Ch. VIII, 116.

ii. It is of no use mincing matters or making secrets. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 333 b.

It is no use crying over spilled milk. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, L, 207.

It is no use talking about it now. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 39.

It is little use mincing matters in an affair of this kind. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. V, 43.

I don't suppose it is any use trying to make you understand. L. B. WALFORD, *Stay-at-homes*, Ch. I.

What's the use going on that way before the girls there, and Feemy too? TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. III, 13.

iii. It is useless grieving. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 546.

It is useless talking about this. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 189, 232.

iv. Is it worth while trying to guess whence this expression came? SKEAT. Is it worth while referring any longer to the management of English railways? *Times*.

v. When a man has this sort of vocation, it is all nonsense attempting to elude it. THACK., *Snoobs*, Pref. Rem., 12.

vi. They said it would be like taking coals to Newcastle, helping a boy on a Wednesday. JEROME, *Sketches*.

It is a mere waste of money answering these things. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XVIII, 163.

The following examples are intended to show that the use of the infinitive is far from being excluded after these phrases:

i. It is no good to tell lies. RID. HAG., *Jess*, Ch. XXIV, 224.

ii. He declared it was of no use to work on his farm. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 35.

It is of no use to deceive you. HALL CAINE, *Deemst.*, Ch. XVIII, 126.

It is of no use to advertise the fact that you are interested in Jack's doings. MAR. CRAWF. *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VI, 109.

iii. It is useless to talk of it. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLIX, 298.

It is useless to lie unless you can lie so like the truth that you are believed. W. J. DAWSON, *The Making of Eng. Fict.*, Ch. I, 3.

iv. It is needless to attempt describing the particular character of young people. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (239).

13. Obs. I. A variant of *It is no good* is the phrase *There is no good*, which seems to be regularly constructed with a gerund(-clause); thus in:

There is no good meeting trouble half way. *Tit-Bits*.

There's no good frightening them now. BRET HARTE, *Outc. of Poker Flat*, 25.

Variants of *It is (of) no*, (*little, not any*, etc.) *use*, are *There is no (little, not any, etc.) use*, which may be constructed with a gerund- or an infinitive(-clause); and *There is no (little, not any, etc.) use in*, which, of course, requires a gerund-construction.

i. There is no use saying any more about it. ANSTEY, *Fal. Idol*, Ch. XVI, 214.

There is no use telling what followed during the next five minutes. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 70 b.

ii. There is no use to describe the grand gala. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 51.

There was no use, however, to make this confession. *id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. X, 123.

iii. There is no use in beating about the bush. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. XXXIV, 341.

There is no use in running one's head any longer against a stone wall. *ib.*, Ch. XXXIV, 342.

There could be no use in presenting herself at the office. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XIV.

II. The affirmative *It is worth while*, and its variations, is, apparently, more frequently followed by an infinitive-clause than a gerund-clause. Usage is, however, divided, as the following groups of examples show:

i. I wonder whether it would be worth any gentleman's while, now, to buy that observation for the Papers. DICK., *Chimes*³, I, 13. (The speaker is an illiterate person.)

You might know I should hardly think it was worth while to unpin a bed, and go to all that trouble now. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. XII, 421.

It is worth while again to remind all concerned that hard cases, which any lively orator can set forth in a formidable light, are found to present no insuperable difficulty in practice. *Times*.

It might be worth while to mention that there's a train leaves Pangbourne, I know, soon after five. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XIX, 244.

ii. It is quite worth while making a general study of the grammar and vocabulary of the language. SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, § 53.

It must have been worth while having a mere ordinary plague now and then in London to get rid of both the lawyers and the Parliament. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XVI, 210.

14. In the function of the nominal part of the predicate the gerund(-clause) is more frequent than the infinitive(-clause) when the subject is the demonstrative *this* or *that*, or the weakened demonstrative *it*. The infinitive, however, appears often enough as a rival construction, as a comparison of the following groups of examples may show:

- This is carrying the joke a little too far. GAY, *Beg. Op.*, II, 1.
 It is giving you a great deal of trouble. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 1, (257).
 'Twas throwing words away. WORDSW., *We are seven*.
 It was, however, but smoothing a few steps to the grave. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Book*, XI, 110.
 This was really carrying matters a little too far. DICK., *Chimes*, I, 35.
 But that will be giving you so much trouble. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nones*, Ch. XXXIII, 288.
 But won't it be poaching? SWEET, *Old Chapel*.
 This is, indeed, finding Saul among the prophets. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. IV, 63.
 This is driving me into a corner. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XIV.
 But this is anticipating, *Stead's Annual*, 1905, 24 b.
 This is really warning the lamb not to lie down with the lion. *Manch. Guard.*, 5/3, 1926, 182 d.
 ii. This would, indeed, be to heap coals of fire on that haughty head. MAC., *Fred.*, (691 b).
 But this is to anticipate. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 189, 225 a.
 It is stated that there are to-day in Great Britain 7,000,000 of unemployed.
 This is certainly to look at things through the big end of the telescope. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5054, 2 b.
 This is to play the enemy's game. *Times*, No. 1982, 1015 a.
 That is to beg the question. *Manch. Guard.*, V, 28, 341 c.
 That is to reckon without the real significance of the invention. *ib.*, VI, 14, 275 d.
 This, however, would be to treat a grave matter with levity. *ib.*, VI, 14, 275 c.

Note. The infinitive-construction is regularly used when a relation of purpose is to be expressed, as in *This is to let you know*. Observe that in this case *to be* is not devoid of meaning, as it is in the preceding examples.

This is not to say that beneath the froth there is not a serious question. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6441, 1 b.

15. When the subject is or contains a gerund, the gerund-construction is almost regularly used in the nominal part of the predicate also. In like manner an infinitive in the subject almost regularly causes an infinitive to be used in the nominal part of the predicate. The distinction between the two constructions is, in general, that described in 10 a. See also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2326. When negated, the infinitive-construction is, however, the only one used. It is worth observing that complexes with two infinitives are more common than those with two gerunds, and that the former more frequently and more distinctly suggest a relation of condition than the latter.

i. Saving is having. *Proverb*.

Seeing is believing. FARQUHAR, *Recr. Of.*, IV, 3, (320).

Extending empire is often diminishing power. GOLDS. (R. ASHE KING, *O. I. Golds.*, Ch. X, 116).

Paying them (sc. tradesmen) is only encouraging them. SHER., *School*, IV, 2, (406).

Marjorie murmured that teaching was not straining. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I. Ch. III, 53.

ii. * To be united is to be strong. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 24.

To be good is to be happy. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 159.

To marry is to be a child again, and play with the same rattle always. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, V, 2, (295).

To smile at a jest which plants a thorn in another's breast is to become a principal in the mischief. SHER., *School*, I, 1, (367).

To be blessed thus is to be happy. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (468).

To generalize is always to destroy effect. SCOTT, *Brid. of Trierm.*, Pref.

To say that I am a Fitz-Boodle is to say at once that I am a gentleman. THACK., *Fitz-Boodle's Conf.*, I, (203).

To admire the book is to admire the author. MAC., *Boswell's Life of Johnson*, (177 b).

To hear once was to remember with Donovan. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, I, 24.

To influence a person is to give him one's own soul. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. II, 28.

To employ a bomb is to admit that you are at the end of your resources. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 222, 542 a.

** Not to go forward in the way of virtue is to go backwards. *Proverb*.

Not to repent a fault, is to justify it. *ib.*

Not to oversee workmen is to leave them your house (*or* purse) open. *ib.*

To give Martin Lightfoot a yard of law was never to come up with him again. KINGSLEY, *Here w.*, Ch. I, 12 b.

Here follow some examples in which the construction in the subject and that in the predicate differ. Such as have an infinitive in the former and a gerund in the latter appear to be least exceptional. In fact, of the alternative construction only one example has come to hand.

i. To force me into this marriage would be killing me. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, VI, Ch. VII, 95 b.

To throw the handle after the hatchet is a comprehensible act of desperation, but to throw one's pocket-knife after an implacable friend is clearly in every sense a hyperbole, or throwing beyond the mark. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VI, 43. (The gerund-construction is occasioned by the preceding noun.)

Not to go to a division is hedging, isn't it? J. M. BARRIE, *What Every Woman Knows*, III, 83.

To speak of it (*sc.* Mr. Baldwin's speech) as inaugurating a new epoch is altogether overshooting the mark. *Westm. Gaz.*, 143, 1925, 575 c.

ii. Talking is not always to converse. COWPER, *Conversation*, 7.

Note a) The *ing*-form is a present participle in: To make Jim look "proper" was becoming to him an unending entertainment. A. E. W. MASON, *The House of the Arrow*, Ch. XI, 135.

β) The subjective infinitive-clause may be announced by the anticipating *it* in the predicative infinitive; thus in:

It would be to minimise their importance to call the speeches delivered last week by Mr. Lloyd George to the Trade Unions remarkable. *The New Age*, No. 1176, 553 a.

γ) In the following example the infinitive-construction may have been chosen to mark the suddenness of the transition:

He had seen the lovely Crinoline. To see was to admire; to admire was to love; to love — that is to love her ... was to despair. TROLL., *Three Clerks*, Ch. XXII, 259.

δ) The same identity of construction is, presumably, the rule when the connexion is effected by a quasi-copula, such as *to mean*, as in:

To be closer to her aunt meant to be closer to Derek. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXVI, 238.

16. When the subject of the sentence is an ordinary noun or a full clause, there appears to be a predilection for the gerund-construction in case there are only short adjuncts or none at all, for the infinitive-construction when the adjunct is more elaborate; in the main, subject, presumably, to the principles mentioned in 10. This seems to be borne out by a comparison of the following groups of examples:

i. Nature's chief master-piece is writing well. POPE, *Es. on Crit.*, III, 724. But the great devices for killing the time are quarrelling and flirting. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (601 a).

Adrian curbed his desire to ask Sir Austin whether an attempt to counteract the just working of the law was doing right. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. X, 63. His great misfortune was being ploughed for the army. PINERO, *Iris*, I, (10).

ii. His principal object must be to discover the number of the hackney coach. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 286.

His chief wish at present was to have as little trouble in the business as possible. *ib.*, Ch. L, 302.

The highest proof of virtue is to possess boundless power without abusing it. MAC., *Addison*, (756 b).

His habit is to regale his readers with four false quantities to a page. *ib.*, (736 a).

Yet, unless I greatly deceive myself, the general effect of this chequered narrative will be to excite thankfulness in all religious minds. *id.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 2.

The Colonel's object ... was to rescue his brother-in-law. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 287.

What makes me miserable is to feel that his life is, as it were, over. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nobs.*, Ch. XVIII, 165.

Mr. Dugmore's object was not to describe the country, but to photograph the animals which swarm all over it. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5243, 9c.

There is, apparently, a distinct preference for the infinitive-construction when the nominal predicate is a combination with the copula *to be*, as in: Her nature was to be civil to enemies as well as to friends, and grateful to all the world for letting her remain alive. HARDY, *Return*, I, Ch. III, 24.

The variety of construction in the following quotation may speak for itself:

The business of her life was to get her daughters married; its solace was visiting and news. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. I, 9

17. As to the use of verbals and undeveloped clauses in the function of the non-prepositional object, we find that some verbs require, or at least prefer, a gerund(-clause), some an infinitive (-clause), while a large number may be constructed with either, mostly with some variation of meaning.

18. The gerund-construction appears to be used practically to the exclusion of the infinitive-construction:

a) after some verbs denoting some activity of the reasoning faculties and the uttering of its results, especially such as indicate an acknowledging (or the reverse), a declaring, or a

remembering. It should, however be borne in mind that most, if not all of these verbs are far more frequently found with a full clause than a gerund-clause. See Ch. XVIII, 8, *b*. Most of them are not unfrequently furnished with a *to*-complement (Ch. III, 48). The following verbs have been found followed by a gerund(-clause):

to acknowledge: I acknowledge having been at such a meeting. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXXI, 94 *b*.

to admit: I admit giving her a good thrashing. *II. Police News*.

to deny: I do deny, most resolutely, being privy to any of their designs. *ib.*, Ch. XXXV, 94 *b*.

Denny denied knowing anything of their plan. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 283.

to disclaim: He disclaims having tempted Eve in the shape of a serpent. BYRON, *Cain*, *Intro.*

Lord Tweedmouth disclaimed entering into any comparison of the individual ships thus grouped. *Ninet. Cent.*

to doubt: Nor do we doubt being able to satisfy the most curious reader. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, II, Ch. XIII, 107.

to forswear, in the meaning of *to deny*: He will forswear receiving a letter from her. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 2, (210).

Note. According to the O. E. D. the two alternative constructions with an infinitive or a full clause are now obsolete. SHAKESPEARE has: That self chain about his neck | Which he forswore most monstrously to have. *Com. of Er.*, V, I, II. See also Ch. XVIII, 9, Obs. III.

In the meaning of *to abjure* the verb may be construed with an infinitive, but instances appear to be rare. The O. E. D. mentions two, both taken from SHAKESPEARE: She hath forsworn to love. *Rom. & Jul.*, I, I, 229.

The thing I have forsworn to grant. *Cor.*, V, 3, 80.

to mention: He mentioned having read it in the paper. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. XVI, 283.

Lady Newdigate mentioned going to have her portrait painted by him (sc. Romney). G. E. MITTON, *Jane Austen & her Times*, Ch. I, 8.

to own: He owned having come thither at the same time with the champions of Eachin MacIn. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIII, 353.

to reject: She rejected hearing the extent of your guilt. HOR. WALP., *Castle of Otr.*, Ch. II, 78.

to report: The captain reported having been in collision below Dungeness with the Spanish steamship *Enero* from Huelva. *Times*.

b) after many verbs not answering to a general description, among others:

to adore, as in: I adore being engaged. EL. GLYN, *Halcyone*, Ch. XXIX, 254.

to advocate, as in: He advocated making war upon the brewers. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 193, 93 *b*.

He advocated giving women a share of the ancient educational endowments. *ib.*, No. 205, 24 *b*.

to anticipate as in: Those who favour the scheme anticipate receiving the boy for training at the age of fourteen. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6317, 7 *b*.

to ape, as in: It is far more reasonable that a young fellow should wish to represent himself a little older than he is, than that an old man should ape being young. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, A. 13.

to attribute, as in: May I know to what accident I must attribute not having the honour of your hand? FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XI, 25.

to avoid, as in: He carefully avoided giving the least sign of recognition. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXXIX, 108 *a*.

Hypatia had always avoided carefully discussing with Philammon any of those points on which she differed from his former faith. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XV, 736.

He could not avoid sitting in judgment on him. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. II, 23.

Note. In older English, and archaically in Present-day English, *to avoid* is also found with an infinitive-construction; thus in: Horace . . . in praising the emperor and congratulating Marcellus, avoids to make either seem his main subject. F. NEWMAN, *Odes of Horace*, 185 (O. E. D. s. v. *avoid*, 11).

to bar, as in: I bar kissing altogether. BARRY PAIN, *Miss Slater*.

to boast, as in: We boast being the Court end of the town. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, *Chron.* of the *Canongate*.

to chuck, as in: I've chucked publishing. GALSW., *Silv. Spoon*, I, Ch. II, 7.

to contemplate, as in: He contemplates undertaking it at the earliest convenient season. WEBST., *Dict.*

She seriously contemplated becoming a Catholic. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. V, 92.

To those who do contemplate making Oxford their starting-place, I would say, take your own boat. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XIX, 235.

defer, as in: I have deferred furnishing my Closet with Authors, till I receive your advice. ADDISON, *Spect.*, XCII.

I had intended to have deferred writing till I heard of her return to Howard Grove. Miss BURNEY, *Evelina*, XV, 49.

I would not defer attending to her desire longer than is absolutely necessary. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 279.

I had better defer telling you what little more there is to tell. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XI, Ch. I, 311.

Note. Only in the older writers are instances found with the infinitive-construction; thus in: The longer thou deferrest to be acquainted with them, the less every day thou wilt find thyself disposed to them. ATTERBURY, (O. E. D., s. v. *defer*, 2, *b*).

to deprecate, as in: Lord Salisbury deprecated removing child traders from the streets, until something was first done to secure employment and training for them. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5567, 7 *a*.

(*to have*) *done*, as in: He was as wicked as the oldest rake, years ere he had done growing. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. II, 165.

to drop, as in: The curate dropped calling. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VIII, 35 *a*.

to encourage, as in: One of the methods by which they endeavoured to accomplish this was by encouraging tale-bearing. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 59.

to entail, as in: A visit to London entails bringing gifts for friends. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 36.

A countryman's visit to London entails buying presents for his friends. *ib.*, I, 34.

to escape, as in: How 'scaped I killing when I crossed you so? SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 3, 150.

The monkeys suppress their powers of elocution to escape being set to work. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XII, 49 *a*.

We escaped being noticed and punished. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

Note. Also found with *from* + gerund(-clause.) (32).

to evade, as in: I have evaded giving an answer to his main proposition. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 96 *b*.

He had seemed inclined to evade answering my question. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XI, Ch. 1, 310.

to excite, as in: The unheard- of arrival of letters would arouse suspicion and excite questioning. JOHN OXENHAM, *A Simple Beguiler* (SWAEN, Sel., II, 145).

to facilitate, as in: The acquisition in early life of Greek and Latin... does not at all facilitate travelling on the Continent. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, L, 187.

to fancy, as in: i. Fancy finding you in the train! PUNCH.

ii. I don't, for my part, much fancy retiring into the country. THACKERAY, *Pend.* So you don't fancy going with the old lady to Tunbridge Wells? *id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XVII, 171.

NOTE. After *to fancy* as used in the meaning of the first example, the gerund-construction is regular only when the verb is in the imperative mood. In other cases a full clause is used (Ch. XVIII, 8, b). The use of the infinitive, met with in Early Modern English, is now obsolete (O. E. D., 1. c).

to feel, as in: They will feel saying good-bye. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 330.

to finish, as in: I have only just finished dusting. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 31.

She had finished correcting the last revises of Jemima's Vow. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XI, 111.

The card mentioned dropped on the table as I finished reading the note. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. II, 23.

NOTE. In the obsolete meaning of *to succeed completely in (doing)*, the verb was anciently construed with an infinitive(-clause); thus in: Yet have I not finished to attain the right Method. WORLIDGE, *Syst. Agric.*, 185 (O. E. D., 2).

to funk, as in: Why do you funk going into the wood? TEMPLE THURST., *Antag.*, Ch. VII, 54.

to give over (or *up*), as in: i. When a woman has five grown-up daughters, she ought to give over thinking of her own beauty. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. I, 8.

Give over studying; ye've done enough for to-night. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXVIII, 408. (The speaker is an illiterate woman.)

ii. It will be as well to give up paying any attention to history. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 88 b.

I gave up counting my paces. HUGH CONWAY, *Called back*, Ch. I, 11.

NOTE. The use of an infinitive after *to give over*, is now obsolete. The O. E. D. (63, a) quotes: Why then give over to be Emperour? BRATHWAIT, *Lives Rom. Emp.*, 161.

to grudge, as in: Miss Matty did grudge burning these letters, it was evident. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. V, 95.

to imagine, as in: Can you imagine sending Kit out of England at fourteen to some Godforsaken end of the world? GALSW., *Silv. Spoon*, I, Ch. II, 11.

to imply, as in: This implied doing something she would dread to be discovered in. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, V, Ch. I, 279.

To do that implies taking a burden of responsibility in the affairs of the whole world. *Westm. Gaz.*, 30 12, 1922, 2 b.

to include, as in: 'Attendance', too, did not, apparently, include drawing down the blind or turning down the bed. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XIII, 103.

to justify, as in: If we judged in that way, there would be a warrant for all treachery and cruelty — we should justify breaking the most sacred ties that can be formed on earth. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. XIV, 440.

to leave off, as in: They recommended caps and ribands with an air of

so much importance that I wished to ask them how long they had left off wearing them. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, X, 19.

Fred must leave off being idle. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXVI, 254.

Note. In older English the verb is also found construed with an infinitive; thus in: They left off to build the city. Bible, *Gen.*, XI, 8.

Now, my Lord Hastings and Sir William Stanley, | Leave off to wonder why I drew you hither, | Into this chiefest thicket of the park. SHAK., *Henry VI*, C, IV, 5, 2.

To leave, an archaic or literary, but not uncommon variant of the above, is found construed either with a gerund- or an infinitive(-clause), with the former, apparently, more frequently than with the latter; thus: i. Is not the leaf turn'd down | Where I left reading? SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 3, 274

And she left speaking unto her. Bible, *Ruth*, I, 18.

She vowed that as she was sure of his guilt, she would never leave tormenting him till he had owned it. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. VI, 24 b.

You'd better leave finding fault wi' my kin till you've left off quarrelling with your own. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. XII, 111.

ii. I cannot leave to love. SHAK., *Two Gent*, II, 6, 17.

Once more | I tell you, they are dead; but leave to threaten, | For you shall know no further. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, I, 1, (249).

I beg your pardon, and leave to laugh at you. WYCH., *Plain Deal*, II, 1, (415).

Instead of the above constructions we also find *to leave from* + gerund, which seems to be unusual; e.g.: And there he knelt and vowed a vow to God and St. Guthlac and the lady Torfrida, his true love, never to leave from slaying while there was a Frenchman left alive on English ground. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XX, 88 a.

to lose, as in: I have made it a rule in life never to lose securing a good opportunity. LYTTON, *My Novel*, II, IX, Ch. XIII, 127.

to miss, as in: I seem to want some faculty of mind that I ought to have . . .

I really think that I have missed acquiring it. DICK., *Co p.*, Ch. XXXIX, 282 b.

to necessitate, as in: This would necessitate putting the preposition at the end of the clause. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2126.

to postpone, as in: He readily postponed seeing him till after the departure of the former. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 317.

He decided to postpone revealing the fact. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. XI, 467.

Note. According to the O. E. D. "in 16th c., also with inf." The word does not occur in SHAKESPEARE'S works.

to practise, as in: Twenty-nine of us had a dancing-master on purpose, and practised waltzing in a room over the Egyptian Hall, at the Mansion House. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 44.

We must study the value of words, and practise using them easily. Rev. of Rev., No. 194, 205 a.

Note. The O. E. D. (5) states "Also with *obj. inf.*," but fails to give any example. There can hardly be any doubt that the infinitive-construction after this verb is now very rare.

provoke, as in: emetic: a medicine that provokes vomiting. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*

to put off, as in: He determines . . . to put off buying the new edition of Bayle's Dictionary. MAC., *Addison*, (753 a).

I have put off writing till the last moment. *Punch*, *Life's Little Difficulties*, IX, viii.

to relish, as in: It is questionable whether any man quite relishes being mistaken for any other man. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 12.

I rather relish mortifying her vanity. EM. BRONTE, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VIII, 37 b.

But the tourist probably does not relish disguising his complexion into that of a mulatto. *Daily Mail* (LLOYD, North. Eng., 88).

to renounce, as in: Faraday, at a certain period of his career, formally renounced dining out. TYNDALL, *Lect. & Es.*, 77a.

to resent, as in: He rather resented being winked at and talked of, as if he did not understand everything. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, II, Ch. XVI, 254. She resented being left a moment alone. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, III, Ch. XXIII, 196b.

The audience resents taking anything seriously at the theatre. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 200, 157a.

to resist, as in: I cannot, for my life, resist wishing for the pleasures they offer me. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, VIII, 15.

I cannot resist giving another scene, which was witnessed by this naturalist. DARWIN, *Desc.*, Ch. IV, 101.

Tremaine could not resist imparting the outlines of his grand scheme to Sybil. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XI, 179.

On his way he could not resist going into his dressing-room. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 365.

to resume, as in: I cannot resist writing to tell you with what great pleasure I have recently resumed reading the *Saturday Westminster*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8132, 23a.

to risk, as in: I won't risk losing sight of the charge committed to me. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*.

He valued the new understanding between himself and his son too highly to risk losing it again by any open reproach. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 381.

Lord Salisbury preferred to risk war with the Boers rather than to risk offending Mr. Chamberlain. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 194, 167b.

to sanction, as in: He had officially sanctioned flogging. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 194, 338b.

to set up, as in: He set up conjuring. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 216. He would be ... able to set up stone-cutting for himself there. HARDY, *Jude*, V, Ch. VIII, 402.

to shirk, as in: I am as tired as if I were hard at work, and shirk walking. HUXLEY, *Life & Let.*, II, 368.

I say — you won't shirk talking to Lady Henry. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daught.*, I, Ch. V, 396.

We have shirked keeping our obligations to our South-African fellow-subjects. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 193, 5b.

to stop, as in: The pines stopped moaning. BRET HARTE, *Luck of Roar. Camp*, 6.

He stopped speaking. MAR. CRAWF. *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. X, 188.

to tolerate, as in: No man can tolerate being treated as a foreigner in his own native land. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 231, 26a.

to try, as in: She had tried writing, and had failed. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. III, 47.

I tried laughing at him and I tried arguing, but it was all of no use. EM. LAWLESS, *A Colonel of the Empire*, Ch. VII.

John Bull: I don't know what to do with her (sc. Ireland). I've tried everything! I've tried not giving her what she wanted, and I've tried giving her what she didn't want. I've tried coaxing and I've tried kicking! And now she talks about getting a Divorce. *Westm. Gaz.*, *Cartoon*.

Note. In this meaning, *to make an experiment with*, the verb requires the gerund-construction. For the construction with an infinitive, or its variant with *and* see Ch. X, 14.

I (sc. More) tried as hard to keep out of court as most men try to get into it. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § IV, 316.

to understand, as in: I can't understand marrying without love. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. XII, 224.

to urge, as in: A few of the committee had urged hanging him as a possible example. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, 19.

to withhold, as in: I could not withhold giving some loose to my indignation. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, II, Ch. XI, 58*a*.

In conclusion a few examples are offered in which the verbal *ing* is not a pure gerund, denoting as it does an act or ability acquired by assiduous practice of an action, rather than the action itself. See Ch. LVI, 57, *b*.

He went to York to study conveyancing. W. M. ROSSETTI, *Shelley's Adon.*, *Mem. of Shel.*, 5.

She had studied nursing as a science and a system. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 152.

I understand book-keeping. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. X, 85.

19. The construction with an infinitive is the normal one: *a*) after most verbs that are also attended by a person-object, either without or with a preposition. For examples with those that have a person-object without a preposition see also Ch. III, 45.

i. She entreated us to remain. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*, § 397, N.

He taught them to fly kites and shoot marbles. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 34. (Compare Ch. XVIII, 15.)

I commissioned a mutual friend to break the matter to this gentleman. THACK., *Snobs*, Ch. I, 14

ii. He took on himself to regulate every department of the administration. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (613*b*).

He called to Clancy to be sure to send one (sc. a telegram). MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VI, 104.

Note *a*) This is also the ordinary construction, when the verb takes a *to*-complement instead of a non-prepositional person-object (Ch. III, 45); or when the person-object is understood, as in:

i. He beckoned to the startled Stibmore to approach. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 160.

Mrs. Reffold signed to the nurse to withdraw. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VIII, 33.

ii. He offered to accompany his brother. WEBST., *Dict.*, s.v. *offer*.

He begged to be favoured with a song. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. V, (261) (Compare, however, Ch. XVIII, 7, Note *a*).

He begged, like a boy, to be allowed to stay until the guests departed. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 72.

The beadsman pray'd to be forgiven. TEN., *Queen Mary*, II, 2, (608*a*).

β) After some verbs of the above description the gerund-construction appears to be more or less common, or even obligatory. See also 5, *e*.

i. Much later he had to teach himself even reading and writing afresh. SAINTSBURY, *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 99. (Compare Ch. XVIII, 15.)

He forbade me continuing to see a man of whom no one knew anything definite. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. XIX, 163.

The doctors have recommended him stopping either at Madeira or Tangier. *Academy*.

I do envy you living here. PUNCH. (The gerund-construction appears to be obligatory.)

ii. I must entreat being informed of the name and the residence of my benefactor. GOLDS., VIC.

Champagny advised throwing up a breastwork with bales of merchandise. MOTLEY, RISE, IV, Ch. I, 563*b*. (The gerund-construction is, apparently, obligatory.)

When Tremaine comes, his brother will advise postponing his marriage till he is in better health. MRS. ALEX., FOR HIS SAKE, II, Ch. VII, 117.

Two of the speakers who had advised stealing on Saturday professed to reprobate the mob's action. DAILY TELEGRAPH.

;) The verb *to propose* deserves special discussion for the numerous constructions of which it admits.

The normal construction is that with a *to*-complement and an infinitive (-clause), the (pronoun in the former representing the subject of the latter, as is always the case in sentences in which a person-object or a *to*-complement is followed by an infinitive(-clause); e. g.:

I proposed to her to walk out with me. DICK., COP., Ch. XXXIX, 285*a*.

He proposed to him to join their band. ROBIN HOOD (GÜNTHER, HANDB.).

When the *to*-complement is understood, the subject of the head-clause mostly represents the subject of the infinitive(-clause), as in: The booksellers proposed to purchase any copies offered to them. FIELD., JOS. ANDR., I, Ch. XV, 39.

He proposed to take me on the saddle before him, if I would like the ride. DICK., COP., Ch. II, 11*b*.

I was not proposing to play with you. ANSTEY, FAI. I. d., Ch. IX, 124.

You say that Sinfi proposed to bring you to Wales. WATTS DUNTON, AYLWIN, XIV, Ch. VI, 407.

Sometimes the subject of the action indicated by the infinitive-clause includes the person(s) denoted by the subject of the head-clause and the person(s) spoken to; thus in:

In the afternoon my companion proposed to call at his friend's house. SMOL., ROD. RAND., Ch. XIV, 85.

He proposed to go into the first public-house we should find open. *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 88.

In fact his voice was still for war and he proposed to send expresses to Balmahapple ... and other lairds. SCOTT, WAVE., Ch. XV, 56*a*.

Pen's uncle ... proposed to get Pen a commission in the Foot Guards. THACK., PEND., I, Ch. III, 32.

In this case the infinitive-clause is, however, mostly replaced by a full clause in which the subject represents the prospective originators of the proposed action, or in which the predicate is thrown into the passive voice; thus in:

i. I propose that we take off our shoes and stockings and wade. MRS. CRAIK, A HERO.

He proposed that they should go home together. EDNA LYALL, HARDY NOBS., Ch. XIII, 108.

Tipton proposed that they should send the child to Red Dog. BRET HARTE, LUCK OF ROARING CAMP, 9.

ii. The carrier proposed that my pocket-handkerchief should be spread upon the horse's back to dry. DICK., COP., Ch. V, 32*a*.

In the following example the two constructions are used alternately:

Alexander ab Alexandro proposed they should send some one to compound with the Caterans . . . Edward proposed to send off to the nearest garrison for a party of soldiers and a magistrate's warrant. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XV, 55 b.

Another alternative construction is that with a gerund(-clause), either without a subject-indicating (pro)noun, which appears to be common enough, or with a subject-indicating (pro)noun, which seems to be uncommon; e. g.:

i. She proposed having a little dance. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.
East proposed having a look at the close. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 90.

Sybil proposed reading some of the book. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. XI, 197.

ii. Bingley proposed their all walking out. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LVII, 358.

And I did not this morning (sc. tell you my faults) when you proposed our confessing our faults. HARDY, *Tess*, IV, Ch. XXXIV, 290.

For to propose in the meaning of *to purpose*, Dutch *zich voorstellen*, see 20.

Some of the above constructions may also be observed in the case of *to suggest*; e. g.:

i. May I respectfully suggest to Sir William Harcourt to read and think over that message. *Times*.

ii. Satan seized the opportunity of suggesting to him that he might emigrate under easier circumstances, if he supplied himself with some money from his master's till. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. I, (472).

iii. I suggested gaining permission first. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXIII, 236.

Mrs. Barfield suggested sawing away some of the branches. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XLIX, 327.

She once suggested attempting to find some older lady than herself, who might be inclined to share a house with her. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. XV, 257.

iv. He has suggested our buying an oasis and setting up as date merchants. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, IV, Ch. XXIV, 196.

b) after verbs that are constituents of a complex predicate (Ch. I, 15). As to *to do* and *to need*, which are sometimes construed with a gerund, see respectively Ch. I, 65, a and Ch. XIX, 20, f.

c) after verbs that express a desiring (Ch. I, 48, Obs. II); e. g.:

We wish to go soon. BAIN, *Comp.*, 168.

Erasmus desired to set Christ himself in the place of the Church. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § IV, 313.

d) after the phrases *I had rather*, *I had better*, *I had as lieve* (*lief*), etc. (Ch. II, 27, ff; Ch. LV, 32); e. g.:

I had rather be dead than lead this life. F. YORK POWELL, *Life of Ch. Gordon*.

You had better tell me. READE, *Never too Late*, I, Ch. VI, 63.

I'd as lieve let it alone. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 3, (281).

e) when the predicate is divided from the verbal by some word (-group). In this case the anticipating *it* mostly announces the infinitive(-clause). (Ch. III, 25—28); e. g.:

My generous patron had it in his power to introduce me personally. BAIN, *Comp.*, 168.

I should never be happy without him, so think it no harm to be off. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 284.

He called it ... his duty to step forward and endeavour to remedy an evil which had been brought on by himself. *ib.*, Ch. LII, 315.

Note. Occasionally we find a gerund(-clause), which makes the impression of a repeated object. Compare 11, b).

You must find it rather dull, living here all by yourself. SWEET. (GÜNTH., *Handb.*, 19).

f) after some verbs, not answering to a general description, such as:

to affect, as in: The lady affected not to hear these words. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, IV, Ch. I, 203.

He affected to know nothing of the matter. SMOL., *Rod Rand.*, Ch. I, 10.

Note. No instance of the alternative construction has come to hand. According to O. E. D. (s. v. *affect*, 6, b) the gerund-construction is also found after *to affect*, but, as not a solitary instance is given, and no fewer than six quotations with the infinitive-construction, it seems safe to conclude that the latter is used practically to the exclusion of the former.

to afford, as in: We can afford to pay like men. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XII, 59 a.

Do you think that we can afford to have our boys gadding about in this sort of way? Miss BRAD., *My First Happy Christmas*.

to choose, as in: He chooses to remain concealed. GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, IV, (138).

She would have wondered why, without violently caring for her, he chose to elope with her. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LI, 311. (Compare *to elect*.)

to contrive, as in: I don't understand how you have contrived to introduce any love into it (sc. the tragedy). SHER., *Critic*, II, I, (462). (Compare *to manage*.)

to demand, as in: Men who demanded to have the Church ruled by officials chosen by themselves might come to seek the same system for the State as well. *Story of Old Mortality*.

to elect, as in: (She) elected to have dummy for a partner. Mr. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VII, 120.

They elect to remain where they are. *Times*. (Compare *to choose*.)

to endeavour, as in: I shall endeavour to follow his example. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. X, 23. (Compare *to seek*; and *to attempt* and *to try* in 20.)

to feign, as in: Martin feigned to fall asleep. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. IV, 32 a. We all drew nearer to the cages, feigning to examine the birds. *id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 35. (Compare *to affect*.)

to forget, as in: I forgot to answer a question which you asked me. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 267.

The steer forgot to graze. TEN., *Gard. Daught.*, 85.

to hope, as in: This was what Bernardine Holme hoped to do. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. III, 10.

to manage, as in: Mrs. Kirkpatrick managed to get up a very becoming blush. Mrs. GASK., *Wiv. & Daught.*, Ch. XI, 117.

We had managed to dine out, to receive visitors, and to enjoy all other amusements very well for a considerable number of years. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*. (Compare *to contrive*.)

Note. In the meaning of *to handle* the verb may be construed with a gerund

(-clause), as in: Perhaps you could manage translating. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy NORS.*, Ch. X, 85.

to offer, as in: i. If by chance any idle vagabond dog came by, and offered to be uncivil — hoity-toity! — how she (sc. the cat) would bristle up! WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (103).

ii. He had offered to accompany her to Belton. TROL., *Belton Est.*, Ch. XV. *to presume*, as in: She was prevented from attending church, lest she should meet Mr. Lovelace there, and he should presume to accompany her home. RICH., *Clar. Harl.*, Ch. II, 18.

Without presuming to give my opinion on this question, I delivered my message. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XIV, 101 a. (Compare *to venture*.)

to seek, as in: They sought to prove to her that Dolf would come to a halter. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (104).

He did not seek to go into Parliament. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXV, 309. (Compare *to endeavour*; and *to attempt*, and *to try* in 20.)

to spare, as in: Spare not to spur, nor stint you to ride, | Until thou come to fair Tweedside. SCOTT, *Lay*, I, XXII, 3. (The use of *to stint*, as in this example, is now archaic or dialectal (O. E. D., 6).

And from the platform, spare ye not | To fire a noble salvo-shot. id, *Marm.*, I, IV, 7.

I have many hands | Who will not spare to do my worst commands. MORRIS, *Earthly Par. Son of Cræs.*, LXIII.

And he | That did not shun to smite me in worse way, | Had yet that grace of courtesy in him left. | He spared to lift his hand against the King | Who made him knight. TEN., *Guin.*, 431—435. (Compare *to shun* in 20.)

to undertake, as in: He had just undertaken to supervise a popular translation of the classics. LYETON, *What will he do with it?*

The benevolent organisations undertake to provide employment for discharged soldiers and sailors. *Graph.*

to venture, as in: The navy surgeon ventured to suggest that Madeira was rather a trying beverage for schoolboys. MISS BRAD., *My First Happy Christm.*, (74). (Compare *to presume*.)

to volunteer, as in: Sybil eagerly volunteered to assist in the shirt-making. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. IX, 143.

To the above we must add many of the verbs mentioned in Ch. XVIII, 9, which, as has been observed, are sometimes construed with an infinitive(-clause), instead of a full subordinate statement.

20. A great many verbs admit of either the gerund- or the infinitive-construction. With some the two constructions seem to be used indifferently, with some there is a more or less marked predilection for either one or the other, while with a few a certain distinction is observed. As a general rule it may be said that the gerund-construction is chiefly met with in the written, the infinitive-construction in the spoken language; and also that from motives of rhetorical propriety the use of two successive gerunds or infinitives is avoided. The following verbs may be mentioned here:

to abhor. i. Not that she didn't abhor gambling from the bottom of her heart. JAMES PAIN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, M, 221.

ii. I abhor to exceed my income. W. TAYLOR, *Robberd's Memoirs*, I, 306. (O. E. D. 2, b.)

Note. See the observation under *to like*.

to attempt: i. It is needless to attempt describing the particular characters of young people. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. I. (239).

ii. I don't attempt to strike out anything new. SHER., Critic, II, 2, (473).

Note. The infinitive-construction seems to be the ordinary one.

to bear: i. * These houses won't bear dancing in. MARRYAT, Olla Podrida.

It won't bear thinking about. CON. DOYLE, Trag. of the Korosko, Ch. II, 65.

** Those soft words do not bear being written down. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXVI, 699.

*** I can't bear hurting them (sc. flies), but I don't like flies. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XXV, 229.

ii. * I cannot bear to hear that mentioned. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XIII, 65.

I could not bear to have her ten miles from me. *ib.*, Ch. L, 303.

Maggie could not bear to insist immediately on their parting. G. ELIOT, Mill, V, Ch. I, 278.

I cannot bear to think of it. BARRY PAIN, The Culminating Point.

He could not bear to see the young rat so cold-blooded. SWEET, Prim. of Spok. Eng., 67.

I can't bear to look at his eyes. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XXXII, 298.

** The actors in those great tragedies do not bear to be scanned too closely, THACK., Virg., Ch. XC, 962.

I cannot bear to be subjected to systematic arrangements. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. VI, 62.

Note. The infinitive-construction appears to be the usual one when the logical subject of the head-clause and that of the verbal are the same. When they differ, the gerund, either active or passive in form, varies with the passive infinitive. The infinitive-construction also appears to be the only one after *to bear* in the meaning of *to afford*, as in: Our terms are lower than any office, and we can bear to have them lower. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 80. See also Ch. LVI, 26, Note. Compare *to abide*, *to endure*, and *to stand*.

to begin: i. * Unable to contain herself, she began scolding one of her daughters. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. II, 10.

He began admiring my diamond-pin very much. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 66.

East marched off and began showing him the schools. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. V, 86.

He began overwhelming the old man with inquiries about Pambo. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XVI, 79 b.

Then walking away to the window he began speaking of the matter which had brought him to look for his wife. Mrs. WARD, Tres., III, Ch. XXIII, 199 a.

** Her heart began wildly palpitating. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. I, 4.

ii. * Mrs. Hill began instantly to express her joy. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XLIX, 300.

By-and-by we began to leave the wonderful city. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 37.

He was beginning to gather a clue to the dialogue. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. IV, 27.

** Even before she had begun to be a governess, she had often wondered at the stupidity of governesses in general. DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. X.

*** The garrison began to feel the pressure of hunger. MAC., Clive, (506 b).

**** The windows were beginning to whiten in the winter dawn. DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. XX.

Note. The gerund-construction is usual only when the subject indicates a person, and the action is a physical one, originated by an activity of the human will. When the subject is the name of an inanimate thing, as in the last of the examples mentioned under *i*, it appears to be rare. Nor is it, apparently, ever used with a predicate denoting a state, a mere sense-impression, a mental activity, or a psychical disposition. In all combinations the infinitive-construction is distinctly the commoner one. For *to begin by* + gerund see 27.

to brook: *i*. D'ye think I'll brook | Being worse treated than a Cook? BROWN., *Pied Piper*.

ii. Still there was haughtiness in all he did, | A spirit deep that brook'd not to be chid. BYRON, *Lara*, I, xxvii.

Note. The two constructions may be equally common.

to cease: *i*. On account of the snow, the cars ceased running at eight o'clock. O.E.D., s. v. *car*, 2.

I never will cease dunning you with the old proverb. SHER., *School*, IV, 2, (407).

"Well, my dear," said he when she ceased speaking, "I have no more to say." JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIX, 371.

ii. I shall soon cease to regret him. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LVII, 354.

The Storm-ship ceased to be a subject of deliberation at the board. WASH. IRV., *The Storm-ship*, (87).

I have long ceased . . . to care much what any man or woman may say about my shoes. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XVII, 195.

When the lad addressed fixed his eyes on each of us for a moment and made way for us, we ceased to wonder. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, I.

An excommunicate king had ceased to be a Christian. GREEN, *Short Hist.* Ch. III, § 2, 124.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be usual when a physical action is in question. For the rest the infinitive-construction is the ordinary one. For *to cease from* + gerund see 32.

to commence: *i*. Little Hareton . . . commenced crying himself. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VIII, 38 *a*.

He commenced blinking hard in preparation for the horrible dose. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VIII, 50.

He commenced training for this new mode of life. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 9.

ii. And now I shall commence to tell who I am. HELPS, *Realma h*, Ch. I, 3 (O.E.D., 2).

The Russian Government . . . commenced to coin it. JEVONS, *Money*, 48 (ib.)

Note. The infinitive-construction is unusual. See WEBST., *Dict.*, O.E.D., 2. *to decline*: *i*. He declines giving his parole. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. L, 130 *b*.

He declined being introduced to any other lady. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 14.

He declined taking any part in the execution of them. CARLYLE, *Life of Schil.*, II, 72.

Mrs. Beaufort had declined attending the ceremony. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 505.

ii. He declined to take any part in the concern. WEBST., *Dict.*

Lord Rosebery declined to say what he would do under contingencies that had arisen. *Graph*.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, presumably, the usual one in colloquial English.

to delay: i. Faulkland... will ever delay assuming the right of a husband. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (218).

I delayed going to my usual place of business. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, Q, 265.

ii. Meer Jaffier delayed to fulfil his engagements. MAC., *Clive*, (517 b).

Delaying as the tender ash delays | To clothe herself, when all the woods are green? TEN., *Princ.*, IV, 88.

Note. Usage is, presumably, in favour of the gerund-construction.

to deserve: i. If I were such a consummate ass as that, I should deserve hanging. PHILIPS, *Mrs. Bouverie*, 86.

ii. None ever more deserved to be universally beloved. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, IV, Ch. I, 201.

What pleasures... do they not deserve to possess! GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. IX, (285).

He does not deserve to be shunned. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 92.

Note. The gerund-construction seems to be uncommon. No instances are registered by the O. E. D. It may not be unusual when the subject is represented as undergoing the action. See also the examples in Ch. LVI, 26, page 479.

design: i. Let Mr. Thornhill know the exact time on which I design delivering you up to another. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XVII, (336).

ii. The shapeless pair, | As they design'd to mock me, at my side | Take step for step. COWPER, *Task*, V, 17.

Mrs. Bennet had designed to keep the two Netherfield gentlemen to supper. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIV, 335.

Note. The gerund-construction is not registered in the O. E. D., and appears to be unusual.

to detest: i. I detest dining before eight o'clock. CHARLES DAUNCE, *The Bengal Tiger*.

I detest toiling after the things every one expects you to see. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. II, 25.

ii. I detest to think of it. G. PALMER, *Sectaries Unm.*, 52 (O. E. D., 2, b).

Note. The infinitive-construction is pronounced rare by the O. E. D. Nor does the gerund-construction appear with any frequency.

to disdain: i. There is not a dogma of the Galileans which may not be found... in some of those very religions from which it pretends to disdain borrowing. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XVI, 76 a.

ii. He did not disdain to rub the glasses and polish the decanters. THACK., *A Little Dinner*, Ch. V.

If Cyril had asked me that question, I should have disdained to answer. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XVI, 76 a.

Richard disdained to show signs of being pacified. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VIII, 51.

She disdained completely to find them (sc. the plans of revolt and revenge) out from Sheila or her aunt. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXVI, 244.

Note. The infinitive-construction appears to be the usual one.

to dread: i. She dreaded seeing Wickham again. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXXIX, 220.

He dreaded not engaging with the highest species of his art. CARLYLE, *Life of Schiller*, III, 159.

I dread sleeping, my dreams appal me. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*.

ii. I dread to hear you speak, lest you should send me from you. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. X, 171.

Note. The gerund-construction is, presumably, less common than the infinitive-construction.

endure: i. I can endure being told I am in the wrong. HARDY, *Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXI, 239.

No one can calmly endure watching other people laughing at him like idiots. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. II, 25.

ii. Frithiof could not bear to look at Sigrid, could not endure to watch the effect of his words. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXVI, 228.

You can endure to stay a little longer? MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VII, 126.

How they can endure to confess such a helpless incompetence is quite unintelligible to me. SKEAT, *The Problem of Spelling Reform*, *Proceedings of the Brit. Acad.*, II.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, probably, the usual one.

to enjoy: i. I always do enjoy cleaning the oil-lamps. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. IV, 16.

She enjoyed sitting in the sun, listening to the music. *ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 26.

He enjoyed watching her flit about. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. II, 37.

Few people actually enjoy learning things, they only enjoy knowing them. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6582, 21 *b.*

ii. She would greatly enjoy to dance at the ball once more. *Realm*, 22/6, 1864 (O. E. D., 3, *b.*).

Note. The infinitive-construction is described by the O. E. D. as colloquial or vulgar.

to expect: i. Who ... could have expected meeting you here? GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, V, (156).

ii. I expect for my reward to be honoured with Miss Sophy's hand as a partner. *Vic.*, Ch. VIII, (282).

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be unusual. The O. E. D. does not register a single instance.

to fear: i. He did not fear wetting his feet. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XVI, 59 *a.*
I only fear not being an efficient nurse. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. XI, 196.

ii. Fools rush in where angels fear to tread. POPE, *Es. on Crit.*, III, 66.

While on land I feared to approach you. *Punch*.

Note. The two constructions seem to be used indifferently, the infinitive-construction being, presumably, the usual one in colloquial language.

to forbear: i. I cannot forbear condemning this sentiment. HUME, *Es.*, III, 13.

I could not forbear pressing him to say something. MAR. EDGEW.

ii. * I cannot forbear to mention, that neither reason nor revelation denies you to hope, that you may increase her (sc. your mother's) happiness by obeying her precepts. JOHNSON (*Bosw. Life of Johnson*, 55 *a.*).

I cannot forbear to give another quotation. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXI, 337.

He could not forbear to stop and look again. HUTCHINSON, *If Winter Comes*, III, Ch. V, III, 189.

** I forbear to dwell on the particulars of the cruise. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (137).

I forbear to enter into minute particulars of the interview between George and Amelia. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 205.

Few can forbear to tell a spicy story of their friends. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. II, 33.

Note. After *cannot* (or *could not*) *forbear* the gerund-construction appears to be the usual one. In other connexions it is, apparently, rare or non-existent. For *to forbear from* + gerund, used in practically the same meaning, see 32.

to grudge: i. She even grudged letting you visit the convent where your mother was. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XI, 265.

ii. And as with body, so proceed with soul: Nor less discerningly...grudge | To play the doctor. BROWNING, *Red Cott. Nt.-Cap*, 199 (O. E. D., 2).

Note. The O. E. D. expressly observes "Also with infinitive as obj.," but fails to mention the gerund-construction which, however, somehow sounds more idiomatic. See also 18, *b*, where *to grudge* has inadvertently been included among the verbs requiring the gerund-construction.

to hate: i. I hate shopping. LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 116.

I hate crying. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 68 *b*.

I hate being pitied. Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Int.*, I, Ch. V, 81.

ii. I hate to see you standing about by yourself in this stupid manner. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 15.

Dickens hated to have to blot his manuscripts while he was writing. *Windsor Mag.*, Jan., 1897, 278 2 (O. E. D., 2).

Note. See the observation under *to like*.

to help, in the meaning of *to avoid*, *to forbear*: i. I can't help relating here a circumstance illustrative of the point in question. THACK., *Snoobs*, Ch. I, 17.

What man could help remembering you day and night? EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. V, 46.

ii. He could not help to weep and sigh, but yet himself he would not forget. KINGSLEY, *Her.*, II, Ch. XVI, 276 (O. E. D., 11, *b*).

Note. The infinitive-construction appears to be rare, except when placed in front-position for emphasis, where the gerund could not take its place; e. g.: Think of her I could not help. Mrs. GASK., *Mr. Harrison's Confessions*, Ch. XII, (423).

To help is used in this meaning only in connection with *cannot* or *could not*, or with *can* in rhetorical questions. In practically the same meaning as *I cannot help* + gerund we also find the less frequent *I cannot help but* + infinitive (Ch. LV, 44): thus in:

We could not help but love each other. HALL CAINE, *Christian*, Ch. XV, 282 *a* (Heineman).

He could not help but believe me. LORD ALFRED DOUGLAS, *Osc. Wilde & Myself*, Ch. XXIV, 290.

But he makes mock in so pleasant a fashion that one cannot help but respect his conclusions. *Lit. World*, 16/11, 1894, 376 *c* (E. S., XXXI, 117).

Another variation, apparently even less frequent, is *I cannot help myself from* + gerund (32), as in: She can't help herself from falling into my views. DICK., *Crick*, I, 28.

to intend: i. Mr. Thornhill intended that night giving the young ladies a ball. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. VIII, (282).

Mrs. Doria learnt from Adrian in the evening that her nephew intended waiting in town another week. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXV, 322.

I intend proposing to advertise for an engagement. Mrs. ALEX., *Life Int.*, Ch. I, 8.

ii. He did not intend to remain. *ib.*, I, Ch. VII, 109.

I don't intend to ask my father for anything. *ib.*, II, Ch. I, 12.

Note. The infinitive-construction is mostly preferred.

to learn: i. Robinson has been learning boxing lately. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, J, 141.

ii. He must learn to walk before he runs. TOM HOOD, *Versification*, 20. The only sensible course was to learn not to care. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. III, 11.

Note. For details about the use of the two constructions see Ch. XVIII, 15.

to (dis)like: i. * I don't like being asked to make a speech. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 325.

I like reading history. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 198.

How should you have liked making sermons? JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 321.

I don't like living any longer at your expense. Mrs. ALEX., *Life Int.*, II, Ch. I, 11.

I don't think that I like being so rich. RID. HAG., *Mees Will*, Ch. XXII, 246.

** The young lady said she disliked dancing. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XIV, 160.

The sisters ... repeated three or four times ... how excessively they disliked being ill themselves. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. VIII, 38.

I dislike lending my things, and I dislike spending my money except on myself. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, Ch. V, 19.

I dislike seeing even the Devil painted blacker than he really is. Rev. of Rev., No. 190, 371 *b*.

ii. David liked to be envied. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*

I liked to be so pleasantly cheated. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 43.

Note. After verbs that express a liking or a disliking, such as *to hate*, *to (dis)like*, *to love*, *to prefer*, etc., the gerund-construction mostly implies habit or duration, the infinitive-construction being preferred in describing a special case. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2327.

In some connections there is a further distinction: the subject of the action being indefinite when the gerund is used, and identical with that of *to like* when the infinitive is used. Compare *I like singing* with *I like to sing*.

No instances have been found of an infinitive(-clause) after *abominate* and *to loathe*. Indeed, when there is occasion to use these words, it is mostly a general case that is in question; thus in: I abominate writing. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LVII, 357.

I loathe being beaten. TEN., *Becket*, Prologue.

to love: i. We love being in love. THACK., *Es m.*, II, Ch. XV, 288.

ii. I always loved to be at church a good while before the rest of the congregation. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. IV, (257).

We all love to instruct, though we can teach only what is not worth knowing. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIV, 336.

Lord Chatham, now the ghost of his former self, loved to haunt the scene of his former glory. MAC., *Clive*, (537 *b*).

Note. See the observation under *to like*.

to mean: i. "You mean proposing?" said Mr. Pickwick. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXIV, 211.

All who are now up, mean coming. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*.

That Germany meant going to war we do not for a moment believe. *Pall Mall Gaz.*

ii. I don't mean to defend Charles's errors. SHER., *School*, II, 3, (386).

He meant to resign his commission immediately. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 316.

Then you really mean to go? Mrs. ALEX., *Life Int.*, I, Ch. VI, 106.

Note. The infinitive-construction would seem to be the ordinary one. In the function of a quasi-copula (Ch I, 5, *b*) the verb seems to prefer the gerund-construction, unless the subject is an infinitive; e. g.: i. Mr. Chamberlain has no idea of countenancing the sort of conciliation which means sacrificing our friends to our late adversaries. *Times*.

ii. To be a man is to suffer; to be a poet means to have double the capacity of men to suffer. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. XVIII, 156.

to meditate: i. Darrell, indeed, meditated applying for an appointment in one of the public offices. LYTON, *What will he do with it?*

I think he meditated plunging into the ocean after the receding boat. THOM. B. ALDRICH, *The Cruise of the Dolphin*, (171).

ii. I meditated to do you good. GODWIN, *Cal. Wil.*, 283 (O. E. D., 2. b).

I meditate to pass the remainder of life in a state of undisturbed repose. WASHINGTON (WEBST., Dict.).

Note. The O. E. D. pronounces the infinitive-construction obsolete, and fails to register an instance with the gerund-construction, which, however, appears to be common enough.

to mind: i. * I hate shopping, but I don't mind looking at the shops. LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 116.

Would you mind telling the waiters to lay the cover? BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XIV.

** Never mind chaffing about money. R. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXII, 230.

ii. Never mind to take your monument ticket to-day. CON. DOYLE, *Trag. of the Korosko*, Ch. II, 49.

Note. Only in the meaning of *to trouble oneself about*, as in the two last examples, does the verb admit of the infinitive-construction, which, however, seems to be uncommon enough. Also in the sense of *to remember*, *to bear in mind*, in which, except for the imperative, it is now used only in dialects and the language of the illiterate, *to mind* appears but rarely with an infinitive; e.g.: i. I mind him coming down the street. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 842.

ii. You must mind to get up middling early. JOS. JACOBS, *More Eng. Fairy Tales*, LXXI, 135.

For the alternative construction with *and* see Ch. X, 14. For *to mind about* + gerund see 24.

to miss: i. * Once she very narrowly missed introducing Waverley to a recruiting-sergeant of his own regiment. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXI, 152 a.

** He never once, in all his wanderings, missed writing home at Christmas time. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 414.

*** Those who miss seeing this lose a fair chance of a hearty laugh. PUNCH.

ii. * The whigs never miss to find it (sc. good ale) out. SCOTT, *Old Mort.*, Ch. XXXIV.

** How sad it were for Arthur, should he live, | To sit once more within his lonely hall, | And miss the wonted number of my knights, | And miss to hear high talk of noble deeds | As in the golden days before thy sin. TEN., *Guin.*, 496.

Note. In the meaning of *to escape*, represented by the first of the above examples, the verb apparently requires the gerund-construction. In the meaning of *to fail (to do something)*, pronounced archaic or dialectal by the O. E. D. (7. a), the gerund-construction may be more frequent than the infinitive-construction; in the meaning of *not to have the satisfaction of (hearing, seeing or witnessing something)* (O. E. D., 6, c), usage may be equally divided. See also page 852.

to need: i. That needs no accounting for. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. L, 398 a.

Only two small incidents that befell the novice need mentioning. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.

These points hardly need laboring. *The Nation*, XVIII, 18, 628 a.

ii. Who needs to be told, that if a woman has a will, she will assuredly find a way? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVI, 164.

These changes will need to be mentioned. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. I, 15.

His citations sometimes need to be checked. *Lit. World*.

Note. The above examples show that the active gerund with passive meaning varies with the passive infinitive. The two constructions appear to be equally common. *To need* is used not only in the sense of *to require*, as in the preceding examples, but also in that of *to be required*. In the latter case it

is regularly construed with an infinitive, with which it is regarded to form a kind of complex predicate. For illustration see Ch. I, 36—37; Ch. LV, 6—15, *to neglect*: i. He only made us feel that to neglect doing our duty was as flat a flying in the face of the law of the universe as the neglect to breathe. Rev. of Rev., No. 195, 226.

We have neglected looking after our own safety. Sat. Rev.

ii. Master wouldn't neglect to keep it (sc. Christmas eve) upon any account. Dick., Pickw., Ch. XXVIII, 255.

You must mind and never neglect to call in Grosvenor Street when you come to London. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVII, 175.

The admirals had neglected to bury the dead after the battle of Arginusae. LEWES, Hist. of Philos., IV, Ch. I, 138.

Note. The infinitive-construction is more frequently met with than the gerund-construction.

to omit: i. I should forget Alice's proudest ornament, were I to omit mentioning a pair of gold ear-rings. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. XVIII, 62*b*.

ii. I must not omit to say, however, that Dolf took his mother home to live with him. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl, (151).

I have omitted to mention it. Dick., Cop., Ch. XLII, 303*b*.

Nor did his enemies omit to compliment him. Mac., Hist., III, Ch. VII, 13.

I omitted to mention that I should be very glad to see Miss Carew. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. VI, 95.

Note. The gerund-construction seems to be somewhat unfrequent.

to practise: i. We practised waltzing in a room over the Egyptian Hall. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 44.

ii. Oh, what a tangled web we weave | When first we practise to deceive! SCOTT, Mar., IV, xvii.

Note. The gerund(-clause) is regularly employed when the word has the sense of *to perform frequently or customarily in order to become proficient in*; in the sense of the indefinite *to do*, the infinitive(-clause) is used; but this application of the verb seems to be very rare. See also page 852.

to prefer: i. I should prefer being a lady's maid to remaining at home. Mrs. ALEX., Life Int., I, Ch. XVI, 266.

I prefer telling you everything by word of mouth. id., For his Sake, II, Ch. XVI, 279.

For my part I would prefer being in the hands of a policeman. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. X, 64.

ii. He may prefer to call himself an agnostic. HUXL., Lect. and Es., 83*a*.

You prefer to receive a favour from poor Tom Bakewell. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. VII, 45.

Note. The gerund-construction is inevitable when another gerund(-clause) with *to* follows, as in the first of the above examples. For the rest, the distinction observed may, in the main, be the same as that with *to like*. For the catachrestic use of *than* in the second member of the comparison see Ch. XVII, 128. Obs. VI.

to profess: i. I profess curing it (sc. love) by counsel. SHAK., As you like it, III, 2, 425.

But what reason had I to believe you spoke your heart to me, since you professed deceiving so many? WYCH., Plain Deal., I, 1, (383).

ii. I don't profess to be clear about dates. Dick., Cop., Ch. II, 11*a*.

It professes, indeed, to be no more than a compilation. Mac., Es. Fred., 658 (O. E. D., 3).

Note. The infinitive-construction is, probably, the ordinary one. It may be considered as an accusative + infinitive, which has dropped the accusative, especially when the infinitive is the copula *to be*. Compare Ch. XVIII, 34, Obs. III.

to project: i. Sometimes he projected taking a farm situated on the height of one of the near hills. MRS. SHELLEY, Note on Poems of 1829. He projected hiring a horse for her to ride every day in the park. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXVIII, 218.

ii. He projected to speak plainly to his son on all points that night. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XL, 395.

Note. The two constructions appear to be used indifferently.

to propose: i. Lady Emily and Colonel Talbot had proposed being present; but Lady Emily's health, when the day approached, was found inadequate to the journey. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. LXX, 172 b.

Elizabeth ... had fully proposed being engaged by Mr. Wickham for those very dances. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XVII, 91.

"What do you propose doing?" — "I propose trying to run this show." Eng. Rev., No. 84, 399.

Just two years ago we erected ... the first of the Great Jewellery Houses we proposed building in England. Westm. Gaz., No. 5155, 13.

ii. The events which I propose to relate form only a single act of a great and eventful drama. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 3.

Now I do not propose to narrate at full length all the incidents of our long journey. RID. HAG., Sol. Mines, 49.

Note. The two constructions appear to be used indifferently. For *to propose* in another meaning see 19, a, Note *γ*.

to purpose: i. (He) purposed making a Continental tour. RICH., Clar. Harl., Ch. I, 13.

I purpose being very diligent. CARL., Life of Schil., II, 83.

What do you purpose doing? MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XXIV, 251.

If one is purposing going much from place to place, either a thin serge or an alpaca is more serviceable. Il. Lond. News, No. 3718, 150 a.

ii. I purpose to write the history of England from the accession of King James the Second down to a time which is within the memory of men still living. MAC., Hist., Ch. I, 1.

Note. The two constructions may be of equal frequency.

to recollect: i. I descried my own effigy among the rest in a frame which I recollected giving her at the time. E. W. HORNUNG, No Hero, Ch. I. I can never recollect having seen him in such exuberant spirits. CON. DOYLE, Mem. of Sherl. Holm., II, E, 242.

The girl recollected having admired it (sc. the diamond star) during dinner at Uncle John's. GALSW., Free Lands, Ch. XXVI, 234.

ii. He recollected to have heard it said that spirits have no power to speak until they are spoken to. WASH. IRV., Doll Heyl., (121).

Note. See the observation under *to remember*.

to refuse: i. The devil a word dare refuse coming at her call. SHER. Riv., II, 2, (237).

ii. The coachman who had two great-coats lxxx him refused to lend either. FIELD., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. XII, 29.

He indignantly refused to accept it. MAC., Wil. Pitt, (289 b).

Note. The infinitive-construction appears to be the usual one.

to regret: i. Nor had she any cause to regret doing so. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, 49.

I regretted having taken the liberty with her. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. IV, 66.

My companion seemed to regret having invited me. GISSING, Christopherson.

ii. I regret to have to say that I do not believe that evidence. LOPES, Law Times (O. E. D., s. v. *have*, 7, c).

Sir Wigram Allen, I regret to see, is since dead. FROUDE, O. c., Ch. XI, 177.

Note. To all appearance the verb prefers the gerund-construction in the meaning of *to repent*, the infinitive-construction in that of *to be sorry* (*for*). *to remember*: i. * I remember one day being called in, and Sir Pylcher himself poured me out a glass. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XVII, 119.

I remember wondering why the old clerk in my father's church always sang that verse so lustily. EDNA LYALL, We Two, I, 48.

He remembered wandering through dimly-lit streets. OSC. WILDE, Dor. Gray, Ch. VI, 117.

I don't remember ever having a keener sense of remorse. SWEET, Old Chapel.

He could remember at the age of ten standing at the shooting-gallery. WARWICK DEEPING, Suvlva John II, I, 12.

Do you remember going to live at Mr. Freeland's cottage? GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XXXIII, 306.

I remember once reading *Maud*. HICHENS, Gard. of Al., II, iv, Ch. XXI, 141.

** I remember having seen him. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 325.

ii. We scarcely remember ever to have seen a patient so far gone in this distemper as Mr. Thackeray. MAC., Wil. Pitt, (286 a).

I replied that I did not remember to have come across his name before. GISSING, Christopherson, ,

Note. The tense-distinction is mostly disregarded in the case of the gerund and is regularly observed when the infinitive is used. For the rest the latter is far less frequently met with than the former. See also Ch. LVI, 30, b.

to repent: i. I repented having tried this second entrance. EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights.

Jane, you would not repent marrying me. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXIV, 502.

I should repent buying 'em. G. ELIOT, Mill. I, Ch. II, 5.

ii. How malicious is my fortune, that I must repent to be just! SHAK., Lear, III, 5, II.

Note. In the gerund-construction, which is the ordinary one, the tense-distinction is mostly disregarded. For *to repent of* + gerund see 36.

to require: i. Charley Beresford will require looking after one of these days. PUNCH.

She seemed to belong rightly to a madrigal — to require viewing through rhyme and harmony. HARDY, Return, I, Ch. IV, 44.

Before he left, he asked Cissy if there was anything she required doing to the house. NAT. GOULD, The Trainer's Treasure, Ch. X, 44.

ii. The verb *make* has naturally required to be treated at unusual length. BRADLEY, Note to O. E. D., Vol. VI.

Even one's mother-tongue obviously must require to be learnt. id., The Making of Eng., Ch. II, 18.

Teachers require to be warned against shouting. RIPPMMANN, Sounds of Spok. Eng., § 15.

Were Mexico situated in any part of the world except America, the question would not require to be asked. Graph., No. 2309, 354 a.

At each end of it there is a tunnel, which is mined in case it should ever require to be blown up. Westm. Gaz., No. 6429, 2 c.

Note. As distinct from the gerund, the infinitive is regularly placed in the passive voice when the meaning is passive. In the meaning of *to wish* (*peremptorily*) the verb appears to be construed only with an infinitive; thus in:

This is all of the great migratory movement which we require to know. B. TAYLOR, Stud. Germ. Lit., 104 (O. E. D., 8, a).

to scorn: i. Scorn running with thy heels. SHAK., Merch., II, 2, 8.

ii. I scorn to coax. FARQUHAR, Re cr. Offic., I, I, (253).

I scorn to evade your questions. HOR. WALP., *Castle of Otr.*, Ch. I, 42.

I scorn to boast of my own qualifications. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. IX, 54.

I scorn to flatter. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 125.

Gaunt was one who scorned to tell a lie. MRS. WOOD, *The Channings*, Ch. I, 4.

Note. The gerund-construction is, apparently, rare: no instances are registered in the O. E. D. There may, however, be a difference between two such sentences as *I scorn coaxing* and *I scorn to coax*, analogous to that between *I like singing* and *I like to sing*.

to scruple: i. Barnabas told him that he need not scruple trusting the sermons in the bookseller's possession. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. XVII, 49.

ii. He answered that he would scruple to lend him three guineas. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVI, 44.

He scrupled not to lay all the ill-consequences of Lydia's flight on her own folly alone. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 316.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be uncommon: no instances are given in the O. E. D., in which six instances with the infinitive-construction are to be found.

to set in: i. It had set in snowing at daybreak. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LVII, 479.

ii. It set in to freeze. FIELD, 11/2, 1893, 191/2, (O. E. D., 146, *d*).

Note. It is questionable whether *to set in*, as used in the above examples, is a transitive or an intransitive. If the latter, the *ing*-form is to be regarded as a present participle. This application of the verb is said to be 'obs. ecclial.' by the O. E. D., 146, *d*.

to shun: i. For some days after that evening, Mr. Heathcliff shunned meeting us at meals. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXXIV, 161 *b*.

She appeared rather to shun meeting any of her friends. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XII, 230.

ii. For I have not shunned to declare unto you all the counsel of God. Bible, *Acts*, XX, 27.

I shunned to bear my own share of the burden. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XLV, 122 *b*.

So let me, if you do not shudder at me, | Nor shun to call me sister, dwell with you. TEN., *Guin.*, 670.

We touch on our dead self, nor shun to do it. *id.*, *Princ.*, III, 205.

Note. The two constructions appear to be used indifferently.

to stand: i. I can't stand having a servant one can't depend on. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XIII, 110.

ii. I shall not stand to be laughed at. EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. VII, 29 *a*.

Note. The gerund-construction is, probably, the usual one.

to start: i. You must have had a busy time since you started cycling. JEROME, *Three Men on the Bummel*, Ch. III, 43.

I felt much as I should, had he started whacking my dog. *ib.*, Ch. III, 48.

When I start giving people a bit of my mind, I sometimes use language that's beneath me. SHAW, *Fanny's First Play*, I, (179).

She's to start rehearsing to-morrow. *Strand Mag.*, 25/7 1926, 103 *a*.

ii. Before we start to investigate that, let us try to realize what we do know. CON. DOYLE, *Ret. of Sherl. Holm.*, *Adv. Priory School*, 122.

There's very few women that can judge character, and if you started to try and settle something at once, they'd just set you down as a wrong 'un.

A. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. V, 112.

If his wife starts to snivel, hustle her out. MORLEY ROBERTS, *Time and Thomas Waring*, Ch. VII, 66.

Even Sparlington's supporters had scarcely started to cheer. GILBERT FRANKAN, *Masterson*, Ch. IX (*London Mag.*, Sept. 1925, 355 a).

About five o'clock the weather moderated considerably, but the steamer started to list more. *Manch. Guard.*, 5/12, 1926, 105 c.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be the most appropriate one; it certainly is the most frequent. The infinitive-construction, which is common enough, may be due to the influence of: 1) *to begin*, which, as we have seen, stands more frequently with an infinitive than with a gerund; 2) constructions in which the infinitive after *to start* represents an adverbial adjunct of purpose. In fact in some cases it cannot be stated with certainty whether the infinitive-clause is objective or adverbial; thus in:

He went out of the inn to the staircase. Jim started to follow him. MASON, *The House of the Arrow*, Ch. XX, 251.

It was nearly eleven when I started to return. WELLS, *The War of the Worlds*, Ch. X, 43.

She was a woman who, as it were, ran out to meet you when you started to cross the dangerous roadway which separates the two sexes. A. BENNETT, *Buried alive*, Ch. V, 105.

The O. E. D. (s.v. *start*, 24) observes "often with obj. a gerund; also with with infinitive." Compare also E. S., LXII, III, 409, where no fewer than four examples of *to start* + inf. are registered.

to want: i. (The fire) wanted mending. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. VI, (268).

The house wants painting and papering shamefully. MRS. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XII, 129.

I didn't want telling . . . I knew it was all safe. MRS. WARD, *Tres.* Ch. I, 5b.

ii. He has delusions, sees demons when he is in this state — wants to be watched. THACK., *Lov. the Wid.*, Ch. IV, 81.

The orange-tree, more than any other tree, wants to stand alone. DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XXI.

Note. As in the case of *to need* and *to require* the gerund-construction appears to be used only of transitive verbs, which, although in this connexion passive in meaning, are left in the active voice. The infinitive-construction is, apparently, far less frequent, and has transitive verbs in the passive voice when required by the sense. In the meaning of *to wish* the verb is almost regularly construed with the infinitive. In the following example the gerund-construction is, probably, made to alternate with the infinitive-construction for the sake of variety: I want to know exactly what you want doing to this house. MRS. WARD, *Delia Blanchflower*, I, Ch. V, 132.

21. The few adjectives that may be attended by a non-prepositional adjunct (Ch. III, 16) invariably take the gerund-construction. As has been observed in LX, 46, *d*, such adjectives have practically the same function as distinctly significant prepositions (22). See also Ch. XLV, 27, *c*.

worth: During these two hundred and fifty years Protestantism has made no conquests worth speaking of. MAC., *Popes*, (542 *b*).

like: They said it would be like taking coals to Newcastle. JEROME, *Sketches*.

I don't feel like laughing to-day. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. X, 169.

Note. The construction *like to* + infinitive appears to occur only in the language of the illiterate; e.g.: A, poor me, poor me, my poor hand shakes like to drop off. DICK., *Edw. Drood*, Ch. I, 12.

near: Molly was near crying again. MRS. GASK., *Wives & Daught.* Ch. X, 105.

You must be near perishing with cold. MARY WILKINS, *Silence*.

Note. *Near to* is construed either with a gerund or an infinitive (Ch. LX, 30, *b*, Note); e.g.: i. Such pieces as "We are seven" certainly gain nothing by their namby-pamby dialect, and sometimes go near to losing the beauty that is really in them, by dint of it. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 53.

Once or twice she came very near to throwing away all her chances of happiness. MRS. WARD, *Trees.*, Ch. VII, 43 *b*.

ii. There be some women, Silvius, had they mark'd him | In parcels as I did, would have gone near | To fall in love with him. SHAK., *As you like it*, III, 5, 124.

I at first was near to laugh. EMERSON, *Eng. Traits*, 80 *a*.

He was one of that thorough breed of misers that goes near to make the vice respectable. STEVENSON, *Kid n.*, Ch. III, (203).

Note. Thus also *nigh to* may be construed with an infinitive, as in: (This) most unhappy occurrence ... goes nigh to put strife and quarrel betwixt the nobility and the commons here. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXI, 222.

Nearest to and *next to* have been found only with a gerund: i. It becomes most furiously rapid in its course when it is nearest to being consigned to rest for ever. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXX, 171 *b*.

ii. Next to being married, a girl likes to be crossed in love a little now and then. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXIV, 139.

Next best to 'aving her. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXIII, 165.

22. *a*) Distinctly significant prepositions when used as constituents of the nominal part of the predicate or a predicative adnominal adjunct (Ch. LX, 46, *b*), regularly stand with the gerund-construction, with the only exception of *about*, and *for*. The combination *for* + infinitive with *to* has, however, disappeared from Present-day English, save, perhaps, for dialects. For detailed discussion see Ch. XVIII, 24, Obs. IV; Ch. LV, 3, Obs. III. The following comparatively Late Modern English examples may find a place here:

Five hundred pounds for to save my life. SCOTT, *Heart of Mid-Loth.*, Ch. VII, 79.

I didn't think for to get married so soon. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 262.

About is construed either with the gerund- or the infinitive-construction; e.g.: i. I am about making hard conditions to come abroad. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 2, (218).

I was just about falling into a doze. POE, *Gordon Pym*, Ch. I, II.

He was about retracing his steps. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXIII, 206.

Her son had not written to herself to ask a fond mother's blessing for that step which he was about taking. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. II, 320.

ii. He was about to speak; but with her head turned from him, she resumed [etc.]. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II.

We gave advice to people about to marry. JEROME, *Three Men on the Bummel*, Ch. V, 88 (i.e. who were about to marry.)

Note *a*) *About* in the meaning of *going (to)*, *on the point (of)* Ch. L, 70), as in the above examples, takes the infinitive-construction far more frequently than the gerund-construction. In the meaning of *busy in*, on the other hand, it is the gerund-construction which is the more usual; thus in: He was as long about taking off his coat as he dared. ANSTEV, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XI, 218

In this latter meaning it is often met with after *to set* as part of a predicative adnominal adjunct, the reflexive pronoun being dispensed with, and *to set about* being felt as a kind of group-verb; e.g.: i. Accordingly he set seriously

about sheltering and refreshing our hero for the night. SCOTT, *Wav.* Ch. LX, 149 *a*.

He set about composing the history of his life. CARLYLE, *Life of Schil.*, Appendix, I, 277.

Clare set about taking all the frills out of her bodices. DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. X.

ii. He set about to raise contributions and exactions upon the tenantry. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXV, 160 *b*.

If you set about in earnest to romp and play with them (sc. the children), some pretext or other is sure to be found for sending them out of the room. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, *A Bachelor's Complaint*.

She set about to deserve every word they had said of her. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXIV, 176.

β) Also in such sentences as the following *about* may be understood to be used predicatively, its meaning being approximately that of *relative to*: I only, a few minutes after, said something about wishing we were not "strangers." Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 10. (i. e. which was about wishing.)

He said something about calling another time. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. Ch. XVI, 312.

γ) When followed by *to* + infinitive, *about* as used in the preceding combinations may also be regarded as an adverb used predicatively (Ch. LIX, 112, *a*), the infinitive(-clause) expressing a vague relation of purpose.

above: Mary, however sage and serious, was not above being pleased with the admiration of her rustic companion. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XIV, 159.

Her soul was above marrying a Papist. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. I, 10. Jane Austen was above copying characters from real life. ATHEN., No. 4463, 513 *b*.

against: The majority of the house was for granting a supply, but against granting it in the manner proposed by the King. MAC., *Hampden*, (206 *a*).

beyond: He tried her patience beyond bearing. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XVII, 157. (i. e. in a way which was beyond bearing.)

The Turks are beyond reasoning. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6288, 1c. (= Dutch: *Met de Turken valt niet te redeneeren.*)

for: At first my lady was for dying like Mary, Queen of Scots. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. VI, 47. (See also under *against*.)

Adrian was for going into the scientific explanation of Richard's conduct. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XX, 133.

from: In the spring of 1709 Steele formed a literary project, of which he was far indeed from foreseeing the consequences. MAC., *Addison*, (754 *a*). (from = remote from, *far* modifies *from*).

She was far from being the hopelessly depraved character that Sigrid deemed her. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXIII, 207.

The war was still a long way from being ended. Graph.

of: The girl's father was an ignorant brute, who was within an inch of murdering me. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VIII, 393.

Note. *Of* may be understood to stand for *remote from*, but also the whole combination *within an inch* may be apprehended as a kind of group-adjective governing the preposition *of*.

off: The last thing might frighten him off coming at all. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. I, 338.

past: Man, thou art a wonderful animal, and thy ways past finding out. HAZLITT, *The Indian Jugglers* (PEACOCK, *Sel Eng. Es.*, 238).

He is past relenting. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 97.

However, Frithiof was past caring much for trifles. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXV, 126.

upon: (They advised) the solicitor to put his friend upon obtaining a pardon from the king. SWIFT, Tale of a Tub, Sect. IV, 72a.

This insinuation put me upon observing the behaviour of my mistress more narrowly for the future. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIX, 125.

It is always good for young people to be put upon exerting themselves. JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. XXIX, 227.

b) Group-prepositions whose most significant part is a noun or an adjective (or adverb), and which contain a practically meaningless preposition, mostly *of* or *to*, to serve as a link-word (Ch. LX, 10 ff) appear, one and all, to govern the gerund-construction. See, however, 21. The following illustration must suffice:

in preference to: To this the captain only consented in preference to being incommoded by him in Sir Clement's chariot. FANNY BURNEY, *Ev elina*, XVI, 60.

I took part of his bed in preference to going home. POE, *Gord. Pym*, Ch. I, 11.

preparatory to: He stuck his books under his arms and his hat on his head, preparatory to rushing out into the quadrangle. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VII, 313.

He laid the sprats in a dish preparatory to cleaning them for his own supper. MAR. CRAWF., *The Children of the King*, Ch. II, 39.

She returned the letter to its envelope, preparatory to marking it for future reference. MAR. CRAWF., *L onely Parish*, Ch. III, 23.

Mr. Audley was clearing his throat preparatory to bidding his beautiful companion good morning. Miss BRADDON, *Audl.*, II, Ch. III, 47.

previous(ly) to: i. He lit his cigar previous to leaving the house. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VII, 122.

Previous to laying them (sc. his gloves) in his hat on a chair [etc.]. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. X, 83.

ii. And you know nothing of my history previously to seeing me in the London studio? WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. VI, 429.

23. The choice between the gerund- and the infinitive-construction after verbs and adjectives governing a prepositional object, depends largely upon the particular preposition in question. If an infinitive(-clause) is used, the typical preposition is suppressed, i. e. gets merged in the ordinary prefix of the infinitive, the preposition *to*.

In some cases either construction is possible, mostly with some variation in meaning, which it is not always easy to define, chiefly owing to the vagueness of the relation of the infinitive(-clause) to its head-sentence, which is not marked by any word. The fact that many verbs and adjectives are construed with various prepositions, resulting from the vagueness which attaches to them in this function (Ch. LX, 45 and 106), often makes it difficult to decide for what gerund-construction a given infinitive-construction is the substitute.

The impossibility of distinguishing strictly between prepositional objects and adverbial adjuncts is also felt in deciding whether a given gerund(-clause) or infinitive(-clause) should be considered

as an instance of the former, or the latter. This applies especially to many gerund-clauses opening with *about*, *at*, *for*, and *in*, and their corresponding infinitive-clauses. Some of those mentioned in the following §§ might, indeed, with hardly less propriety, be classed among the adverbial clauses. See also Ch. XVIII, 11; Ch. XLV, 24—25.

24. Among the numerous verbs and adjectives that may be construed with *about* there are but few with which a gerund(-clause) is common, or in use at all. With most of these there are alternative constructions with another preposition + gerund(-clause), or with an infinitive(-clause), often without any appreciable distinction in meaning. In some cases *about* seems to be used rather loosely for the typical preposition. We must confine our illustrations to a few.

Verbs.

to care: i. * His wife never cared about being called Lady Newcome. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. II, 17. (= never thought much of.)

Nobody cares about being accused of wickedness. No vanity is hurt by that sort of charge. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXV, 257. (= minds.)

Why need I care about telling these ladies where I live? *id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 24. (= mind.)

He did not care himself about spending money, and was not reluctant to give it. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLIV, 325. (= was indifferent to spending money.)

"But you cannot always be my nurse, Janet: you are young — you must marry one day." — "I don't care about being married." CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 537. (have no inclination to being married.)

Do you think you'll care about going back to Crichton House in that state? ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. II, 35. (= be inclined, like.)

I don't believe you would very much care about being a boy again like me. *ib.*, Ch. II, 23. (= be inclined, like.)

We should keep the distance — not that I care about the distance, but I do care about filling properly the place to which I am born. L. B. WALFORD, *Stay-at-homes*, Ch. I. (consider it to be of some importance to me.)

** I don't care, sir, for answering questions directly upon the road — for I generally ride with a charge about me. FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Strat.*, III, 2, (393). (= don't like.)

I am credibly informed there are highwaymen upon this quarter. Not, sir, that I could suspect a gentleman of your figure — but truly, sir I have got such a way of evasion upon the road, that I don't care for speaking truth to any man. *ib.* (= don't like.)

As he is beloved by all about him, his servants never care for leaving him. ADDISON, *Spect.*, No. 106. (= never have an inclination to leave him.)

He cared nothing then for being master of Osbaldistone Hall. *Story of Rob Roy*. (= was indifferent to.)

If occupiers do not care for having the hounds over their land, it is not by half veiled threats that they will be induced to change their minds. *Times*. (object, do not like.)

ii. But to speak truth, though it's a fool's speech too, — I care not to see the fellow so much with Catherine. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. III, 40. (= like not.)

I like you my boy, I don't care to own it. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 68. (= don't mind)

I do not very much care to speak of anything as 'unknowable'. HUXL., Lect. & E.s., 109 a. (= do not very much like.)

For a while I did not care to intrude upon his evidently painful memories. JEROME, Sketches, (= did not like.)

Note As the above examples, in which the approximate equivalents of the verb are added within parentheses, show, *to care about* + gerund covers a great variety of meanings, only some of which are shared by *to care for* + gerund and *to care* + infinitive, which are, however, very frequently expressed by these combinations.

to consider: I began to consider about putting the few rags I had into some order, DEFOE, Rob. Crusoe.

Note. There appear to be no alternative constructions, either with a gerund, or with an infinitive.

to hesitate: i. * Germany is hesitating about going further, only because there is some fear of Mr. Chamberlain. Times.

** I was only hesitating as to sending it (sc. my nephew's letter) to the printer. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, J, 148.

*** His heir hesitated at accepting their inheritance. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 899 b.

In carrying out his views, he, Godwin, not only did not hesitate at condemning religion, marriage, and all other restrictions of the kind, but indulged in many crotchets as to the uselessness, if not mischievousness of gratitude, and other sentiments generally considered virtuous. SAINTSB., Ninet. Cent., Ch. I, 35.

**** No naturalist would hesitate in regarding them as distinct species. HUXLEY, Darwiniana, Ch. I, 17.

Mr. Acland did not hesitate an instant in deciding to keep the appointment. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest, II, Ch. XVIII, 297.

He never hesitated in opposing German designs. Rev. of Rev., No. 200, 137 b.

***** I cannot hesitate on giving my parole in the circumstances. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. LVI, 140 b.

ii. We hesitated to mention to you at first that he had purchased your patrimonial estate. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. LXXI, 174 b.

They do not hesitate to mislead the working man. Times.

Mr. Beit did not hesitate to set himself against a strong governmental current in his own country. Rev. of Rev., No. 200, 140 a.

Note. As to the different gerund-constructions it may be observed that there is no appreciable difference in the meanings they convey, except for the second example with *at*, in which *to hesitate at* comes near to *to stick at*. Compare *He would not hesitate at trifles if they stood in his way*. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, Ch. IV, 76.

The construction with *on* seems to occur but rarely; for the rest the different gerund-constructions may occur with practically equal frequency. Instances with the infinitive-construction, however, distinctly outnumber those with the gerund-constructions.

To hesitate is also found construed with a gerund not preceded by a preposition, but this construction is rare. See O. E. D., s. v. *hesitate*, 1, b.

Admiral Watson, apprehensive he might be reflected on, .. hesitated signing. SCRAFTON, Indostan, III, 69 (O. E. D.).

to hurry: i. Murdy seldom hurried about admitting people. DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. XVI.

ii. We hurry to get to an end when we impatiently and inconsiderately press forward without making choice of our means. CRABB, Syn., s. v. *hasten*.

Note. The infinitive-construction implies an idea of purpose, which is absent in the gerund-construction.

to mind: It seemed to her that the lambs which were quite strong and well-made wouldn't mind so much about being petted. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. VI., 160.

For a long while Maggie contented herself with assuring him that she had had a good night's rest, and that she didn't mind about being on the vessel. *ib.*, VI, Ch. XIV, 438.

Note. In the first example *to mind about* + gerund is practically equivalent to *to care for* + gerund or *to care* + infinitive; in the second it does not appreciably differ from the transitive *to mind* discussed in 20.

to see: He would see about getting another place. JOHN OXENHAM, *A Simple Beguiler* (SWAEN, *Sel.*, II, 142).

to talk: i. She talked about giving him alms as to a menial! THACK., *Esm.*, II, Ch. I, 160.

ii. He proceeded so far as to talk of giving them a hint to be gone. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LXI, 381.

They talked of returning to England, Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Int.*, I, Ch. IV, 66. Note. In both constructions, presumably equally common, the meaning of *to talk* is *to express by one's talk that one intends to*.

to trouble: i. * He troubled himself little about decorating his abode. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 315.

Don't trouble about losing it. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. VI, 40.

** But I believe I need not trouble myself in vindicating a practice authorized by the best authors. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Pref., 3.

ii. He has broken the elastic, and has not troubled to replace it. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

I can't trouble to hold it for you. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. X, 43.

Note. There appears to be no appreciable difference between these constructions, but that with *in* + gerund is, apparently, unusual. The infinitive (-construction) is, presumably, the most common; it could hardly be replaced by *about* + gerund in such a sentence as *May I trouble you to pass the mustard?*

Group-verb.

to make bones: i. * Do you think that the Government... would make any bones about accepting the seat? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXVII, 299.

** Elizabeth was thus making huge bones of sending some £ 7000 over for the general purposes of the government of Ireland. SIMPSON, *Sch. Shaks.*, I, 51 (O. E. D., 8).

ii. The Pope makes no bones to break... the Decrees. G. H., *HIST.*, *Cardinals*, I, II, 40 (*ib.*).

Note. There is not, apparently, any choice between the gerund-constructions with *about* and *of*. The former is, however, the usual one. The infinitive-construction is now obsolete (O. E. D., 8).

Adjectives.

afraid: i. * I don't think I shall ever feel afraid about dying again. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. VIII, 69.

** I remember when I was afraid of being mad. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XI, 93.

An opulent city afraid of being given up to plunder. MAC., *Clive*, (528 a).

ii. Willing to wound, and yet afraid to strike. POPE, *ProL. to Sat.*, 203 (O. E. D., 2, b).

Note. The gerund-construction with *of* is the usual one. According to the O. E. D. (2, d) *I am afraid of bathing there* = *I am afraid to bathe there*.

careful: i. * She thought him ungentle, and not careful enough about improving his mind. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VI, 107.

I shall be careful about getting into these scrapes again. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XI, 69.

Jackanapes promised ... to be very careful about rubbing his shoes on the door-mat. MISS EWING, *Jackanapes*.

** A tradesman ought to be attentive to the wishes of his customers, and careful in keeping his accounts. CRABB., *Syn.*, s.v. *attentive*.

ii. We are not careful to answer thee in this matter. BIBLE, *Dan.*, III, 16. I have been careful to explain that the arguments which I have used in the course of this discussion, are not new. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 116.

Lord Salisbury was very careful to point and that it did nothing of the kind. *Times*.

NOTE. As to the gerund-construction with *about* it may be observed that in the second example it has another function than it has in the first and third, expressing as it does that something should be avoided. The construction with *in* + gerund stands for the same meaning as the latter, but appears to be less common. The infinitive-construction mostly represents the quality of carefulness as belonging to the action rather than to the person: *Lord S. was very careful to point out* = *Lord S. very carefully pointed out*. This does not, of course, apply to the first example with the infinitive, in which *to be careful of* = *to mind*.

The above observations may in the main, also apply to *careless*, but examples are wanting at the moment of writing to substantiate this statement: The Londoner is often careless about closing the nose-passage. RIPPMANN, *Sounds of Spok. Eng.*, § 8.

particular: i. * He cautioned the lady to be very particular about icing the wine. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 42.

** He was very particular in examining the fastenings of all the doors. WASH. IRV., *Doll Heyl.*, (118).

The Society would not be particular in limiting you to the Tower of London. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXII, 186 a.

Let us not be too particular in narrating his father's unedifying frolics of a quarter of a century ago. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. X, 121.

*** I think people should be as particular over choosing their daughter's governess as their son's wife. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXX, 321.

ii. He was particular to lock himself in. DICK., *Black House*, Ch. LVI, 469.

NOTE. Judging from the examples that have come to hand, the gerund-construction with *in* is the most frequent. That with *over* seems to be unusual, and this may also be said of the infinitive-construction.

positive: Why are you so positive about going to Dene Court? MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. I, 26.

scrupulous: i. * They are not at all scrupulous about asking leading questions. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 196.

Do not let us be scrupulous about going away without saying farewell. DEIGHTON, Note to *Macb.*, II, 1, 270 (*Macm.*; *Clas.*).

He encouraged them not to be too scrupulous about obeying Sir Stafford Northcote. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 193, 86 a.

** My father was always scrupulous in exacting our holidays. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXI, 195.

It is observable that in the *Poems of Two Brothers* he is scrupulous in acknowledging obligations. (A. C. BRADLEY, *Com. on Ten's In Mem.*, 72, Note.

ii. We should be religiously scrupulous and exact to say nothing ... but what is true. BUTLER, *Serm. Wks.* 1874, II, 50 (O. E. D'; 3, b).

Note. Usage may be equally divided between the constructions with *about* and *in* + gerund. The infinitive-construction is, presumably, unusual.

25. Most of the following verbs and adjectives that may be construed with *against* + gerund-clause have an alternative infinitive-construction, differing, however, materially from the latter in meaning. Whereas the gerund-construction is used in describing what should be avoided the infinitive-construction indicates what is recommended. This appears from the following examples, so far as the two constructions are presented for comparison:

Verbs.

to caution: i. Cyclists are hereby cautioned against riding at a pace exceeding 8 miles an hour. Notice in London Parks.

ii. He cautioned me not to let so good an offer pass. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XII, (306).

He cautioned the lady to be very particular about icing the wine. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 42.

to exclaim: They now exclaimed against punishing in cold blood. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, II, Ch. VI, 26*a*.

to murmur: Now even the ever faithful Cossacks are said to be murmuring against being used as the scourge of the peasant. Rev. of Rev., No. 199, 4*a*.

to persuade: To persuade him against returning into Hertfordshire was scarcely the work of a moment. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXXV, 198. Note. The construction appears to be an unusual one, *to persuade against* being an uncommon variant of *to dissuade from*, or *to advise against*. The usual construction of *to persuade* is that with *into* + gerund or *to* + infinitive (36).

to warn: i. My doctor expressly warned me against taking any violent exercise soon after luncheon. ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. VIII, 162.

He warns the player against mouthing a passionate speech. DOWDEN, *Note to Hamlet*, III, 2, 200—225.

ii. I must still warn you to go hence. MARK TWAIN (*Günth.*, Syn.).

The ambassador warned him on peril of his life to deal no further with such things. FROUDE, *Hist. England*, I, Ch. III, 266 (O. E. D., 4, *b*).

Note. The construction with a negated infinitive, which appears to be rather common (see the examples in the O. E. D., 4, *b*), is practically equivalent to the construction with *against* + gerund.

Group-verbs.

to set one's face: He had always resolutely set his face against accepting "paper." *Daily Mail*.

to be one's guard: She had always been on her guard against believing too much of what men said. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 208.

26. Among the numerous verbs, and adjectives or equivalent word-groups that may be construed with *at*, there is a large group which express a state of mind or an action consequent on a state of mind brought about by an event. With the majority of these words and word-groups the infinitive-construction is the usual one; it is, in fact, often the only one in actual use when the reference is to an action or state that is subsequent to the moment of speaking. Compare Ch. XVIII, 20.

As to the following material it should be observed that when only one example is given, it must not always be concluded that the alternative construction is non-existent or even unusual. The absence of such examples is, in fact, only due to none being available at the moment of writing.

Verbs.

to ache: My heart ached to think they could possibly be either fools or rascals. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 37.

to blush: i. They only blush at being detected in doing good. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XV, (325).

ii. I do not blush to own that I am out of fashion. BOLINGBROKE, in *Swift's Let.*, II, 199 (O. E. D., 4).

to cry: He cried piteously at being unable to assist a wretched woman. DICK., *Christm. Car.* I, 24.

She was crying at being so lonely. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. III, 51.

to delight: i. He delighted at being restored to the society of his own rank. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXII, 154 a.

ii. I delight in witnessing the gambols of children. WASH. IRVING.

I always delight in overthrowing such kind of schemes. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. X, 55.

iii. He delights to draw forth concealed merit. SHER., *Critic.*, I, 2, (460).

Note. The construction with *in* appears to be more usual than that with *at*. The infinitive-construction is probably the most frequent. Compare the adjectival participle *delighted*, and the group-verb *to take delight* (33).

to exult: i. * Boys had jeered him because of his noble little sweetheart, and he had exulted at hearing her so called. TROL., *Lady Anne*, I, Ch. IV, 46.

** Who can ... not exult in being born a Briton? C. LUCAS, *Ess. Waters*, I, *Ded.* (O. E. D., 2).

ii. We ... exult to think we need no catering for the morrow. KANE, *Arct. Expl.* II, Ch. VIII, 90. (O. E. D., 2).

Note. Presumably the constructions with *at* and *in* are used indifferently, both being more frequent than that with an infinitive.

to grieve: i. In his heart he grieved at having left her in disgrace. *Story of the Abbot*, 15.

ii. He grieved to see his comrade left to face calamity alone. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VII, 42.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, presumably, the usual one.

to groan: King Richard lay on his bed, feverish and restless, ... groaning at having to stay there. *Story of the Talisman*, 10.

to grumble: They grumbled perpetually at paying tithes. RUSKIN, *The King of the Golden River*, Ch. I.

The turnkey shook him, and he woke up, and grumbled at being disturbed. *Story of Rob Roy*.

to laugh: Henry laughed at recognizing in the parlour the well-remembered old piece of Sir Peter Lely. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. X, 96.

to rejoice: I rejoice to see you. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 39.

to revolt: My pride revolted at being obliged to plaster my hair with flour and candle-grease. THACK., *Barry Lynd.*, Ch. IV, 66.

to sicken: Her whole soul sickened to behold him. BUCHANAN, *That Wint. Night*, Ch. XIII, 105.

to stare: Sir Anthony will stare to see the captain here! SHER. *Riv.*, I, 1, (213).

to suffer: No man would suffer more acutely at being tabooed in society. GUNNYON, Biogr. Sketch of Burns, 35.

to triumph: Adrian, generally patient of results, triumphed strongly at having evoked this view. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. X, 64.

Adjectives and Adjectival participles.

agitated: That she should be agitated at seeing me after so long a separation did not surprise me. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwix, II, Ch. IV, 67.

alarmed: Manfred began to be alarmed at not seeing his son. HOR. WALPOLE, Castle of Otranto, Ch. I, 7.

The Greenland pilots were alarmed at being thus beset. SOUTHEY, Life of Nelson, Ch. I, 6.

angry: i. She seemed very angry at being spoke to. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. V, 22.

They were angry at losing the price. *Story of Old Mort.*, 15.

ii. She was disappointed, and angry with herself for being so. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 329.

Won't your brother be angry with you for wishing to marry a penniless girl like myself? Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XI, 181.

Note. The construction with *for* takes the place of that with *at* when the person is mentioned against whom the anger is directed. Compare *vexed*, also *enraged*, *exasperated*, and *offended* in 30.

annoyed: She was annoyed at finding that golden time so far away in the past. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. IV, 76.

astonished: He would have been grievously astonished to find that any one objected to his following his example. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 99 a.

(un)comfortable: She had [that particular kind of shy modesty which makes any one uncomfortable at receiving caresses from a person towards whom the heart does not go forth with an impulsive welcome. Mrs. GASK., *Wiv. & Daught.*, Ch. XI, 117.

(un)concerned: i. I cannot be otherwise than concerned at being the means of injuring your amiable daughters. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XIII, 66.

ii. They were greatly concerned to find a small accident had happened. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 41.

confused: I felt rather confused at being the object of more attention than I had ever before received. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XI, 114.

She was rather confused at discovering that she herself had become the subject of conversation. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XVII.

dazed: He's dazed at being called on to speak before quality. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 262.

delighted: i. He is delighted at having succeeded in his design. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 241.

Lady Ann will be delighted at hearing of your arrival. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VI, 72.

iii. He was delighted to throw his Gradus ad Parnassum on the sofa. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 234.

If the money belonged to me, I should be delighted to keep it. BLACK., *Princ. of Thule*, Ch. XXII, 371 (O. E. D., 1).

Note. The infinitive-construction is the usual one. Compare *to delight*, and *to take delight* (33).

disappointed: i. * She was quite disappointed at not seeing him there again the next day to make his proposals. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIV, 336.

How disappointed I was this morning at finding I had arrived just a day too late to witness your triumph! KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. III, 23 *b*.

It appears that certain examinees have been disappointed at not being able to get through by cramming up the notes instead of reading the texts! SWEET, *A. S. Reader*, Pref., 11.

** Elizabeth had been a good deal disappointed in not finding a letter from Jane. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVI, 266.

ii. I ... first was disappointed not to see | Such mighty change as I had felt within | Expressed in outward things. SHELLEY, *Prom. Unb.*, III, 4, 128.

Note. The construction with *at* is the one most frequently met with.

disconcerted: Evan was a little disconcerted at having missed his mark. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XVI, 59 *a*.

disgusted: He was much disgusted at having made such a scene. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XVI, 142.

elated: The youth was greatly elated at being introduced to the author of the *Plain Dealer* and the *Country Wife*. MAC., *Restor.*, (576 *b*).

Majorcy felt quite elated at being asked to dinner. Mrs. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. XI, 171.

embarrassed: She would naturally feel embarrassed at coming in again. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. XI, 417.

happy: i. * Moses (was) quite happy at being permitted to dispute. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. VII, (270).

** He thought himself happy in having found a man who knew the world so well. JOHNSON, *Rasselas*, Ch. VII, 42.

ii. I shall be very happy to welcome you.

Note. The infinitive-construction is the ordinary one.

hurt: Your son was hurt at being excluded from the festivities. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 371.

impatient: He shook his head showing how impatient he was at being thus questioned. TROL., *Gold. Lion*, Ch. XIV, 157.

King Richard, growing impatient at being left alone, called to his attendants. *Story of the Talisman*.

moved: Her heart was moved at seeing her old enemy in such a case. RID. HAG., *Mees*, Will, Ch. VII, 76.

perplexed: Clara was confused and perplexed at being thus appealed to. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XX.

(dis)pleased: i. * He was well pleased at seeing his prediction about to be verified. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Ch. IX, 25.

He stroked my hair, as if well pleased at seeing a danger averted. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXIV, 320.

Tremaine himself was evidently pleased at being settled for the winter. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XIV, 234.

Several noblemen and gentlemen were there already mounted displeased at having been kept waiting. *Story of the Abbot*, 23.

I think that George MacDonald would not be the least displeased at being called a Seer. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 357 *a*.

** The poorer the guest, the better pleased he is with being treated. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (236).

I was now sincerely pleased with thinking that my child was going to be secured in a continuance of competence and peace. *ib.*, Ch. XVII, (336).

ii. She was pleased to find that she had said enough to keep him quiet. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 323.

The ghost was greatly-pleased to find him in this mood. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 72.

Note. There is no clear difference between the different constructions as

presented in the above examples. That with the infinitive is, presumably, the most frequent in ordinary colloquial language. It would be used to the exclusion of either gerund-construction when the reference is to a source of pleasure yet future at the moment of speaking, as in: *We shall be pleased to execute your order.* See also Ch. II, 26. The construction with *with* + gerund is presumably, unrequent.

proud: i. * I was not a little proud, let me tell you, at having held my own against Mick so long. THACK., Barry Lynd., Ch. I, 17.

How proud he used to feel at walking home with six shillings — his salary — in his pocket! Miss DICKENS (STOP., Leesb. Aanvangsklassen, I, 15).

** If they are proud of having beaten them, they are still prouder of having made them their political brethren. Graph.

ii. I am proud to be Sir Rowland's son. SHAK., As you like it, I, 2, 245.

Note. Although the gerund-clause with *at* may be considered to represent an adverbial adjunct, and that with *of* distinctly represents a prepositional object, *of* being absolutely meaningless, the two constructions do not differ appreciably in meaning, both stating the occasion of the pride on the part of the subject. The infinitive-construction, as usual, is most probably more frequent than either.

riled: She must feel rather riled at being left out when other girls are asked. Mrs. ALEX, For his Sake, I, Ch. XIII, 218.

shocked: We cannot be shocked at finding the morality also very different. MAC., Com. Dram., (567 b).

They are not a little shocked at hearing that they regularly drop *h* in the weak forms of *him* and *her*. RIPPMANN, Elem. Phon., Pref. 6.

The man was shocked at having broken the window. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb.

sorry: i. We are sorry at observing references to Bryant. Ann. Rev., IV, 202 (O. E. D., 2, a).

ii. I have only come to tell you how sorry I was to see you treated as you were by my uncle. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. IV, 36.

Note. The gerund-construction with *at* is, no doubt, uncommon.

startled: * He was much startled at recognizing in Miss Wynne his former patient of Raxton. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XVI, Ch. I, 464.

** Monmouth was startled by finding that a broad and profound trench lay between him and the camp which he had hoped to surprise. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 177.

Note. A comparison of the above examples shows that there is not always a marked difference between the combination of the adjectival past participle with the copula *to be* and that of the verbal past participle with the auxiliary of the passive voice.

surprised: i. I suppose it is you who are much more surprised at seeing me. E. W. HORNUNG, No Hero, Ch. IV, 36.

ii. He was surprised to see any human being in this lonely and unrequented place. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., V, 39.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, presumably, the ordinary one.

thankful: i. Thankful at being allowed to quit my ghastly couch, I rose. HUGH CONWAY, Called back, Ch. II, 20.

ii. I am thankful to have you. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. II, 33.

He was thankful to be drawn out of himself by the exercise and the excitement of the chase. *ib.*, II, Ch. II, 34.

Note. When attended by a *to*-complement, *thankful* and its synonym *grateful* take a gerund-construction with *for*; thus in: She was grateful to her uncle for saying [etc.]. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XLIII, 243.

vexed: i. * She seems vexed at being disturbed. BEATR. HAR., *The Fowler*, I, Ch. I, 1.

** We are vexed with cousin James for having been so disagreeable and harsh. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXVII, 245.

ii. She was vexed to see him stand up with her. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. III, 16.

Note. The construction with *for* is used when the person that has caused the vexation is mentioned. Compare *angry*. For the rest the infinitive-construction is the ordinary one.

Adjectival Phrases.

taken aback: I was quite taken aback at finding her upon the very best terms with people of such quality. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. V, 53.

in high glee: He was in high glee at finding himself on terra firma. *ib.*, Ch. VIII, 85.

27. Among the verbs and adjectives governing a prepositional object with *at* in another meaning than that mentioned in the preceding section, there are but few that have been found furnished with a verbal with any frequency. With some of them the gerund-construction varies with the infinitive-construction. The following deserve attention:

Verbs.

to aim: i. Modern spelling also aims at suggesting to the eye the original form of learned words. SKEAT, *Prim. of Eng. Etym.*, 41.

Hume aimed in his writings at being concise after the manner of the ancients. MEIKLEJOHN, *Hist. of Eng. Lit.*, 355.

The short-sighted policy which aimed at making a nation of saints, has made a nation of scoffers. MAC., *Com. Dram.*, (569 *a*)

He aimed especially at rendering intelligible to all, in non-technical language, the dominant scientific ideas of the century. L. C. T., Tyndall, *Biogr. Sketch*, 10 *b*.

ii. patriotism: the passion which aims to serve one's country. WEBST., *Dict.*

I call Napoleon the agent or attorney of the middle class of modern society, of the modern world aiming to be rich. EMERSON, *Repres. Men*, 65 *b*.

The following extracts aim to give the student some idea of the evolution of criticism on the drama. VIDA D. SCUDDER, *Shelley's Prom. Unb.*, *Extracts from Crit.*, 167.

Does Job for a moment aim to create the intimate dramatic effect of King Lear? *Acad. & Lit.*

It (sc. the system) does not aim to make big muscles. *Punch*, *Advert.*

Note. The construction with *at* + gerund is the more natural and, most probably, the more usual one. The rather frequent use of the infinitive-construction is, no doubt, due to the fact that the verb is distinctly suggestive of a relation of purpose mostly expressed by *to* + infinitive. It appears to be especially common in American English. See also FOWLER, *Dict. of Mod. Eng. Usage*, s. v. *aim*.

to arrive: You will, perhaps, wonder how a country boy should arrive at possessing such elegant manners. THACK., *Barry Lynd.*, Ch. I, 19.

After many interrogations of the sort, she arrived at naming the lady a bold-faced thing. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVII, 343.

to aspire: i. Hadst thou the impudence to aspire at being a husband with that stubborn and disobedient temper. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, IV, 3, (276).

ii. Milo was aspiring to be made consul. FROUDE, *Cæsar*, Ch. XVIII (O. E. D., 3, c).

I really should not aspire to share his poverty. NORRIS, *An Eclipse*, Sc. I. Note. The infinitive-construction is, no doubt, the ordinary one.

to endeavour: i. The same reflection determined him now to endeavour at obtaining the consent of Frederic to his marriage. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, Ch. III, 97.

ii. He (sc. the pope) sent the Archbishop of Rouen to England to endeavour to compromise matters. FROUDE, *Short Stud.* IV, 1, Ch. IV, 44 (O. E. D., 3, a).

Note. The construction with *at* is now obsolete (O. E. D., 3, c).

to excel: We do all other men excel | At wrestling ... leaping, running well. HOBBS, *Odyssey*, 86 (O. E. D., 2).

Note. No doubt an unusual construction, the ordinary preposition being *in*.

to help: i. * Cooper he was and carpenter, and wrought | To make the boatmen fishing-nets or help'd | At lading and unlading the tall barks. TEN, *En. Ard.*, 812.

** To help another in raising a building. WEBST., *Dict.*

Will had been obliged to help Mr. Brooke in arranging 'documents. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXIX, 286.

I shall be able to help in paying off the debt. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XX, 157.

ii. Help me to get Thomasin happy. HARDY, *Return*, I. Ch. X, 112.

Can you help me to find a lodging? PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. I.

It is she who helps him to form his ideal. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XXI.

I was helping him to cheat the railway-company. *ib.*, Ch. X.

Note. The infinitive-construction appears to be the ordinary one, the construction with *at* + gerund being the least frequent. Another variant is the construction with a present participle, due to the suppression of a preposition. It is, apparently, very unusual, the following being the only example that has come to hand: It (sc. what I have told you) 'll help you knowing what to do with him next time. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Traffic*, III, Ch. XIV, 214.

to hesitate. See 24, a.

to rebel: Paul sat down at the end furthest from the master, inwardly rebelling at having thus education forced upon him. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. VI, 118.

Note. The ordinary construction is with *against*. There is also one with *to*, which is far less usual. See the examples in the O. E. D.

to stick: I'll not stick at giving myself trouble to put down such hypocritical cant. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. I, 183.

to stickle: They have not stickled at avowing the high-church principles they learned at Waverley-Honour. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XXXII, 97a.

to work: He worked hard at clearing a path. O. E. D., s. v. *at*, 17.

Group-verb.

to try one's hand: You might just try your hand at getting her to eat a bit of cake. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XV.

He ought not to be allowed to try his 'prentice hand at governing Ireland through his nominee. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 205, 4b.

Adjectives.

The adjectives or adjectival phrases after which *at* + gerund(-clause) is common are especially such as indicate an aptitude or inaptitude for any pursuit. In these combinations *at* expresses vaguely the same notion as is denoted by *regarding* or *as regards*, and the gerund-clause may, accordingly, also be understood to represent an adverbial adjunct of restriction (65). See also Ch. XVIII, 27. There is in the majority of cases no corresponding infinitive-construction.

apt: Men ... are ... apt at devising ways of easing their toils. HT. MARTINEAU, *Life in Wilds*, Ch. VI, 77 (O. E. D., 5).

Note. In the meaning of *customarily disposed, inclined*, the construction with *at* + gerund is, apparently, unusual, the infinitive-construction being the ordinary one; e. g.: i. Those Pharisees of our time who, like those of old, are apt at asking: "Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?" *Stead's Annual for 1906*, 3, c.

ii. We are apt to act too immediately on our impulses. RUSKIN, *Pol. Econ.* Art. 26 (O. E. D., 4, b).

clever: Hetty was particularly clever at making up the butter. G. ELIOT, *A. D. Bede*, I, Ch. VII, 71.

Johnny watched the swallows trying | Which was cleverest at flying. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 580, g.

good: Robbin and Watkin were not yet good at smoking. ASCOTT R. HOPE. At this time the men of England were very good at handling the staff. *Robin Hood*, 138.

I'm not much good at making apologies. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. III.

quick: I am quick at interpreting its language (sc. of your eye). CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XIV, 163.

smart: Being out in a boat on the river Lea on Saturday afternoons soon makes you smart at handling a craft, and spry at escaping being run over by roughs, or swamped by barges. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XV, 197.

spry: See the above example.

stupid: Women ... are so stupid at understanding about anything relating to the sea. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXVII, 271.

swift: Women are swift at coming to conclusions. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 343.

Adjectival Phrases.

a good (clever, etc.) hand: The young chap is a great hand at drawing. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. X, 148.

Sailormen are not good 'ands at saving money as a rule. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, A, 9.

a (no) match: Europeans are no match for Orientals at evading a question EARLE, *Phil.*, § 580, a.

28. a) Among the verbs frequently found with *by* + gerund(-clause) a separate group is formed by *to begin* and its synonyms and antonyms. These verbs take *by* especially when the reference is to a succession of actions leading up, or intended to lead up, to a certain result; e. g.:

to begin: They began by maintaining that the whole proceeding was terminated by the dissolution. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (653 a).

Burke began his operations by applying for papers. *ib.*, (644 a).

I shall begin by reading the earlier will. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXV, 247.

to commence: The French commenced the war by sending supplies and money to America. C. OMAN (GÜNTH., *Syn.*).

to conclude: He concluded by saying that the amount of the fine was too great for the occasion. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (645 *b*).

He concluded by saying, "you are here for your good." WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. I, 419.

to end: Miles Square and Pistratus wrangled and argued — argued and wrangled — and ended by taking a fancy to each other. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, XIII, Ch. IV, 343.

I always end by finding a corner in the world. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. X.

to finish: He finished his grimaces by asking the name and direction of the hotel. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXVI, 201.

to wind up: He wound up by saying, "By the bye, where is she now?" WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, V, Ch. I, 223.

Note. There is an unusual construction with *in* + gerund, which may imply the same notion as that conveyed by *by* + gerund; and a rather common one with *with* + gerund, which may also be found before the name of an action, or one of a succession of actions, but which implies no clear notion of a result aimed at; e.g.: i. He ended in bursting into a very great laughter. KINGSLEY, *Her.*, I, 14 *a*.

ii. It (sc. the Declaration) ended with declaring the Prince and Princess of Orange King and Queen of England. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IX, § 7, 683. He started with breaking a cup. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. IV, 44.

b) Among other verbs that may take *by* + gerund(-clause) the following may be mentioned:

to amuse: * Amusing themselves by trying the effect of stopping and unstopping their ears. M. DAVIES, *Unorth. London*, 312 (O. E. D., 7, *a*). One day as a lion was lying asleep in a forest some mice began to amuse themselves by running over him. GÜNTH., *Leerboek*.

** Elizabeth took up some needlework and was sufficiently amused in attending to what passed between Darcy and his companion. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. X, 50.

The mayor's rosy children seemed greatly amused in watching us shivering shelteres from the rain. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 8.

He amused himself in mentally following the piano on its way to the freight-depot. HOWELLS, *The Pursuit of the Piano* (SWAEN, *Sel.*, II, 25).

*** He amused himself with embellishing his grounds. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (656 *a*).

The rank and file ... amuse themselves with playing football. *Times*.

Note. These constructions appear to be used indifferently. The O. E. D. (7, *a*) has *to amuse oneself with, by, or in sketching*.

to live: They lived by making others work for them. WALT. BESANT, *St. Kath.*, Ch. II.

to mean: What I mean by being proof against calumny is being able to point to the fact as a contradiction. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 284.

29. Among the verbs, and adjectives or adjectival phrases that may be construed with *for* there are a large number which express an activity, a fitness, or disposition necessary or desired for the accomplishment of a certain purpose. Of this nature, amongst many others, are:

the verbs or group-verbs *to appoint, to arrange, to bid fair,*

to capacitate, to die, to engage, to fit, to long, to make up one's mind, to mean, to nerve, to pant, to prepare, to select, to serve, to make shift, to strive, to suffice, to take pains, to use, to wait; the adjectives or adjectival phrases *adapted, adequate, anxious, calculated, called for, competent, eager, fit, good, impatient, at leisure, mad, minded, necessary, needed, needful, propitious, qualified, ready, required, solicitous, sufficient.*

After the majority of these words or word-groups the gerund-construction is highly unusual or even non-existent, the infinitive-construction taking its place. This naturally applies also to their opposites.

Illustration of the infinitive-construction being easily procurable in the case of most of the above words, we may confine it to those among them which seem to be of some particular interest. Examples with the rarer construction with *for* + gerund-(clause), so far as they have come to hand at the time of writing, will precede.

Verbs.

to engage: i. He readily engaged for taking the earliest opportunity of waiting on her. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XVIII, 106.

ii. Some other gentleman was engaged to do the duty of the day. *ib.*, Ch. XIII, 66.

I engaged to meet them there in the evening. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LI, 366 b.

to incapacitate: i. I asked her ... if she didn't think they (sc. the muffins) were always administered to people at a tea-party to incapacitate them for eating any supper. Miss BRADDON, *Captain Thomas*.

ii. A reward which his evil qualities and defects incapacitated him to receive. S. COX, *Salv. Mundi*, Ch. VII, 152 (O. E. D., 1).

Note. The usual construction would seem to be that with *from*, as in: This effectually incapacitated him from doing the office of a clerk. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. II, 15.

prepare: i. I then turned to my wife and children, and directed them to get together what few things were left us, and prepare immediately for leaving this place. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXIV, (408).

We prepared ourselves for appearing in company. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VIII, 151.

She began to tie on a clean apron, and otherwise prepare herself for going to the shop. *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 256.

He allowed the military commanders of Afghanistan to pull their resources together and prepare for inflicting signal chastisement on the enemy. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 55.

ii. He prepared himself to watch the play which was just commencing. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VII, 60.

He looks over the papers on his table and prepares to write a letter. *id.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XXVII, 234.

Note. The construction with *for* + gerund appears to be quite common.

to select: i. Those which exhibit the peculiarity the most distinctly are selected for breeding. HUXL., *Darwiniana*, Ch. I, 16.

ii. My friend was selected to serve as interpreter.

to serve: i. It is a plain chapel with a small organ in the corner, and a

pulpit, which served for reading the service, as well as delivering the sermon. BESANT, *All Sorts*, Ch. XII, 97.

ii. It may serve to moderate your warmth. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. II, (244).

to suffice: i. In many cases one's own circle of acquaintances suffices for determining doubtful points. RIPPMAUN, *Elem. Phon.*, Pref., 7.

ii. A little thing has sufficed to destroy the balance of a structure that was already tottering. MANCH. GUARD., 12/10, 1883, 5/3 (O. E. D., 1, g).

Group-verbs.

to bid fair: In some cases the railways bid fair to be left with only heavy goods demanding long haulage. TIMES.

to make up one's mind: She made up her mind to accept the invitation. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XXII.

Compare: Make up your minds for a good battle-royal. GRAPH.

That's what he must make up his mind to in this life. DICK., *Co p.*, Ch. LI, 365 a. Note. For other constructions with *mind* see 51 and 56.

to make shift: He made shift to make the two ends of the year meet. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. X, 59.

He, however, made shift to scramble up its sides (sc. of the glen). WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 42.

Adjectives.

adapted: i. Drosera was excellently adapted for . . . catching insects. DARWIN, *Insectiv. Plants*, Ch. I, 3 (O. E. D., 1).

ii. It was certain that her manner would be ill adapted to do credit to her sense. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIX, 369.

calculated: i. She hoped, on turning her head, to see the master of the house; but it proved to be much less calculated for making matters easy. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. IX, 80.

ii. Their behaviour at the assembly had not been calculated to please in general. id., *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. IV, 19.

good: i. (It) would be a very good apple for eating. TROL., *Belt. Est.*, Ch. XI, 135.

ii. The water is not good to drink. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 372.

Note. Compare Ch. LV, 86.

necessary: i. Nor had the agent of Hastings the talents necessary for obtaining the ear of an assembly. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (640 b).

The teacher of elocution is as necessary for correcting this defect as in questions of voice-production. RIPPMAUN, *Elem. of Phon.*, Pref., 8.

ii. He furnished him with whatever was necessary to make a genteel appearance. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (468).

(un)propitious: This mode of life was not the most propitious for educating such a boy as Friedrich. CARLYLE, *Life of Schiller*, I, 14.

A more prudent man would have seen that the moment was unpropitious for taking the action which he purposed. W. T. STEAD, *In our Midst*, Pref.

qualified: i. The Queen Alexandra has now fully qualified herself for taking over the duties of Royal Sympathy Incarnate, which form no small part of the functions of the Sovereign in this country. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 192, 384 b.

ii. You are not here qualified to discriminate. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXVII, 277.

ready: i. In less than ten minutes' time from leaving the case-room it (sc. the matrix) is cast in solid metal and is ready for printing. *Good Words* for 1885.

ii. There was a vessel ready to make sail. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (123).

Adjectival Phrase.

called for: i. Such a measure is imperatively called for for expediting the assertion of a Bishop's authority. *Times*.

ii. Drastic measures are called for to remove the evil.

30. Verbs and adjectives with *for* in another meaning take the gerund-construction almost without an exception.

Verbs.

to answer: I cannot answer for being coherent. *JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XLVI, 267.*

Traitress, how wilt thou answer for thus tormenting the heart that loves thee so dearly? *SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. II, 23.*

to apologize: I ought to apologize for leaving the door open. *DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XVII.*

I must apologize for calling so late. *CON. DOYLE, Mem. of Sherl. Holm., II, E, 216.*

to blame, and its synonyms *to censure, to chide, to reprehend, to reproach, to reprove, to upbraid*.

i. You blamed me for coming. *JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. LVIII, 363.* Who can blame a man for inflicting them (sc. his grievances) on himself. *DOR. GERARD, Etern. Woman, Ch. XX.*

ii. Some members of the democratical party censured the Secretary for dedicating The Prince to a patron who bore the unpopular name of Medici. *MAC., Machiavelli, (30 b).*

iii. He chid him severely for bestowing such pains on my education. *SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. II, 12.*

iv. I was reprehended for doubting that proposition. *HUXLEY, Lect. & Es., 65 b.*

v. She reproached herself for having flung away such a treasure. *THACK., Van. Fair, Ch. XXXII, 363.*

vi. Her conscience reproved her for frightening him off improving himself. *EM. BRONTË, Wuth. Heights, Ch. VII, 32.*

Note *a*) *To blame* may also be construed with a gerund(-clause) containing a genitive or a possessive pronoun indicating the person blamed; after *reproach* and some of its synonyms *for* is sometimes replaced by *with*; e.g.:

i. I don't blame your saluting the gentleman civilly. *SHER., Riv., V, 3, (281).*

ii. She could not reproach herself with having missed any chance. *Mrs. WARD, Pres., Ch. II, 13 a.*

He upbraided him gently with choosing so rude an abode. *SCOTT, Wav., Ch. XVIII, 65 a.*

The following construction of *to blame*, not registered in the O. E. D., seems to be very rare and may be obsolete: Who, then, shall blame | His pester'd senses to recoil and start, | When all that is within him does condemn | itself for being there. *SHAK., Macb., V, 2, 23.*

β) Dutchmen should guard against construing these verbs with two non-prepositional objects, the thing-object being represented by a subordinate statement, or an infinitive-clause, as in: *Neem mij niet kwalijk, dat ik zoo laat kom; Hij verweet mij dat ik mijn werk verwaarloosd had (or mijn werk verwaarloosd te hebben).*

to care: see 24.

complain: And you complain of Blanche for being so stout! *THACK., A little Din. at Tim., Ch. I.*

to take credit: He took great credit to himself for not having attacked him. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VII, 133.

to fit: I think I have fitted you for listening. WYCH., Plain Deal., II, 1, (412).

You have fitted me for believing you could not be fickle. *ib.*, II, 1, (412).

Note. *To fit* in this meaning, "*to visit* (a person) *with a fit penalty, to punish*, is now obsolete, exc. Australian." O. E. D., 12.

to pity: I used to pity myself for having to go through this training. HUXL., Lect. and Es., 10*b*.

to thank: I thank you for assembling here. DICK., Chuz., Ch. IV, 29*b*.

Note. After *I will thank you*, a rather uncourteous variant of *I shall be obliged to you*, we mostly find an infinitive(-clause). Compare *thankful*.

I'll thank you not to grumble. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norse., Ch. XIII, 110.

I will thank you to indicate the prices against the various articles enumerated. Business Letter Writer, I.

I'll thank you not to speak about him in that way. ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. VII, 156.

to vote: I voted for giving him his revenge. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIV, 90.

He voted for cutting off Cromwell's head without a trial. MAC., Hallam's Const. Hist., (57*b*).

Adjectives or adjectival Participles.

enraged: She was enraged against herself for being so silly. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. LIV, 334.

exasperated: I was so exasperated against him for breaking his appointment that [etc.]. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XVI, 98.

grateful: He is doubtless heartily grateful to us for allowing him to escape. GARVICE, The Heir of Vering, Ch. XIX, 70.

He was grateful to Dillock for having treated him so kindly. FERGUS HUME, A Midn. Mystery, Ch. V, 82.

indebted: It was partly to this vague fear that Marner was indebted for protecting him from the persecution that his singularities might have drawn upon him. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marner, Ch. I, 5.

I am sure they were all very much indebted to you for planning their Norwegian tour for them so well. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. V, 41.

obliged: Much obliged to you, sir, for giving me the preference. MARRYAT, Olla Podrida.

The tone seemed meant to impress upon her how very much obliged she ought to feel to him for consenting to be her father. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, Ch. II, 10.

offended: She was too amiable to be really offended with Roland for making a mistake that was constantly being made by others. Story of the Abbot, 34.

responsible: They were responsible for providing me with the knowledge essential to the right guidance of life. HUXL., Lect. & Es., 64*a*.

thankful: I can never be thankful enough for having been stopped in time. RHODA BROUGHTON, Mamma, Ch. V, 44.

31. The verbs *to excuse*, *to forgive* and *to pardon* deserve special discussion for the great variety of constructions of which they are capable.

As has been shown in Ch. III, 44, these verbs may take two

non-prepositional objects one denoting a person and one denoting a thing; e. g.:

- i. We will excuse thee all. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 45.
- ii. He forgave him everything. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 205, 27 a.
- iii. Katharine pardoned him his pale face. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. VIII, 152.

They may also be construed with a *for*-complement in place of the second non-prepositional object, thus in:

- i. A man need be very young and pretty foolish too to be excused for such conduct. SHAW, *Man & Superman*, II, (124).
- ii. I can forgive him for everything, Sir, except his ignorance respecting my Dictionary. JOHNSON (in FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. III, 26).
- I will forgive you for injustice to Petrarch. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. I, 80.

This construction appears to be particularly common when the *for*-complement is represented by a gerund(-clause), as in:

- i. * A girl of your age, to shut herself up in a living tomb — no, it is a preposterous idea, excuse me for saying so. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XIV.
- If you'll excuse me for saying so, you're wrong. G. M. FENN, *Roy Rowland*.
- ** One may be excused for doubting whether such a policy as this can have its root in a desire for the public welfare. EARLE, *Philol.*, § 476.
- ii. * Forgive me for bringing you here. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXIII, 195 b.
- Forgive me for refusing you. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. IX, 49.
- I had forgiven her for being a Roman Catholic. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. V, 89.

The people could not quite forgive her for being a foreigner. *Times*.

** An Australian may be forgiven for reflecting with pride that the most absolutely British community outside Great Britain is found in Australia and New Zealand. *Daily Mail*.

- iii. * Pardon me for neglecting to profit by your advice. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XVIII, 100.

** Tennyson enthusiasts may be pardoned for feeling that his attitude is somewhat frigid. *Lit. World*.

Note a) *For* as used in the above combinations stands for a vague *as for*. It is sometimes replaced by *in* representing a vague *in so far as ... is concerned*. The prepositions indicate approximately the same notions, and there is not, accordingly, an appreciable difference between the two gerund-constructions. That with *in* is, however, comparatively rare. Here follow some examples:

- i. Sir Walter might be excused, therefore, in forgetting her age. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. I, 5.

I must be excused in giving a somewhat elaborate description of him. TROL., *Macd.*, Ch. V, 40.

I think she will be excused in having put on her new cloak. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. IX, 100.

- ii. Modern poets may, therefore, be pardoned in seeking simpler subjects. SCOTT, *Brid. of Triermain*, Pref.

β) Further variants of the gerund-construction with *for* after these verbs are represented by such sentences as *Excuse my saying so* (or *Excuse me saying so*) and *Excuse me if I say so*. SWEET (*N. E. Gr.*, § 2332) observes: "In *pardon me blushing* we could ... either change *me* into *my*, or insert *for*."

- i. * Excuse me saying such a thing. GALSW., *Strife*, I, (209).

Excuse me speakin' about the strike. *ib.*, III, (253).

** You will excuse me if I point out that my time is extremely valuable. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XXV.
Will you excuse me if I go on with my rolling, just to keep up appearances. SHAW, *An Unsocial Socialist*, Ch. IV, (57).

ii. * You must forgive my being such a spy. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXV, 510.

If you'll forgive my saying so, sir, ... your proposal seems to me very rough-and-ready justice. GALSW., *White Monk*, III, Ch. XII, (281).

Forgive my telling you frankly that [etc.]. SHAW, *An Unsocial Socialist*, Ch. XVI, (304).

** I forgive him sinking my own poor truck. WYCH., *Plain Deal*, I, I, (378).

*** Forgive me if I remind you that we must hear the matter between the citizens of Perth and Ramormy. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXI, 229.

Forgive me if I seemed unresponsive. JEROME, *Three Men on the Bummel*, Ch. III, (57).

iii. * Pardon me saying it. TEN., *Princ.*, I, 154.

It is very chivalrous, but, if you will pardon me saying so, very foolish. FERGUS HUME, *A Midnight Mystery*, Ch. I, (22).

** God pardon me, if ever I have spoken contemptuously to the captain! Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. II, 38.

Pardon me again, if I remind you that you have had few opportunities for learning his testamentary intentions. CH. GARVICE, *The Heir of Vering*, Ch. XVI, (61).

γ) *To forgive* is also found construed with an infinitive(-clause), but this construction is now rare; e.g.:

An example so much better — forgive me to say — before her. RICHARDSON, *Pam.*, III, 387 (O. E. D., 4).

δ) Semantically quite different from the above constructions of which *to excuse* is capable, is that with *from*, as in:

Clavering excused himself from joining the splendid assembly. MAC., *War Hast.*, (619 a).

Walter excused himself from joining them. LYTTON, *Eng. Ar.*, Ch. V, 36.

He had excused himself from smoking on the ground of fatigue. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. III, 14 b.

He would not be excused from going back with us. DEFOE, *Voy. round World*, 295 (O. E. D., 7).

The use of *to pardon* with a similar construction is now rare. An instance is found in: Pardon me from dwelling so long on this sad theme. ANNA SEWARD, *Let.*, IV, 81 (O. E. D., 3, b).

ε) Although *Excuse my doing that* is mostly equivalent to *Excuse me for doing that*, it may also have the value of *Excuse me from doing that* = *Excuse me for not doing that*. (Ch. LIX, 90, f.) This is shown by the following example: "Excuse my rising, Miss Lyon," said Felix; "I'm binding up Job's finger." G. ELIOT, *Felix Holt*, I, Ch. XXII, 332.

Thus also in the following passive sentence the insertion of *from* before the gerund would leave the meaning unmodified.

Young folks in their situation should be excused complying with the common forms. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XII, 122.

32. a) Most of the verbs that may be construed with *from* + gerund (clause) have no alternative infinitive-construction. Excepted are only the intransitives *to cease*, *to forbear*, *to refrain*, and the transitives *to prohibit*, and *to withhold*. Of *to forbid* it is the ordinary one. As the force of *from* in connexion with intransi-

tives (excepting such as owe their intransitiveness to the omission of the reflexive pronoun) differs materially from that which it has when connected with transitives, the two classes of verbs are here presented separately.

Intransitives.

abstain: You may observe, Mr. Bucket, that I abstain from examining this paper myself. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXII, 517.

arise: Perhaps the story of his (sc. Homer's) blindness arose from fancying that Demodocus, the blind singer in the *Odyssey*, was a prototype of Homer. NETTLESHIP & SANDYS, *Dict. of Clas. Antiq.*, 301*b*.

to cease: There the wicked cease from troubling, there the weary be at rest. Bible, Job, III, 17.

Apparently he had not yet reached those sublime heights where insults cease from troubling and slanders fail to sting. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nots.*, Ch. XXVI, 238.

Sir Wilfrid could not cease from looking at the lady they (sc. the features described) adorned. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daughter*, I, Ch. I, 10*a*.

Note. There is no appreciable difference between *to cease from* + gerund, and the transitive *to cease* + gerund or infinitive (20).

to come: This comes from living so much alone. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 201.

to desist: Mr. Guppy therefore desisted from taking something out of his pocket. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIV, 529.

to escape: How difficult it is even for great men to escape from being Snobs. THACK., *Snobs*, Ch. V, 28.

Note. Although there is a marked difference between *to escape* and *to escape from* when followed by a noun, the latter only indicating a physical action (Compare *to escape imprisonment, observation*, etc. with *to escape from prison, a dangerous neighbourhood*, etc.), the construction with *from* + gerund does not appreciably differ from that with the transitive verb + gerund, illustrated in 18, *b*.

to forbear: He forbore from molesting Miss Amory. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 73.

He forbore from pressing him to take any share in class-work. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. VI, 119.

Note. For *to forbear* + gerund or infinitive, used in practically the same meaning, see 20.

to hold: I can't hold from laughing. WYCH., *Plain Deal.*, II, I, (414).

Note. The suppression of the reflexive pronoun, to which the intransitive use of *to hold* is due, seems unusual (O. E. D., 27).

to refrain: He could not refrain from telling how he had come by the mill. ANDREW LANG, *Blue Fairy Book*.

Mr. Churchill has refrained from repeating the experiment he made last year in making a survey of the financial situation in advance of the Budget. *Manch. Guard.*, 25/3, 1927, 11*b*.

Note. The intransitive use of the verb is due to the suppression of the reflexive pronoun. The gerund-construction with the latter is, however, quite obsolete (O. E. D., 2, *b*). This also applies, although, perhaps, less strictly, to the infinitive-construction, as in:

The Duke still held his hand on the hilt of his sword, but refrained to draw his weapon. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXVII, 352.

I have another reason for refraining to shoot, besides the fearing discomfiture and disgrace. *id.*, *Iv a n h o e*, Ch. XIII, 134.

to return: She was just returning from accompanying the mother to her lonely habitation. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XI, 107.
to shrink: She shrank from thus encroaching on his voluntary privacy. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XVII.

Transitives.

to avert: To avert unspeakable calamity from falling upon two entire families, a sacrifice is demanded. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. X, 109.
to confine: I did not like to confine myself from dancing at all. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XIII, 33.

to debar: They are debarred from balloting again for a full week. *Pall Mall Mag.*

to depose: After Vashti was deposed from being queen, King Ahasuerus ordered search to be made in all the provinces for fair young virgins. G. C. MACAULAY, *Note to Ten's Mar. of Ger.*, 730.

to deter: He said that it was always his way to terrify young people when they came before him, that his threats ... might deter them from engaging in scenes of riot and debauchery. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVII, 116.

to disable: She (sc. Miss Murdstone) had very heavy eyebrows, nearly meeting over her large nose, as if, being disabled by the wrongs of her sex from wearing whiskers, she had carried them to that account. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24*a*.

to discourage: He was not discouraged from speaking again. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XVIII, 101.
 He had discouraged his agent and the farmers from coming to the conference. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXVII, 252.

to dispense: Me she had dispensed from joining the group. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. I, 1.

enjoin: We are now asked to enjoin him for ever from infringing a right which does not exist. Sir C. BOWEN, *Law Rep.* (O. E. D.), 3).

Note. An unusual application of the verb, except in Law. The ordinary construction is that with a person-object with or without (*up*)*on* + thing-object, which may be an infinitive(-clause). See Ch. III, 44.

to estop: Mr. Balfour denied that anything which fell from him last year estopped the Government from presenting the Estimates in the form they had selected. *Times*.

to forbid: Good manners, and a repugnance to telling tales out of school, forbid us from saying which of Madam Esmond's guests was the first to fall under the weight of her hospitality. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. X, 99.

Note. The construction is now rare (O. E. D., 1*e*), being replaced by that with (pronoun) + infinitive, as in *I forbid you to go out*.

to frighten: If he had particularly set his heart on visiting a place, a letter was forged to frighten him from going thither. MAC., *Fred.*, (676*b*).

to help: She can't help herself from falling into my views. DICK., *Crick.*, I, 28.

Note. The construction is not registered in the O. E. D., and appears to be very rare: that with the transitive verb illustrated under 20, *b* being the ordinary one.

to hinder: You cannot say that I have ever tried to hinder you from working. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLIII, 323.

After all, was it likely that a mere trifle would hinder a man of the Norwegian's nature from going to business? EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XVI, 145.

Note. Occasionally construed with an accusative + infinitive (Ch. XVIII, 31, *i*), or present participle (Ch. XX, 21, *f*).

to incapacitate. See 29.

to insure: I'll insure thee from being hanged. GAY, *Beg. Op.*, I.

to interdict: I was solemnly interdicted from touching my brother any more. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VIII, 58 *b*.

She sang low, interdicting even a whisper from bursting Mrs. Berry. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XLIV, 439.

Note. The O. E. D. has an example without *from*: She is interdicted transmitting remembrance to old friends. ZELUCA, II, 244.

to keep: He could not keep himself from bursting out laughing again. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

to preserve: No one could be better trusted than Frances Freeland to preserve him from looking on the dark side of anything. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXXIII, 301.

to prevent: i. Her friends interfered to prevent her from doing anything foolish. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. VIII, 48.

Projecting iron spikes prevented the neighbours on either hand from invading our territory. BESANT, *By Celia's Arbour*, I, 23.

(This intuitive knowledge) prevents them from being much dazzled by this species of elevation. SCOTT (*Lockh.'s Life of Sir W. Scott*, Ch. I, 2, Note).

ii. He was prevented from doing any further mischief.

Note *a*) A rather frequent alternative construction is that without *from*, the pronoun assuming the function of an indirect object (Ch. III, 38 *f*). Another variant is that with a genitive or possessive pronoun preceding the gerund, which seems to be preferred to indicate a form of interference calculated to save a person from trouble or injury, a notion which, however, may also be implied by the two other constructions. The two meanings of *to prevent*, as used in these combinations, correspond respectively to those of the Dutch *beletten*, and *verhoeden* (or *voorkomen*).

i. * To prevent this becoming a serious affair. MORLEY, *Burke*, 92 (O. E. D., 7, *b*).

Why did you not prevent me making such an egregious fool of myself? KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. II, 10 *b*.

What can prevent us getting married. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XXIX, 200.

What can have been the influence which prevented them adopting a policy so obvious, so just? *Times*.

** He had been prevented going. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LI, 312.

ii. I was put between two gentlemen to prevent my tumbling off the coach. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 36 *a*.

(The mare planted) her fore-feet firmly against the ground to prevent her being blown over. *id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 119.

These sudden acts of hostility ... may often arise from deep and generous motives, which our inattention to Indian character and customs prevents our properly appreciating. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVIII, 283.

β) Dutch students are cautioned against construing *to prevent* with an accusative + infinitive, the usual construction of *beletten*, as in *Zij beletten hem zich te verdedigen*. Instances, indeed, do occur, especially in older English, but they are few and far between (Ch. XVIII, 31, *i*).

She prevents even the chemists, who beset his chamber to turn their mercury into gold. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, I, 1, (243).

The intention is evidently this; by preventing private teachers within the walls of the city, to collect all the common lawyers into one public university, which was newly instituted in the suburbs. BLACKSTONE, *Comm.* I, 24 (O. E. D., 7, *a*).

to prohibit: There was, as yet, no Act of Parliament, prohibiting English functionaries in India from profiting by this Asiatic usage. *MAC., CIVIC*, (522 a). The ship was prohibited from sailing. *ib.*, *HAMPD.*, (204 b).

Note. By the side of the above, the usual construction, we also find those illustrated by the following examples: i. To prohibit its being done. To prohibit the thing being done. *ANNANDALE, CONC. DICT.*

This series of books is supplied to the booksellers on such terms as to prohibit their being sold below the published price. *ADVERTISEMENT*.

ii. I opened a school and was prohibited to teach. *JOHNSON, RASSELLS*, Ch. XII, 75. (According to the O. E. D. this construction is now archaic.)

to reject: The Lord hath rejected thee from being king over Israel. *BIBLE, SAM., A*, XV, 26. (This application and construction of the verb is now obsolete (O. E. D., 5).)

to save: The boy's perplexity saved him from being irritated. *MER., RICH. FEV.*, Ch. IX, 59. I will save you from being a fool. *ib.*, Ch. XLII, 430.

to secure: If he wish to secure himself from falling off, he must be fastened. *CRABB, SYN.*, s. v. *safe*.

Note. Also with *against*, apparently without any appreciable distinction, as in: That is sufficient at least to secure her against being treated with anything approaching levity. *SCOTT, WAV.*, Ch. LVII, 142 b.

to stay: How shall you stay the curse from working in the blood of the accursed one? *WATTS DUNTON, AYLWIN*, VIII, Ch. I, 259.

to stop: News had come among them of the attempt made by the bishop to stop Mr. Crawley from preaching. *TROL., LAST CHRON.*, I, Ch. XIV, 148. You had better stop him from going down. *MER., RICH. FEV.*, Ch. X, 65.

Note. Also occasionally without *from*, as in: Stop 'em having babies by hook or crook. *GALSW., SWANSONG*, II, Ch. XI, 196.

June ... would never tell Jon anything that might stop him being useful to her Rafaelite. *ib.*, III, Ch. III, 238. (Compare *to prevent*.)

to withhold: He had been long withheld only by inferiority of situation from addressing her. *JANE AUSTEN, NORTH. A. B.*, Ch. XXXI, 243.

Note. There are two alternative constructions, both, apparently, obsolete or rare. Compare *to prevent*: i. What cause withholds you then, to mourn for him? *SHAK., JUL. CÆS.*, III, 2, 108.

ii. Your letters did withhold our breaking forth. *id.*, *ANT. & CLEOP.*, III, 6, 79.

b) The adjectives that may govern a gerund-construction with *from* are of little interest. With none of them appears there to be an infinitive-construction of approximately the same meaning.

different: "Surely," said Lady Blandish, "you knew he scribbled?" — "A very different thing from writing poetry," said the baronet. *MER., RICH. FEV.*, Ch. XII, 82.

Note. *Different* is often enough found construed with *to* (or *than*) (Ch. XVII, 113; O. E. D., I, b); but no instance has come to hand of *different* *ic* + gerund(-clause).

safe: A person once infected with the small-pox is safe from having it a second time. *MED. JRNAL*, V, 403 (O. E. D., 6, b).

Note. For *safe in* + gerund(-clause) see 33, b; for *safe* + infinitive, in which connexion *safe* is a variant of *certain* or *sure*, see Ch. II, 36, Obs. III.

secure: Here they were secure from being disturbed.

33. The bulk of verbs and adjectives with *in* only take a gerund (-clause). With some of these, however, there is an alternative gerund-construction with another preposition, approximately conveying the same meaning. The following may be mentioned here:

Verbs.

to believe: Messrs. Methuen and Co. do not believe in dumping down all their new novels on the booksellers' and reviewers' tables at the same time. *Lit. World*.

to bestir oneself: He bestirred himself in dusting his black clothes. *BRET HARTE, Outc. of Poker Flat, 22.*

to consist: Her humble occupation consisted in darning a stocking. *DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XI.*

to detect: They only blush at being detected in doing good. *GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XV, (325).*

to distribute: Shall he avoid the litigation, if possible, in order to distribute the same sum in furthering the positive activities of his diocese? *Times.*

to employ in the meaning of *to expend*: Twenty thousand pounds had been employed in corrupting the press. *MAC., War. Hast., (654 b).*

to expend: He had expended more than forty thousand pounds in adorning his seat. *ib., (655 a).*

to join: He declined to join in housekeeping with his sister and her husband. *THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 369.*

We cannot join with Miss Aikin in rejecting this story. *MAC., Addison, (752 b).*

She joined with M. d'Arblay in execrating the Jacobins. *id., Mad. d'Arblay, (723 b).*

to justify: The magistrate did not think the evidence justified him in sending the prisoner before a jury. *Times.*

Note. Less common are the constructions illustrated by the following examples: i. The importance of the subject justified my taking every precaution against any misapprehension or misunderstanding as to the views he expressed on that occasion. *Rev. of Rev., No. 202, 363 a.*

Her objections were not serious enough to justify her adopting a position of isolation. *ib., No. 207, 236 b.*

ii. I finished the article at Victoria some days later, compelled, of course, to buy a paper to justify me staying the time. *JOHN BURNS (in Rev. of Rev., No. 198, 570 b).*

iii. The Puritans held the drama in the utmost abhorrence. It was probably on this account that the Puritan Poet wrote this defence of tragedy, to justify himself for writing a drama. Editor's footnote in Milton's Pref. to *Sam. Ag., Chandos Clas.*

to lay out: Great sums had been laid out in bribing newspapers. *MAC., War. Hast., (654 b).*

to lose: No further time will be lost in giving the public official information. *Times.*

She lost no time in telling her of Brian's extraordinary speech. *Mrs. ALEXANDER, For his Sake, II, Ch. III, 55.*

to pass: She passed a great part of the day in attempting to dissuade Dolf from repeating his vigil. *WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl., (120).*

to persevere: She persevered in requiring an explanation of his two motives. *JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XI, 59.*

to persist: She actually persists in rejecting my suit. *ib., Ch. XX, 113.*

Gossips have only to persist in lying to be crowned with verity. *MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXIV, 176.*

to result: The benefits of free emigration would result in freeing the country of a great number of undesirable characters. *Daily Mail.*

to spend: The first half-hour was spent in piling up the fire, lest she

should suffer from the change of room. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XI, 57.

Many of them spend their lives first in eating and then in trying to work off the effects of over-feeding. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. IX. Note. Besides the above, the usual construction, there are some others, as is shown by the following examples (see also 35): i. Katharine spent more time than necessary over dressing for dinner. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. XIV, 267.

ii. He spends all he has on dressing well. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*. (appears to be especially common when the spending of money is in question.)

They find themselves compelled to spend millions, which they cannot afford for the most urgent social needs, upon arming against each other. MARCH GUARD., VIII, 26, 506 a.

to succeed: She did not succeed in making any of them fluent English speakers. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 87.

to unite: Judge and prosecutor united in declaring that there could be no question as to the excellency of my motives. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 195, 308 a.

to warrant: What the Hindoos knew of the spirit of the Portuguese government might warrant them in apprehending persecution from Christians. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (637 a).

I have done for you more than my duty to your father's memory warranted me in doing. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. XII, 125.

The exigencies of the case warranted him in arousing the farmer at once. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, c, 51.

Note. In the above examples the meaning of *to warrant* comes near to that of *to justify*. Other meanings of the verb are shown in: i. I'll warrant him for drowning; though the ship were no stronger than a nutshell. SHAK., *Temp.*, I, 1, 49. (= to guarantee the security or immunity of). The construction is now rare. Compare: I warrant you for discovery. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, 4, IV, (304).

ii. The sharpest needle, best Whitechapel, warranted not to cut in the eye, was not sharper than Scrooge. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 71 (= to guarantee.) For other examples of this construction, the nominative + infinitive, see Ch. XVIII, 31, c.

to waste: Lads that waste the light in sighing. HOUSMAN, *Shropshire Lad*, XI (O. E. D., 9, e).

To the above we may add the verb *to be* as used in such sentences as the following, in which it approaches to *to consist*:

His greatest pleasure was in doing good. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (476).

The only pain was in leaving her father. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXVI, 152.

Group-Verbs.

to take (a) delight: i. You take delight in vexing me. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. I, 9.

The Mahommedan historian of those times takes delight in aggravating the charge. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (615 a).

ii. He seems to take a great delight in giving me pain. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. I, 21.

Note. The construction with an infinitive, as in the following example, seems to be obsolete or rare: As a decrepit father takes delight | To see his active child do deeds of youth. SHAK., *Son.*, XXXVII.

to take (a) part: He took a prominent part in carrying out Montague's difficult and most critical operation of calling in and reissuing the silver coinage. TH. B. SHAW, *Hist. of Eng. Lit.*, 271.

to take (a) pleasure: i. bird-fancier (is) one who takes pleasure in rearing or collecting birds. WEBST., *Dict.*

During great part of his life he took pleasure in seeing his table surrounded by guests. MAC., *Fred.*, (673 a).

ii. You take a pleasure in doing good in secret. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (467). He seemed to take almost a pleasure in giving her all sorts of details. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Novs.*, Ch. VIII, 65.

to take (a) pride: i. She also took pride in keeping bright the little silver skillet. OPPENHEIM, *The Mischiefmaker*, Ch. I.

ii. He even takes a pride in taunting his persecutors. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Book*, XXVII, 286.

to take refuge: He afterwards took refuge in regarding my criticism as unworthy of their notice. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 189, 251 b.

to take up: His time is pretty much taken up in keeping his relation ... in spirits, and in learning to blow the French horn. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXII, (481).

Adjectives and Adjectival Participles.

absorbed: Mrs. Aikman, absorbed in pulling the rose in pieces, paid no attention. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XV.

busy: He left the valet busy in getting the horses ready. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 347.

They found the young people busy in talking. *ib.*, I, Ch. IV, 36.

The German was busy in washing his hands. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 129. Note. With the above compare the constructions commented on in 35, and that illustrated by the following example: She is rather busy with churning to-day. BEATR. HAR., *The Fowler*, Ch. I, 4. (In this example *with* may be understood to form an adverbial adjunct of cause with the following gerund, similar to that in such a combination as *wearied with much study*.)

employed: Mrs. Boxer was employed in trimming a cap. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 291.

I found him employed in writing letters. O. E. D., s.v. *employ*, 4.

engaged: They were engaged in solving mathematical problems. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 103.

experienced: Mary and her brother were experienced in foreign travelling. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 161.

instrumental: He had been instrumental in drawing up the marriage articles himself. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (469).

You must not suppose ... that I will ever be instrumental in suffering his honest rival to be the dupe of your ill-placed passion. *ib.*, Ch. XVII, (335).

justified: Maclean thought himself justified in producing the resignation with which he had been intrusted. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (618 a).

Mr. Wace can find no difficulty in pointing out the passage of M. Renan's writings by which he feels justified in making this statement. HUXL., *Let. & Es.*, 84 b, N.

occupied: She was occupied in coaxing Mrs. Aitkin to take her tea. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XV.

She was occupied in calculating her father's profits and losses. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, VII, Ch. I, 251.

Note. *With + gerund(-clause)* is a rather common variant conveying practically the same meaning: My thoughts have been wholly occupied with trying to suit themselves to these new surroundings. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XVI.

My time was now largely occupied with wandering about the streets of London. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, VI, Ch. II, 245. (Note the difference of subjects in these examples.)

safe: I knew I was safe in making the suggestion. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. V, 19.

Note. When construed with *in* + gerund(-clause), *safe* is approximately equivalent to *justified*. For *safe from* + gerund(-clause) see 32, *b*.

successful: The present writer has been more successful than Dr. Johnson in finding what he searched for. MURRAY, Pref. to the O. E. D.

warranted: I feel warranted in objecting strongly to his being kept here by any action on the part of her friends. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLIX, 358. No one is warranted in saying that old Mr. Crewe's flock could not have been worse without any clergyman at all. *id.*, *Scenes*, III, 190.

I feel warranted in refusing even to experiment in that direction. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, III *b*.

Persons to whom such a revelation is not accorded are in consequence warranted in remaining unconvinced. W. M. ROSSETTI, *Shelley's Adon.*, *Mem. of Shelley*, 4.

34. With some verbs and adjectives with *in*, however, the gerund-construction varies with the infinitive-construction, mostly without any appreciable difference in meaning. This is the case with:

Verbs.

to agree: i. Widely as Henry's ministers differed from each other, they all agreed in sharing and fostering the culture around them. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, Sect. IV, 313.

Now I am afraid that all the Mahommedan world would agree in reciprocating that appellation to Dr. Wace himself. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 92 *a*.

ii. We agreed long ago never to mention a word about it. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 324.

He rejoiced that the Fates had agreed to remove him from the very hot neighbourhood of Lobourne. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VII, 42.

It is much more probable that the Powers will agree to let the Morroccans fight it out by themselves. *Rev. of Rev.*

Note. The construction with *in* describes an agreement concerning a sentiment, that with an infinitive an agreement concerning a course of action to be adopted. In the former construction *to agree* answers to the Dutch *overeenstemmen*, *het eens zijn*, in the latter to the Dutch *overeenkomen*. For *to agree* in the sense of *to consent* see 43.

to aid: i. One person aids another in carrying on a scheme. CRABB, *Syn.*, s. v. *help*.

Daily are men induced to aid in carrying out inventions which a mere tyro in science could show to be futile. SPENCER, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 22 *b*.

Along with others I aided in forming a Law and Liberty league. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 370 *b*.

ii. All the instruments which aided to expose the child were even then lost when it was found. SHAK., *Wint. Tale*, V, 2, 77.

Note. See the observation under *to help*.

to assist: i. I begged one of them to assist me in conveying the corpse of my friend to the next house. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. IX, 51.

One is told off to assist the editor in writing, or in superintending the leading columns. *Good Words*.

They assisted him in receiving and entertaining his guests. *Rev. of Rev.*

ii. Mr. A. is assisting his wife to show a book of photographic portraits to a girl on a visit. PUNCH,

Note. See the observation under *to help*.

to combine: i. Boycott = to combine in refusing to hold relations of any kind with a neighbour. O. E. D., s. v. *boycott*.

ii. The parties combined to negotiate a loan contrary to the provisions of the Companies Act. LAW REP. (O. E. D., 5).

to concur: i. All these powerful influences concur in warning us, at our peril, against accepting the belief without the most careful scrutiny of the authority on which it rests. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 86 a.

I concurred with our incumbent in getting up a petition against the Reform Bill. G. ELIOT, *Fel. Holt*, 36 (O. E. D., 3 a).

All authorities concur in admitting Peter Schaeffer to be the person who invented cast metal types. JOHNSON, *Typographia* (Rules for Compositors and Readers).

ii. All have concurred to persuade me that [etc.]. HOR. WALP., *Castle of Otr.*, Ch. II, 58.

Law, custom, and religion concur to make the people fully satisfied with their condition. HUME, *Es.*, II, 9.

Many numerous and learned sects in Europe concur to censure pilgrimage as superstitious. JOHNSON, *Rasselas*, Ch. XI, 66.

The increase of our trade and manufactures, ... our growth by colonisation and by conquest, have concurred to accumulate immense wealth in the hands of some individuals. BURKE, *Thoughts on the Present Discontents*, 13.

The strongest interests and the strongest feelings concurred to mitigate the hostility of those who had lately been brethren in arms. MAC., *Machiavelli*, (36 a).

Note. The two constructions stand for identical meanings. The infinitive-construction, although not registered in the O. E. D., appears to be pretty common, especially in the older writers.

to delight. See 26.

to employ: i. Charlotte employed her leisure hours in writing a story. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 14.

The intervals between conversation were employed in teaching my daughters piquet. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XVI, (327).

ii. (They) used to employ him to run their errands. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 35.

She employed her more frequently to copy letters or to write from dictation. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. III, 64.

Note. When *to employ* is accompanied by an object denoting a length of time, *in* + gerund seems to be all but regularly used; when the object is of a different nature, the infinitive seems to be the rule.

to fail: i. Apparently this consolatory perspective of a mother's prospects failed in producing its due effect. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 20.

This rather saucy assumption failed in being offensive. HARDY, *Mad. Crowd*, Ch. III, 19.

I have failed in attempting to trace how far his scheme of symbolism may have extended. W. M. ROSSETTI, *Shelley's Adon.*, Notes, 4.

II. He was quite bewildered by the diversion, and for the first time failed in finding a prompter in Field. DISR., *Sybil*, VI, Ch. X, 413.

Medina Sidonia failed in bringing his pursuers to a close engagement. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, VII, § VI, 419.

Note. As the above examples are intended to show, *to fail* when construed with *in* + gerund(-clause) is used in two meanings; viz.: 1) that of *not to*

have (the desired) effect of, 2) that of to be unsuccessful in. The first meaning may also be expressed by *to fail* when followed by *of* + gerund(-clause), the second meaning by *to fail* when followed by an infinitive(-clause), the ordinary construction.

When followed by *of* + gerund(-clause), the verb is also used in the meaning of *to escape*; this, most probably, only in the older writers.

When followed by an infinitive(-clause) the verb often serves no other purpose than that of negating the following verb; thus *I fail to understand what you mean* is practically equivalent to *I do not understand what you mean*.

In the same construction *to fail* occurs also in the meaning of *to be remiss in*, a meaning which is also expressed by the transitive *to fail* when followed by a gerund(-clause).

i. * My proposals will not fail of being acceptable. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XIX, 112. (to fail of = not have to desired effect of).

The topaz brooch could not fail of pleasing the unsophisticated eyes of Fanny. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 456.

** I afterwards failed very narrowly three or four times of falling into their clutches. SWIFT, *Gul.*, IV, Ch. VII, (204 b). (to fail of = to escape).

ii. He never failed coming to inform them of this. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXX, 169. (to fail = to be remiss in).

I cannot, in decency, fail attending the club. *id.*, *North. Abbey*, Ch. XXVI, 261.

The very objects about are so many appeals to your ingenuity or to your memory, that you cannot fail asking yourself how you became acquainted with them. CH. LEVER, *Jack Hinton*, Ch. IV, 22.

i. And wilt thou vainly seek to know | A pang, ev'n thou must fail to soothe. BYRON, *Ch. Har.*, I, *To Inez*, II. (to fail = to be unsuccessful in.)

"I should like to see a portrait of your Dutch friend," he said. "I tried my best, but failed to procure one." *Il. Lond. News*, 1895, 459 a.

The Powers had failed to prevent Greece from going to war. *Times*.

In some respects he fails to achieve excellence. *Lit. World*.

ii. The Merse forayers were abroad, | Who, fired with hate and thirst of prey, | Had scarcely fail'd to bar their way. SCOTT, *Marm.*, III, 1, 8. (*to fail* has a negating force.)

Critics had failed to do them justice. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 259.

to glory: i. I glory in saying that every one of my young friends around me has a father, brother, or dear relative or friend, who is connected in a similar way with our glorious enterprise. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 14.

ii. Would I not glory to go into your very tomb? NETTLESHIP, *Es. Brown's Poetry*, Ch. I, 59 (O. E. D., 1).

Note. The infinitive-construction seems to be rare.

to help: i. To help another in raising a building. WEBST., *Dict.*

Will had been obliged to help Mr. Brooke in arranging 'documents.' G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXIX, 286.

I shall be able to help in paying off the debt. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. 187.

ii. Can you help me to find a lodging? PAUL CHESWICK, *In the Land of Dreams*, Ch. I.

Help me to get Thomasin happy. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, Ch. X, 112.

It is she who helps him to form his ideal. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XXI.

We have helped to populate other countries. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. X, 81.

Note a) In the infinitive-construction after the verbs *to help*, *to aid*, and *to*

assist the idea of assisting is sometimes more or less obscured, approaching to that of joining or contributing.

β) The verb *to help* is also construed with *at* + gerund, as in: In the morning early I called out my whole family to help at saving an after-growth of hay. *GOLDS., Vic., Ch. VI, (266).*

Cooper he was and carpenter, and wrought | To make the boatmen fishing-nets, or help'd | At lading and unlading the tall barks. *TEN., En. Ar d., 812.*

γ) The preposition *in* is sometimes dispensed with; thus in: It (sc. what I have told you)'ll help you knowing what to do with him next time. *TEMPLE THURSTON, Traffic, III, Ch. XIV, 214.*

δ) Another construction of which *to help* is capable, especially common in colloquial and vulgar language, is that in which the verb is followed by an infinitive without *to* (*Ch. LV, 34, c*); thus in: Only let me help nurse him! *GALSW., Freeland s, Ch. XXIX, 270.*

to hesitate: See 24.

to co-operate: The aim of our life is to co-operate with our Father in doing good. *Stead's Annual for 1906, 23 b.*

to vie: Journalists of the most violently opposed political creeds vied with each other in doing honour to their English guests. *Rev. of Rev., No. 207, 239 b.*

Adjectives and Adjectival Participles.

cautious: i. I have, therefore, in conclusion to express the hope that our educational authorities will be cautious in introducing phonetics and appointing teachers of it. *SWEET, Sounds of Eng., Pref.*

Be cautious in asserting that "everybody speaks in such a way." *Id., Prim. of Phon., § 8.*

ii. The act ... is cautious not to tie them down to too close a measure. *J. Q. ADAMS (in C. DAVIES, Metr. Syst., III, 119 (O. E. D., b)).*

Note. The construction with *in* + gerund(-clause) is not registered in the O. E. D., but appears to be at least as common as the infinitive-construction.

interested: He was interested in knowing that any one should compare him with Edward Irving. *Acad. & Lit.*

We could call the attention of all who are interested in promoting military efficiency to this series of articles. *Times.*

ii. The emperor himself was interested not to deface the splendour of his own cities. *GIBBON, Decl. & Fall, Ch. XXVIII, III, 79 (O. E. D., 2).*

35. After *to employ, to spend, to waste*, and verbs of a similar import, and also after the adjective *busy* and its synonyms, the preposition *in* is sometimes dispensed with. This changes the status of the *ing*-form, converting it into a present participle in the grammatical function of predicative adnominal adjunct (*Ch. VI, 1 and 5 f*). For further details about the dropping of the preposition see 60, *Obs. II*; 63, *Obs. I*; also *Ch. II, 38, Obs. II*; *Ch. LVI, 50 f*; *Ch. LVII, 6, Obs. VI*. After *to spend*, and *to waste* the omission of *in* is met with only when these words are accompanied by an adjunct denoting a length of time.

i. * Sybil employed herself arranging some papers. *Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. VII, 124.*

** You can't laugh at a man who spends his whole life preaching and singing hymns among the Whitechapel roughs. *BESANT, All Sorts, Ch. V, 48.*

There he would spend long hours sketching. GALSW., *Man. of Prop.*, III, Ch. III, 298.

Amasai spent all the morning washing the buggy. JEAN WEBST., *Daddy-Long-Legs*, 88.

He spent every spare moment until the summer holidays making pictures. TEMPLE THURSTON, *Antagonists*, Ch. IX, 74.

I could spend hours standing there, and watching the gulls, and never think of feeling dull. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XV.

I have spent many hours in the last few weeks reading the *Treaty*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8121, 4*b*.

*** It seems to me to be a pity to waste so much time discussing an Epilogue which will never be spoke. FRANKF. MOORE, *Jes. Bride*, Ch. XII, 100.

I shall not waste my time going up to town. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. V, 95.

ii. * The next Saturday Susan was busy preparing two rooms for Mr. Eden. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. XV, 182.

He has been busy hay-making and hay-carrying. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. I, 10.

** Charles the First was engaged fighting with his subjects, *Story of Old Mortality*, 4.

She was too much engaged watching the edge of her skirt. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XVI, 278.

*** She was herself much occupied collecting and packing all Miss Parry's belongings. *ib.*, II, Ch. II, 34.

**** Mr. Adrian kept him at work ciphering at a terrible sum. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXII, 161.

He was already hard at work preparing for his master's hurried journey. MISS BRADDON, *Lady Audley's Secret*, II, Ch. X, 194.

36. a) The preposition *into*, among other functions, has that of representing a result as brought about by dint of some action. As the same idea, although in a weaker form, is occasionally also expressed by the preposition *to*, we sometimes find the gerund-construction with *into* varying not only with the infinitive-construction, but also with the gerund-construction with *to*. For instances of the latter see 44. *Into* has the above-mentioned force only in connexion with transitives, such as:

to badger: Sir Edward Clarke has at last been badgered into resigning his seat for the City of London. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 199, 12*a*.

to beguile: If Dr. Kenn should be beguiled into marrying that Miss Tulliver! G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VII, Ch. IV, 471.

to coax: i. She coaxed her father into giving them a ball. HT. MARTINEAU, *Manch. Strike*, X, III (O. E. D., 3*b*).

ii. She was occupied in coaxing Mr. Aikman to take her tea. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XV.

He came into Amelia's room to see if he could coax her to share that meal. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXI, 337.

to coerce: i. Boycott = to combine in refusing to hold relations of any kind ... with (a neighbour), on account of political or other differences, so as to punish him for the position he has taken up, or coerce him into abandoning it. O. E. D.

Turkey meanwhile kept feebly moaning that she had been coerced into signing the treaty. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXVII, 419.

ii. To have coerced these warriors to march. LYTTON, *Harold*, V, 254. (O. E. D., 2*a*).

to dupe: You could bargain with a porpoise for half the money which I was duped into squandering away on a chit. LYTTON, What will he do with it?

to entice: i. My little boy here can show you a much handsomer specimen of French workmanship than that work-box, which you enticed Mrs. Caxton into raffling for last winter. LYTTON, Caxt., I, Ch. IV, 21.

ii. I shall not be at all inticed by them to take upon my shoulders a burthen. H. TOOKE, Purley, Introd., 6 (O. E. D., 2, b)

to exasperate: i. She hoped to exasperate him into killing her on the spot. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol., Ch. XII, 102 a.

ii. In England ... the game laws ... exasperated the farmers to carry the Reform Bill. EMERSON, Let. and Soc. Aims, III, 236 (O. E. D., 4).

to force: i. Perhaps it were better not to force her into accepting me. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XX, 113.

You forced me into visiting him last year. *ib.*, Ch. LIII, 325.

ii. I was forced to quit my first lodgings by reason of an officious landlady. ADDISON, Spect., XII.

to frighten: The Government, although it was so powerful, did not frighten me into doing anything unjust. LEWES, Hist. Philos., 138.

Rashleigh hoped he should frighten Diana into changing her mind. Story of Rob Roy, 49.

to goad: He is trying to goad you into resigning. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norsemen, Ch. XXV, 231.

to induce: i. He and his party had been induced into giving way to the opposition of M. de Witt. MARJ BOWEN, I will maintain, II, Ch. III, 187.

ii. You should try by gentle means to induce the people to make a change. R. W. DALE, Lect. Preach., Ch. IX, 279 (O. E. D., 1, a).

to inveigle: i. She inveigled me into taking my part in this Snowdon play. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XV, vi, 406.

ii. The Natives are inveigled on board to look at axes or tobacco. GLADST., Glean., II, 281 (O. E. D., 2, c).

to jockey: The Orange Free State was jockeyed into making common cause with the Transvaal. Times.

to persuade: i. See what your daughter has persuaded me into reading. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XVII, 84 b.

ii. The doctor had tried every means to persuade him to return to the farm. WASH. IRV., Do If Heyl., (113).

She had persuaded her father to give him a place in the library. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XIV, 71 b.

I persuaded Lord Sleaford to delay sailing. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XII, Ch. I, 327.

to provoke: i. She often tried to provoke Darcy into disliking her guest. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. X, 55.

ii. It is said that, on one occasion, Steele's negligence, or dishonesty, provoked Addison to repay himself by the help of a bailiff. Mac., Addison, (752 b).

to tempt: i. No newspaper tempts us into reading the last night's debate in Parliament. FROUDE, O. C., Ch. II, 26.

ii. One is tempted to think that it had been pre-arranged. O. E. D., 5.

to wheedle: I have seen you wheedle an angry Madieh woman into giving you dates. RUDY. KIPLING, Light, Ch. X, 131.

b) After intransitives *into* has an entirely different force, and the gerund-construction with *into* of which some of these verbs admit, has no alternative construction with an infinitive; thus:

to break: She broke into sobbing. Mrs. WARD, Treas., III, Ch. XXIII, 198 a.

to lapse: She lapsed into thinking of this sudden loss of all her family. FROUDE.

37. The majority of verbs and adjectives with *of* take the gerund-construction. Some of them are also found with *about* (24) and *at* (26), without much difference in meaning. The gerund-construction is regularly used after:

Verbs.

to accuse: Don't accuse me of being ungrateful. DICK., Ch. IV, 26 a.

to acquit: We cannot acquit him of having done what, if not in itself evil, was yet of evil example. MAC., Clive, (522 a).

to admit: These views admit of being argued to their consequences. HUXL., Darwiniana, Ch. I, 10.

to beware: I know what study is myself. But beware of prosecuting it too excitedly. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XVI, 110.

to come: That comes of giving way to passion. *ib.*, Ch. XI, 70

to complain: How unjustly did I complain of being stripped of every comfort! GOLDS., Vic.

Note. Occasionally construed with *at*, as in: I should not have complained at losing half my reward. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXI, 148.

to cure: If you can compass it, do cure the younger girls of running after the officers. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. X, 56.

to despair: I had begun to despair of finding your witness. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 438.

to dream: No competent thinker of the present day dreams of explaining these indubitable facts [etc.]. HUXL., Darwiniana, Ch. I, 6.

to repent: You will never repent of being patient and sober.

Note. Also, though less commonly, with *for* + gerund-clause, as in: I never did repent for doing good. SHAK., *Merch.*, III, 4, 10. Compare: No light had we: for that we do repent. TEN., *Guin.*, 169.

For *to repent* as a transitive see 20.

to suspect: She had suspected her to convey a note to a person whom Clara strongly suspected of paying surreptitious visits to the house. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. X.

to talk: See 24.

to think: The company began to think of returning. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. IX, (287).

We had been thinking of marrying her to one of your tenants. *ib.*, Ch. XVI, (332).

Note. For discussion of the other constructions found after *to think* see Ch. XVIII, 9, Obs. I.

Adjectives.

apprehensive: The two ladies ... were apprehensive of catching cold. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. IX, (284).

I was apprehensive of interrupting you. SHER., *School*, V, 1, (423).

aware: He was aware of being looked at eagerly in return. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XXV.

chary: Germany has never been chary of showing us that our Imperial interests conflict with hers. *Times*.

fond: I am fond of reading. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 372, 4.

guilty, guiltless: i. He was found gully of appropriating the moneys entrusted to his care.

ii. I am perfectly guiltless of offending him. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XLII, 433.

Note *a* *To* mostly takes the place of *of* after *to plead guilty*; e.g.: i. He pleaded guilty to appropriating the watch of a gentleman. *Daily News*. (Compare: I would as lief have pleaded guilty to the murder. *THACK.*, *Esm.*, II, Ch. I, 166.)

ii. (He) pleaded guilty of obstructing Appointment of "the best man for the post" for forty-eight days. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 220, 409 a.

β In such a sentence as: *The jury (found) him guilty on twenty-three charges* (*March, Guard.*, VI, 22, 452 d), the preposition-group is an adverbial adjunct, *on* having approximately the meaning of *on the strength of*.

sensible: I am sensible of having more follies and weaknesses, and fewer real good qualities than most men. *HOR. WALPOLE*, *Castle of Otr.*, *Introd.*, 4.

shy: Many of the stoutest unbelievers were shy of venturing alone in the footpath. *WASH. IRVING*.

tired: She got quite tired of hearing of her own creations. *RID. HAG.*, *Mees. Will*, Ch. VI, 55.

38. After some adjectives, mostly such as express a state of mind, we find a gerund(-clause) varying with an infinitive(-clause); thus after:

afraid: See 24.

ashamed: i. He was ashamed of making any excuse for not returning the clothes. *FIELD.*, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. IX, 21.

Whosoever a holy and a wise woman speaks, a warrior need not be ashamed of listening. *KINGSLEY*, *Hyp.*, Ch. XII, 62 a.

ii. She was almost ashamed to find that her uncle and aunt had already lost three days of happiness. *JANE AUSTEN*, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LX, 376.

I was ashamed to allude to a common-place thing like my box. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. V, 37 a.

I really am ashamed to marry so rich a man. *RID. HAG.*, *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXII, 229.

Note. The gerund-construction seems to be the usual one.

Ashamed is occasionally found construed with *about* or *at*; thus in: i. I had felt ashamed about telling my address. *THACK.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 24.

ii. The lad was ashamed, perhaps, at his own eagerness to go away. *id.*, *Esm.*, I, Ch. IX, 93.

(in)capable: i. He was incapable of conceiving what a thing hunger was. *MER.*, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. III, 17.

Few men are capable of writing political novels. *Times*.

ii. The doctor said that he might soon grow delirious and incapable to make his will. *FIELD.*, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XIII, 32.

Had there been painters in those days capable to execute such a subject, the Jew ... would have formed no bad emblematical personification of the Winter season. *SCOTT*, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. V, 42.

Note. The use of an infinitive-clause is now obsolete. *O. E. D.*, s. v. *capable*, 5.

desirous: i. He was heartily desirous of returning with the young man. *FIELD.*, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XVIII, 48.

He was desirous of doing the honour of the place to me. *THACK.*, *SnoBs*, Ch. III, 24.

ii. The Ministers were desirous to avail themselves of the services of Clive. *MAC.*, *Clive*, (540 b).

Note. The infinitive-construction is less formal than the gerund-construction.

glad: i. I am glad of having met you. *BAIN*, *Comp.*, 170.

ii. I was only too glad to be relieved of her. *DU MAURIER*, *Tribby*, II, 179.

I was glad to see to see Rimanez taking farewell of his host. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. XIV, 194.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, no doubt, the ordinary one. *Glad* is also found construed with *at*, mostly in expressing mischievous glee, and *for*; but no examples of gerunds standing after *glad at* or *glad for* have come to hand, although they would, undoubtedly, be perfectly legitimate.

i. He that is glad at calamities shall not be unpunished. Bible, *Prov.*, XVII, 5.

How should I be glad | Henceforth in all the world at anything, | Until my lord arise and look upon me? TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 648.

ii. They were only too glad for a little breathing space until some sort of a square could be formed. RUDY. KIPLING, *Light*, Ch. II, 25.

The use of *on* after *glad*, as in *I am glad on't* (SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 3, 137) is now obsolete.

proud: See 26, b.

sure: i. He is sure of having paid the bill.

ii. Mrs. Rashleigh says you are to be sure to put a pair of the best frilled sheets in Captain Rashleigh's room. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XII, 194.

Be sure to let me hear when it is explained. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXVI, 241.

Note. For discussion of the difference in meaning see Ch. II, 35*f*. Compare also Ch. L, 76; Ch. LIII, 16; Ch. LIX, 100, a, 3.

weary: i. Plato is never weary of speaking of the honour of the soul. JOWETT, *Plato*, V, 122 (O. E. D., 2, a).

ii. I grow weary to behold | The selfish and the strong still tyrannise | Without reproach or check. SHELLEY, *Revolt, Dedic.*, 33.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, no doubt, unusual.

(un)worthy: i. * There are some of my sermons which the bishops would not think totally unworthy of being printed. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. XVI, 27.

** No man or woman is worthy of living who is not brave. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, VI, Ch. XXVIII, 288.

ii. * We learned much by heart, but always things that in themselves were worthy to be learned. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 27.

** He it is, who coming after me is preferred before me, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. Bible, *John*, I, 27.

I am worthy to be scorned. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 291.

Note. In the meaning of *of sufficient importance* the adjective mostly has the gerund-construction; for the rest the infinitive-construction is, apparently, the usual one.

Worthy being also used without *of* (Ch. III, 17, c), there is nothing surprising in its being occasionally followed by a gerund without *of*; as in: You have persuaded me to leave dear England, and dearer London, the place of the world most worthy living in. THOM. SOUTHERN, *Oroonoko*, I, I, (161 a).

39. Mention may also be made of a number of phrases construed with *of* which, with a few exceptions, have no alternative infinitive-construction for the gerund-construction. We may distinguish two groups: a) those in which the verbal part is the copula *to be*, or some other verb of like function connecting the subject with a nominal, or nominal equivalent, including: 1) such as are used to serve a similar function as the Expanded Form, i. e. to represent an action, as going forward (Ch. LII, 47); thus:

to be in the act: i. I found that these mysterious personages, whom I had mistaken for magi, were principally authors, and in the very act of manufacturing books. WASH. IRV., Sketch - Bk., IX, 77.

He was in the act of consummating all earthly bliss by pressing his lips to the small white hand. MER., Rich. F. ev., Ch. XIV, 92.

ii. She was in the act to turn away, as a tear dropped on his forehead. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho! Ch. III, 21a.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, perhaps, intended to represent the action as imminent or close at hand. This is, probably, the usual function of the phrase when the article is omitted (Ch. L, 70, b, Note a; Ch. LVII, 27, c, 1, Note), as in: (She) moved away, and left me, statue-like, | In act to render thanks. TEN., Gard. Daught., 160.

This function is indubitable in: For a moment her fate hung in the balance; his finger was upon the trigger, and he was in act to fire. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 35.

to be in process: The Cape Colony is in process of revising its laws affecting the use of the motor vehicle. II. Lond. News, No. 3886, 760 a.

2) such as are used to represent an action as imminent or close at hand (Ch. L, 70, b); thus:

to be (up)on the brink: He has been on the brink of marrying her. G. ELIOT, Dan. Der., II, Ch. XV, 241.

to be (up)on the eve: The foregoing lines were sent by Byron to the publisher on Christmas Day 1815, when the poem was on the eve of being published. Editor's Note to Chambers's Reprint of Byron's Siege of Corinth.

He was on the eve of revolting. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, II, Ch. II, 53.

She was on the eve of doing something which was hardly ever done by the people amongst whom she lived. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XII, 211.

Note. *To be at the eve* is an unusual and, apparently, archaic variant; e. g.: The wench appeared, as it were, at the eve of bringing forth a bastard. FIELD., Tom Jones, IV, Ch. X, 55b.

to be (up)on the point: There's Miss Richland and her fine fortune gone already, and upon the point of being given to your rival. GOLDS., Good-nat. Man, I, (103).

Once or twice Jos. had been on the point of saying something very important to her. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 53.

She was on the point of returning to the room, when an idea struck her. DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. XVII.

Note. *To be at the point* is an unusual variant; e. g.: He was at the point of proposing to her. THACK., Van. Fair, Ch. VIII, 83.

I ... told him they were at the point of going. HALL CAINE, Christian, III, Ch. IX (O. E. D., I, f).

In older English *to be at the point* is also found construed with an infinitive; thus in: I am at the point to die. Bible, Gen., XXV, 32.

The archaic *to be at point* appears to stand regularly with an infinitive; thus in: I knock'd, and, bidden, enter'd; found her there | At point to move. TEN., Princ., III, I, 115.

The foemen were at point to gain the rampart. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Prol., 27a.

to be (up)on the verge: He was on the verge of emigrating to the United States. II. Lond. News, No. 3905, 304.

We now find him upon the verge of contracting marriage with a woman whom he did not passionately love. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. II, 49.

b) those in which the verbal part is a verb of a vague meaning, the noun being the principal bearer of the meaning (Ch. LIV, 9); thus:

to get into the way: I got into the way of spiting him. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXXIV, 302.

to have no (not any, etc.) doubt: She had no doubt of captivating Time. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XVII, 115.

to have no (not any, etc.) idea: I have no idea of there being so much design in the world as some persons imagine. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XXIV, 137.

Edith obviously has no idea of being cut out by anybody. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Woman, Ch. XII.

Chamberlain has no idea of countenancing the sort of conciliation which means sacrificing our friends to our late enemies. Times.

to have no (not any, etc.) notion: The English people never had any serious notion of going to war with Austria. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 114.

Such a man will rarely have any notion of accusing his understanding. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XVI, 109.

to have no (not any, etc.) thought(s): If ever I had any thoughts of doing a mean or wicked action, I was to come first to this spot. Miss BRADDON, My First Happy Christmas.

She had no thought of gaining this old man's admiration. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Woman, Ch. VI.

to have a trick: He knit his shaggy brows, as he had a trick of doing. FRANCES BURNETT, Little Lord.

to have a way: He had a way of suggesting, not teaching — putting things into my head, and then leaving them to work out their own problems. LYTTON, Caxt., I, Ch. IV, 19.

Snubs had a way of gliding off him like water off a duck's back. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. I, 9.

to lay down a plan: He laid down a plan of restoring his falling fortune. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. III, (252).

to make a boast: Brough made especially a boast of drinking beer. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 75.

to make no (not any, etc.) doubt: I will see Mr. Adams, and I make no doubt of prevailing with him. FIELD., Jos. Andr., IV, Ch. III, 208.

to make a feint: He would have made a feint of endeavouring to seize you. DICK., Christm. Car., III, 71.

He opened the order-book making a feint of being actually employed. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXV, 2251.

to make a merit: I met Preston in the House, and made a merit of having given the place to his cousin. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 85.

to make a point: i. There was a peculiar tenet which I made a point of supporting. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. II, (240).

He made a point of appearing at the English church at every place which he honoured with his stay. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XIX, 206.

Mrs. Ellis made a point of calling the boy Diavolo. SARAH GRAND, Heav. Twins, I, 166.

ii. He made a point to recollect everything. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 23.

I make a point never to play before candles are lighted. id., Fitz-boodle's Confessions, Pref., (202).

Note. The gerund-construction is decidedly the rule. See also 49.

to make a practice: Any country which makes a practice of balancing deficits by borrowing must come to grief sooner or later. Graph.

to make a scruple: I made no scruple of saying, "I wish we could find a fourth hand." SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIV, 89.

to make a show: I made a show of arranging my papers on my desk. JEROME, Novel Notes.

to put in a way: [(He told me) that he would put me in a way of acting for myself. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XV, 97.

40. Verbs and group-verbs governing *on* or *upon* mostly take the gerund-construction; thus:

Verbs.

to calculate: The Boers calculated on being able to hold Belmont for six months. Times.

to compliment: Mrs. Gardiner then complimented her niece on bearing Wickham's desertion so well. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXVI, 154. He complimented him on carrying away the brightest jewel of the country. *ib.*, LX, 377.

to congratulate: He congratulated him upon entering the service of his lawful Prince. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XLI, 113 *b*.

After all you are to be congratulated upon being married to a woman whose past it is impossible to rake up. HUGH CONWAY, *Called back*, Ch. VI, 80.

to depend: Whenever I have the ability (sc. to assist you), you may depend upon hearing from me. SHER., *School*, V, 1, (423).

to insist: He insisted on helping his friends. THACK., *Snoobs*, Ch. I, 17.

to venture: i. Lucy was in high favour enough to venture on asking for a tune. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. IX, 81.

ii. Thirty times the fugitives ventured to look through the outer hedge; but everywhere they found a sentinel on the alert. MAC., *Hist.*, V, I, 617 (O. E. D., 8, *a*).

Note. The infinitive-construction is more common than the gerund-construction, from which it mostly differs in meaning in implying less risk. Observe also that the verb when followed by an infinitive(-clause) may be apprehended as a transitive (19, *f*).

Group-verbs.

to pique (plume, pride, value) oneself: i. He piqued himself on knowing that language. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 328.

ii. (They) plume themselves on being acquainted with a move or two. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 47.

iii. The men prided themselves on forestalling his wishes. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XVI, 132 *a*.

iv. I valued myself upon being a strict monogamist. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. II, (241). He valued himself more on being a Roman plebeian than the descendant of a Teuton king. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 40.

Note. *To value oneself* appears to be rather uncommon in the latest English.

to set one's heart: Newcastle had set his heart on returning two members for St. Michael. MAC., *Clive*, (511 *a*).

Miss Jessie had set her heart on following it (sc. the corpse) to the grave. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. II, 39.

Had she not set her heart on going out to buy Christmas presents? EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXXV, 306.

Note. *To set one's mind*, also construed with (*upon*), is an occasional

variant; e. g.: She had set her mind upon enslaving young George Tressady. Mrs. WARD, *Tress.*, Ch. II, 7*b*.

41. A separate group is formed by verbs and adjectival participles denoting a deciding or resolving. The former appear to prefer the infinitive-, the latter the gerund-construction with (*up*)*on*. When the infinitive is used, the verb may be apprehended as a transitive.

Verbs.

to decide: i. So soon as the rich decide on adopting these devices in the name of the public, they become law. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, § IV, 317.

Robert decided upon going by this train. Miss BRADDON, *Audi.*, II, Ch. XIII, 247.

ii. He decides to tell her the rest later in the evening. ANSTEY, *Voc. Pop.*, 161.

to determine: i. The Snobkys suddenly determined on leaving town. THACK., *Snobs*, Ch. IV, 25.

The Gods, having got the giant Ymer slain, determined on constructing a world with him. CARL, *Hero Worsh.*, Lect., I, 18.

ii. Rajah Sahib determined to storm the fort. MAC., *Clive*, (507*a*).

He determined to serve in the ranks. *id.*, *War. Hist.*, (598*b*).

He determined to complete his Carlos. CARL., *Life of Schil.*, II, 86.

to resolve: i. You resolved on quitting Netherfield. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. X, 52.

Mr. Pickwick resolved on immediately returning to London. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVI, 234.

ii. He resolved to say nothing on the subject. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (118). They then resolved to defend themselves to the last. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (608*b*).

Note. When these verbs are used in a causative meaning, both constructions may be possible, but no example with a gerund-construction has come to hand. For examples with an infinitive-construction see Ch. XLVI, 43, *b*.

Also *to set*, remotely synonymous with the above verbs, prefers the infinitive: see the examples in the O. E. D., s. v. *set*, 113.

For examples with a gerund see *ib.*, 114, *b*; and compare the following:

Some remarks of yours set me on trying to read some more of Calderon. BRADLEY, *Let. to Mr. Bridges* (Col. Pap. of Henry Bradley, 21).

Adjectival Participles.

bent: i. They were bent on punishing his manful resistance to their tyranny. MAC., *Hampden*, (204*b*).

The interior is held by a hostile people, bent on rendering our position untenable. Graph.

ii. I see you are all bent | To set against me for your merriment. SHAK., *Mids.*, III, 2, 145.

This king ... was wholly bent to make his kingdom and people happy. BACON, *New Atlantis*, (284).

Note. The infinitive-construction is rare and archaic (O. E. D., s. v. *bend*, 19).

decided: i. Your father is still decided on losing his own head. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XVII, 85*b*.

ii. He was decided to have the thing done without delay.

determined: i. I found him firmly determined upon exacting strict attendance at these meetings.

ii. Once apart from him, I was determined to keep apart. DICK., *Co p.*, Ch. XL, 286 *b*.

Never was woman more determined to make the best of a bad job. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXV, 228.

intent: i. The farmers are intent on getting in the hay. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. II, 9.

I was intent upon evading the law. STEAD, *In our Midst*, Let. I.

They were solely intent upon having a good time. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 379 *b*.

ii. I endeavoured to preserve a life she is so intent to destroy. EARL ORRERY, *Parthen.*, 15 (O. E. D., 1).

Note. According to the O. E. D., the use of the infinitive(-clause) after *intent* is obsolete.

resolved: i. He was resolved upon slinking back to London. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 160.

ii. He is obstinately resolved to see nothing but honour and integrity in the conduct of his hero. MAC., *Clive*, (513 *b*).

set: It is for you to choose whether you are set upon ruining her reputation. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. III, 60.

He is so set upon paying off these debts. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nobs.*, Ch. XIX, 176.

Note. Of the infinitive-construction no instances have come to hand, and it may be non-existent.

42. As to the prevailing practice regarding the constructions of the numerous verbs and adjectives and equivalent word-groups, that govern *to*, the following exposition is made with more than ordinary diffidence. Not only is it impossible to prove a universal negative, but also the arriving at a well-founded opinion is often hampered by a serious want of adequate documentary evidence.

So far as the available evidence goes, the gerund-construction is regular after:

Verbs.

to address: The Government should address itself to diminishing the death-rate. *Graph*.

to admit: Your friend admits to reading poetry in magazines. *T. P.'s Weekly*, XVIII, No. 469, 578 *b*.

to allot: The first half-hour was allotted to making themselves comfortable. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XVII, 66.

to allude: (He) alluded to landing, and to the change of motion and repose she would have in a carriage. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. XIV, 438.

to amount: These demands amount to giving back to the Boers practically everything they want. *Times*.

This amounts to saying that if we have a failing or a vice, which we wish to correct, it is better to ignore it. H. C. WYLD, *Hist. Study of the Mother Tongue*, *Intro.*, 18.

to apply: Both young ladies applied themselves to tending Mr. Pecksniff's wounds. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 6 *b*.

Note. In the following example *study* is best understood as a noun of

- action: He applied himself to study with vigour and success. *Mac., Mad. d'Arblay, (702 a).*
- to approach:* It (sc. Adonais) is the single one by this author which approaches to being 'popular.' *W. M. Rossetti & A. O. Prickard, Shelley's Adonais, Pref.*
- to attach:* Most of them (sc. elocutionists) attach as much — or even more importance — to correcting what they assume to be defects of pronunciation in their pupils as to improving their voice-production. *Sweet, Sounds, § 223.*
- to attend:* That part of the officers and crew of a vessel who attend together to working her for an allotted time. *Webst., Dict., s.v. watch.*
- to attribute:* I am now recovering and rapidly regaining strength, which I attribute to taking sanato-gen for some weeks. *Il. Lond. News, Advert.*
- to bound:* Her stunned soul seemed to bound its wishes, for the hour at least, to remaining with one who loved and sorrowed for the same human being that she did. *Mrs. Gask., Mary Bart., Ch. XX, 215.*
- to come:* If we are come to bandying reproaches, I at least merit none from his widow and the mother of his son. *Thack., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXI, 354.*
- I didn't think it would come to accusing me of being bribed. *G. Moore, Esth. Wat., Ch. XXVI, 189.*
- When it comes to fighting, it becomes a question of white against black. *Rev. of Rev., No. 213; 253 a.*
- to compare:* What is a fat living compared to converting a hundred thousand heathens by a single sermon. *Thack., Es m., I, Ch. III, 28.*
- What is that compared to being placed naked under a pipe three inches in diameter. *James Payn, Glow-Worm Tales, II, P, 249.*
- to conduce:* The future Dean did not come into the world amid those circumstances of comfort and independence which conduce to making men amiable and contented. *D. L. P., Life of Jon. Swift, 2 (Nimmo).*
- to confess:* I must confess to having been guilty, 'malgré moi,' of as much public speaking as most of my contemporaries. *Huxley, Lect. & Es., 10 b.*
- I confess to having been impressed. *Mar. Crawford, Kath. Laud., Ch. XIII, 243.*
- I confess to being somewhat surprised that in your issue of to-day you permitted the insertion of the letter on the above subject. *Times.*
- Note. The infinitive-construction that is found after *to confess* is to be considered as an accusative + infinitive which has dropped the accusative (Ch. XVIII, 34, Obs. III). See also *O. E. D., 6, b.*
- to consecrate:* After a minute consecrated to looking in the wrong direction, he saw his mother already on the platform. *Galsw., Freeland's, Ch. XXV, 222.*
- to dedicate:* His life has been dedicated to serving both his own country and the people of India. *Westm. Gaz., No. 5042, 1 b.*
- to demur:* Before you return, I demur to receiving her. *Mer., Rich. Fev., Ch. XL, 396.*
- to depose:* i. He deposed to having fastened up the house at eleven o'clock. *Mrs. Wood, Mrs. Hallib., III, Ch. X (O. E. D., 5, a).*
- Catharine Cussack, maid to the Countess, deposed to having heard Ryder's cry. *Con. Doyle, Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb.*
- to direct:* Mrs. Llewellyn's whole care was then directed to getting her daughter into bed. *Flor. Marryat, Bankr. Heart, I, 165.*
- He directed all the ingenuity of his practised mind to trying to prove that the testator was 'non compos mentis.' *Rip. Hag., Mees. Will, Ch. XXI, 215.*

Your attention is chiefly directed to watching the footprints of the guide.
JEROME, *Woman of the Sæter*, 95.

Note. Care should be taken not to confound this meaning of *to direct* with that of *to command*, which it has in: I directed them to prepare immediately for leaving this place. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXIV (408).

My daughter was particularly directed to watch her declining sister's health.
ib., Ch. XXVI, (417).

to doom: The sceptic at a séance is generally doomed henceforward not so much to explaining how the medium must have been a deceiver, as to explaining how he himself might easily have been a dupe. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3678, 532 c.

to give: Three hours she gave to stitching. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 286.

He gave himself to hunting and sport. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § 5, 328.
Never surely did an employer give so much of his valuable time to directing exactly what was to be done. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXV, 231.

After giving so much time to promoting the study of English in this country, I felt [etc.]. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, II, Pref.

to impute: He imputed the ruin of his health to eating two unripe grapes.
CARL., *Life of Schil.*, Ap., I, 267.

to owe: All that I am I owe to 'aving been to sea. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, J, 178.

to prefer: She preferred remaining where she was to seeking that refuge.
NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVII, 109.

Note. The use of the gerund-construction in the second member of the comparison occasions the same construction in the first (20). For the catachrestic use of *than* in the second member see Ch. XVII, 128, Obs. VI.

to reconcile: He easily reconciled his conscience to going certain lengths in the service of his party. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XIX, 66 b.

We have quite reconciled ourselves to staying where we are. GISSING, *Christopherson*.

to relate: The proposal in question related to granting permission to discharged servants and warrant-officers to retain their uniform after discharge.
Daily Mail.

to sacrifice: In this matter it is difficult to acquit Lord Randolph of having sacrificed the interest of the Empire to making a party score. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 193, 88 b.

to say: What say you to masquerading in the winter and Hyde Park in the summer? WYCH., *Plain Deal.*, II, I, (396).

Now that he's a pauper, these two harpies will have nothing to say to nursing and looking after him. MRS. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daught.*, I, Ch. V, 39 a.

to settle: I wish I could settle to reading again. BYRON, *Lytton's Life of Byron*, 20 a.

to speak: There are those who speak to having met him near the church.
EM. BRONTË, *Wuth. Heights*, Ch. XXXIV, 166 a.

Note. Apparently a very unusual application of the verb: it is not registered in the O. E. D.

to testify: There was not a girl or woman in the Rue Fossette who could not, and did not testify to having received an admiring beam from our young doctor's blue eyes at one time or other. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XII, 135.

to train: Mr. Stilling's faculties had been early trained to boring in a straight line. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. IV, 151.

to trust: There was nothing left for it but to drive home again, or else to go in alone and trust to finding Roy afterwards. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXX, 266.

to vouch: I can vouch to having heard your Highness tell the story. CON. DOYLE, *Rodney Stone*, I, Ch. VII, 175.

Group-verbs.

to betake oneself: La Motte betook himself then to arranging his papers. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. IV, (224).

to feel up: He felt up to shooting a tiger. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, II, Ch. I, 9.

to give up: The 120,000 people gave up a fine Saturday afternoon in June to emphasizing their detestation of an attempt at gratuitous oppression. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6264, 16 c.

Note, Rarely with *to* + inf., as in: I gladly gave myself up to hear. EMERS., *Eng. Traits*, 80 a.

to look forward: I always looked forward to producing a strictly elementary book. SWEET, *A. S. Prim.*, Pref., 5.

She generally looked forward with pleasure to meeting the Ambroses. MAR. CRAWF., *Lonely Parish*, Ch. XII, 96.

Fancy having no one to think of, no one to look forward to meeting. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I.

to spirit up: My father preached a whole set of sermons on the occasion; one set in the mornings, all about David and Goliath, to spirit up the people to fighting with spades or bricks. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. V, 98.

Adjectives and Adjectival participles.

accessory: Nor, truly, could I have suspected Ramorny of having so much influence over the Prince, after having been accessory to placing him in a situation so perilous. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXI, 222. (in this application better spelled *accessary* (O. E. D).)

committed: The Italian Government was committed to carrying on war in partnership with the Balkan States. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6053, 1 b.

We are now committed indefinitely to keeping £0,000 soldiers in Ireland. *ib.*, No. 8132, 2 a.

confined: His active friendship was confined to giving him £ 10. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 46.

equivalent: To find fault with the sermon was regarded as almost equivalent to finding fault with religion itself. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. I, 78. For a teacher to seek her alliance in any crisis of insubordination was equivalent to securing her own expulsion. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. IX, 99.

To desire war would be equivalent to being perfectly mad. *Rev. of Rev. essential*: Under a Puritan government a person who is apprised that piety is essential to thriving in the world will be strict in the observance of the Sunday. MAC., *Com. Dram.*, (569 a).

All the processes essential to maintaining life in our bodies produce electricity. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 204, 595 a.

opposed: He is firmly opposed to flogging. *Punch*.

Baron Komura is said to have been bitterly opposed to surrendering the claim for an indemnity. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 189, 226 b.

Mr. Bultitude was opposed to fighting as a system. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. X, 196.

parallel: To want it otherwise would be parallel to wanting girls and boys not to grow up. E. F. BENSON, *Arundel*, Ch. II, 51.

preferable: I thought anything was preferable to making a failure of your excellent play. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, I, H, Ch. II, 152.

Much as we dislike extensions of the power of the Executive, they are preferable to giving a free hand to peers to stop the possibility of peace.

subject: He has been subject to talking and starting. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 4, (257).

superior: He seemed superior to making any answer. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, LXXXIII, 433.

tantamount: To infringe the rubric is tantamount to tampering with the Christian faith itself. *Times*.

Mr. Witte is known to be pro-English; that is tantamount to saying that he is anti-German. *Pall Mall Gaz.*

It would be tantamount to covering with ridicule the four Great Powers. *Ninet. Cent.*, No. 393, 900.

Predicative Nouns that have the Value of Adjectives.

enemy: Northington was an enemy to thinking, whereas Windham was an enemy to drinking. *Athen.*, No. 4448, 85 b.

friend: I am not a friend to doing things in a hurry. *Stof.*, *Handl.*, III, § 106.

party: I wouldn't be a party to stealing a lot of trumpery trinkets. *TROL.*, *Small House*, II, Ch. XLI, 128.

I would not be a party to taking the bread out of the mouth of those (sc. lawyers) with a family, *LYTTON*, *My Novel*, II, Ch. XII, 581.

Under no conditions will I be a party to giving you this position. *MARJ. BOWEN*, *I will maintain*, II, Ch. I, 165.

43. A larger number of verbs and adjectives take the infinitive-construction. Thus we find it, apparently regularly, after the following.

Transitives,

especially such as express an abandoning, a binding, a compelling, an empowering, an enabling, or an urging. Some of these are sometimes, improperly, included among the verbs construed with an accusative + infinitive (Ch. XVIII, 30, f); such as:

to authorize: What deed of Manfred authorizes you to treat him as a murderer, an assassin? *HOR. WALP.*, *Castle of Otr.*, Ch. IV, 147.

to bind: It binds the Powers to observe this rule. *Times*.

to bribe: He bribed her to impart nothing but facts. *MER.*, *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XX, 131.

to bring: She could not bring her mind to tell Miss Swartz. *THACK.*, *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 120.

Mention of the military cloak of enthusiasm covering Shalders, brought the scarce credible old time to smite at his breast, in the presence of those eyes. *MER.*, *Ormont*, Ch. V, 79.

to call upon: I do not feel called upon to give you advice. *DOR. GERARD*, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XXV.

I am not called upon to dispute the right of that person to be satisfied. *HUXL.*, *Lect. and Es*, 101 a.

to commission: He commissioned me to procure him a false licence. *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (473).

to compel: He compelled me to desist. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 397, N.

to condemn: They condemned the criminal to have his head cut off as the law directs. *Stead's Annual* for 1906, 18 c.

to dare: in the meaning of *to defy*: She dared the Company to refuse the payment. *THACK.*, *Van Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 372.

to decide: This decided him to part with the boy whenever he should be found. *LYTTON*, *Night & Morn.*, 140. (See Ch. XLVI, 43, b.)

to defy: I defy even Sir William Lucas himself to produce a more valuable son-in-law. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 323.

I defy anybody not to be good to you, my dear. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 27.

to determine: It determined him to leave Lyme. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XXIII, 251. (See Ch. XLVI, 43, b).

to empower: Local authorities are empowered to remove barbed-wire fencing from any land adjoining a highway. Graph.

to enable: This is needful to enable us to make a choice. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 87 a.

Note. When the person-object of *to enable* is suppressed as being indefinite, the object of the infinitive-clause is sometimes put in its place, the shifting causing the infinitive to be thrown into the passive voice. For detailed discussion and illustration of the resulting construction see Ch. LV, 89.

Mr. Lloyd George speaks as if a happy agreement has been reached, which will enable the Conference to be held. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8450, 1 a.

to entice: He tried to entice Mr. Wickfield to drink. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 286 b.

to exhort: He exhorted the electors to give their votes to men worthy of their confidence. MAC., *Hampd.*, (207 b).

to fit: This fitted him now to be Frithiofs' friend. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXVI, 243.

to get: I will cut him, and get my husband to cut him too. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. V, 54.

to induce: Nothing will induce him to believe this. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VII, 51.

to invite: He was directly invited to join their party. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XI, 59.

to kindle: The first (sc. performance) kindled Richard to adore Woman. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXIV, 179.

to leave: They left them to decay gradually. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XVIII, 136 b. (Compare: *They left him to his fate.*)

He grieved to see his comrade left to face calamity alone. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VII, 42.

Note. The same construction is frequently extended to *to leave* in other shades of meaning, as is shown by the following examples: a) Then taking the disengaged arm of Mr. Darcy, she left Elizabeth to walk by herself. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. X, 56.

She left him to enter the drawing-room alone. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. VII, 170.

Tom loosed his hold and left Bob to rise. *ib.*, I, Ch. VI, 42.

β) They left us to clear up the wreck at our leisure. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

I leave you to imagine the agreeable feelings with which Philip went to Mr. Deane the next day. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VIII, 397.

You must really leave me to take my own course in these matters, *id.*, *Fel. Holt*, I, Ch. II, 56.

This I may leave any candid reader of these epistles to decide. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 105 b.

The construction used in the examples under β) is, apparently, due to an exchange of objects. Thus *I leave it to you to draw the conclusion* is converted into *I leave you to draw the conclusion*. Compare also Ch. LIII, 24 f; and STOF., *E. S.*, XXXI, 110.

The construction with objective anticipating *it*, which strikes us as the more logical, is common enough: I must leave it to your own judgment to decide

whether you will come to Nuncombe Putney or not. TROL., *He knew he was right*, I, Ch. XX, 160.

We leave it to our readers to judge whether the following passage was not at least corrected by his hand. MAC., *Mad. d'Arblay*, (729 b).

They left it to others to see that the results are guided in right directions. Times.

The construction mentioned under β), as is only natural, admits of passive conversion: The laboratory was left to take care of itself. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (110).

He must be left to wake as he would. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*

Another modification of the construction with objective anticipating *it* is that illustrated by: I will leave the story for him to tell. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XXII, 255. (i.e. I will leave it to him to tell the story.)

In conclusion mention may be made of the construction in which the present participle takes the place of the infinitive, as in: Apparently disconcerted by his frankness, he turned on his heel and made off, leaving Michael putting one and one together. GALSW., *Silv. Spoon*, II, Ch. II, 128.

to move: Tiberius moved the senate to admit Jesus among the gods. MAC., *Addison*, (735 b).

to pledge: The treaty of London of 1841 pledges the Sultan to maintain the ancient rule of the Ottoman Empire. Times.

to press: Robert Beaufort pressed him to stay. LYTON, *Night & Morn.*, 435.

to prompt: The existence of an engagement to marry, between her and the plaintiff, may have prompted her to concoct a monstrous fraud for his benefit. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXI, 223.

Their public spirit has prompted them to meet him in the only manner in which he was to be met. Times.

to set: He accused him of being a materialist, and set his whole spiritual pack of sages to worry and bark at him. LYTON, *Caxt.*, XII, Ch. V, 346.

Mr. Wyndham has declared that no Irish M. P. ... has been set to do laundry work. Punch.

Note. In another meaning *to set* may take the gerund-construction (44).

to spur: A letter from the baronet spurred him to think of his duties. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XX, 129.

to stir: As the same time he stirred Lord Rosse to repeat his application to the Treasury. HUXL., *Life & Let.*, I, 105.

to summon: Macbeth summoned the lady to surrender the castle. SCOTT.

to tempt: One day she was tempted to speak more openly to her pupil. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XV, 73 b.

to urge: He urged me to come. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, 397, N.

She urged Jane to borrow Mr. Bingley's carriage immediately. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XII, 62.

Note. Such a gerund-construction as that in *He urged my coming* admits of two interpretations, viz.: *He urged me to come*, and *He urged that I should come*. The same ambiguity attaches to: At last he urged your taking presents of him. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, V, 3, (129).

Edmund urged her remaining where she was. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. IX, 100.

When there is no (pro)noun the gerund is regularly used (18, c).

β) There is also a construction with (*upon* + (pro)noun + Infinitive, as in: He urged upon me to be instant in my prayers. STEV., *Kidn.*, Ch. I, (193).

to worry: He is worrying me to marry. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, Ch. XV, 259.

Intransitives

especially, such as express an aspiring, a claiming, a consenting, a contributing, a deigning, a tending, or a yielding, such as:

to agree: Waverley agreed to be guided by his friend. SCOTT, *Wav.* Ch. XXXIV, 100 *a*.

Note. For the construction with *in* see 34.

to claim: The present writer may, perhaps, claim to know something about the matter. *Acad.*

to combine: All circumstances combined to imprison me in London. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Ch. I, 2.

He sat quietly checking off a series of incidents which must have combined to make up a day of horror. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. of Sherl. Holmes*, II, E, 229.

to condescend: At last she condescended to observe that the young ladies seemed very fit for such employments. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XI, (299).

to consent: I cannot consent to go on, unless you carry it (sc. your gun) as Winkle does his. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 164.

John Waters consented to do this. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. III, 21.

to conspire: Every reflection which Manfred made on the Friar's behaviour, conspired to persuade him that Jerome was privy to an amour between Isabella and Theodore. HOR. WALP., *Castle of Otr.*, Ch. V, 162.

to contribute: Her tears, her looks, all contributed to discover the real sensations of her heart. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (468).

Other circumstances have contributed to produce the same result. *Times.*

to deign: He did not even deign to stand on the defensive. MAC., *Clive*, (537 *b*).

If you deign to confide in me. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. X, 163.

to long: He longed to call on all to come and share the treasure with him. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIV, 71.

to pretend: I do not pretend to possess equal frankness with your ladyship. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LVI, 347.

I must not pretend to advise. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 323.

to verge: The Baron was not only 'ebriolus', but verging to become 'ebrius'. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XII, 48 *b*.

Note. Perhaps more commonly construed with (*upon* + ger.

Adjectives and Adjectival Participles

especially such as express a being enabled, empowered, inclined, or the reverse, such as:

(*unable*): Clive was unable to sleep. MAC., *Clive*, (518 *a*).

apt: People are apt to disdain what they know they cannot do. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 62 *b*.

bound: I don't feel bound to submit to what I don't like. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXIX, 290.

disposed: They were not disposed to abandon him to that low-minded and rancorous pack. MAC., *Clive*, (538 *b*).

entitled: I don't think you are entitled to complain of the way that nature has treated you. RID. HAG., *Jess*, Ch. III, 24.

fain: Carlo was fain to listen to the discussion. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Er.*, Ch. I, 9.

lo(a)th: Her attractions made him loth to leave Rudolstadt. CARLYLE, *Life of Schiller*, II, 122.

And I (Pardon me saying it) were much loth to breed | Dispute betwixt myself and mine. TEN., PRINC., I, 154.

I am loath to go over an old story once more. HUXLEY, Lect. & Es., 92 a.

He appreciated her services and would be loth to lose them. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Woman, Ch. XVII.

reluctant: I was most bitterly reluctant to give up all the pleasure I had anticipated so long, Mrs. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 121.

She is reluctant to talk on the point. HARDY, Madding Crowd, Ch. LII, III, 426.

She is reluctant to become my wife. MARJ. BOWEN, The Rake's Prog., Ch. IV, 49.

44. Of special interest are those verbs and adjectives or equivalent word-groups governing *to*, which have been found furnished with either construction. To each of the following groups of examples a note is added purporting to state which of the two constructions, in the opinion of the present writer, is most in favour. But it is hardly necessary to say that some of these statements, supported as they are by only a very limited number of examples, are liable to be defeated by evidence to the contrary. Divided practice has been found to exist in the case of the constructions after:

Verbs.

to confine: i. They ought to confine themselves to making puddings and knitting stockings. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XII, 131.

I shall confine myself to tracing the chief outlines of Shelley's Life. ROSSETTI, Shelley's Adonais, Memoir of Shelley, 1.

He did not confine himself to writing the Examiner. D. LAING PURVES, Life of Swift, 17.

We may confine ourselves to finding out what has become of the horse. CON. DOYLE, Mem. of Sherl. Holm., Ch. I, 39.

ii. If they do not confine themselves altogether to eat either 'Bread or the Herb of the Field.' WESLEY, Prim. Physic (O. E. D., 8, b).

Note. Although the O. E. D. does not give a single instance with the gerund-construction, it is no doubt far more frequent than the infinitive-construction.

to devote: We will devote our lives to making your life agreeable. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXIII, 202.

The young man devoted much of his time to reading. MAC., Clive, (500 a).

I will devote my life to securing the happiness of yours. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, II, 13.

It enabled Moore to devote the money, which had been set aside for his passage, to seeing the new world. STEPH. GWYNN, Thom. Moore, Ch. II, 33.

The peasants have devoted their spare francs to supporting M. de Lesseps. Graph.

When you see a thing which no one else seems to see, you feel you must gather all your forces, and devote yourself to setting forth the truth as you see it. Stead's Annual for 1906, 31 a.

ii. He devoted every energy of his mind to save shillings and pence wherever shillings and pence might be saved. TROL., Small House, Ch. XVI, 191.

We'll devote the evening, brother, to prosecute our friendly move. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, III, Ch. VI, 90.

Note. The gerund-construction has been more frequently met with than the infinitive-construction.

to drive: i. She would be driven to supporting life upon such birds as she could catch. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XI, 110.

ii. It is Fate's doing that I am driven to say here what I had as a schoolboy sworn should be said whenever we should meet again. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. IV, 69.

Henry was driven to conclude peace, GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, § 4, 312.

A man who lies to avoid lending, won't be driven to lend. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. I, 17.

You will drive me to be a priest. READE, *Cloister*, Ch. IX, 49.

The appearance of any novelty in art always drives a few ill-balanced minds to claim that there was never any sense or sanity before the new thing came.

Manch. Guard., 8/1, 1926, 23 c.

Note a) The gerund-construction appears to be unusual. The O. E. D. registers none.

β) In practically the same meaning *to drive (up)on* + gerund, apparently a rare construction; e. g.: He is driven upon breaking silence. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XLIII, 406.

to fall: i. They straightway fell to talking about matters connected with their trade. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 325.

I fell to praising up Ironhook to the women. KINGSLEY, *Here w.*, Ch. III, 26 b.

He fell at once to talking about the squire. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 382.

He fell to imagining the little room. id., *Rich. Meyn.*, I, Ch. II, 23.

ii. The Queen desires you to use some gentle entertainment to Laertes before you fall to play. SHAK., *Hamlet*, V, 2, 214.

The distinction was immediately approved by all, and so they fell again to examine. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, Sect. II, (62 b).

Upon this they fell again to rummage the will. ib., 63 b.

And so last night she fell to canvass you. TEN., *Princ.*, III, 24.

Note. a) The O. E. D. (s. v. *fall*, 66, δ) does not comment on the relative frequency of the two constructions, but there can be little doubt that the infinitive-construction is unusual in the latest English. The alternate use of the two constructions in the following example may be due to the writer having lost memory of the opening part of the sentence when the infinitive was written down: He fell again and again to speculating on the probable romance that lay behind that loneliness and look of desolation; then to smile at his own share in the prejudice that interesting faces must have interesting adventures. G. ELIOT, *Dan. Der.*, I, II, Ch. XVII, 281.

β) In older English the verbal in *ing* is often preceded by the proclitic *a*; and instances are not unfrequent in colloquial or vulgar English of the last century. In Old English *on*, the labialized form of *an*, "absorbed (in West Saxon) the preposition *in*, and so had the meanings *on, in; unto, into, to.*" O. E. D., s. v. *A prep.*

The proclitic *a* has disappeared in standard English, with the result that the verbal in *ing* has assumed the grammatical status of a present participle. This construction seems to be in a fair way the supplant that with *to* + gerund; e. g.: i. And then the people fell a-shouting. SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 2, 222.

They all fell a-crying. FIELD., *Jos. And r.*, I, Ch. XIV, 36.

They all fell a-laughing. ib., Ch. XIV, 36.

At this we all fell a-crying. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11 a.

ii. You fell talking with uncle about Susan. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. I, 19.

After a while they fell crying. KINGSLEY, *Here w.*, Ch. V, 36 b.

She fell happily thinking of Tressady's skirmishes with her. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. II, 13 a.

Then they fell talking to shape an idea to themselves of the new prospect that opened before them. WELLS, *Kipp's*, III, Ch. III, § 3, 315.

γ) The constructions illustrated by the following examples appear to be very rare: i. They both resolved, without farther delay, to fall immediately upon reducing the whole exactly after their father's model. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, Sect. VI, (75 a).

ii. And Enid fell in longing for a dress | All branch'd and flower'd with gold. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 630.

δ) For further discussion and illustration of *to fall* as used in the above examples, in which it serves as an expedient to denote an ingressive aspect, see Ch. LI, 15 b; Ch. LVII, 6.

to get. i. We got to chatting about our rowing experiences. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. XV, 196.

He gets to feeling very low, walking about all day after work. GALSW., *Silv. Box*, I, 1, (20).

He got to thinking of this good fellow rather vividly. W. D. HOWELLS, *The Pursuit of the Piano* (SWAEN, *Sel.*, II, 27).

ii. One gets to feel that it is wrong to think. WELLS, *Britling*, II, Ch. IV, § 14, 339.

He got to be a great man. HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 88.

Note. Both in the gerund-construction, which is common only in American English, and in the infinitive-construction, the main force of the verb is to impart an ingressive aspect to the predicate (Ch. LI, 15). There is also a construction without *to* before the *ing*-form, which in this connexion is to be apprehended as a participle, the verb *to get* having the function of a copula; thus in: The boy got fingering the pistol. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 63.

We got talking. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, Aug., 89.

For detailed discussion see especially STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 1044 f.

to go: i. All present went to dancing. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. IX, 53.

ii. Esperance... went to dress for dinner. EDNA LYALL, *Won by Waiting*, Ch. XIV.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be very rare. There are many alternative constructions, for which see Ch. LV, 34, b; and Ch. LVII, 6. Also in the meaning of *to tend*, the infinitive-construction is, apparently, the ordinary one (O. E. D., 42); thus in: These revelations go to show that Germany was bent on having the whole foreign policy of France submitted to her for approval. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 191, 456 a.

to have: i. If you was to be made an honest woman, I should not be angry; but you must have to do with a gentleman. FIELD., *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. IX, 54 a.

ii. Insolent towards all who have to do with her. STEELE. *Spect.*, No. 33. (O. E. D., s. v. *do*, 33, δ).

Note. The gerund-construction is, no doubt, very rare.

to lead: i. The postponement of the measure led to bringing to the front other bills comparatively less distasteful. *Graph*.

ii. She is almost beautiful, and not in any way that you have been led to fancy. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXII, 155.

The sharing of that passion eventually led me to become a monk. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, v, Ch. XXVI, 216.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be distinctly unusual.

to look: i. You mustn't look to having any of Mr. Glegg's money. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 41.

We looked to paying back the money when the times got a little bit better. *ib.*, III, Ch. III, 197.

They looked to setting up Presbyterianism in England and Ireland as well as Scotland. *Story of Old Mortality*.

ii. He looked with anxiety to have a resting-place amid his wanderings. *CARL., Life of Schiller*, II, 112.

Note. The gerund-construction is more frequently met with than the infinitive-construction. The latter, however, is the regular construction after *to look* in the meaning of *to take care, to make sure*, as in: Look to see me no more. *DICK., Christm. Car.*, I, 23. (by some understood in the meaning of *to expect*. Cf. *O. E. D.*, 3, *b*, and *c*.)

to object: i. I do not object to seeing the young men of this establishment well and handsomely dressed. *THACK., Sam. Timm.*, Ch. VI, 57.

Lisbeth objected to being advised, either by the Chaplain or his wife. *RUDY. KIPLING, Plain Tales*, I, 14.

He objects to learning arithmetic. *MORRIS, News from Nowhere*, Ch. X, 71.

ii. We object to join with men who do not wear our badges and utter our shibboleths. *Good Words*.

The parents object to have an infant vaccinated. *Punch*.

They objected very strongly to come into direct relationship with the Chartered Company. *Times*.

Note. One construction may be as frequent the other.

to own: i. For her part, she owned rather to holding Queen Bess's opinion. *THACK., Es m.*, II, Ch. I, 159.

He owned to having treated her very ill. *ib.*, II, Ch. XI, 264.

I own to having a kindly feeling towards that fatal man. *id., Den. Duv.*, Ch. IV, (230).

ii. What the chief commanders ... owned to have reserved for each of themselves. *C. JOHNSTON, Chrysal*, III, 70 (*O. E. D.*, 5, *a, c*).

Note. The infinitive-construction is rare.

to reduce: This reduced her to laying her other hand almost timidly over his. *Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest*, Ch. X, 178.

They were reduced to living upon a very narrow income. *WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin*, II, Ch. IV, 72

All but Turner were reduced to painting. *Studio*.

ii. Why, you have been reduced to wrap yourself in a shawl. *Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake*, II, Ch. I, 24.

Note. The infinitive-construction is illustrated by no fewer than four examples in the *O. E. D.* (21, *b*), the gerund-construction by none. The latter, however, appears to be common enough.

to resign: i. I resigned myself to thoughts of home and Peggotty, and to endeavouring in a confused, blind way to recall how I felt, and what sort of a boy I used to be, before I bit Mr. Murdstone. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. V, 36 *a*.

He at length resigned himself to accepting one (sc. a curacy) in a distant county. *G. ELIOT, Scenes*, I, Ch. IX, 67.

ii. I resigned myself to make the best of it. *WILK. COL., Woman*, I, Ch. XV, 105.

Feeble limbs easily resign themselves to be tethered. *G. ELIOT, Mill*, III, Ch. IX, 239.

Finally (he) resigned himself to play his part in the farce. *CH. BRONTË, Villette*, Ch. X, 118.

If Russia is not to have Constantinople, Austria will probably resign herself not to get Salonica. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6071, 1 *c*.

She resigns herself to indulge him a little. *SHAW, You never can tell*, II, 265.

Note. The infinitive-construction seems to be the ordinary one.

to set, with or without the reflexive pronoun: i. So now we must set ourselves seriously to finding this gentleman. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm., Blue Carbuncle*.

They set to collecting eggs. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XI, 110.

ii. He now set himself to cultivate Parliamentary interest. MAC., *Clive*, (526 a).

She set herself to make as light of the affair as was possible. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XXV, 229.

Mr. WYNDHAM has declared that no Irish M. P. . . . has been set to do laundry work. PUNCH.

Note. The two constructions may be of equal frequency.

to submit: i. It is possible that the population of the Ruhr may submit to working for the French. MARCH. GUARD., VIII, 17, 322 b.

ii. He maintained that he could not submit to be confronted with such a man as Nuncomar. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (613 a).

I won't submit to be proposed to by Mr. Quale. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. IV, 114.

(He) submitted to be taught by suffering. MRS. GASK., *Mary Bart*, Ch. XXXVII, 367.

He submitted to be kissed willingly enough. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 25.

Could he ever submit to give up Sybil to any other? MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. II, 30.

They will not submit to be treated as inferior races. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8663, 5 a.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be unfrequent.

to take: i. * I'll take to writing poetry. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 63 a.

Free thought took to running underground. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, 63 b.

And the rector, having laid down his pipe, took to studying his books with a certain dolefulness. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 284.

** I don't take kindly to laying out the money of Sir Leicester Dedlock, Baronet, on these Roughs. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LVII, 479

ii. He had taken to drink freely. TROL., *He knew he was right*, II, Ch. XCIII, 337.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be the only one in actual use. In the example from TROLLOPE, the form *drink* is, perhaps, best understood as a noun of action or a material noun.

to tend: i. Neither would he consent to any steps which might tend to proving himself innocent. MRS. GASK., *Mary Bart*, Ch. XXIII, 240.

ii. No work tends to fall into grooves more desperately than teaching. *Academy*.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, most probably, the ordinary one.

to turn: i. He turned to teaching and writing for a livelihood. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 359 a.

Of late the Press has turned from defending public interest to making inroads upon private life. GOLDS. (in R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Golds.*, Ch. XXII, 254).

ii. Let us turn for a moment to view those agencies at work. *Good Words*.

Note. When the reference is to a profession or a policy, the gerund is, probably, the ordinary, if not the only construction; otherwise the infinitive-construction is preferred.

Group-verbs.

to go far (a long way): i. To be sure Beattie's pose as *fidei defensor* went far to overcome Johnson's anti-Scotch prejudice, while his being a Scotchman went far to securing him a pension in these days of Lord Bute. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Golds.*, Ch. XXIII, 265.

H. POUTSMA, I II.

That ... will go far to making secondary instruction what it was before 1902. *Manch. Guard.*, VI, 8, 150 a.

ii. He made an announcement which should go far to remove the last of the grievances they have urged against us. *Times*.

The facts they chronicle go a long way to explain the assured confidence with which Mr. Chamberlain looks forward to the future of the new colonies. *ib.* This test should go far to ensure that no injustice is done, either to the public or to the accused. *Manch. Guard.*, 25/2, 1927, 143 c.

Note. Observe the varied practice in the first example. For the rest the infinitive-construction seems to be the ordinary one. Another alternative practice is the construction with *towards* + gerund(-clause), as in: An organised demand on their part would go far towards bringing about the desired result. *Daily Mail*.

to go on, in the meaning of *to proceed*: i. Then gathering confidence and experience, she went on to delivering lectures, and then to taking lecture tours, and occasionally to joining in debates. *Lit. World*.

ii. He (sc. the student) may then go on to modify them (sc. his own native sounds) in various ways. *SWEET, Sounds of Eng.*, § 33.

He went on to say that he was sure Mr. Chamberlain would understand this feeling. *Times*.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be distinctly unusual. The synonymous *to proceed* seems to stand regularly with the infinitive-construction; thus in: After redressing internal grievances, the Commons proceeded to take into consideration the state of Europe. *MAC., Hampd.*, (196 b).

to lay claim: i. His family laid claim to being descended from a still older Welsh family. *WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 42.

ii. There are some upon this earth of yours ... who lay claim to know us. *DICK.; Christm. Car.*, III, 63.

Note. It is, apparently, only in the weakened meaning of *to pretend*, that the phrase may stand with the infinitive-construction.

to put up: i. It's that damned traitor, Thady Glynn, that put you up to measuring it (sc. the pier). *BIRMINGHAM, The Advent. of Dr. Whitty*, Ch. II, 40.

ii. He put me up to try to get into Harris's secrets. *Good Words*, Sept., 1892, 584, 1 (O. E. D., 53, 9, b).

Note. The two constructions may be of equal frequency.

to see one's way (clear): i. Tom did not see his way to not profiting by those suggestions. *HUGHES, Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VII, 310.

I don't see my way clear to punishing you on the facts. *ANSTEY, Vice Versa*, Ch. XI, 220.

My friend and publisher ... sees his way to bringing it (sc. an illustrated edition) out. *WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin*, Pref., 7.

I had seen my way to taking care of Master Bob, without saying a word either to him or to Mrs. Lascelles. *E. W. HORNUNG, No Hero*, Ch. VI.

The Admiralty see their way to increasing the output this year. *Times*.

I see my way to getting rid of a burden. *Daily Chron.*

ii. The proprietors of magazines did not see their way to undertake *Vanity Fair*. *TROL., Thack.*, Ch. I, 27.

Dr. Newman's observation is one that I do not see my way to contradict. *HUXL., Lect. & Es.*, 120, N.

Paul thought he saw his way clear to disabuse Tipping on his mistaken idea. *ANSTEY Vice Versa*, Ch. IX, 193.

We can only hope that the publishers will see their way to issue other essays and poems of the same author in the same exquisite form. *Notes & Quer.* It will give so much pleasure in the village if you could see your way to

carry out a promise which you kindly made in the summer. *Punch*, *Life's Little Difficulties*.

Mr. Bryce has never been able to see his way to support the cause of Women's Suffrage. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 205, 24 *b*.

I hope the Government may see their way to take some action. *Daily Mail*.

Note. Although the gerund-construction is common enough, there appears to be, on the whole, some preference for the infinitive-construction.

Adjectives and Adjectival Participles.

accustomed: i. I was not accustomed to going about alone at any time of life. *Mrs. WARD*, *Rob. Els.*, I, 161.

She was accustomed to nursing the sick. *FLOR. MARRYAT*, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 191.

It is to our advantage to grow accustomed to taking deep breath. *RIPPMANN*, *Sounds*, § 4.

Some little Italian town, accustomed to governing itself, refused to turn over its keys to a big neighbour. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 196, 417 *b*.

ii. It was evident that that girl was accustomed to drive. *SARAH GRAND*, *Our Manif. Nat.*, 19.

She had been accustomed to bestow kisses spontaneously on her husband. *FLOR. MARRYAT*, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 237.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, perhaps, rather more common than the gerund-construction, and appears to be used to the exclusion of the latter when mere recurrency of an action or state, without any notion of a habit or custom, is in question (*Ch. I*, 56). After the verb *to accustom* the infinitive-construction appears to be regular; e.g.: I should be sorry to accustom Philammon to suppose that [etc.]. *KINGSLEY*, *Hyp.*, *Ch. XV*, 74 *a*.

addicted: i. He was not in the least addicted to locking up his daughters. *JANE AUSTEN*, *North. Ab.*, *Ch. I*, 1.

The disposition of the Scots, addicted to travelling, justifies my conduct in deriving an adventure from that country. *SMOL.*, *Rod. Rand.*, *Pref.*, 4.

The blacks are more addicted to stealing where slavery exists. *LIVINGSTONE*, *Zambesi*, *Ch. XXI*, 423 (*O. E. D.*, 3).

ii. A poet's cat, sedate and grave, | As poet well could wish to have, | Was much addicted to inquire | For nooks, to which she might retire. *COWPER*, *The Retired Cat*, 3.

I have been so little addicted to take my opinions from my uncle that [etc.]. *JANE AUSTEN*, *Mansf. Park*, *Ch. XI*, 115.

Note. The infinitive-construction seems to have fallen into disuse. See *O. E. D.*, 3.

averse: i. Yet he was always averse to expressing these feelings. *Mrs. SHELLEY*, *Pref. to First Col. Ed. of 1839*.

The court is necessarily averse to allowing the presumption of death, except on evidence of the most satisfactory manner. *RID. HAG.*, *Mees. Will*, *Ch. XII*, 127.

She reflected that boys were averse to being petted. *Mrs. ALEX.*, *A Life Interest*, II, *Ch. X*, 175.

ii. He on his part was not averse to talk about it. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, *Ch. XLV*, 466.

Dr. Kenn was still averse to give way before a public sentiment that was odious and contemptible. *G. ELIOT*, *Mill*, VII, *Ch. V*, 476.

She was not averse to change the subject. *Mrs. ALEX.*, *A Life Interest*, I, *Ch. IV*, 66.

She was not averse to see her husband. *ib.*, II, Ch. XVIII, 298.

I felt averse to be precipitate. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, Q, 28.
 Note. The gerund-construction seems to be unusual. The O. E. D. registers no instances, the infinitive-construction being illustrated by three examples.

(*unequal*): i. Lovers have no pleasure equal to talking of their mistress. HOR. WALPOLE, *Castle of Otranto*, Ch. II, 63.

To attack an Archer of the Scottish Guard was equal to quarrelling with the King of France. *Story of Quent. Durw.*, 52.

** Catherine felt equal to encountering her friends. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. XXV, 195.

I am not equal to getting up this morning. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 28.

*** What administrative talent can be equal to determining wisely what trade or bussiness every individual in a great nation shall pursue? BELLAMY, *Looking Backward*, Ch. VIII, 13.

ii. She was very equal, therefore, to address Mr. Bingley on the subject of the ball. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. IX, 49.

Non-commissioned officers can resign when they find themselves unequal to perform the duties of their rank. VOYLE & STEVENSON, *Mil. Dict.*, (O. E. D., s. v. *resign*).

Note. Only in the meaning of *adequately fit, qualified*, does *equal* admit of being construed with an infinitive construction, which, however, is not, apparently, as frequent as the gerund-construction.

given: i. The two are equally given to talking about what they don't understand. MAC., *South. Col.*, (104 a).

She was much given to tying up her head in a pocket-handkerchief knotted under the chin. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. IV, 50.

Bibber = a man given to drinking. ANNAND., *Conc. Dict.*

ii. Widows are mightily given to dream. WYCH., *Gent. Danc. Mast.*, I, 1, (140).

He was given to stretch himself at full length on the rug. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 342

He was much given to use that inconvenient word in a curt tone. *ib.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 343.

The worst of them is that they are given to talk leading articles. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 28.

It has been remarked that he is given to benefit himself and to redress his own grievances. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, A, 9.

Note. The two constructions appear to be of equal frequency.

inclined: i. Although I was not much inclined to gaming, I felt no aversion to pass an hour or two at cards with a friend. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. IV, 89.

Now our Doctor was not inclined to taking any steps towards subjecting his learned brother to pump discipline. TROL., *Dr. Thorne*, Ch. X, 139.

ii. He now seemed inclined to move very leisurely. *ib.*, 148.

I am not inclined to go that length. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXI, 225.

Note. The infinitive-construction is, probably, the ordinary one.

liable: i. In O. E. itself, *c, t, p* are liable to doubling when followed by *r* or *l*, a parasite vowel generally intervening. SWEET, *A. S. Read.*, § 103.

ii. Most weak vowels are liable to change into *æ*. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 204.

The boat will not be so liable to upset. JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. III, 30.

Nothing was new-fangled or liable to go wrong. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXXI, 284.

Note. The gerund-construction, which is not registered in the O. E. D., seems to be unusual.

prone: i. She was a woman prone to quarrelling. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XIII, 103.

ii. You may well warn me against such an evil. Human nature is prone to fall into it. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLVIII, 292.

No people were ever so little prone to admire at all as those French of Voltaire. CARL., *Hero-Worsh.*, I, 13.

Note. The infinitive-construction appears to be the ordinary one.

used: i. Gradually I became used to seeing the gentleman with the black whiskers. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 11*b*.

I am not used to seeing any but our own people here. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 39.

A type of old man I was not used to seeing. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. VIII, 53.

ii. She was not used to have her judgment controverted. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXIX, 164.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be more usual than the infinitive-construction. The latter is, however, regularly used when mere recurrency is in question. (Ch. I, 56).

Adjectival Phrases.

in a fair way: i. Had the Dutch and the Hottentots been left to themselves, the latter ... would probably now be surviving and in a fair way to leading useful lives. FROUDE, *O c.*, Ch. III, 44.

She was in a fair way to establishing a third friendship. MAUD DIVER, *Capt. Desmond*, Ch. VIII, 75.

ii. He seemed in a fair way to fulfil the prediction of the old gentleman before mentioned. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (110).

The Tsar is in a fair way to become almost as much a cipher as was the Mikado before 1868. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 191, 496*b*.

Note. The two constructions seem to be of equal frequency. The construction with *of* + gerund, as in the following example, is now obsolete (O. E. D., s. v. *fair*, 14): Mrs. Darcy's letter she was in a fair way of soon knowing by heart. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 211.

on the (one's) way: i. The wine, already palatable, is on the way to becoming admirable. FROUDE, *O c.*, Ch. XX, 321.

He is well on the way to being a best seller. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8615, 13*a*. (He is) on his way to becoming a distinguished novelist. *Punch*, No. 3729, 508*c*.

Chamberlain's ideals of Imperial policy are on their way to being realized. *Times*.

ii. This is on the way to be accomplished. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8615, 15*a*.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be the usual one; this applies also to the less common *on the road*, as in: Settled conditions are on the road to being established. *Times*.

45. After some verbs *towards* appears as a variant of *to* with a hardly appreciable variation of meaning. Some of these seem to take only *towards* before a verbal, some either *towards* or *to*. When *to* is used the infinitive-construction seems to be the usual one. The following verbs may be mentioned here:

to direct: Both alike directed their remarkable powers of conversation towards making the town too hot for him. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. II, 195. The financial policy is directed solely towards building up her political ascendancy. *Times*.

to go: i. All the money she could save went towards helping out his pocket and his wardrobe. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (111).

If he can lay his hands upon the man who threatened you last night, he will have gone a long way towards finding who took the naval treaty. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. of Sherl. Holm.*, II, D, 194.

ii. Count what goes | To making up a Pope. MRS. BROWNING, *Casa Guidi*, 42 (O. E. D., 41).

iii. He now saw that his money must all go to enrich one who had no fortune of his own. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (470).

It may have been that she had recognized in Mr. Aikman the qualities which go to make a good husband. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XVIII.

All the criticism goes to show that the sentence, though severe, was just. *Times*.

Note. The infinitive-construction appears to be the usual one.

to lean: She would certainly have been disappointed in me, if I had leaned towards selling the bird. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, Q, 263.

to turn: He turned his mind at once towards travelling. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. III, 16*b*.

46. The majority of verbs and adjectives governing *with* take only the gerund-construction; thus:

Verbs.

to accredit: Mr. Bright himself was accredited with having said that his own effort to arouse a reforming spirit was like flogging a dead horse. McCARTHY, *Hist. of our Own Times*, III, 208 (O. E. D., 3).

to amuse: See 28.

to charge: It is certain that he was never charged with having borne a share in the worst abuses which then prevailed. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (599*b*). Another libeller charged Mr. Beit and Messrs. Eckstein with being nothing more or less than thieves and swindlers. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 200, 140*a*.

Note. In the meaning of *to burden*, *to commission*, the verb has an alternative infinitive-construction (47), as a synonym of *to enjoy* it has no gerund-construction.

to close: We close here our account of the life of Pythagoras with reminding the reader that [etc.]. LEWES, *Hist. of Philos.*, 46.

to credit: Rhona was generally credited with having acted as a great auxiliary in amassing his wealth. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, IV, Ch. IV, 208. I hope that I shall, at all events, be credited with being a well-meaning person. *Notes & Quer.*

to dispense: I could dispense with toying with their brats, if it gives them any pain. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, XXV.

to end: See 28.

to put up: He was forced to put up with only having the probable credit of it. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LII, 317.

to reproach: See 30.

to taunt: He was taunted with becoming the adviser of the Nationalists. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 193, 86*b*.

to tax: The American woman has often been taxed with being extravagant. *Pall Mall Mag.*

to upbraid: See 30.

Adjectives and Adjectival Participles.

busy. occupied: See 33.

47. In the case of some few usage varies between the gerund- and the infinitive-construction; thus:

to charge: i. I will charge myself with looking after the children.

ii. I pressed his manly hand again, and told him I would charge myself to do this as well as I could. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LI, 367 *a*.

to content oneself: i. (He) contents himself with reporting the results of other scholars. MAX MÜLLER, *Sc. Relig.* 398 (O. E. D., 3). (= to confine oneself.)

We content ourselves with drawing this modest lesson from experience. *Times*.

He contented himself with citing the authority of Lord Salisbury. *ib.*

ii. Great minds do sometimes content themselves to threaten, when they could destroy. TILLOTSON (O. E. D., 3).

Most men, when they should labour, content themselves to complain. JOHNSON, *Rambler*, No. 178. (O. E. D., 3).

Note α) The infinitive-construction seems to have become unusual.

β) In practically the same meaning we rather frequently meet with *to content oneself by* + gerund, as in:

He contented himself by withering the company with a look. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. III, 29.

She never paid the sixpence though she lost, but contented herself by abusing Mary all day. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 123.

Dobbin contented himself by giving an arm to the shawls. *id.*, *Van. Fair.* I. Ch. VI, 54.

The Opposition has contented itself by asking the total rejection of the Finance Bill. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5024, 1 *c*.

Adjectives and Adjectival Participles.

content: i. Halifax was not content with having already driven his rival from the Board of Treasury. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 4.

He was not content with being his own prime minister. *id.*, *Fred.*, (671 *b*).

ii. He who is content to walk, instead of to run, on his allotted path through life, although he may not so rapidly attain the goal, has the advantage of not being out of breath upon his arrival. MARRYAT, *Pet. Simple*, 3 *a*

She was content to let the divine light of philosophy penetrate by its own power. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XV, 73 *b*.

The Russian Government is not content to have established the revolution within its own borders. *Manch. Guard.*, 25.2, 1927, 142 *b*.

Note. In this, the ordinary meaning of the adjective, usage may be equally divided. But in the numerous shades of meaning illustrated by the following examples, the word is, apparently, never construed with a gerund.

i. What you can make her do ... I am content to look upon. What you can make her speak I am content to hear. LAMB, *Tales*, *Winter's Tale*, 54 (= I am not unwilling.)

She was content for this to overlook some trifling irregularities in your moral deportment, *id.*, *Es. of El.*, XXV, (253).

ii. Soon she was content to spend whole days at Fieldhead. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. XII, 283 (= She rather liked).

iii. Of the picture itself I have only a hazy memory, but I am content to base my judgment on a sentence in what may be called the official description. *Westm. Gaz.*, 4.11, 1922, 13 *a*. (= I will confine myself.)

iv. A woman of fifty or over is not content to be dowdy. *Times*, No. 2305, 179 *c*. (= will not acquiesce in (+ gerund).)

v. You have been guilty of more than one act of disobedience, for not only

were you content flatly to disobey Mr. Newell's orders, but you must needs break a rule of mine too. E. A. HUMPHREY FENN, *Malleison's Knife*. (= for not only have you thought proper.)

β) There is also a construction with *in* + gerund(-clause), which, however, appears to be rare; e. g.:

He was content in musing on the parentage of the little cradled boy. MER., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. XLII, 428.

pleased: See 26.

satisfied: i. I therefore continued silent, satisfied with just having pointed out danger. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. V, (263).

Her vanity was satisfied with believing that she would have been his only choice, had fortune permitted it. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXVI, 150, Lord Lonsdale, not satisfied with atoning for his predecessor's injustice, procured him the office of Distributor of Stamps for Westmoreland. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 50.

ii. If every one who wrote books now, would be satisfied to dust books already written, what a regenerated world it would become! BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VII, 20.

The genial old gentleman has been satisfied too long to leave undone those things which he ought not to do. *Pall Mall Mag.*

Note. The gerund-construction seems to be preferred in literary diction, the infinitive-construction in colloquial language.

GERUND-CLAUSES THAT ANSWER TO ATTRIBUTIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCTS OR CLAUSES.

48. Attributive adnominal gerund-clauses chiefly represent such attributive adnominal adjuncts as consist of a noun preceded by a preposition. The relation of the noun modified to such a gerund(-clause) corresponds to that of a noun, verb, or adjective to: a) an apposition of the second kind (Ch. IV, 6, b), as in:

The art of printing with wooden types was invented by Laurentius of Haerlem in 1130. YOUNG, *Arithmetic*.

Note. The gerund-clause may also be an apposition of the first kind, as in: A new diversion was proposed by Piney — story-telling. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, 28.

In this function the gerund-clause is not, of course, preceded by a preposition.

b) a non-prepositional object, as in:

She again renewed her most positive promise of marrying Mr. Williams. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XVII, (336).

c) a prepositional object; as in:

She had an antipathy to doing anything useful. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 17.

d) an adnominal clause introduced by a relative pronoun. Thus *If I had the money for studying, I should go in for medicine* (DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XI) may be considered to be short for *If I had the money that is required (necessary) for studying, I should [etc.]*. Similarly *A spy-glass is a small telescope for viewing distant terrestrial objects* (WEBST, *Dict.*)

appears as an abbreviation for *A spy-glass is a small telescope that is used for viewing* [etc.].

It will be observed that in replacing these gerund-clauses by full clauses, it is necessary to interpolate an adjective or a verb, and that it is to this adjective or verb that the preposition found before the gerund, really belongs. Compare also Ch. XVIII, 17, Obs. III.

The preposition used in the above quotations, may also be considered as a word expressing a state by itself, i. e. as the equivalent of an adjective + preposition (Ch. LX, 46, *d*). If this view is taken, these gerund-clauses are to be regarded as a variety of those described in 22. The prepositions found in them are either *for* or *about*; thus in:

i. Our time came for returning to Bleak House. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXVIII, 329.

The commons proceeded to elect a committee for managing the impeachment. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (647 *b*).

It was true that the time for striking another road was not yet past. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XI.

Its policy is still menacing, and agitation, or any of the other synonyms for making government impossible. TIMES.

ii. I gave Gus a lecture about spending his Sundays idly. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 46.

She muttered something about having hoped to find a seat in Lady Drum's carriage. *ib.*, Ch. II, 31.

You break all your promises about coming to Malford Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. I, 6 *a*.

One inconsequent dream he related, about fancying himself quite young and rich. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. X, 61.

She said nothing about letting me go. MRS. ALEX, *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XIV, 242.

Sometimes the adjective to be interpolated stands attributively before the noun modified by the gerund-clause; thus in:

They fail completely to afford sufficient data for determining the degree in which man is in danger through the rat. TIMES.

This might have been a sufficient reason for refusing its publicity. *ib.*

When the gerund-clause is separated from its head-word by other elements of the sentence, it becomes more or less independent of it, and may be regarded as representative of an adverbial adjunct of purpose, or a prepositional object; thus in:

Every sort of trickery we have used for raising money. *II. Lond. News.*

The leisure that remained her for overhauling her own dinner-dress and taking thought of her own personal adornment, was naturally short. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XIII.

The gerund-clauses with *for* are mostly interchangeable with infinitive-clauses. The following quotation affords an apt illustration:

Mr. Andrew Lang, in *The Windsor*, discourses, somewhat after the manner of Mark Twain, on that common excuse of the indolent, 'No time for reading.' The strange thing, he remarks, is that people who have no time to read books, read newspapers unceasingly. *Lit. World.*

e) an adnominal clause introduced by a conjunctive adverb or its equivalent, a preposition + relative pronoun. Thus the most

plausible interpretation to be put on *You would like to decide your own hour of getting up* (DOR. GERARD, *Etern Wom.*, Ch. XI) seems to be that it is equivalent to *You would like to decide your own hour at which you get up* (or: ... *hour at which to get up*). Of a similar kind are:

The present method of calculating the year was instituted by pope Gregory in 1582. YOUNG, *Arithm.*

She was forced to adopt some more economical way of living. DOR. GERARD, *Etern Woman*, Ch. XII.

49. Obs. I. No variety of attributive adnominal gerund-clauses are of such frequency as those of the first kind. The number of nouns that may be followed by a gerund-construction with specializing *of* is, indeed, well-nigh numberless. It would be easy to add many more instances to the following:

Have I the pleasure of addressing Mr. Scrooge or Mr. Marley? DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

She begged the favour of being shown to her room. *id.*, *Co p.*, Ch. IV, 24 a.

He also felt the importance of having always near him some person well-informed as to the civil and ecclesiastical polity of our island. MAC., *Hist.*, III, Ch. VII, 16.

They have the effect of making the scene very much more picturesque. CON. DOYLE, *Trag. of the Korosko*, Ch. II, 55.

II. The preposition used in many attributive adnominal gerund-clauses is mostly the same as that which is found after the verb or adjective from which the noun is derived. Thus *uneasiness* takes *about*, because *uneasy* is construed with this preposition; *delight* takes *in*, because *to delight* is mostly followed by *in*; e. g.:

You need be under no uneasiness ... about selling the rims. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XII, (305).

The mere delight in combining ideas suffices them, provided the deductions are logical. LEWES, *Life of Goethe*, (MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*² III, 483).

Sometimes this preposition is determined by that found after a noun of a kindred meaning, which owes its peculiar preposition to a corresponding verb or adjective. Thus *antipathy* takes *to*, because *reluctance*, *aversion*, the derivatives of *reluctant* and *averse*, require *to*; e. g.:

She had an antipathy to doing anything useful. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 17.

There is, however, a great deal of fluctuation in the choice of the preposition after nouns, and, consequently, also in attributive adnominal gerund-clauses. Thus *talent* is suggestive of either such adjectives as *clever*, or such as *suitable*, the former construed with *at*, the latter with *for*. Consequently we find *talent* with either *at* or *for*; thus in:

i. He had a natural talent at pleasing the fair sex. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (142).

ii. We mean the talent for conducting political controversy. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (636 a).

She had a rare and surprising talent for getting the baby into difficulties. DICK., *Cricket*, I, 12.

III. In many cases we find the preposition which seems, properly, to belong to the noun, ousted by *of*, owing to the fact that the

relation of the noun modified to that of the following noun or gerund-clause approaches to that of an apposition of the second kind. Compare with the above examples with *talent* the following, in which the word is followed by appositional *of*:

He had shown two talents invaluable to a prince, the talent of choosing his servants well, and the talent of appropriating to himself the chief part of the credit of their acts. MAC., Hist., II, 1, 199 (O. E. D., s.v. *talent*, 6, a).

Thus also specializing *of* has taken the place of *at* in:

Think of the joy of leaving my grandmother's house for ever! Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XI, 178.

The surprise of finding a graceful, infinitely piquante woman in the place of the plain, unhappy little waif he had left behind, had first riveted his attention *ib.*, II, Ch. I, 15.

There was still something he had not seen in the first horrible shock of realizing his father's death. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norse m., Ch. X, 81.

Conversely we sometimes find *of* rivalled by other prepositions. Thus the typical preposition of such nouns as *love*, *liking*, *dislike* is *of*, because they answer to the transitive verbs *to love*, *to like*, *to dislike*. As a matter of fact we find these nouns construed not only with *of*, but also with *for*, and occasionally with *to* or *at*, apparently owing to the influence of words of a kindred meaning, such as *sympathy* and *regret*, which take these prepositions. See also Ch. XVIII, 16, a; and compare JESPERSEN, Phil. of Gram., 171.

i. It is a somewhat curious theory that love of country can reach a high development only under democratic constitutions. Times.

Her Highness shows her mother's love of yachting. II. Lond. News.

ii. Her love for her country and her love for Whiskerandos. SHER., Critic, II, 2.

From his youth up he has had a strong liking for playing mischievous tricks on his neighbours.

iii. It had been banished because he had taken a strong dislike to it. ANSTEY, Fallen Idol, Ch. IX, 128.

They hate me also for my love to you. TEN., Queen Mary, V, 1, (637 b). Love to the people and sympathy with suffering lay at the root of his wildest words. ANNIE BESANT, Autob., 301.

We have the strongest possible dislike to taking any step which is likely to hurt susceptibilities of our American kinsfolk. Times.

The latter peculiarity took the form of a dislike to being left alone. CON. DOYLE, Mem. of Sherl. Holm., II, Ch. I, 17.

iv. He felt dislike at applying to a stranger even for casual information. SCOTT, Wav.

IV. The idea of specializing apposition is often symbolized by the noun modified being preceded by the definite article. But in not a few cases the indefinite article is, somewhat loosely, used for the definite, or *no* used for *not the*. Compare Ch. XXXI, 73.

i. I also set a resolution of keeping no curate. GOLDS. VIC., Ch. II, (240).

i. Let my old friend here . . . give me a promise of settling six thousand pounds upon my girl. GOLDS., VIC., Ch. XXXI, (471).

He had a reputation of being a model father. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, B, 39.

She made a pretence of using her fork. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. VII, 117.

ii. I have no wish of denying that I did everything in my power to separate my friend from your sister. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXXIV, 190. They had no intention of spying. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XX, 133. I have no desire of dislodging so delightful an inmate. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VII, 117.

In other cases neither the definite nor the indefinite article is found before a noun followed by another noun or a gerund(-clause) in apposition; e. g. :

He was in danger of being beset by savages. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 28 b.

V. After the factitive verb to *make* the *of*-construction sometimes seems to be wrongly used for the infinitive-construction. Thus for *He had made a system of docketing all paragraphs concerning men and things* (CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, I, 23) it seems to be more rational to say *He had made it a system to docket* [etc.]. See also 39, b. Further instances are seen in :

He made a point of appearing at the English church at every place which he honoured with a stay. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIX, 206.

Compare: I made a point to act the fine gentleman completely. id., *Barry Lynd.*, Ch. III, 48.

If the country gentlemen do not make it a point to plant oaks wherever they will grow, the time will not be very distant when, to keep our Navy, we must depend entirely on captures from the enemy. NOT. & QUER.

If my grandmother breakfasted with us, I should make it a point to be in time. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XIII, 222.

VI. In many cases the uncertainty of idiom is rendered still greater by the fact that there is an infinitive-construction besides the gerund-construction(s). Thus *opportunity* may take *for* or specializing *of*, but also an infinitive, the particular construction which is fixed on depending to some extent on the connections; e. g. :

i. An active French party lost no opportunity for proclaiming that their ambition was to swallow up the whole of the Siamese territory. TIMES.

It gave her better opportunities for using her eyes. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XIII.

ii. I took the opportunity of asking if she was at all acquainted with Mr. Brooks of Sheffield. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 13 a.

But what were her opportunities of observing? DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XVII.

iii. He met Mrs. Slipslop, with whom we shall take this opportunity to bring the reader a little better acquainted. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. VI, 11.

The same applies to *occasion*, as may be seen in the following examples :

i. What occasion could there be for making love to a girl whom he did not care about? JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXVI, 154.

I see no occasion for entailing estates from the female line. *ib.*, Ch. XXIX, 164. The present is a more convenient occasion for raising this discussion. A. BALFOUR, *Speech* (Times).

ii. He seldom lost an occasion of wounding his feelings. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 47 b.

iii. He took occasion to inquire about the portrait that hung against the wall. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (144).

There was no occasion to send any messenger to camp. TIMES.

The preposition that one would expect after the noun *attempt* is *of*

seeing that the verb *to attempt* is transitive, and also because the apposition-relation readily suggests itself. As a matter of fact, however, this preposition is never used to connect this noun with its adjunct, *at* being in regular use for this purpose, not improbably owing to the fact that it is suggestive of such a verb as *to aim*, which is construed with *at*. Besides the construction with *at* + gerund-clause, there is that with an infinitive(-clause).

i. The big dogs did not make the slightest attempt at biting me. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VIII, 92.

We resolved to make a desperate attempt at descending the southern declivity of the hill. POE, *Gordon Pym*, Ch. XXIV, (163).

I did not care to spend more money in a hopeless attempt at recovering them. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *Blue Carb.*

ii. Far gone, indeed, must we be in mental or physical agony before we abandon the attempt to keep up appearances. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. III, 31.

He could not submit to this sort of thing without at least some attempt to defend himself. ANSTAY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. X, 196.

She made attempts to follow him in his correlating efforts. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXV, 225.

VII. The fact that many nouns are construed with various prepositions sometimes makes it difficult to decide for what gerund(-clause) the infinitive(-clause) is a substitute. This difficulty is especially felt when these prepositions differ but little in meaning, as in the case of *at* and *with*, or *for* and *to*.

VIII. The gerund-clauses corresponding to attributive adnominal clauses opening with a conjunctive adverb, can also be regarded as representatives of an apposition of the second kind. See the examples under 48, *e*.

50. The choice between adnominal gerund-clauses and infinitive-clauses depends on the particular preposition that is used. Considering that this choice is far from being regularly determined by the construction found after the corresponding verbs and adjectives, it seems advisable to make it, at least for some of the more important prepositions, a separate subject of discussion.

51. Leaving out of account the case that *about* really belongs to a verb or adjective understood (48, *d*), one does not often meet with adnominal gerund-clauses with this preposition. It is probable that the nouns answering to the verbs and adjectives mentioned in 24, may be followed by a gerund(-clause) with *about* and admit of the same variety of construction as these verbs and adjectives, but no instances are available to prove this. Here follows what little illustrative matter has been found:

mind: I wanted to tell you that I have changed my mind about staying here till Saturday. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. II, 14 *a*.

Note. In other connections *mind* requires either *for* or *to*, or an infinitive-clause (29, 56).

scruple: i. Admiral Watson had scruples about signing the red treaty. Mac., *Clive*, (517 *b*).

Yet I had my scruples about leaving Holmes. CON. DOYLE, Mem. of Sherl. Holm., II, E, 246.

ii. If Ginevra were in a giddy mood, . . . she would make no scruple at laughing at that mild, pensive Queen. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XX, 273.

iii. * She supplied him not illiberally with money, which he had no scruple in accepting from her. THACK., *Es m.*, I, Ch. III, 177.

She had no scruple in appropriating her future husband's money to her own use. MRS. GASK., *Wives & Daughters*, Ch. XII, 124.

** Esther felt great scruples in leaving her mother. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XVI, 99.

I need not feel any scruples in sending them to their death. DEIGHTON, *Note to Hamlet*, V, 2, 57.

iv. We made no scruple of acquainting him with our situation. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. X, 60.

I made no scruple of informing him of the lowness of my circumstances. *ib.*, Ch. VI, 35.

She made no scruple of returning to dine in Queen-Ann-Street. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XIX, 77.

v. I made no scruple to disclose my situation. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XV, 96.

Note. In the above examples the construction with *about* suggests misgivings, that with *at* hesitation, that with *in* hesitation or troublous thoughts, that with *of* objection; the infinitive-construction conveying the same notion as the gerund-construction with *of*.

thought: For some time he gives no thought about reading anything until he is pushed for an examination and then he crams for it. *Times*.

trouble: i. There will be less trouble about cleaning and dusting. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nones.*, Ch. XXI, 196.

ii. She never took the smallest trouble to approach her in any other capacity than that. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. I, 10*b*.

uneasiness: You need be under no uneasiness . . . about selling the rims. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XII, (305).

52. After nouns with *at* corresponding to the adjectives and verbs mentioned in 26, the gerund(-clause) seems to be used almost to the exclusion of the infinitive(-clause). Some admit of being construed with other prepositions.

astonishment: The English community at the end of the table was struck with astonishment at hearing the Disagreeable Man speak. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. I, 5.

concern: He said something about his concern at having been prevented by business. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 331 (Also with *in*; see 54.)

disappointment: His ill-humour was engendered by the disappointment he felt at not having received orders to turn the intruder out. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XV.

gladness: Richard soon had enough of his old rival's gladness at seeing him. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XIV, 94.

grief: She is in her doleful dumps because her father was not in sufficient agonies of grief at parting. MRS. ALEX., *Life Int.*

joy: She came curtsying forth, with many expressions of simple joy at seeing her young master. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Book*, XXI, 195.

Tom's lamentation over him was not unaccompanied by a certain joy at having seen the last of the wig. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 24.

pleasure: i. My pleasure at finding her again is more than a recompense for the pain. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (474).

ii. He had a strange pleasure in venturing his person. *MAC., Hist., III, Ch. VII, 7.*

What could mean this pleasure in feeding her irritation? *DOR. GERARD, E t e r n. W o m., Ch. XXIII.*

pride: The author, divided between pride and shame, pride at having written a good play, shame at having done an ungentlemanly thing, pretended that he had merely scribbled a few scenes for his own amusement. *MAC., Com. Dram., (580 a).*

regret: The first sentence concluded with her brother's regret at not having had time to pay his respects to his friends. *JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XXIV, 134.*

ii. He decided to let the matter drop, perhaps not without some regret for having raised it. *Mrs. WARD, Tres., Ch. III, 16 a.*

satisfaction: I may express my great satisfaction at finding that there is one spot of common ground on which both he and I stand. *HUXL., Lect. & Es., 114 b.*

shame: Lady Charlotte's dislike to Lucy was embittered by her lurking shame at feeling it. *PHILIPS, Mad. Le r o u x, Ch. XIII.*

shyness: There did not seem to be any nervous shrinking in her manner, nor any shyness at having to face the two hundred and fifty guests of the Kurhaus. *BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. I, 6.*

sorrow: The lad tried to express his sorrow at quitting those who had so sheltered and tended a nameless and houseless orphan. *THACK., Esm., I, Ch. IX, 94.*

surprise: I thanked him, professing my surprise at finding such humanity in jail. *GOLDS. Vic., Ch. XXV. (413).*

Nothing could equal her surprise at seeing Sir William and his nephew here before her. *ib., Ch. XXXI, (465).*

vexation: His vexation at learning that one of his household, after ruining a girl of good family, refused to marry her, *MAC., Hist., III, Ch. VII, 10.*

The following examples afford instances of an infinitive(-clause) being used after nouns that are mostly construed with *at* - gerund(-clause):

How great at last must be my rapture to have made a conquest over such sense and such heavenly beauty! *GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XXXI, (477).*

The glacier of the Rhone ... its ability to expand laterally is increased. *TYNDALL, Glac., II, § 17, 323 (O. E. D., 2).* (Compare: I never dispute your abilities at making a goose-pie, and I beg you'll leave argument to me. *GOLDS., Vic., Ch. VI (264).*)

53. Among the nouns construed with *for*,

a) some seem to take the gerund-construction regularly; thus:

alarm: Between gaiety of heart, and alarm for being hooked into a reckoning, he spurred him (sc. the pony) into a hobbling canter. *SCOTT, W a v., Ch. XI, 45 b.*

apology: We make no apology for returning to the one conspicuous moral to be drawn from the present state of the campaign. *T i m e s.*

I shall offer no apology for following out the question somewhat in detail. *HUXL., Lect. & Es., 85 a.*

compensation: When he died, he left every penny of his money to my brother Sam, as a slight compensation to him for having been born on a Friday. *JER. K. JER., S k e t c h e s.*

Playgoing is one of the greatest compensations for living at home. *Daily Mail.*

craze: Mr. Boniface had a horror of the modern craze for rushing into all

sorts of philanthropic undertakings. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy NORS.*, Ch. XIX, 173.

facility: One clerk can open the door without getting off his stool, while the other, who elbows him at the same desk, has equal facilities for poking the fire. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIX, 336.

Having had no facilities for learning, he was forced to teach. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (635 *b*).

The darkness offered great facilities for paying off old grudges. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*.

Note. With the above examples compare the following in which *facility* has a distinctly different meaning and, accordingly, governs a different preposition: Having from my youth a great facility in learning languages. SWIFT, *Gul.*, IV, Ch. II, (192 *b*).

forgiveness: She clung to her aunt, asking her forgiveness for having annoyed her so often. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy NORS.*, Ch. XVII, 156.

gratitude: She expressed in the warmest terms her gratitude to her faithful Commons for detecting abuses which interested persons had concealed from her. MAC., *Hampd.*, (195 *a*).

His heart was full of gratitude to God for having blest him with such a child. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. II, 23.

ground: We refuse to admit that there is good ground for expressing definite convictions about certain topics. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 110 *b*.

There is no ground for hoping that these principles, adopted in moderation, will bear fruit. *Rev. of Rev.*

pardon: She asked pardon for being fond of a joke. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XV, (322). We beg pardon of our readers for arguing a point so clear. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (609 *b*).

passion: I have an extraordinarily strong passion for watching the movements of animals. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. VIII, 441.

plan: i A miscreant ... forms a plan for carrying off Black-Eyed Susan. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 74.

Each has a sensible, practical plan for dealing with a difficulty from which the Government shrinks. *Daily Mail*.

predilection: The gas has a curious predilection for escaping from it. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, G, 94.

provision: No provision exists for adopting those formularies to altered conditions and new ideas. *Times*.

scope: What we are chiefly called upon to see is, is, that there shall be free scope for gaining this experience and receiving this discipline. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 16 *b*.

(dis)taste: People go to a music-hall to be amused, not to be instructed, and they share Mr. Balfour's distaste for having improvement information insinuated under the guise of recreation. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 201, 255 *b*.

b) Some distinctly prefer the infinitive-construction, to a certain extent varying with specializing of + gerund(-clause); thus:

ambition: i. An intelligent jury has been fired with the ambition to find an answer to the momentous question, 'Are dramatic critics of any use?' *Times*.

ii. The pitiful ambition of possessing five or six thousand more acres. BURKE, *Vind. Nat. Soc.*, I, 22 (O. E. D., 3).

competence: I doubt my own competence to understand it. TYNDALL, *Glac.*, II, Ch. XXI, 343 (O. E. D., 4).

curiosity: The curiosity of the public to hear him was unbounded. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (651 *a*).

effort: I made an effort to suppress my resentment. *GOLDS., Vic., Ch. IX, (286).*
He has disentangled local problems with a sincere effort to be impartial and just. *Times.*

impatience: But no decorums could restrain the impatience of his blushing mistress to be forgiven. *GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XXXI, (468).*

labour: In his labours to achieve the work which he had to put through, Mr. Chamberlain relied, as he said, on the sympathies of the nation. *Times.*

leave: I would have given all I had for leave to knock him down. *DICK., Cop., Ch. XXIX, 286 b.*

vocation: I don't feel any vocation to be a governess. *DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. III.*

watchfulness: Her (Germany's) patient watchfulness to seize upon every advantage, great or small, will not be relaxed in return for any amount of complaisance on our part. *Times.*

c) some have divided usage: *for* + gerund(-clause) varying with either specializing *of* + gerund(-clause), or with an infinitive (-clause), or with both. Among the following instances we have included some in which the preposition *for* belongs really to a verb or adjective understood (48, d).

anxiety: i. Flora felt the same anxiety for cherishing and extending their patriarchal sway. *SCOTT, Wav., Ch. XXI, 70 a.*

ii. The keenest anxiety was felt to know the full reason of the sudden dismissal. *MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 117.*

aptitude: i. He had a singular aptitude for dealing with the difficulties of a crisis. *Lit. World.*

ii. The aptitude of the Cheiroptera to fall like Reptiles into a state of true torpidity. *OWEN, Clas. Mam.,³⁴ (O. E. D., 2).*

arrangements: i. Please to make arrangements for sending for me. *JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, M, 204.*

ii. Perhaps we may still make arrangements to retain you with us. *MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XIII, 85.*

authority: i. We have high authority for assuming that [etc.]. *TYNDALL, Belfast Address, 19 a.*

ii. The local Court has definitely granted the Netherlands South African Railway Company authority to suspend payments. *Times.*

A king has often the power to be cruel, but he has never the authority to be so. *CRABB., Syn., s. v. power.*

capacity: i. As to this gentleman's capacity for conducting a delicate question through Parliament [etc.]. *MAC., War. Hast., (640 b).*

She was surprised by his capacity for thinking out the subjects which attracted him. *Mrs. ALEX. For his Sake, II, Ch. III, 48.*

ii. Sophia seemed to have lost the capacity of loving. *HAR. MARTINEAU, Charmed Sea, Ch. I, 8 (O. E. D., 6).*

iii. He has given some evidence of his capacity to teach and to manage boys. *Times.*

Lord Curzon has shown his capacity to act as stage-manager for the Empire. *Rev. of Rev.*

chance: i. The boy had plenty of chances for showing off his accomplishments. *STEPH. GWYNN, Thom. Moore, Ch. I, 5.*

ii. The mere chance of becoming a baronet's daughter can procure a lady such homage in the world. *THACK., Van, Fair, I, Ch. XV, 161.*

No person suspected of hostility to that church (sc. the Church of England) had the smallest chance of obtaining favour at the court of Charles. *MAC., Com. Dram., (570 a).*

If you have a chance of founding a home for yourself, do not throw it lightly aside. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XI.

iii. This would at least give our boys a chance to be pitted against the Americans. *Rev. of Rev.*

Note. The gerund-construction with *of* is the usual one.

excuse: i. It was an excuse for not ringing the bell. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (113).

A poor excuse for picking a man's pocket. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 13.

We make no excuse for returning to the subject. *Times.*

ii. Illness is an allowable excuse to justify any omission in business. CRABB, *Syn.*, s. v. *pretence*.

Note. The gerund-construction seems to be much more frequent than the infinitive-construction.

faculty: i. I can hardly find any trace of my father in myself, except an inborn faculty for drawing. HUXL., *Autob.*, 5*b*.

In his boyhood he had a wonderful faculty for making friends. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 193, 84*a*.

ii. One talent, however, displayed itself early. The faculty of drawing he inherited from his father. HUXL., *Life & Let.*, I, 6.

iii. Most of us differ from Sir Walter only in not knowing about this tendency of the mythopœic faculty to break out unnoticed. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 89*a*.

fancy: i. Mrs. Kirkpatrick had no fancy for being encumbered with a step-daughter before her time. MRS. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XI, 115.

I don't happen to have a fancy for sitting down on my own little packet of thorns. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XVII.

ii. A rich lady taking a fancy to stand godmother, the girl was, by her directions, called Sophia. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (238).

gift: i. I thought how blind love was — all love save mine, which had a gift for seeing the saddest side of things. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXVII, 285.

But the special charm which he exercised lay in a gift for singing. STEPH. GWYNN, *Thom. Moore*, Ch. I, 22.

ii. She was somehow destitute of the gift of devising nice little dinners. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norse.*, Ch. XIII, 110.

(dis)inclination: i. People who suffer as I do from nervous complaints, can have no great inclination for talking. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XX, 116.

She was obliged to assume a disinclination for seeing it. *ib.*, Ch. XLII, 238.

He showed no inclination for laughing afterwards. THACK., *Den. Duv.*, Ch. VI, (254).

ii. The Frank warriors showed an inclination of executing at once the sentence. PATTISON, *Es.*, I, 18 (O. E. D., 6, *b*).

iii. Mrs. Gardiner expressed an inclination to see the place again. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XLIII, 237.

Do not you feel a great inclination to seize such an opportunity of dancing a reel? *ib.*, Ch. X, 55.

His aversion to women and his disinclination to form new friendships were both typical of his unemotional character. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, C, 95.

Rose turned away to hide an almost hysterical inclination to laugh. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 147.

Note. The construction with *of* is described in the O. E. D. as obsolete. That with *for* is not common, and seems to be confined to the case that the word has the meaning of *partiality* (or *liking*) on the reverse. There is also construction with *to* + gerund(-clause), which seems to be unusual; e.g.:

He suffers more from the natural disinclination which we all have to receiving alms. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XXI, 226.

knack: i. I really have a knack for doing those things. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. III, 21.

ii. He always had a knack of making himself understood among the women. WASH. IRV., *T. Trav.*, I, 54 (O. E. D., 2*a*).

Goldsmith has, ... as he himself expresses it, "a knack of hoping." R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Golds.*, Ch. VXIII, 207.

iii. You think the knack to do this does you good. DOUGL. JER., *St. Giles*, V, 48 (O. E. D., 2*a*).

Note. There are also gerund-constructions with *at* and *in*, as in: i. No person ever had a better knack at hoping than I. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XX, (362).

ii. The Spaniards have a peculiar knack in making omelettes. FORD., *Handb. k. Spain*, I, 68 (O. E. D., 2*a*).

means: i. A military expedition to England as a means for compassing those ends. SCOTT, *Black Dwarf*, 170 (FLÜG., *Dict.*).

ii. The court had neglected no means of gaining so active and able a divine. MAC., *Hist.*, III, Ch. VII, 15.

He could find absolutely no means of carrying out his wish. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXI, 220.

iii. She found means to deceive the servants. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. I, 9.

Note. The gerund-construction with *of* is the usual one.

measure: i. The British minister deemed it expedient to take measures for protecting him. *Times*.

Russia will repeat her admonitions as to the imperative need of strong and prompt measures for curbing the Albanians. *ib.*

ii. His Majesty did not admit anybody to his presence, while measures were taken to watch and control the Albanian battalions. *ib.*

method: i. He may have discovered the only practical method for blowing up hostile armadas from under water. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, P, 246.

ii. The present method of calculating the year was instituted by Pope Gregory in 1582. YOUNG, *Arithm.*

The severe exactness of his method of lecturing was quite to my taste. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 7*b*.

mood: i. They were none of them in a mood for settling down. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XL, 349.

ii. He saw what men were in the mood to do. MCCARTHY, *Hist. of our Own Times*, III, Ch. XLVII, 426 (O. E. D., 3*c*).

motive: i. Mark has a motive for omitting the discourses. HUXL., *Lect. & Es.*, 126*a*.

They have good honest hatred, as a motive for accusing him. LEWES, *Hist. Philos.*, 115.

ii. Hastings had no motive to treat the late ministers with rigour. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (605*a*).

Note. The gerund-construction is the usual one.

necessity: i. The necessity for doing so may occur unexpectedly. *Good Words*.

After all, was there any necessity for doing so at all? DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XXII.

ii. She remembered the necessity of maintaining her composure. *ib.*, Ch. XV.

iii. Now that the lion has been caged, and you have drawn his teeth and clipped his claws, there is surely no necessity to taunt and trample upon him. STEAD, *Rev. of Rev.*

need: i. There is no need for missing, and he does not miss. *Times*.

(Compare: No need for a dark room for changing the films. STUDIO.)

ii. You haven't need to say so much. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXIX, 288 a.
I have no need to hear more. MISS BRADDON, *Audley*, II, Ch. X, 199.

occasion: See 49, Obs. VI.

opportunity: See 49, Obs. VI.

plea: i. If it was convenient to treat a Nabob as an independent prince, there was an excellent plea for doing so. MAC., *Clive*, (504 a).

ii. When bed-time came, Letty lingered in the drawing-room a little behind the other ladies on the plea of gathering up some trifles that belonged to her. MRS. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. II, 12 a.

preparation: i. He began to make preparations for sustaining a siege. MAC., *Clive*, (506 a).

Everything was in preparation for packing up. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

ii. Preparations were made to deposit the coffin in the earth. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-book*, XI, 105.

Great preparations are being made to give him a reception befitting the Sovereign of the oldest and staunchest ally whom Portugal possesses. TIMES.

pretence: i. His pretence for leaving the room was absurd. FIELD., *Jo. S. Andr.*, I, Ch. XVI, 42.

ii. They came in on pretence of taking their morning draught. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. X, 61.

He introduced himself under the pretence of inquiring after all our healths. FANNY BURNEY, *Evelina*, XVI, 52.

Lawyers fall foul upon them under pretence of delivering flies from their clutches. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 66.

To oblige oneself under the pretence of obliging another is a despicable trick. CRABB, *Syn.*, s. v. *pretence*.

She made a pretence of using her fork. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. X, 183.

iii. "You don't need these sort of things," I said, making pretence to laugh. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. II, 16.

Note. Instances of *for* + gerund(-clause) are apparently very rare. The use of *of* is regular after *pretence* when forming part of the group-prepositions illustrated in the second group of examples. The infinitive-construction is, most probably, obligatory after the combination illustrated in the last example.

pretext: i. He wanted a pretext for turning round to hide his own merriment. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 165.

His own introduction of reforms might deprive Great Britain of a pretext for going to war. TIMES.

The Colonial Secretary is resolved to leave the Dutch of Cape Colony no pretext for declaring hereafter that he did not meet them generously. *ib.*

ii. On the pretext of looking at the barometer he entered the room. ROORDA, *Dutch and Eng. Compared*, § 10.

The baronage seized the opportunity to rise in arms under pretext of supporting the claims of Robert. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch II, § VI, 89.

iii. Their long prayers were a pretext to conceal their hypocrisy. WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v. *pretext*.

Note. The construction with *for* + gerund(-clause) and that with *to* + infinitive(-clause) are, presumably, interchangeable, and may be of equal frequency. The use of *of* is obligatory in the case of *pretext* forming part of a group-preposition.

propensity: i. She had a propensity for saving. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 28.

ii. Why have those plants ... a propensity of sending forth roots. SHARROCK *Vegetables*, 141 (O. E. D. I, c).

iii. He could gratify his propensity to accumulate. LD. BROUGHAM, Brit. Const., Ch. XIV, 199 (O. E. D., 1, a).

His propensity to blunder, his provoking indiscretion ... afforded inexhaustible subjects of ridicule to the Tories. MAC., Hist., III, Ch. VII, 13.

Note. The construction with *for* appears to be the usual one.

readiness: i. He gave orders that all should be in readiness for passing the river on the morrow. MAC., Clive, (518 a).

ii. I beg to assure you of my readiness to make them every possible amends. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XIII, 66.

His father's readiness to disburse such a thumping bill [etc.]. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. VIII, 53.

reason: i. Arsenius has his reasons for suspecting that Philammon was but too right. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XVI, 81 b.

I can't think of any other possible reason for disliking you. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XI.

ii. I had perhaps less reason to be surprised than either of my companions. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 38.

Hastings was now confident of victory. It seemed indeed that he had reason to be so. MAC., War. Hist., (644 b).

responsibility: i. The responsibility for affording relief rests on the State. Graph.

ii. The responsibility of making and maintaining the character of his paper rests with him. Good Words.

They have the responsibility of caring for the safety of the frontier. CON. DOYLE, Trag. of the Korosko, Ch. II, 55.

scheme: i. A scheme for debasing the currency was under consideration. Mac. Hampd., (206 b).

It is merely a fresh move in his scheme for entangling the United States in his disputes with his creditors. Times.

ii. This circumstance seems to have suggested to him the scheme of publishing a periodical paper. MAC., Addison, (754 a).

He had so long nursed the prudent scheme of marrying her to his son. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXII, 158.

way (= *means*): i. We can see no better way for extricating ourselves from a position which President Castro has made intolerable. Times.

ii. He will find ways of eluding your father's anger. HOR. WALPOLE, Castle of Otr. Ch. II, 69.

There is no better way of securing facility in dealing with examination papers than by writing out full answers to test papers. Lit. World.

54. Nouns with *in* only rarely have alternative constructions with an infinitive, more frequently with other prepositions.

assistance: He hoped that I would not refuse my assistance in making all the company happy that morning. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XXXII, (479).

concern: Elizabeth could but just affect concern in missing him. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., XXXVI, 208. (Also with *at*; see 52.)

experience: What experience can you have in nursing? DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XIV.

help: The absence of reciprocity is a wonderful help in conquering the sense of another's power and attraction. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. XV, 262. (See also 56.)

hesitation: i. Mr. Bennet could have no hesitation in acceding to the proposal before him. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. L, 302.

We have no hesitation in saying that the poorest author of that time in London ... was a happier man than any of the literary inmates of Frederick's court. MAC., Fred., (677 b).

We have no hesitation in saying that the nation would heartily welcome a settlement of the dispute by the decision of a competent and impartial tribunal. *Times*.

ii. We have no hesitation to give their names at length. SCOTT, *Wav., Intro d. interest*: I have an interest in being the first to deliver this message. GOLDS. *Vic., Ch. VIII, (282)*.

Germany has no interest in unnecessarily accelerating the course of events. *Times*.

obstinacy: Resolutions were passed condemning the action of the traders for their obstinacy in continuing to supply emergency-men and landgrabbers. *Times*.

pleasure: See 52.

scruple: See 51.

share: Pauline influences had a large share in driving primitive Nazarenism from being the very heart of the new faith into the position of scouted error. HUXL., *Lect. & Es., 107b*.

skill: He had a wonderful skill in grazing the edge of treason. MAC., *Hist., II, Ch. V, 95*.

He had some talent for sarcasm, and considerable skill in detecting sore places where sarcasm would be most acutely felt. *id., Fred., (677 a)*.

Note. The O. E. D. observes "Freq. const. *to* with *inf.*", but fails to give a single instance from Late Modern English.

55. As has already been repeatedly hinted at in the preceding sections, *of* is exceedingly common in attributive adnominal gerund-clauses. This is, no doubt, owing to the fact that there is very frequent occasion to place a verbal by way of apposition to a noun, and that other relations are often very vague so as to be indistinguishable from that of appositional *of*.

a) Among many other nouns the following appear to be construed with a gerund-clause to the exclusion of an infinitive-clause:

consequence: Reflect on the consequences of introducing infamy and vice into retreats where peace and innocence have hitherto resided. GOLDS., *Vic., Ch. XV, (321)*.

cost: The cost of using it will always depend upon the general range of prices at the Port. *Times*.

fact: He was caught in the fact of not looking at the Doctor. DICK., *Dom b., Ch. XII, 106*.

He will be in some degree a trained teacher by the mere fact of realizing that in teaching, as in any other applied science, there is a great deal to learn. *Times*.

length: Mrs. Rashleigh had gone the length of hiring a piano. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake, II, Ch. V, 86*.

Note. The gerund-clause, while standing by way of apposition to *length*, is at the same time suggestive of an adverbial relation of degree as manifested in a consequence (Ch. XVIII, 26).

point: They stipulate merely that the sacrifices shall not be pushed to the point of extinguishing denominational schools altogether. *Times*.

Note. The gerund-clause, while standing by way of apposition to *point*, is at the same time suggestive of a relation of degree as manifested in a consequence. Compare: Nicholas hates militarism to the point that he cannot bear to go about with a military escort. *II. Lond. News.* Compare also 39.

prospect: At that moment she clearly had no prospect of marrying him. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will, Ch. XXI, 223*.

purpose: The life of the great Napoleon in, its greatest days had been devoted to the one purpose of humiliating England. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 119.

risk: I could not run the risk of being rusticated. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. I, 10.

show: He came up with a show of assaulting the lieutenant. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. III, 17.

sign: Society showed signs of awakening. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XXV.

George showed but faint signs of returning. Mrs. WARD, Tres., Ch. III, 17 a.

use: What is the use of being cross about it? L. B. WALFORD, Stay-at-Homes, Ch. I.

b) very numerous are also nouns that may be construed indifferently with an infinitive- and a gerund-clause; thus:

charge: i. He repudiates all charges of aiming at dictatorship. Graph.
ii. She has strict charge to avoid the subject. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXVIII, 276 a.

desire: i. (I imputed) it to his desire of detaining my youngest daughter in the country. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XV, (322).

They approach the subject with the honest desire of getting at the truth. Times.

ii. The line of strict neutrality and passiveness which the Queen had expressed her desire to see followed [etc.]. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 116.

It makes one almost understand Miss Wilson's desire to be a chemist or a clerk. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XI.

hope: i. The hopes of having him for a son-in-law in some measure blinded us to all his imperfections. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XVI, (327).

There was still a hope of escaping recognition. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XXII.

ii. And still we follow'd | In hope to gain upon her flight. TEN., Voyage, VIII.

Note. According to the O. E. D. the infinitive-construction occurs now only archaically.

intention: i. I had intentions of going myself. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XII, (301).

I must disclaim any intention of setting up a standard of spoken English. SWEET, Prim. Spok. Eng., Pref.

ii. I had no intention to accuse you of insensibility. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXXIX, 338.

promise: i. She again renewed her most positive promise of marrying Mr. Williams. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XVII, (336).

ii. May I not reckon on your promise to aid me? MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XXII, 155.

way (= *manner*): i. Have you tried your own way of rectifying this business? MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. VII, 42.

ii. To beg the question is not the way to settle it. MAC., South. Col., (99 b).

c) In the case of some nouns there are gerund-constructions with different prepositions, sometimes varying with the infinitive-construction. This applies, presumably among many others, to *capacity* (53, c), *chance* (ib.), *faculty* (ib.), *inclination* (ib.), *joy* (49, Obs. III), *knack* (53, c), *means* (ib.), *method* (ib.), *necessity* (ib.), *occasion* (49, Obs. VI), *opportunity* (ib.), *plea* (53, c),

pretence (ib.), *pretext* (ib.), *propensity* (ib.), *responsibility* (ib.), *scheme* (ib.), *scruple* (51), *way* (53, c).

Observe especially the varied constructions in the case of *end*; e. g.:

- i. Of making many books there is no end. Bible, Eccles., XII, 11 (modified by ELIZ. BAR. BROWN. [Aur. Leigh, 1, 1] into: Of writing many books there is no end.)
- ii. There is an end to everything under the sun, even to wrangling over an Education Bill. Times.

56. Among the nouns construed with *to*,

a) some, so far as evidence to the contrary is absent, take only the gerund-construction. Such are:

approach: "I mean," explained Dick with a perilous approach to digging the other in the ribs, "we did much the same sort of thing in our time." ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIV, 272.

dislike: I quite share your dislike to being in a hurry. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. VI, 71. (See, however, 49.)

help: I really think that it (my paper) has a tiny bit of use as a help to understanding of some literature that is worth knowing. BRADLEY, *Let. to Mr. Bridges* (Col. Pap. of Henry Bradley, 20). (See also 54.)

introduction: It was the most natural and easy introduction to calling in money. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VIII, 70.

obstacle: The country cannot allow the present obstacles to building to be maintained, while the country is so much in need of houses. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 8609, 3a.

Women and children are the chief obstacle to living the ideal life. *Stead's Annual for 1906*, 28c.

The political obstacles to setting aside additional land for native reserves appear to be insuperable. *Manch. Guard.*, 11/5, 1928, 362d.

prelude: He seized him by the collar as a prelude to dealing him a series of kicks from behind. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. X, 196.

regard: A pot-hunter is a sportsman who has more regard to filling his bag than to mere sport. ANNAND., *Conc. Dict.*, s.v. *pot-hunter*.

resistance: And the Royal George has never made half the monstrous resistance to coming out of the water, which the lid of that kettle employed against Mrs. Peerybingle. DICK., *Crick.*, I, 3.

stimulus: An additional stimulus to acting in this way is offered by the migration from less fertile regions of Little Russia. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 224, 128a.

b) some have an infinitive-construction by the side of the gerund-construction; thus:

aversion: i. Tom had an aversion to looking at him. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. III, 145.

He was soured by the British aversion to being plotted at. *MER.*, *Rich. Rev.*, Ch. VIII, 53.

There is in English a curious aversion to doing this. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. III, 96.

We ought to have a hatred for vice and sin, an aversion to gossiping and idle talking. CRABB, *Syn.*, s.v. *aversion*.

ii. One of the strongest traits in his character was his aversion to shed blood by process of law. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § 6, 88.

Note. The gerund-construction is distinctly more frequent than the infinitive-construction.

claim: i. No person can disobey reason without giving up his claim to being a rational creature. SWIFT, *Gul.*, IV, Ch. X, 210b.

The claims of her cousins to being obliged were strengthened by the sight of present upon present that she had received from them. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. XVI, 159.

ii. I receive a legal claim to be the partner of your sorrows. SHER., Riv., V, 1. Note. The two constructions may be of equal frequency.

incentive: i. In Germany and France the incentive to acquiring the knowledge necessary for the passing of the examination is twofold. Times.

Mr. B. regards examinations as a necessary safeguard against educational imposture and, in the main, as a most salutary incentive to reading. Acad.

ii. Incentive to inflame our hearts with Charity and Zeal. BOYLE, Occas. Refl., 9 (O. E. D.).

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be more frequent than the infinitive-construction.

disinclination: See 53, c.

objection: i. I made many objections to being of the party. FANNY BURNEY, Evelina, XIII, 32.

Would you have any objections to lodging with us? Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIV, 262.

She had a truly British objection to being ordered about. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. V, 49.

He asked me whether I had any objection to signing the document. MAR. CRAWF., Ad. Johnst. Son, Ch. III.

I suppose you have no objection to helping me? CON. DOYLE, Mem. of Sherl. Holm., II, D, 199.

ii. If you should have any objection to receive me into your house, [etc.]. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XIII, 66.

Have you any objection to be known as Richards? DICK., Domb., Ch. II, 15.

I should have no objection to speak a word for you. KINGSLEY, Alt. Locke, Ch. VI, 70.

Note. There is not, apparently any decided predilection for either one or the other construction. There is also a construction with *against* + gerund(-clause), as in: The objections which may be made against arguing from the Analogy of Nature. BUTLER, Anal., II, VIII, 283 (O. E. D. I, a).

repugnance: i. Good manners, and a repugnance to telling tales out of school, forbid us from saying which of Madam Esmond's guests was the first to fall under the weight of her hospitality. THACK., Virg., Ch. X, 99.

She had an extraordinary repugnance to dining in company. DICK., Little Dor., Ch. V, 28 a.

He was trying to overcome his own repugnance to making the first advances. G. ELIOT, Mill, II, Ch. III, 145.

Scott felt considerable repugnance to acting in any such matter with Whigs and Radicals. LOCKH., Scott, Ch. VI, 572.

The same repugnance to accepting this conception is manifest in Carlyle. TYNDALL, Belfast Address, 24 a.

Felix Graham had felt a repugnance to taking the gossiping old woman openly into his confidence. TROL., Ori. Farm, III, Ch. XV 195.

ii. Any one who is under the influence of misplaced pride, is apt to feel a repugnance to acknowledge himself in error. CRABB, Syn., s. v. *aversion*.

He will feel an invincible repugnance to sanction any step which may irritate or estrange the chosen force. Times.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be the ordinary one.

tendency; i. Pupils who have a tendency to nasalising can be cured by frequent exercises in uttering the mouth (or oral) vowels. RIPPMAAN, Sounds of Spok. Eng., § 8.

ii. The official mind has a tendency to regard obstacles merely as things to be described, and not at all as things to be overcome. *Times*.

Note. The gerund-construction appears to be unusual: the O. E. D. does not register a single instance.

c) the majority have practically no gerund-construction with *to*, but may have one with appositional *of*; thus, among many others:

business: What business has he to be giving parties? *THACK.*, *A Little Dinner*, Ch. II, (309).

It is asserted that I have no business to call myself an agnostic. *HUXL.*, *Lect. & Es.*, 90*b*.

disposition: There may be a disposition to exaggerate the peril. *Times*.

Note. Also with *towards* + gerund, as in: He felt a disposition towards pardoning one who had been guilty of no crime. *HOR. WALPOLE*, *Castle of Otr.*, Ch. I, 43.

leave: Will you give me leave to defer your raptures till I write again? *JANE AUSTEN*, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. X, 51.

mind: "I perceive," cried I, "that none of you have a mind to be married?" *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*, Ch. XXXII, (480).

I have a mind, some of these days, to serve him as he served Mademoiselle's hound. *BUCHANAN*, *That Winter Night*, Ch. VIII, 70.

Note. The phrase *to make up one's mind* requires *for* or *to*, which latter preposition may be followed by an infinitive(-clause) (29). For *mind about* + gerund(-clause) see 51.

permission: I asked permission to withdraw. *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (478).

power: i. He has the power to render us happy or unhappy. *DICK.*, *Christm. Car.*, II, 41.

ii. The will has lost its power of governing the movement. *DOR. GERARD*, *The Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XV.

pretension: I have no pretension to be an expert in either subject. *HUXL.*, *Lect. & Es.*, 92.

propensity: See 53, *c*.

reluctance: I had a natural reluctance to enter upon a subject so painful to us both. *SCOTT*, *Wav.*, Ch. LVII, 143*a*.

There seemed a reluctance to continue. *CH. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXX, 434.

She had had some bodily struggle before she could overcome his reluctance to be presented on the courtly scene. *MRS. GASK.*, *Cranl.*, Ch. XIV, 262.

Notice our reluctance to pronounce phth. *RIPPMANN*, *Sounds of Spok. Eng.*, § 27.

Note. The construction with *in* + gerund, as in the following example, appears to be distinctly unusual: There will be no reluctance in learning of the surroundings and implements of the ancient Briton. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 224, 142*a*.

right: i. He has a right to be proud. *JANE AUSTEN*, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. Ch. V, 23.

He denied the right of the Council to sit in judgment on the Governor. *MAC.*, *War. Hast.*, (613*a*).

I don't impugn the right of any person to use the term in another sense. *HUXL.*, *Lect. & Es.*, 108*a*.

ii. He had given up the right of levying ship-money. *MAC.*, *Ham p d.*, (205*b*).

temptation: i. They had no temptation to do wrong. *MAC.*, *Clive*, (539*b*). The temptation to take the stranger with him was equally strong. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 12.

The temptation to play upon this chord in dockyard constituencies too frequently overcomes the public virtue of candidates. *Times*.

il. He was unable to resist the temptation of making at least a superficial study of them. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XVII.

title: All the immediate vicinity ... had title to be present on such an occasion. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXX, 172*a*.

Its first title to exist is the power and the will to do justice and to maintain order. *Times*.

GERUND-CLAUSES THAT ANSWER TO ADVERBIAL ADJUNCTS OR CLAUSES.

57. The adverbial relations expressed by gerund(-clauses) are not so numerous as those that may be denoted by either adverbial adjuncts or full adverbial clauses. They are, indeed, confined to those of place, time, causality (cause, reason, ground, instrumentality, purpose), attendant circumstances, and restriction. Adverbial gerund-clauses open with prepositions which indicate the nature of the adverbial relation. The discussion of the meaning of these prepositions belongs to the department of lexicography and is not, therefore, attempted in this book. Adverbial gerund-clauses but rarely admit of being replaced by infinitive-clauses.

58. Adverbial gerund-clauses of place occur only in figurative language, mostly with :

between, as in: The choice lies between discrediting those who compiled the Gospel biographies and disbelieving the Master. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, 87*a*. I was in the middle state between sleeping and waking. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 38*b*.

beyond, as in: Unfortunately the prevision of the Imperial Government did not go beyond taking the Protectorate under its immediate wing. *Graph.*

from, as in: She received pleasure from observing his behaviour. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIV. 333.

Her misery received material relief from observing how much the beauty of her sister rekindled the admiration of her former lover. *ib.*, Ch. LIII, 331.

She was just returning from accompanying her mother to her lonely habitation. WASH. *Ir.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, XI, 107.

And knowest thou now from whence I come — from him, | From waging bitter war with him. TEN., *Guin.*, 431.

in, as in: Ancient historians of the highest character saw no harm in composing long speeches which were never spoken. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, 99*a*.

He seemed to think there was no degradation in asking for money. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. III, 56.

I find my consolation in doing things just as he liked them done. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XIII,

59. The most frequent prepositions in adverbial gerund-clauses of time are:

after, as in: After having married you, I should never pretend to taste again. SHER, *School*, II, I, (377).

at, which denotes a mixed relation of time and cause (26, 27, 52), as in: Rip's heart died away at hearing of these sad changes. WASH. *Ir.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, V, 46.

before, as in: Before flying, James burnt most of his writs. GREEN, *Short Hist.*

from, as in: Total time spent from entering the department to leaving it, exactly thirty minutes by the clock. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6123, 1c.

in, as in: This lunatic, in letting Scrooge's nephew out, had let two other people in. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I.

In passing I may remark that this young lady has done a thing which is, in its way, little short of heroic. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXI, 224.

One question, which has confronted all the councils in arranging their committees, is the still burning question of denominational interests. TIMES.

on, as in: Dolf felt struck with awe, on entering into the presence of this learned man. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (106).

How often ... have I scamped up this avenue, on returning home on school-vacations. *id.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXI, 195.

She had laid her little bag of documents upon the table, on coming in. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 35.

On reaching Mr. Smith's, Charlotte put his own letter in his hands. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 272.

60. Obs. I. The relation of time expressed by *in* is often mixed with other relations: 1) with that of condition, as in: I may here explain that in making a new edition of a paper, it is not necessary that the whole of the pages should be re-cast. GOOD WORDS.

We do not speak jestingly in saying that it is Mr. Darwin's misfortune to know more about the question he has taken up than any man living. HUXL., *Darw.*, Ch. II, 24.

2) with that of restriction (65), as in: I lost no time in wishing Mr. Krook good morning. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 36.

I shall have the deuce's own trouble in getting him home. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 323.

3) with that of instrumentality, as in: Therefore if thine enemy hunger, feed him; if he thirst, give him drink: for in so doing thou shalt heap coals of fire on his head. BIBLE, *Rom. XII*, 20.

What end can be served in making a noble mind ridiculous? MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXIII, 157.

In so speaking, Rashleigh, indeed, played a winning card. MRS. ALEX, *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XIII, 224.

In winning one, she felt she must resign the other. *ib.*, II, Ch. V, 83.

II. In certain connexions *in* is apt to be suppressed: the gerund then assumes the character of a present participle. Compare the following examples: i. The patient was some time in coming to. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, II, 270.

ii. I have been some time answering this question. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. X, 69.

For further discussion see also Ch. II, 38, Obs. II; Ch. XIX, 35, 63, Obs. I; Ch. LVI, 50 f.

61. The most frequent (group-)prepositions in adverbial gerund-clauses of cause, reason, ground, or instrumentality are:

a) *by*, as in: I changed the subject by referring to Emily. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LI, 365 b.

She hopelessly bewildered her maid by stuffing silk dresses into her bonnet boxes. MISS BRAD., *Lady Audley's Secret*, II, Ch. X, 193.

For my own part, I would rather win my daily bread by breaking stones by the wayside. REV. OF REV., No 189, 251 b.

Note. *By* is sometimes understood (Ch. LVI, 50, a): He ... told him he wanted to speak to him a word or two as soon as he should have tired Feemy dancing. TROL., Macd., Ch. XIII, 213.

It is possible to make money betting. Manch. Guard., 8/1, 1926, 37 b.

for, as in: He secretly cursed himself for having once thought of Bridewell for her. FIELD., Jos. Andr., IV, Ch. V, 212.

She will not think the worse of you for being simply dressed. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XXIX, 161.

She is a great fool for going away if she liked him. *ib.*, Ch. XXXIX, 218.

I know that I was a fool for coming here. TROL., Orf. Farm, II, Ch. XXII, 287.

I did not sleep much for thinking of it. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 48.

Don't hate me for taking her away. Mrs. WARD, Tres., Ch. III, 23 a.

She blessed her for having saved the child. RID. HAO., Mees. Will, Ch. XIV, 139.

from, as in: As he was possessed of integrity and honour, I was under no apprehensions from throwing him naked into the amphitheatre of life. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. III, (247).

The captain never lost dignity from having his ears boxed with the Latin grammar. DICK., Cop, Ch. IV, 28 b.

The studio was nearly twice as long as its width, and looked even larger than it was from having no windows below, and only one door. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. IX, 171.

My life was only endangered from having sheltered you. Story of Old Mort., 47.

through, as in: He went crazy through having lost his fortune. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 197.

He caught cold through getting wet. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 389.

with, as in: It is to be hoped he will not take cold with sleeping on the library sofa. CH. BRONTE, Jane Eyre, Ch. XVI, 184.

She was very much tired out with nursing her mother-in-law. Mrs. WARD, Tres., III, Ch. XXI, 177.

b) because of, as in: Here's a man who has become a hermit, because of having been got hold of by too bad a woman. DOR. GERARD, The Etern. Wom., Ch. XVIII.

in consequence of, as in: He had no wish to sell (the lumber), in consequence of being a little — M —. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. V, 35.

62. Adverbial gerund-clauses of purpose open with the (group-) prepositions:

a) for, as in: For getting a fine flourishing growth of stupidity there is nothing like pouring out on a mind a good amount of subjects in which it feels no interest. G. ELIOT, Mill, V, Ch. II, 284.

toward(s), as in: Mr. Bradwardine, then, and Mr. Waverley, should see what we have done towards restoring the mansion of your fathers to its former state. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. LXXXI, 173 a.

He saw a possibility, by much pinching, of saving money out of his salary towards paying a second dividend to his creditors. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. IX, 240. He was arranging measures towards getting a lodging for himself. *id.*, Mid., Ch. XXIV, 181.

A clean shirt will do more towards making a man appear well than anything else. Punch.

A beginning had, however, been made towards supplementing this inadequate system. BRADLEY, The Making of Eng., Ch. II, 66.

He had ... done many practical little things toward helping them and their beasts. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XI, 89.

b) for (or with) the purpose of, as in: An enterprise in which I may have engaged hastily, but certainly voluntarily, and with the purpose of abiding the issue. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LI, 132*a*.

The Highlanders had withdrawn from the Lowland frontier with the purpose of following the army in their march to Inverness. *ib.*, Ch. XXXIV, 100*a*.

As the governess remarked that it was for the purpose of acquiring the French idiom in conversation, he was fain to be content. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. X, 93.

One state intervenes in the domestic affairs of another for the purpose of putting down revolution. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, 114.

Note. *With the purpose* seems to be less usual than *for the purpose* and may be due to the influence of *with the intention*, as in: He started to his feet with the intention of awakening the sleepers. BRET HARTE, *Outc. of Poker Flat*, 24.

for the sake of, as in: For the sake of not changing my servants, I was at last put to the expense of an extra boy. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

As though one went to tea with a woman for the sake of talking about the very same things you have been doing all day. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. V, 34*a*.

with a (or the) view of, as in: I mention this to you, not with a view of pleading exemption from censure, but in order to direct your attention to the root of certain literary evils. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 225.

He left the university without taking a degree with the view of becoming an artist. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 28.

He got up early with the view of seeing what might be done in the way of emendation. *id.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VII, 62.

Note. The indefinite article is probably more common in this phrase than the definite. See also Ch. LX, 13.

with a (or the) view to, as in: Master Jack is at present putting himself through a course of training with a view to becoming a lancer in the future. PUNCH.

Lord Milner was appointed High Commissioner by Mr. Chamberlain in 1897 with a view to driving matters to extremes. *Times*.

Note. The ordinary construction after this phrase seems to be that with an infinitive. The definite article is, apparently, unusual in the phrase; the O. E. D. does not register a single instance. See also Ch. LX, 13.

i. I composed it (sc. Manfred) actually with a horror of the stage, and with a view to render the thought of it impracticable. BYRON, *Lett. to Mr. Murray*.

ii. They offered to be present with the view to maintain order among the unruly Belgian girls. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 188.

by way of, as in: By way of assisting meditation he has even gone the length of taking out his flint and steel and tinder. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 68.

"Are you going out this afternoon?" he asked by way of hinting that he wanted to see her alone. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VII, 130.

Note. For comment on this phrase see Ch. LX, 13.

in the way of, as in: The duties of a reporter are manifold. He has to go everywhere and do all sorts of apparent impossibilities in the way of picking up and chronicling news in the shortest period of time. *Good Words*.

He applied to the employers to do all they could in the way of finding work for the men. *Times*.

Note. For comment on this phrase see Ch. LX, 13.

63. Obs. I. After *to go (or run)*, *to go out (or run out)*, and *to be off (or out)* the preposition of purpose *on* is suppressed. Compare *He*

went to town on business. For an analogous dropping of *in* or *by* see 35, 60, Obs. *il*, 61; Ch. II, 38; Ch. LVI, 50 f; see also O. E. D., s. v. *go*, 32, *e*.

i. He meant to go hunting. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. I, 119.

You shan't go fishing with me. *ib.*, I, Ch. V, 28.

The valet, wondering whether his master was going masquerading, went in search of the article. THACK, *Pend.*, II, Ch. II, 24.

I am not going shooting to-morrow. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VII.

ii. How heavenly it would be to go out boating such a night as this! Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. V, 83.

He went out walking. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 35.

iii. I am off shooting. *id.*, *Jess*, Ch. IV, 34.

Uncle and Oscar are out shooting all daylong. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XII, 149.

II. Of the same character, but with the notion of purpose greatly obscured, is the verbal in such turns of expression as are illustrated by:

1) Don't go saying I never knew a mother. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 41.

If she goes saying much more about me, I go for her for slander. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. VI, 58.

Don't you go talking to Mr. Hardy in the way you do. Mr. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 37.

Note. *To go* as used in this connexion is greatly weakened in meaning, so as to approach to the copula *to be*.

2) To show the doctor the harmlessness of his pursuits he went off pounding. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 236.

3) He burst out sobbing and crying. READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. III, 49.

III. The preposition *on* to a certain extent survives in the proclitic *a*, still quite common in the language of the illiterate. For detailed discussion see Ch. LVII, 6, Obs. VI and VII; and compare O. E. D., s. v. *go*, 32, *e*; *on*, 19; *burst*, 6, *b*.

On fine days we rode a-hunting. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. II, (142).

I had no notion but he would go a-shooting. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIX, 368.

The remembrance ... made us both burst out a-laughing. MARRYAT, *Japhet*, Ch. XXXIII (O. E. D., 6, *b*).

You needn't go a-turning on the waterworks again. M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XXI.

In some phrases this *a* is still usual in ordinary colloquial English (Ch. LVII, Obs. VII); thus in: *to go a-begging*, *a-courting*, *a-wooing*; *to set the clock a-going*, *the bells a-ringing*, *folk a-thinking* (O. E. D., s. v. *a*, prep., 13, *b*).

You are best by yourself when you go a-wooing, my son. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. IV, 39.

IV. The verbal is sometimes, especially after the imperative, or the infinitive of *to go*, replaced by a finite form, or the infinitive connected with this verb, by way of hendiadys, by *and* (Ch. X, 10); e. g.:

i. I went and took tea with the two ladies. THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. XL, 418.

ii. And he sent them to Bethlehem, and said | Go and search diligently for the young child. Bible, *Matth.*, II, 8.

iii. Don't you go and forget me when you get among the 'arrystocracy.' Miss BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 66.

If I do give you some (sc. money), you'll only go and spend it. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. I, 14.

64. Adverbial gerund-clauses of attendant circumstances open with such (group-)prepositions as:

a) *beside(s)*, as in: i. Besides teaching English, I have time to improve myself in German. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 188.

There are many other things to do, besides reading. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. II, 32. You may be able to say lots of interesting things, besides painting well. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. X, 188.

ii. What on earth do they do, beside riding donkeys? KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XII, 9 b. Note. For a comparison of *beside* and *besides* see Ch. LIX, II.

without, as in: They could scarcely subsist without incurring debt. MAC., *Clive*.

Note. The use of the infinitive (without *to*), as in the following example, is certainly very rare: Strange are the woman's eyes which can unoffendingly assume the privilege to dwell on such a living object as a man without become gateways for his return look. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. IV, 71.

b) *in addition to*, as in: In addition to receiving his portrait, painted by the Hon. John Collier, Mr. Wynne had the pleasure of seeing a replica by the same artist unveiled in the Shire Hall by Lady Winchilsea. *Daily Mail*. The Turvey treatment, in addition to permanently eradicating the crave for alcohol or drugs, has a most beneficial effect upon the general health and nervous system. *Advertisement*.

In addition to drawing attention to the still rising tide of German national expenditure, the memorandum comments on the heavy loans incurred abroad. *Manch. Guard.*, 28/10, 1927, 321 c.

instead of, as in: The fellow, instead of answering me, pointed at my legs. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XII, 59 b.

so far from, as in: So far from intending you any wrong, I have always loved you as well as if you had been my own mother. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. VI, 13.

So far from resenting my criticism, M. Plehve replied to it in a letter [etc.]. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 193, 371 b.

65. Adverbial gerund-clauses of restriction open with (group-)prepositions expressing more or less clearly some such notion as *as to*, *as regards*, *concerning*, *so far as ... is concerned*, etc. The following have been found in this function:

a) *about*, as in: Do as you like about asking mamma. Mrs. GASK., *Wives & Daught.*, Ch. XV, 156.

What must we do about telling Frithiof, uncle? EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Nors.*, Ch. VIII, 70.

at, as in: Women ... are so stupid at understanding about anything relating to the sea. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXVII, 271.

for, as in: The state had trusted to birth alone for determining the sovereign. HUME, *Es.*, III, 17.

There never was such a Dame Durden for making money last. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXII, 514.

There is nothing like a theory for binding the wise. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XII, 81.

Commend me to cousins for letting one down easy. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. VI, 41 a.

in, which is chiefly found: 1) after the verbs *to differ* and *to resemble*, as in: Most of us differ from Sir Walter only in not knowing about this tendency of the mythopœic faculty to break out unnoticed. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, 89 a.

Mr. J. W. Mackail resembles Matthew Arnold in being a Balliol man. *Acad.*, No. 1765, 155 a.

2) after certain adjectives, especially: *α*) such as denote approbation or disapprobation, and allied notions as in:

Accustomed to submit to discipline, he was rigid in enforcing it. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch LXII, 155 a.

You will allow then that I was right in not taking a lease for more than three years. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

You have been very good in telling me the truth. RUDY. KIPLING, *Light*, Ch VIII, 104.

I could not think myself presumptuous in holding fast by that opinion. HUXLEY, *Lect. & Es.*, 93 a.

Some thought him wise, and some thought him foolish in quitting military for civil life. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. XI, 186.

They both thought they had been rather rash in making the acquaintance of a friend of a convict. SWEET, *Story of Two Englishmen*.

Your correspondent is, of course, correct in pointing out that the book was written by Dr. John Brown. *Acad. & Lit.*

Clara had not been wrong in surmising that Mr. Laing would prove to be a compensation in the monotony of her present existence. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XVII.

This shows how well-advised the Government is in keeping up a steady flow of re-inforcements to South-Africa. *Times*.

The Opposition would have been better-advised in abstaining from a formal vote of censure. *ib.*

β) *quick* and *slow*, and others of a similar import, as in: Nor have our own countrymen been backward in testifying their opinion of his merits. MAC., *Macchia velli*, (29 a),

London was foremost in professing loyalty to the new Sovereigns. *id.*, *Hist.*, IV, Ch. XI, 1.

But with peace has come the turn of the Boers, and they have not been slow in taking advantage of it. *Times*.

The Irish Executive was very slow in recognizing the necessity of using the powers entrusted to it by Parliament. *ib.*

3) after many nouns, as in: I frequently applauded her resolution in preferring happiness to ostentation. GOLDS., *Vic.*

Mr. Colston had some difficulty in parrying the attacks. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XIII.

I am greatly obliged for your kindness in coming to look after Sybil. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. III, 51.

She did me a great wrong in marrying me without really caring for me. SHAW, *You never can tell*, IV, (299).

This would open the door to endless diversities in giving and withholding pensions. *Rev. of Rev.*

of, as in: In those days letters were slow of travelling. THACK., *Esm.*, I, Ch. VI, 58.

The winter was unusually late of setting in. ALISON, *Hist. Europe*, XI, Ch. LXXIII, § 122 (O. E. D., s. v. *of*, 35, b).

Note This use of *of* is now unfrequent, except in dialects, *at*, or *in* being mostly used instead (O. E. D., s. v. *of*, 35 b). The use of *of*, however, appears to be quite usual in the two examples cited by the O. E. D.: He is rather hard of hearing. I am so quick of catching cold.

b) as to, as in: As to arguing with himself about the right or wrong of the matter, such a notion never occurred to him. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy NORS.*, Ch. VIII, 70.

with regard to, as in: I had enjoyed through this neglect an absolute freedom with regard to associating with fisher-boys. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. III, 60.

Considerable hesitation must be felt with regard to following those suggestions without the most careful investigations. P. J. HARTOG, *The Writing of English*, 101.

66. Obs. I. It will have been observed that these gerund-clauses are word-modifiers rather than sentence-modifiers, which imparts to them somewhat of the nature of prepositional objects, or attributive adnominal adjuncts, as the case may be.

II. Those standing after *right* (or *wrong*), *slow* (or *quick*), or words of a similar import vary with infinitive-clauses (Ch. XVIII, 27).

III. In some of the gerund-clauses opening with *in* there is a secondary relation of time, or instrumentality. Compare 60, Obs. I. Consequently we sometimes find other prepositions for *in* thus in:

She could not be considered wrong for accepting a gift from a man so nearly connected with her. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. III, 56.

In the following example the gerund-clause expresses almost a pure relation of purpose:

No prudence of ours could have prevented our late misfortune: but prudence may do much in disappointing its effects. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. III, (246).

67. In conclusion a few isolated examples are offered illustrating the use of the gerund in adverbial clauses that have not come in for set discussion in the preceding sections. In these examples the gerund-clauses express, respectively, a relation of:

condition: It was with the greatest difficulty that he (sc. Swift) obtained an ecclesiastical dignity of no great value on condition of fixing his residence in a country which he detested. Mac., *Addison*, (765 *b*).

concession: At the risk of being thought statistical by my readers, I cannot refrain from alluding to the last-mentioned Post-Office returns. *Daily Mail*.

degree: And I will tell him all their caitiff talk; | For, be he wroth even to slaying me, | Far liever by his dear hand had I die, | Than that my lord should suffer loss or shame. TEN., *Ger. & En.*, 67.

He was ruthless even to slaying in dealing with the strikers of Featherstone. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 221, 445 *a*.

exception: She has no desire beyond getting the interview over as soon as possible. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-worm Tales*, II, O, 230.

He has nothing whatever to do with the matter beyond finding the money for a library for the town. *Lit. World*.

There is no sign that he distinguished himself in the way of scholarship — beyond taking prizes in chemistry and natural philosophy. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 358 *b*.

GERUND-CLAUSES CONTAINING A SUBJECT-INDICATING (PRO)NOUN.

GERUND-CLAUSES THAT ANSWER TO SUBORDINATE STATEMENTS.

68. Gerund-clauses of this description that answer to subordinate statements either precede or follow the head-clause. In the latter case they are announced by the anticipatory *it*.

i. Your being Sir Anthony's son, captain, would itself be a sufficient accommodation (read: recommendation). *SHER.*, *Riv.*, III, 3, (245).

His endeavouring to hoist himself on to a very high window-seat, and his slipping down again, appeared to prepare Toots's mind for the reception of a discovery. *DICK.*, *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 105.

ii. It was of no use your saying so. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 494.

It was of no use my saying anything to you. *DICK.*, *Domb.*, Ch. II, 16,

It is exceedingly unwise his going off to stay at Dene Court. *Mrs. ALEX.*, *For his Sake*, II, Ch. XVI, 273.

It is rather remarkable your knowing them. *id.*, *Life Interest*, II, Ch. I, 20.

It is not extraordinary his taking a fancy to me. *ib.*, II, Ch. X, 177.

Note α) When placed after the head-clause these gerund-clauses vary with infinitive-clauses opening with *for* + (pro)noun. Compare the above examples with those given in Ch. XVIII, 46. See also Ch. XIX, 7, *a*; Ch. LX, 71.

β) B-constructions (5) are distinctly unusual, especially such as precede the head-clause (6, Obs. 1). Instances seem to occur especially in colloquial language, as in:

BIG BROTHER — "Look here, Billy, it's no good you hanging round. You stand no chance with Miss Smith in those togs. Anybody can see they're mine cut down for you." — **LITTLE BROTHER** — "My dear fellow, it's not clothes, it's brains that tell" *Punch*.

69. Such as do duty as nominal part of the predicate require no comment.

The consequence of my incapacity was his driving my cattle that evening, and their being appraised and sold next day. *GOLDS.*, *Vic.*

B-construction: What I could not stand was Stivers throwing his handkerchief over his face when he had done reading. *JAMES PAYN*, *Glow-worm Tales*, II, A, 18.

70. Such as are used in the function of non-prepositional object are equivalent to accusatives + infinitive. The two constructions, however, are not, as a rule, interchangeable. Some instances have been given in Ch. XVIII, 30, *c*. But it would be at variance with idiomatic propriety to substitute an accusative + infinitive for the gerund-clause in:

You'll excuse my asking again. *DICK.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. VII, 55

The noble appearance of the thirty-five large quarto volumes ensures their creating a favourable first impression. *Times*.

Of particular interest are gerund-clauses that stand after verbs which may also be construed with a person-object + infinitive-clause. The verbs which have been found to admit of this twofold construction are especially *to advise*, *to begrudge*, *to counsel*, *to forbid*, *to permit*, illustrated in Ch. III, 47. To these we may add:

to propose, as in: That's what you propose my doing in the States. WILLIAMSON, Lord Loveland, Ch. I, 8.

to recommend, as in: He came two or three times to their different doors, to recommend their being quick. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXIX, 161.

I recommend your turning him out before he gets still worse. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXI, 268.

I recommended his coming to Malvern. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, P, 252.

Compare: She may have had some fear that her father-in-law would recommend her to go straight to the Rectory. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVII, 109.

The difference between the two constructions is that in the one with the gerund the person indicated by the genitive or the possessive pronoun is not represented as the recipient of any advice, prohibition, etc., as is done by the person-object in the construction with the infinitive.

B-constructions: To prevent the ladies leaving us, I generally ordered the table to be removed. GOLDS., *Vic.*

Pardon me saying it. TEN., *Princ.*, I, 154.

I cannot help the dreams coming. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 39.

Go and ask the man if he would mind my will being tattooed upon his back. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IX, 93

Sir Wilfrid replied that he should certainly support every nation being allowed to govern itself. *Times*.

The doctors have recommended him stopping either at Madeira or Tangier. *Acad.* (*him* may also be understood as a personal pronoun representing the person-object.)

71. Gerund-clauses with a subject-indicating word after semantically significant prepositions (Ch. LX, 46) require no comment. The following examples will be deemed sufficient illustration:

against: I pronounced against his seeing her again. Mrs. WARD, *David Grieve*, III, 276.

It was ten to one against its ever becoming more than an idea. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XIII.

It was ten to one against her living through the journey. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, E, 89.

to: Pelting is nothing to their finding holes in one's coat. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 284.

72. Gerund-clauses with a subject-indicating word in the function of the prepositional object are very common, but require no comment. Here follow some quotations with instances after:

about: I don't care about their being Catholics. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. VIII, 49.

at: If you knew all the tricks and ruses played on me, you would not wonder at my suspecting ail the world. MRS. WOOD; East Lynne, I, 6.
I am not surprised at your being glad to get rid of such an inmate. MRS. ALEX., Life Int., II, Ch. I, 20.

for: I can allow for his wishing Catherine away when he recollected this engagement. JANE AUSTEN, North. A. b., Ch. XXIX, 227.

in: His friends may well rejoice in his having met with one of the very few sensible women who would have accepted him. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XXXII, 178.

Their greatness seems to consist in their never having done anything to distinguish themselves. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. IV, 54.

There was a moment of struggle and hesitation in Mr. Bulstrode but it ended in his putting out his hand coldly to Raffles. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. LIII, 387.

of: I made a point of her having two men-servants go with her. JANE AUSTEN, Pride & Prej., Ch. XXXVIII, 210.

Mr. Creamer, her medical man, would not hear of her returning to her old haunts and dissipation. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXIV, 366.

He looked at Mr. Murdstone sideways, as if to make sure of his not being displeased. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 13a.

I was so afraid of Mr. Jarndyce's suddenly disappearing. id., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 39.

I feel rather afraid of his doing too much again. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norse., Ch. XXII, 199.

on: You may absolutely depend on my doing so. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., II, 110.

to: This would only lead to my having to make another change at the end of a few months. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XIV.

with: And so ended the last act of the Bakewell Comedy, on which the curtain closes with Sir Austin's pointing out to his friends the beneficial action of the system in it from beginning to end. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XI, 72.

B-constructions: *about*: But it does not signify about the parishioners in Tipton being comfortable. G. ELIOT, Mid., Ch. XXXVII, 285.

as to: Mr. Aikman is very particular as to every care being given to his mother's personal appearance. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XVI.

of: She was afraid of Mrs. Kirkpatrick being hurt. MRS. GASK., Wiv. & Daught., Ch. XI, 116.

I hope we shall hear no more of idiots not having souls. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VI, 103.

on: He insisted on his sisters accepting the invitation. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouv., 82.

to: I must object to this witness being allowed to enter the box. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XX, 206.

with: He was amused with the gentlemen being sent to Cherbourg. MARRYAT, Three Cutters.

GERUND-CLAUSES THAT ANSWER TO ATTRIBUTIVE ADNOMINAL CLAUSES.

73. With gerund-clauses containing a subject-indicating word in the function of attributive adnominal adjuncts, there is an analogous fluctuation in the choice of the preposition as with such as do not contain a subject-indicating word. Here follow a few examples

of gerund-clauses: *a*) with specializing *of*: There is no danger of Wickham's marrying Mary King. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. XXXIX, 217.

She was delighted with the idea of her son's being brought up to a profession worthy of his ancestors. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (107).

The two young Cratchits laughed tremendously at the idea of Peter's being a man of business. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 63.

Having been on the occasion of Dora's christening invited to tea, they had expressed their opinion that it was better that they should stay away. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 278 *b*.

B-constructions: Mrs. Acland was accustomed to the idea of Marjory earning her own bread. Mrs. ALEX., *Life Int.*, II, Ch. I, 18.

The notion of the world laughing at him stung him to momentary frenzies. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXII, 153.

b) corresponding to a non-prepositional object: Dame van Winkle ... looked upon Wolf as the cause of his master's going so often astray. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk*, V, 36.

Her natural cruelty is sharpened by a jealous fear of their regaining their liberty. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XV, 35.

There's no fear of my forgetting it. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXI, 223.

B-construction: The fear of such a story being known will destroy the sense of security. Mrs. ALEX., *Life Int.*, II, Ch. X, 178.

c) corresponding to a prepositional object: Her astonishment at his coming was almost equal to what she had known on first witnessing his altered behaviour in Derbyshire. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 328.

After some talk about its being hard upon Nan to have to take leave so suddenly of her governess, Clara's wish was granted. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XIII.

B-constructions: The old sexton even expressed a doubt as to Shakespeare having been born in her house. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk*, XXVI, 262.

I have no fancy for these fellows taking us unawares at night. KINGSLEY, *Here w.*, Ch. III, 30 *b*.

There is not much chance of anything having turned up by then. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XIV.

Mrs. Acland had no objection to her daughter holding communication with her stepson. Mr. ALEX., *Life Int.*, II, Ch. I, 17.

d) corresponding to an adnominal clause introduced by a relative pronoun: The time came for our returning home.

Of some special interest is the idiom in: I promised to eat all of his killing. SHAK., *Much ado*, I, 1, 45.

My daughters undertook to adorn them with pictures of their own designing. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. IV, (255).

Will you take a husband of your friends' choosing? SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (220).

A chance and hope of my procuring. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 23.

Note *a*) The noun modified by such a gerund-clause is mostly suppressed, when it occurs in a previous part of the discourse, as in: No sighs but of my own breathing; no tears but of my shedding. SHAK., *Merch.*, III, 1, 82.

No difficulties but of my own creating. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3, (269).

The tea was of my mother's own making.

Note *β*) The same notion is occasionally expressed by a construction without *of*; thus in: She sings like Sappho, and her songs are her own composing. LYTTON, *Pom p.*, I, Ch. III, 19 *a*.

e) corresponding to an adnominal clause introduced by a conjunctive adverb, or its equivalent a preposition + relative pronoun: From the moment of his first speaking to us, his voice had connected itself with an association in my mind that I could not define. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VI, 39.

B-construction: Animosities, the outcome of thwarted ambitions, have slowly but steadily accumulated against the great nation which has stood in the way of these ambitions being realized. *Times*.

As a sixth variety we may mention such as open with partitive *of*, as in:

I know nothing of his having left the town.

B-construction: I know nothing of the knife being there or the money being gone. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marne*, Ch. I, 8.

GERUND-CLAUSES THAT ANSWER TO ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

74. Adverbial gerund-clauses with a subject-indicating word fall into the same groups as those without a subject-indicating word, and are introduced by the same prepositions. They present no features requiring any discussion, so that we can confine ourselves to citing some illustrative quotations.

a) Such as express a relation of *place*, mostly figurative in meaning; e. g.: There is a kind of vagabond consolation in a man's having nothing in this world to lose. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (125.)

B-construction: There would be nothing more remarkable in his taking a stroll at night than there would be in any other middle-aged gentleman rashly turning out after dark. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 2.

b) Such as express a relation of *time*; e. g.: On the gentlemen's appearing, her colour increased. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LIII, 328. On the boy's confessing his fault I forgave him. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 494.

B-construction: On this arrangement being concluded, Mr. Prettyman begged Jonathan Faux to go and take a snack with him. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, Ch. III, (547).

c) such as express a relation of *cause, reason, or ground*; e. g.: I was very much flattered by his asking me to dance a second time. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. IV, 18.

I was quite relieved by Richard's appearing at the door. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. V, 36.

All the drains were choked, it appeared, from their being so very narrow. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

The clerk went down a slide on Cornhill in honour of its being Christmas Eve. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 13.

B-construction: She looked him full in the face with a smile that was only the brighter for her eyes being filled with tears. Miss BRAD., *Lady Audley's Secret*, II, Ch. X, 193.

d) such as express a relation of *purpose*; e. g.: (I begged) one of them to assist me in conveying the corpse of my friend to the next house, in order to its being interred. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. IX, 51. (apparently an unusual construction; see, however, the following example.)

Condition: that which is requisite to be done, happen, exist, or be present in order to something else being done, taking effect, or happening. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*

e) such as express a relation of *condition*; e.g.: He wrote to his friend Richard, proposing to collect disposable funds, and embark, in case of Tom's breaking his word. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XI, 67.

f) such as express a relation of *concession*; e.g.: He is unhappy in spite of his being so rich.

B-construction: He too believed in me, in spite of appearances being against me. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norsew., Ch. XXVII, 248.

g) such as express a relation of *attendant circumstances*; e.g.: Besides its being of no use to you, it is worse than of no use to me. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXIII, 194a.

I wished I could be quietly dropped overboard and so come to an end at once without anybody's being the wiser. Mrs. CRAIK, A Hero, 6

You can't expect to ride your new crotchet without anybody's trying to stick a nettle under his tail. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. VII, 313.

B-construction: I had plenty to think of, besides my mind running continually on the kind of place I was going to. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 35b.

You might have thought that no one was at home, instead of every house expecting company. id., Christm. Car., III, 64.

So far from the misdoings of Trades' Unions being an argument against the extension of the suffrage, they are, in my opinion, an argument for it. KINGSLEY, Alt. Locke, Pref., 103.

So far from the certainty as to the amount of mineral wealth having improved the situation, it had distinctly made it worse. STEAD, Rev. of Rev.

h) such as express a relation of *restriction*; e.g.: As to clever people's hating each other, I think a little extra talent sometimes makes people jealous. OL. WEND. HOLMES, Autocrat, Ch. I, 9a.

CHAPTER XX.

PARTICIPLE-CLAUSES.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
General Observations	1— 2
Participle-clauses which answer to Relative clauses . . .	3— 4
Participle-clauses which answer to Adverbial Clauses . . .	5—10
Participle-clauses which answer to Predicative Adnominal Adjuncts	11—22

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. The action or state expressed by a participle is necessarily associated with some person or thing by way of subject. This person or thing is mostly indicated by a special word, viz.:
a) by a (pro)noun in the head-clause, as in:

Passing through the wall of mud and stone, they found a cheerful company assembled. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 65.

Note. The pronoun may be a genitive or a possessive pronoun, as in:

His summers were spent in England, preaching and lecturing. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 190, 359 *a*.

b) by a (pro)noun in the participle-clause, as in:

The sun having risen, we commenced our journey. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 372.

Note. Sometimes this person or thing is indefinite and cannot, therefore, be indicated in any way; thus in:

Properly speaking, they had but one character. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (239).

2. From their grammatical function participle-clauses fall into three groups, viz.: *a*) such as answer to adnominal clauses introduced by a relative pronoun, *b*) such as answer to adverbial clauses, *c*) such as answer to predicative adnominal adjuncts.

PARTICIPLE-CLAUSES WHICH ANSWER TO RELATIVE CLAUSES.

3. Clauses of this description are: *a*) restrictive, and contain:
1) a present participle; e. g.:

Here are my letters announcing my intention to start. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2243.

So ended the last fight deserving the name of battle that has been fought on English ground. MAC., *Hist.*, Ch. V, 180.

There is a chill air surrounding those who are down in the world. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, IV, Ch. II, 256.

A German Professor had nailed some Propositions denouncing the abuse of Indulgences, ... against the doors of a church at Wittenberg. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § V, 320.

I can't conceive a woman in her senses refusing Dick. RUDY. KIPLING, *Light*, Ch. X, 131.

Note the idiom in: i. Out of fourteen thousand pounds we had but four hundred remaining. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. III, (246).

ii. His faith had fallen fast asleep for the time being. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIV, 73 *a*.

His verdict for the time being is final. DU MAUR., Soc. and Pict. Sat., IV. iii. He's the finest fellow going. TROL., Small House, II, Ch. XLII, 145. Both had the best or the worst manners going. *id.*, Trilby, I, III, 188.

2) a past participle; e. g.:

He has lost the book given him by me. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 402.

The epoch now described was the one in which the causes of the great convulsion were rapidly germinating. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 198 a.

Note the idiom in: i. There appeared to be no love lost between them. Mrs. Wood, East Lynne, II, 20. (Dutch: Het bleek dat zij elkaar niet mochten lijden.)

They had grown up apart, and when at rare intervals Nita had returned from the convent, there had been little love lost between them. EDNA LYALL, Knight Er., Ch. XIX, 175. (Compare the following example, in which a variation of the phrase has a diametrically opposite meaning: No love between these two was lost, | Each was to other kind. The Children in the Wood, II. Compare also: There was no love to spare between these two county magistrates. TROL., Ori. Farm, I, Ch. II, 22.

ii. We have still enough left for happiness if we are wise. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. III, (246). Compare: I have more than that over from uncle's fifty-pound cheque. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXI, 190. We print an essay left over from a recent competition. Westm. Gaz., No. 8941, 9 b.)

iii. In wit, properly so called, Addison was not inferior to Cowley or Butler. MAC., Addison, (755 a).

b) continuative, and contain: 1) a present participle; e. g.:

I pursued my walk to an arched door, opening to the interior of the abbey. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XVIII, 170.

Here he saw a pretty young woman, cleaning a stove. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 108.

He thought that he was surrounded by the shades of authors, waiting to be revenged on him. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XXI, 224.

Nedda, borrowing the bicycle of Clara's maid, Sirrett, had been over to Joyfields. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. XXVI, 233.

2) a past participle; e. g.:

His spirits, depressed by eighteen months passed in dull state, amidst factions and intrigues which he but half understood rose high as soon as he was surrounded by tents and standards. MAC., Hist., VI, Ch. XVI, 4.

Drawn up in front was a sofa, covered with red rep. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 28.

For examples in which the undeveloped clause is represented by an unmodified participle see Ch. VIII, 132.

4. Obs. I. Restrictive past-participle clauses sometimes imply a secondary relation of condition; thus in:

An object seen at a distance appears diminished. I. SCHMIDT, Eng. Gram., § 375).

Praise undeserved is satire in disguise (*ib.*).

Things bad begun make strong themselves by ill. SHAK., Macb., III, 2, 55.

A word spoken in due season, how good is it! Bible, Prov., XV, 23.

A word fitly spoken is like apples of gold in pictures of silver. *ib.*, XXV, 11.

Also continuative clauses, either with a present or a past participle, sometimes vaguely imply some adverbial relation; thus in:

Paul, feeling that the spectacles were surveying him, cast down his eyes. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 102. (i. e. when or because he felt.)

The shock of such an event, happening so suddenly, is easily intelligible to any one. *id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 277 *a.* (i. e. because it happened so suddenly.)

The Prince of Wales, given over by all the doctors, recovered. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXV, 382. (i. e. although given over by all the doctors.)

II. Sometimes the construction with a past participle has the value of a gerund-construction. There are two varieties, i. e. the noun modified by the participle is, or is not, the complement of a preposition; the former resembling the Latin construction represented by such expressions as *post urbem conditam*, *ante Christum natum*; the latter resembling the construction used in such sentences as *Angabant virum Sicilia Sardiniaque amissae* (= The loss of Sicily and Sardinia alarmed the man), *Violati hospites hoc effecerant* (= The ill-treatment of the guests had had this effect), *Hi homines deprehensium terrebant* (= The apprehension of these men filled him with fear). The second construction is distinctly more frequent than the first, which seems to be purely literary. For discussion see also Ch. LVI, 52.

i. Bacchus, that first from out the purple grape | Crush't the sweet poison of misused wine, | After the Tuscan mariners transform'd, | Coasting the Tyrrhene shore, as the winds listed, | On Circe's island fell. MILTON, *Com.*, 48. (i. e. after the transforming or transformation of the Tuscan mariners.)

Lo! ever thus thou growest beautiful | In silence, then before thine answer given | Departest, and thy tears are on my cheek. TEN., *Tithonus*, 44. (i. e. before the giving of thine answer.)

She needs must wed him for her own good name; | Not tho' he built upon the babe restored. *id.*, *Princ.*, VII, 60.

ii. The guilty saved hath damn'd his hundred judges. BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, II, 1, (361 *b.*) (i. e. the saving of the guilty.)

It has been often observed that one truth concealed gives rise to a dozen current lies. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*, (129). (i. e. the concealing of one truth.) Here her hand | Grasp'd made her veil her eyes. TEN., *Guin.*, 656 (i. e. the grasping of her hand.)

Things seen are mightier than things heard. *id.*, *En. Ard.*, 762.

Altogether different from the above constructions is that in which the past participle takes the place of the infinitive in the accusative + infinitive. Like the latter, this participle construction is often semantically equivalent to a gerund-construction (Ch. XVIII, 30; Ch. LVI, 52); e. g.:

They built their castles of dissolving sand | To watch them overflow'd. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 20. (i. e. to watch their being overflowed.)

III. When followed by a noun or pronoun, participles have practically the same function as prepositions, from which they can hardly be distinguished when their meaning is faded so as no longer to denote any action or state. Thus in *the hemlocks lining the bushy hedgerows* (G. ELIOT, *Ad. Bede*, I, Ch. II, 13) the participle *lining* has practically the same function as the preposition *along*, and conveys but little more meaning than the latter. Similarly in *He lived in a house facing*

the station, the participle *facing* comes near to the preposition *opposite* both in function and in meaning.

In some connexions certain participles are practically devoid of all verbal function and are, consequently, felt almost as pure prepositions; thus: *concerning*, as in: Concerning all the other provinces of the Western Empire we have continuous information. *MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 5.*

following, as in: On the second day following the death of poor little Jeannie Smithers, Mr. Eustace Meeson was strolling about Birmingham. *RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. IV, 35.*

The situation in Northern China, following the Nationalist successes, remains exceedingly confused. *Manch. Guard., 22/6, 1928, 481 b.*

regarding, as in: Miss Crawley was pleased at the notion of a gossip with her sister-in-law regarding the late Lady Crawley. *THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 170.*

The greatest anxiety is experienced regarding the fate of Captain Amundsen and his young French pilot. *Manch. Guard., 22/6, 1928, 484 c.*

touching, as in: I was about to propound a question touching the manner in which the operation of changing my heart was to be performed. *CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 34.*

The dealings of the Assembly touching the abdication of Rolf. *FREEMAN, Norm. Conq., I, iv, 196, Note (O. E. D.).*

succeeding, as in: The party were left to enjoy the cozy couple of hours succeeding dinner. *DICK, Pickw., Ch. II, 11.*

The participle may be formed from a verb governing a prepositional object; in that case the preposition belonging to the latter is retained with the participle with which it may be said to form a group-preposition (Ch. LX, 5 ff); thus:

relating to, as in: He has brought together a mass of information relating to earthquakes, and other movements of the earth's crust. *Times.*

In such a sentence as *He asked me concerning (touching) my health* (*MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 282*) we may assume an ellipsis of some such noun as *particulars*.

PARTICIPLE-CLAUSES WICH ANSWER TO ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

5. These clauses occur in two varieties, viz.: a) such as contain no subject-indicating word, the action or state expressed by them not being connected in our thoughts with any person or thing in particular; thus in:

Generally speaking, I don't like boys. *DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 24 a.*

b) such as contain a subject-indicating word, thus in:

The sun having risen, we continued our journey. *MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 372.*

6. a) Those of the first kind mostly imply a vague relation of condition; thus in:

i. My father had, generally speaking, his temper under complete control. *SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2355.*

I have only to add, that the metre of the Christabel is not, properly speaking, irregular. *COLERIDGE, Pref. to Christ.*

He might, humanly speaking, attain even to old age. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXIX, 429.

Pilgrim was pronounced to be, humanly speaking, out of danger. BAR. V. HÜRTEN, *What became of Pam*, Ch. III, 19.

ii. Granting this to be true, what is to be inferred from it? BAIN, H. E. Gr., 273.

Taking everything into consideration, our lot is not a happy one. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 61 b.

iii. Two doors from one corner, on the left hand going east, the line was broken by the entry of a court. STEV., *Dr. Jekyll*, Ch. I, 5.

With the above compare the following example, in which the *if*-clause could be replaced by a participle-clause: Nothing could be further from the truth, if we judge from the experience of Protectionist countries. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5207, 1 b.

b) Sometimes it is an adverbial relation of time which is suggested by the circumstances described; thus in:

i. Talking of subscriptions, here is one to which your lordship may affix your name. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2355.

By the way, talking of tomatoes, who is that red-haired girl who has been about the house? BARING-GOULD, *The Red-haired Girl* (SWAEN, *Sel.*, I, 7).

ii. Nearly the whole of the work of a laundry is done standing. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, 61 b.

These prayers are to be said kneeling. *ib.*

7. Obs. I. Sometimes some part of the participle-clause is left unexpressed, as being but vaguely thought of by the speaker; thus in:

i. "Is he doing well?" she asked. — "Very well," said Renshaw, "couldn't do better, considering." MORLEY ROBERTS, *Time and Thomas Waring*, Ch. VII, 60. (i. e. considering the circumstances.)

"How's he doing?" — "Very well," replied Bent, "considering —" — "Ah, considering," said Renshaw. *ib.*, Ch. II, 27.

Khaki's plans are all right; wonderfully right, considering. *Eng. Rev.*, No 58, 198.

ii. Now, £ 700 is to £ 50,000,000, roughly, as sevenpence to two thousand pounds. RUSKIN, *Sesame*, Ch. I, § 33 (O. E. D., 3). (Compare: *The Vedas* . . . , which date back, roughly speaking, some 3000 years. DUNMORE, *Pamirs*, I, 36 (O. E. D., 3).

Saarbrücken . . . has, roughly, 120,000 inhabitants. *Manch. Guard.*, 25/5, 1928, 418 a.

California is divided into two parts, roughly equal in area, of which the north has always been "wet," and the south "dry." *ib.*, 407 c.

iii. Broadly, his argument is unanswerable. *ib.*, 15/1, 1926, 43 a. (i. e. broadly speaking)

iv. Does one wish to make even an attempt to define God to oneself? Frankly, I don't! GALSW., *Free Lands*, Ch. VIII, 71. (i. e. frankly speaking.) Frankly, the comparison is not very flattering. *Manch. Guard.*, 25/5, 1928, 410 a.

II. In the same function as the present participle we sometimes find a past participle, an infinitive (Ch. XVIII, 25), or an imperative.

i. Liberalism . . . demands much of its confessors, in courage, in devotion, in an open mind, in a single eye to the public weal. But, granted these things, it imposes no tests and permits of no exclusions. *Manch. Guard.*, 9/3, 1928, 182 c.

Note. When the past participle follows the noun, as in *these things granted*, we may assume *being* or *having been* to be understood. When placed before the noun, as in the above example, the past participle approaches to a preposition. See Obs. III.

ii. To judge by the servants, one wouldn't believe the master was ruined. *SHER., SCHOOL*, III, 2, (394).

During the century and a half which followed the Conquest, there is, to speak strictly, no English history. *MAC., HIST.*, I, Ch. I, 13.

The prices of securities are, to speak generally, not much below what they were before the horrid prospect of a Labour Government first troubled that portion of the world where the silk hat as a common article of attire lingered longest. *MANCH. GUARD*, 1/2, 1924, 83 c.

iii. Take it altogether, now that we have been into most of the houses hereabouts and can judge, there is not one we like better than this. *JANE ANSTEN, PERS.*, Ch. XIII, 129.

III. It has been observed in 4, Obs. III that participles, when followed by a noun or pronoun, resemble prepositions in their grammatical function, semantically differing from them in denoting an action or a state. This applies to:

counting, in: There were three or four of us, counting me. *DICK, COP.*, Ch. XI, 77 b.

omitting, in: There are certain proposals which . . ., omitting details, may be summarized as follows. *MANCH. GUARD.*, VI, 8, 150 a.

Sometimes the verbal force of the participle is so weak that it is felt to be almost non-existent; thus in:

barring, e.g.: Barring accidents, we shall arrive to-morrow. *MASON, ENG. GRAM.*³⁴, § 282.

bating, e.g.: Bating a little wilfulness, . . . I don't know a more honest, or loyal, or gentle creature. *THACK., PEND.*, II, Ch. XVI, 165.

considering, e.g.: It is scarcely possible to act otherwise, considering the frailty of human nature. *L. MURRAY, ENG. GRAM.*⁵, I, 289. (O. E. D., 1).

excepting, e.g.: Excepting a sore-throat and head-ache, there is not much the matter with me. *JANE AUSTEN, PRIDE & PREJ.*, Ch. VII, 36.

Excepting a single case, nothing more remains to be attended to. *WEBST., DICT.*

Note a) *Excepting* varies with *except* and *excepted*. The former, an abbreviated form of the latter, is perhaps felt as an imperative rather than a curtailed past participle. *Excepted* is distinguished from *excepting* and *except* in that it is placed after the (pronoun with which it forms an adverbial phrase of the character of a nominative absolute (8). See *ONIONS, ADV. ENG. SYNT.*, 61, c, 4, iii.

i. He awarded every one that slept in the senior room, except Gall and Trace, a severe punishment. *MRS. WOOD, ORV. COL.*, Ch. VII, 97.

ii. Nobody knew exactly what to make of my father, his wife excepted. *LYTTON, CAXT.*, I, Ch. III, 11.

He promises to deliver them safe at the place directed, dangers of the sea excepted. *WEBST., DICT.*, s.v. *bill of lading*. (= Dutch *behouden*.)

β) A similar variation may be observed in the case of *including* and *included*, and, perhaps, other pairs of participles; e.g.:

There were forty people in the boat, including three babies (or three babies included).

respecting, e.g.: He is undecided respecting his movements. *MASON, ENG. GRAM.*³⁴, § 282.

Respecting Canada, one or other of the two following will take place. PAINE, *Let. Abbé Raynel*, 73 (O. E. D., s. v. *respect*, 3, b).

saving, e. g.: i: Saving Joanna Baillie, we had no very interesting people this season. SOUTHEY, *Let.*, II, 115 (O. E. D., 1).

He seemed, saving his eyesight, as whole and sound as ever. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XXXII, 245 b.

ii. There's nothing I should quite so much hate talking about as politics — saving your presence. ELIZ. ROBINS, *Convert*, Ch. II, 24 (O. E. D., 2).

Inasmuch as these participles admit of being modified by an adverbial adjunct, they do not, however, entirely lose their verbal force; thus in:

Of all societies ... not even excepting the Roman Republic, England has been the most emphatically ... political. MORLEY, *Compromise*, 105 (O. E. D., 1).

In such expressions as *Putting (or leaving) on one side the fear of consequences*, *Setting aside the question of compensation* (BAIN, H. E. Gr., 99), the adverbial adjunct is hardly felt as a modifier of the participle, but rather as a word that forms a kind of unit with it. Compare the Dutch *da argelaten* which would translate the combinations.

A combination of a participle with a preposition may form a kind of group-preposition; thus *beginning with* and *dating from* come near to *from*. Observe that in the following examples it would be hard to tell the exact adverbial relation underlying the participle:

Beginning with the July number, it is intended materially to widen the scope of this Quarterly. Oxf. & Camb. Rev. (KRUIS, *Handbk.*, § 567).

Day by day, dating from his wife's death, his mental powers decreased. Mrs. GASK, *Ruth*, Ch. III, 26.

When the complement of the participle is a subordinate statement, instead of a (pro)noun or substantive clause, its grammatical function may be turned into that of a conjunction, or it may form a kind of of group-conjunction with *that*; e. g.:

Granting that that downfall is to come, it is reasonable [etc]. O. E. D., s. v. *grant*, 7, a.

It is especially *considering, seeing; providing, supposing; and saving* that are often used in this function or may form a group-conjunction with *that*. For discussion and illustration see Ch. XVII, 46, 71, and 77. Compare also Ch. LVII, 25.

When the participle is divided from *that* by an adverbial adjunct, the combination loses its conjunctive force; thus in:

Granting, though, that English farming has fallen below its opportunities, what are Mr. Wolff's remedies? *Times*, Lit., 3/5, 18 (KRUIS, *Handbk.*, 567).

In conclusion it may be observed that certain imperatives may have a similar prepositional or conjunctive function, the latter with or without *that*; e. g.:

i. Bar one or two, they all want to make the omelette without breaking eggs. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. VIII, 68.

Bar the most strenuous national heroism, there's nothing for it now but the garden city. *ib.*, 69.

This sortie, bar miracles, has decided the fate of Paris. *Standard*, 14/12, 1870 (O. E. D.).

Bar Milner's speech, there has scarcely been a word about our policy in the whole of the debate. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5173, 5 a.

ii. Grant that the phenomena of intelligence conform to laws; grant that the evolution of intelligence in a child also conforms to laws; and it follows inevitably that education cannot be rightly guided without a knowledge of these laws. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 25 *a—b*.

8. The subject-indicating word in the adverbial participle-clauses of the second group is a noun or pronoun in the nominative. As this (pro)noun in the nominative is not connected with a finite verb, it is called a nominative absolute, and the same name is often given to the entire clause; e. g.:

He being absent, nothing could be done. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, § 372.

He being gone, Emily was particularly lively and affectionate. THACK., *Van Fair*, II, Ch. XXXI, 349.

An ingenious gentleman got into conversation with me, I not knowing that he knew me to be an editor. TROL., *Autobiography*, II, Ch. XVIII, 186.

I always endeavour to speak of Sir Thomas with the greatest respect, he being a magistrate and a member of Parliament. EMILY LAWLESS, *A Colonel of the Empire*, Ch. IV.

9. Obs. I. In Old English the dative was used in these clauses. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³¹, § 375, foot-note; JESPERSEN, *Progress*, § 183; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*², § 660; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2350; ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 61, *c*. They were used in imitation of the Latin *Ablativus Absolutus*, and, being foreign to the genius of the language, were not employed by writers who stood outside Latin influence. Also in Middle English they are mostly traceable to foreign, chiefly French originals. Nor can, save for certain exceptions, described below under Obs. III and Obs. V, the modern nominative absolute be said to have become natural to the vernacular. ONIONS (*Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 61, *a*, 3) observes, "Except for stereotyped phrases like *weather permitting*, *God willing*, the colloquial use of the Nominative Absolute is almost restricted to *it being . . .*, *there being . . .* (e. g. *There being no apparent obstacle, the march was continued*). Its use with a pronoun as subject is limited apparently to cases in which *being* or *having* is the Participle (e. g. *They having the keys, no entrance was possible*). But poetical usage is freer; TENNYSON, for example, writes *We sitting, as I said, the cock crew loud*." Observe the frequent *all being well*, as in:

All being well, the Government land policy will be produced before October is far advanced. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6305, 1 *b*.

All being well, he will appear in the House of Commons on Monday. *ib.*, No. 8132, 4 *a*.

All being well, I hope to be back in England by the 1st of May. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 207, 241 *b*.

II. The dative came to be supplanted by the nominative by the middle of the 15th century. The few instances of the objective met with in writers of the 16th and 17th centuries, are to be considered as deliberate imitations of the obsolete idiom; e. g.:

Him destroyed for whom all this was made, all this will soon follow. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, IX, 130.

The objective is, however, regularly used, also in Present-day English, in case the participle has assumed the character of a preposition, as in:

H. POUTSMA, I II.

These unlucky wretches are usually prisoners of war, or, failing them, criminals. Graph.

With an exclamation more strong than reverent, I groped about the room for matches, or failing them, for my hat and coat. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch II, 24,

For further discussion see especially JESPERSEN, *Phil. of Gram.*, 126 ff.

III. Sometimes the nominative absolute denotes the same person or thing as that indicated by the subject or some other element of the head-clause. In this case the idiom is, however, unusual and awkward. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, 61 c; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2352; HODGSON, *Errors*⁸, II, 73.

Our guest offering his assistance, he was accepted among the number. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. VI, (266).

Macbeth having come into the room, he took the two dirks. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandf.*

Neither could he suspect that he had missed his way, it being so broad and plain. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2355.

Our guest at last arriving, he was called upon to sing. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Gram.*, 61 c.

IV. Still more exceptionable is the absolute use of a participle-clause without a nominative, although not generalizing like those mentioned in 5 a; e. g.:

During my recent residence in the country I used frequently to attend at the village church. Its shadowy aisles . . . seemed to fit it for the haunt of solemn meditation; but being in a wealthy, aristocratic neighbourhood, the glitter of fashion penetrated even into the sanctuary. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Book*, XI, 103.

Entering thus unexpectedly, the company seemed by no means elated at my return. STÖF., *Handl.*, III, § 106, 5.

Calling upon him last summer, he kindly offered to give me his copy. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 61 b.

Crossing to the other side of the bridge, and looking over, the current had scooped away the sand. RICH. JEFFERIES, (*SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 2353).

In the following quotation it is the indefinite *it* that seems to be left out. See, however, Ch. II, 8, a.

Being Sunday, we had service on deck after we left the bay. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. II, 39.

V. The participle used is the present, but *being* or *having been* is often suppressed before a past participle. Thus *all things considered* (MASON, *Eng. Gram.*²⁴, 282) stands for *all things being considered*, or for *all things having been considered*. Similarly *being* or *having been* may be interpolated in:

They seem to have numbered 90, all told. *Times*.

Supper ended, the assembly disperses for the night. *Athen*.

It deserves to be noted that in the two first examples *to be* is the auxiliary of the passive voice, corresponding to the Dutch *worden*, in the last the copula, *ended* being an adjectival participle.

With the above examples compare the following with *being*:

Dinner being over, (she) was summoned into the dining-room. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, II, 17.

Supper being over, and removed by a small girl with a hungry eye, Mrs. Squeers retired to lock up. *Dick., Nick., Ch. VII, 42 b.*

This consummation being arrived at, Blathers and Duff cleared the room. *id., O. l. Twist, Ch. XXXI, 278.*

Thus, at a private dinner party, he refused to drink the health of Pitt, he being meanwhile a servant of Pitt's Government, and proposed, instead, the health of Washington. *W. GUNNYON, Biogr. Sketch of Burns, 34.*

All (things) (being) considered, and its variations varies, with *considering all (things)* and its variations; e. g.:

i. * There could be no possibility, the breadth of the lake considered, of describing the entrance of the narrow and low-browed cave from the other side. *SCOTT, Wav., Ch. XVIII, 62 a.*

All this is not only possible, but probable enough, the dates considered. *KINGSLEY, Her., Ch. X, 20 a.*

These things considered, what wonder that the strike has been made to appear a wage-strike exclusively. *The New Age, No. 1174, 498 a.*

** I think, under the circumstances and everything being considered, you did it wonderfully. *TEMPLE THURSTON, City, Ch. XX, 180.*

ii. Such was the formidable rival with whom Ichabod had to contend, and, considering all things, a stouter man than he would have shrunk from the competition, and a wiser man would have despaired. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 355.*

Considering all, I hope Mr. Tudor won't take it ill if we propose to change our trustee. *TROL., Three Clerks, Ch. XXXV, 434.*

Certain phrases in common use may be apprehended as translations of Latin or French sayings: thus *this done* (= *hoc facto, cela fait*) *all things being equal* (= *ceteris paribus*). See *ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 189.*

The staff was reorganised, and other things being equal, the last-comer goes. *T. P.'s Weekly, XVIII, No. 468, 527 c.*

VI. Certain present participles formed from intransitive verbs have their subject placed after instead of before them and have, consequently, come to resemble prepositions in their grammatical function. Sometimes the altered function is shown by the personal pronoun by which they are followed being placed in the objective case. See the examples with *failing* in *Obs. II*. The participles *during*, *notwithstanding*, and *pending* are, respectively, translations from the French of *durant*, *nonobstant*, and *pendant*. The two last are distinguished from the other prepositional participles in that they admit of being placed either before or after their complement. Other verbal forms lacking, at least in ordinary English of the Modern period, *during* and *notwithstanding* are practically devoid of all verbal force, and are felt as pure prepositions. This applies less strictly to *pending*, inasmuch as it is not uncommonly used as a pure participle. Here follow some examples with:

during: During the whole of this time Scrooge had acted like a man out of his wits. *Dick., Christm. Car.*

failing: The heirs wished to sell the farm, but, failing a purchaser, were willing to let it on a short lease. *Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve, III, 303.*

Failing agreement between the two parties, Herr Müller attempted to form what is described as a "Cabinet of Personalities." *Manch. Guard., 29 6, 1928, 501 a.*

notwithstanding: i. I shall go notwithstanding the rain. WEBST., Dict.

ii. All these reservations notwithstanding, there is a strong case for applying a new policy. Times.

Unless you can somehow settle quarrels without fighting, you must be prepared to fight, all vows to the contrary notwithstanding. Manch. Guard., 2/12, 1927, 422 a.

pending: i. He was confined in the Mont Valérien pending the Esterhazy trial. Times.

ii. Miss Crawley was pleased at the notion of a gossip with her sister-in-law regarding the late Lady Crawley, the funeral arrangements pending. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 170.

iii. He had been revolving in his mind the marriage-question pending between Jos and Rebecca. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 60.

wanting: Wanting common honesty, nothing can be done. (He) made a century, wanting one run. Conc. Oxf. Dict.

Wanting the support of your friendly elm, my vine has put lorth few or no fruits. LAMB, Dec. to Col.

VII. Also certain past participles sometimes assume the function of a preposition. This applies indubitably to *past*, which in this and some other functions is orthographically differentiated from the purely verbal *passed*. It is used not only in expressions denoting the time of day, as in *It is five minutes past ten*, but also in many combinations indicating that something is beyond the reach, range, compass, or scope of whatever is expressed by the following (pro)noun, such as *past belief*, *past (all) cure*, *past (all) hope*, etc.

Further instances are:

gone, chiefly used in colloquial language, as in: It's only gone three. JEROME, Three Men, Ch. XI, 131.

Note. When placed after a noun, *gone* is best considered as an adverb; thus in: Time was flying, and they should have been on the trail an hour gone. JACK LONDON, The Call of the Wild, Ch. IV, 74.

struck, only in archaic language; thus in: "Is the day so long?" — "But new struck nine." SHAK., Rom. & Jul., I, 1, 164.

turned, as in: She's to be married, turned Michaelmas. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., II, Ch. XVII, 152.

The verbal function is better preserved in certain past participles formed from transitive verbs, such as:

given, as in: We will keep moving south, and, given luck, we may fall in with Bassett's relief column before many days. ETH. M. DELL, The Way of the Eagle, I, Ch. V, 51.

Peace is officially celebrated in Great-Britain to-day, and given fine weather, the general holiday should provide the most notable example of national rejoicing that this country has seen. Westm. Gaz., No. 8132, 2 b.

let alone, as in: There was not bread and butter enough for one, let alone three. OPPENHEIM, The Mischiefmaker, Ch. VII. (The O. E. D. regards this *let alone* as an imperative, and gives *letting alone* as a variant.)

provided (or *providing*), sometimes followed by *that*, is often used as a conjunction (Ch. XVII, 71). A similar function has *granted that* in:

Granted that two Beings, A and B, are so independent of each other: then [etc.]. tr. Lotze's Metaph. (O. E. D., s. v. *grant*, 7 a).

10. The adverbial relations implied by clauses containing a nominative absolute are those of:

a) *time*, as in: The clock having struck, we had to go. MEIKLEJOHN, *Eng. Lang.*, 91.

The evening now coming on, Joseph retired to his chamber. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XVI, 47.

This said, he retired. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. I, 10.

Our luggage having arrived, I was dressed in a few minutes. DICK., *Black House*, Ch. VI, 42.

b) *cause reason or ground*, as in: A rich relation taking a fancy to stand godmother, the girl was, by her directions, called Sophia. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (238).

Society having ordained certain customs, men are bound to obey the laws of society. THACK., *Snobs*, Ch. I, 16.

In this instance Lamb was not suspected, the suspicion having fixed itself on Mr. Henry. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VII, 98.

c) *condition*, as in: Failing Mr. Beaufort's male issue and Philip's claim, he would be heir-at-law. LYTTON, *Night & Morn.*, 478.

It may be doubted whether, wanting this fundamental conception, a theory of the material universe is capable of scientific statement. TYNDALL, *Belfast Address*, 25a.

"And in a little while you will come back to me, will you not" — "Yes, dear; God willing." BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. II, 23.

d) *alternative hypothesis*, as in: Ripton did not require to be told that his friend was in love, and meant that life and death business called marriage, parents and guardians consenting or not. MER., *Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXVI, 201.

e) *attendant circumstances*, as in: Mrs. Acland gazed at him, her light eyes darkening with a curious expression of dislike and distrust as he silently turned away. MRS. ALEX., *Life Int.*, I, Ch. I, 32.

He leans his back, now, against the gun, his hands resting lightly upon the carriage. BESANT, *By Celia's Arb.*, I, Ch. I, 8.

The cabin was thenceforth occupied by Augusta, Mrs. Thomas and little Dick, the captain shaking down where he could. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will.*, Ch. XI, 114.

"I have brought you a visitor, mother," said her son, his voice deepening, the rigidity of his face melting as he bent over her chair. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XV.

11. Obs. I. The relation of time in the clauses mentioned under a) is mostly mixed with that of cause (reason, or ground). When this is not the case, they are sometimes interchangeable with gerund-clauses opening with *on* (Ch. XIX, 74, b). Thus *on* could be dispensed with in: On this arrangement being concluded, Mr. Prettyman begged Jonathan Faux to go and take a snack with him. G. ELIOT, *Brother Jacob*, Ch. III, (547).

II. In the participle-clauses of condition the participle may partake of the character of a preposition; thus in the two first examples given above under c).

III. Such *as* indicate a relation of attendant circumstances are more congenial to the genius of the language than any of the other kinds. In fact, in cultured literary style they hardly bear replacing by other constructions.

IV. Sometimes the nominative absolute is attached to the head-clause by *and*. Compare Ch. X, 5, a.

The lovers stood silent and trembling, Sophia being unable to withdraw her hand from Jones, and he almost as unable to hold it. FIELD., Tom Jones, II, 42 (JESP. PROG., § 185).

It made her mad to see their money chuckled away to other people, and they getting no good of it. Mrs. WARD, David Grievé, III, 133 (ib., § 165).

V. A nominative absolute connected with its head-clause by a relative pronoun occurs only in stilted literary prose, ordinary style preferring a participle-clause in which the relative is represented by a demonstrative pronoun.

I happened to wear my gloves; which the master Grey observing, he seemed perplexed. SWIFT, 3.296. (JESP., Mod. Eng. Gram., III, 10.14).

Our new acquaintance asked us, if ever we had drank egg-flip? To which question we answering in the negative, he assured us of a regale, and ordered a quart to be prepared. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIV, 89.

VI. The nominative absolute is of the same grammatical function as a construction which consists of *with* + (pro)noun + participle, as in *She sat at her usual corner, with her baby snuggling at her breast*. It will be observed that in such a sentence the participle with its adjunct answers to a relative clause: *with her baby snuggling at her breast* admitting of being expanded into *with her baby which was snuggling at her breast*. This also applies to:

He found his supernatural visitor confronting him in an erect attitude, with its chain wound over and about its arm. DICK., Christm. Car., I, 24.

There was nothing they wouldn't have cleared away, with old Fezziwig looking on. ib., II, 37.

You don't mean to say you took 'em down, rings and all, with him lying there. ib., IV, 83.

"You did," said Amelia, with her teeth chattering. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXI, 353.

She's a bit lonesome, poor thing, with her husband being so much away. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors., Ch. XXI, 188.

The fool, with eyes staring and heart thumping, saw these two fight a duel to the death. HUGH WALPOLE, Jeremy, Ch. IX, 2, 214.

The construction is frequently met with, also in ordinary spoken language. As in the case of the nominative absolute, the adverbial relation implied in it is rather vague, but may mostly be set down as one of attendant circumstances. In some cases, especially when this adverbial relation is implied, *with* could be left out without causing any appreciable change of meaning. See, for example, the first of the above examples.

Conversely *with* could be interpolated in the following examples without materially changing their meaning:

A few yards off lay Wulf upon his back, his knees in the air, his hands crossed behind his head. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XII, 59 a.

She lay peacefully, her eyes open, her breathing quiet and regular. BESANT, St. Kath., Ch. II. (The last nominative absolute would not allow of this interpolation.)

She came suddenly upon little Frank Miner, his overcoat buttoned up to his chin and a roll of papers sticking out of his pocket. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VIII, 143.

Similarly a construction with *without* may correspond to a negative nominative absolute; thus in:

They set him free without his ransom paid. SHAK., *Henry VI, A, III, 3, 72*.
 People often fight without any mischief done! SHER., *Riv., IV, 1, (256)*.
 Thither have been carried, through successive ages, by the rude hand of
 gaolers, without one mourner following, the bleeding relics of men who had
 been the captains of armies, the leaders of parties, the oracles of senates,
 and the ornaments of courts. MAC., *Hist., II, Ch. V, 196*.

SUCH AS ANSWER TO PREDICATIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCTS.

12. Participle-clauses of this description modify: *a)* the subject,
b) the non-prepositional object.

Note *a)* When the clause with an *ing*-form modifies the (pro)noun
 in a prepositional object, it is mostly best apprehended as a gerund-
 clause of that description which has been called the B-construction;
 thus that in:

Then if you hear of me being discovered dead in a bog or a pit full of snow,
 your conscience won't whisper that it is partly your fault? EN. BRONTE,
Wuth. Heights, Ch. II, 11 b.

He insisted on his sister accepting the invitation. PHILIPS, *Mrs. Bouverie, 82*.
 We are little likely to be afraid of him fighting on. *Westm. Gaz., No.*
6123, 2 a.

When, however, the clause with the *ing*-form modifies a (pro)noun
 that is the object of a group-verb with a preposition, it may be under-
 stood as a participle-construction; thus that in:

She caught a glimpse of him walking up and down between the roses. AGN.
 & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste, II, Ch. VII, 192*.

β) In slipshod English we sometimes find the participle referring to
 the personal pronoun suggested by a possessive pronoun; thus in:

Born in 1850, a part of his education was received at Eton. OXONS, *Adv.*
Eng. Synt., § 190.

γ) In generalizing statements the participle sometimes has no noun
 or pronoun to refer to; thus in:

Is not a bouquet rather in the way dancing? EL. GLYN, *Ref. of Ambrosine,*
Ch. III, 44.

The construction seems an unusual one and may be due to the
 suppression of the preposition *in* before the *ing*-form.

δ) Many instances of the *ing*-form having assumed the function of a
 participle through the suppression of a preposition before a gerund
 have been given in Ch. XIX, 35. The following example is a remarkable
 instance of the alternate use of the gerund-construction with *in* and
 the participle-construction resulting from the suppression of *in*:

The stream, in struggling onward, turns the mill-wheels, the coral insect,
 fashioning its tiny cell, joins continents to one another. JEROME, *Idle*
Thoughts, IV, 62.

13. Predicative adnominal participle-clauses modifying the subject
 are very common in English, more so than in Dutch. Besides
 modifying the subject, they imply some adverbial relation
 according to which they are mostly classified. The nature of

this adverbial relation is often mixed, there being no word to express it.

The participle used is mostly the present: when there is a past participle, *being* or *having been* can often be supplied. Thus *Beaten at one point, we made for another* (BAIN) is equivalent to *Having been beaten at one point, [etc.]*.

Also in such a sentence as *Arrived at my lodging, I lost not a moment in taking the quantity prescribed* (DE QUINCEY, Conf., Ch. III, 37) we may take *being* to be understood, in consideration of the fact that so-called mutative verbs (Ch. XLV, 16, b; Ch. LVII, 31) were formerly conjugated with *to be*. In some of the examples given in 15, especially those given under c) the assuming of a suppressed *being* would, however, yield a forced interpretation.

14. Obs. I. Also in this function the participle may assume the nature of a preposition; thus

confronting, in: (The building) ... stands confronting the Treasury Chambers. TROL., Three Clerks, Ch I, 1.

facing, in: The steward stands facing him at the other side of the table. SHAW., Saint Joan, I, (1).

following, in: Following custom, the Lord Mayor and the Sheriffs in full state, accompanied by the Lady Mayoress, arrived soon after the banquet had begun. Times.

referring to, in: Referring to the condition of agriculture, he said that all the members of the Royal Commission on Agriculture were agreed on something. Times.

II. Among the clauses of this description we may also include such as modify the object of the imperative *let*, as in:

Having thus briefly sketched the different agents required in the making of a newspaper, let us turn for a moment to view those agencies at work. Good Words.

15. The adverbial relations implied by predicative adnominal participle-clauses are those of:

a) *time*, as in: The doctor, having felt his pulse and examined his wounds, declared him much better. FIELD., J. O. S. Andrews, I, Ch. XVI, 47.

"Let it alone, will you?" Adam called out, laying down his tools, striding up to Ben and seizing his right shoulder. G. ELIOT, Ad. Bede, Ch. I, 3.

I broke my looking-glass, dressing to go out. HALL CAINE, Christ, II, 32. Her eyes, opening, rested almost gloatingly on the piles of francs and envelopes. GALSW., Tatterdemalion, I, I, 16.

He hoped Fleur wouldn't be late coming in. id., Swan Song, I, Ch. IV, 29. The most masculine woman looks graceful playing tennis, and the most graceful woman looks ugly playing hockey. CHESTERTON (II. Lond. News).

Note. The relation of time is mixed with that of reason in the participle-clause in the following examples:

Seeing a crowd, I stopped. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2344.

Seeing clearly that it would be useless to pursue their point, the gentlemen withdrew. DICK., Christm. Car., I, 17.

Seeing that they were growing poorer and poorer, Mrs. Alexander had long

ago begun to turn her natural gifts to account. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud, I, Ch. III, 47.

b) *cause, reason or ground*, as in: Not having received an answer, I wrote again. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2344.

Having a sufficient fortune of my own, I was careless of temporalities. GOLDS. Vic., II, (240).

The very farm-dogs bark less frequently, being less disturbed by passing travellers. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Book, XI, 103.

Being of a more slender figure than Mr. Jarndyce, and having a richer complexion, with browner hair, he looked younger. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 43.

She had a life-interest in a sum of £ 7000, which, being well invested, brought her in £ 350 a year. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 25.

I may as well do this as anything else, having nothing else to do. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XIII, 67b.

Sir Walter Besant was in his 65th year, having been born at Portsmouth on August 14, 1836. Times.

c) *condition*, as in: Certain poisons, used as medicines in small quantities, prove not only innocuous, but beneficial. WEBST., Dict., s. v. *innocuous*.

A man of the present day, suddenly thrust back fifty years in life, would find himself awkwardly unsuited to the ways of that time. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. I, 12.

The Czechs and other Slav populations under the Hapsburg rule, more loyal to the Emperor, taken in the mass, than his German subjects, are fighting desperately against the Germanizing and centralizing ideas which are still dominant. Times.

Broadly judged, the good outweighs by far the evil of the change. *ib.*

Are you cold? You'd be warmer walking. GALSW., Two Int., I, 21.

d) *concession*, as in: She was a maiden gentlewoman of about forty-five years of age, who having made a small slip in her youth, had continued a good maid ever since. FIELD., Jos. Andr., I, Ch. V, 11.

Having had no facilities for learning, he was forced to teach. MAC., War. Hast., (635 b).

Now this was very warm advocacy on the part of Mr. Tombey, who, being called in to console and bless, cursed with such extraordinary vigour. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. VI, 59.

e) *attendant circumstances*, as in: Unblest with one natural friend, she merits a thousand. FANNY BURNEY, Evelina, V, 11.

The old order changeth, yielding place to new. TEN., Pas. of Arth., 408.

The Attorney General at once proceeded to call his witnesses, reserving his remarks till the conclusion. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XXI, 217.

Lady Holmhurst presently left the room, leaving them to settle it as they liked. *ib.*, Ch. XVII, 169.

16. Obs. I. Predicative adnominal participle-clauses, especially such as imply a relation of time, are sometimes interchangeable with adverbial gerund-clauses. See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2333. Thus for *I broke my looking-glass dressing to go out*. (HALL CAINE, Christ, II, 32) we could also say *I broke my looking-glass in dressing to go out*. Conversely *On reaching Mr. Smith's, Charlotte put his own letter in his hands*. (Mrs. GASK., Life of Charl. Brontë, 271) = *Reaching Mr. Smith's, Charlotte* [etc.]. Further instances of sentences in which the insertion of *in* before the *ing*-form would not cause an appreciable change of meaning are:

Baby and Bobby may fall asleep coming home. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. IX, 144.

We missed our way somehow getting to the station. SWEET.

However do you keep warm wading like that this weather? PUNCH.

It appears to be rather the preposition *by* which might be placed before the *ing*-form in:

He half ruined himself buying new music. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VIII, 116.

What do you all mean interfering with my work and disturbing the peace of my garden? BERN. CAPES, *The Pot of Basil*, Ch. III, 31.

II. In literary English we meet with frequent instances of a participle-clause made to refer to a preceding sentence by means of a relative pronoun, where in ordinary English a demonstrative pronoun would be used; e. g.:

Miss Murdstone disposed of me in two words: "Wants manner!" Having uttered which with great distinctness, she begged the favour of being shown to her room. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24 a.

III. Predicative adnominal participle-clauses implying an adverbial relation of attendant circumstances, are very frequent, constituting a very feature of the English language. They are especially used in describing a series of facts, which are but loosely connected with that expressed by the head-clause. The following is a typical instance: She sent Arthur Abner a letter, thanking him for his recommendation of young Mr. Weyburn, stating her benevolent wishes as regarded the young man and "those hateful "Memoirs", requesting that her name should not be mentioned in the affair. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. III, 62.

Some imply more or less distinct relations of causality. Thus *Eustace made a clean breast of it, announcing that they were engaged to be married* (RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*) may be understood to mean *Eustace made a clean breast of it by announcing that [etc.]*.

I am going to totally revolutionize the course of business as hitherto practised in this establishment, having drawn up a scheme for that purpose (ib.) approximates to *I am going ... establishment. The fact is I have drawn up [etc.]*. Further instances are to be found in:

I hope to do some good with the money, remembering always that it is a great trust that has been placed in my hands. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. XXII, 238.

James turned colour, bowed, and sat down, knowing that he was a made man. ib., Ch. XXI, 226.

Some may also be understood to be representative of continuative attributive adnominal clauses; e. g.:

George, fidgeting in his chair, said nothing. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. III, 14 b.

IV. Special mention must be made of the participle-clause of attendant circumstances after *to come*, for which the Dutch has an infinitive-or past-participle clause. The verb *to come* in these sentences is largely weakened in meaning so as to approach to a copula. See also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2339.

The little ones came running out to tell us that the squire was come. GOLDS. VIC., Ch. IX, (283). (Dutch: *kwamen naar buiten loopen or ge-loopen*.)

As he spoke, a column of troops came marching across the field straight towards their retreat. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 63 b.

All sorts of beautiful ideas came floating into her heart. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. VII, 67.

Note. Originally an infinitive(-clause) was used for this participle (-clause). O. E. D., s.v. *come*, 3, f.

Also the present participle after *to go* corresponds in certain connexions to an infinitive in Dutch; thus in :

Come, Tamsie dear, don't go making a scene. HARDY, Return of the Nat., I, Ch. V, 53. (Dutch: *ga (nu) geen scène maken*.)

If I go furze-cutting, we shall be fairly well off. *ib.*, IV, Ch. II, 310.

Altogether, the man who goes sailing in the clouds is not likely to have too good a time. Westm. Gaz., No. 6017, 2 a.

I went there walking one holiday with a school friend. GALSW., Two Int., I. 16.

In these sentences, however, the adverbial relation, although very vague, is rather one of purpose than attendant circumstances, and the participle is mostly understood to go back to a gerund before which the preposition *on* (or *an*) has got lost through the intermediate stage of proclitic *a*. For further discussion see Ch. LVII, 6, Obs. VII. V. After *to lie*, *to sit* and *to stand* the participle(-clause) often assumes the character of a nominal part of the predicate, these verbs themselves being weakened to quasi-copulas (Ch. I, 5).

i. When I lay musing on my pillow, I heard the sound of little feet pattering outside of the door. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Book, XXII, 205.

Mr. Meeson lay gasping at the bottom of the boat. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. VIII, 78.

ii. Moses sat reading, while I taught my little ones. GOLDS. VIC.

You sat eating your dinner and looking on, while he was trying to crack my bones. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. XII, 62 a.

iii. I stood looking at the basket quite lost in the magnitude of my trust. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 43.

Ostler, Boots and the Squire stand looking after them under the Peacock lamp. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 75.

A little more action is expressed by the same verbs, when they are connected with an adverb, as in :

Don't sit up making yourself miserable over your fire. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XVI, 266.

17. A special group of predicative adnominal participle-clauses denoting particulars of the subject, are such as are the result of sentences with an accusative + participle being thrown into the passive voice. See next §.

The apprentice was heard calling 'Master' in great alarm. G. ELIOT, Brother Jacob, Ch. III, (535).

She could have been imagined saying, 'There is a storm, but I am ready to embark with you this minute. MER., ORMONT, Ch. I, 20.

He was seen forcing his way among the trees and pushing aside the branches. BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night, Ch. XI, 92.

This participle-construction of course appears frequently enough after other passive verbs, as in :

I was detained playing bridge with your father. EL. GLYN, The Reason Why, Ch. XXVI, 237.

Her husband and sons had been slain fighting for King Charles. *Story of Old Mort.*, 7.

Note. Certain verbs that express a judging, describing, or declaring have the participle-clause preceded by the conjunction *as*. Compare 22, Obs. IV.

It is certain, however, that in storms in these highlands strange things have been seen, which are considered as connected with the old story of the ship. *WASH. IRV., Storm-Ship (STOF., Handl., I, 88).*

She was never reported as having been seen above the highlands. *ib.*, 86.

The commanders of the opposing armies are represented as leaving their work. *Lit. World.*

They informed her that they had passed that way on the look-out for skirmishers of the enemy, who were reported as having been seen in the neighbouring woods. *BUCHANAN, Wint. Night, Ch. V, 48.*

But the civilities and respects that were recognized as belonging to her station, she received. *Mrs. WARD, Tres., Ch. II, 10.*

The citizens of the Free State may be regarded as possessing a very keen civic sense. *Manch. Guard., 3/6, 1927, 428 d.*

The conjunction *as* is regularly placed before the participle-clause standing after *It strikes me*, etc., which may be considered as the active equivalent of *It is considered by me*, etc.

He struck me as being rather a young fool, and certainly not good enough for her. *NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. VIII, 54.*

Such a course strikes me as being a most natural and proper one. *RD. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. XXI, 225.*

18. Among the participle-constructions standing after a non-prepositional object it is especially such as have a similar function as the infinitive-construction in the accusative + infinitive, that are of particular interest. We find this construction after: *a*) verbs that express a discovering, a watching, or a hearing, *b*) the verb *to have*, *c*) verbs that express a picturing, a describing, or a remembering, *d*) the verb *to want*, *e*) verbs that express a liking or disliking, *f*) some miscellaneous verbs not answering to a general description.

Note. The participle is the present: when the past participle is used in this function, as in *I saw him thrown out of his trap* (*SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 331*), it stands for a passive infinitive. For detailed discussion and illustration see Ch. XVIII, 32, Obs. IV; 33, Obs. II; 35, Obs. II; 36, Obs. II; and 37, Obs. II.

19. After the verbs mentioned in 18, *a* the predicative adnominal participle-clause is found in a variety of relations, which, however, cannot always be clearly distinguished: *a*) one that is identical with that of an ordinary adjective or noun used as predicative adnominal adjunct; as in:

In the silent snow forests, if you dig the snow away, you will find the tiny buds nestling in their white nursery. *BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. III, 11.*

b) one that approaches to that of an adverbial adjunct of time as in:

He watched her arranging the pages of a dilapidated book. *ib.*, II, Ch. IV, 122. (almost = as she was arranging etc.).

c) one that approaches to that of a continuative attributive adnominal clause, as in:

Once when he was seven years old, the little fellow woke up at night to see a lady bending over him. *MER., Ric h. Fe v.*, Ch. I, 4. (almost = who was bending over him.)

d) one that is identical with that of an infinitive to the non-prepositional object in the construction accusative with infinitive, as in:

I have seen him kissing her a dozen times, *BESANT, Be ll of St. Paul's*, I, 267.

Here follow some miscellaneous illustrative examples:

to behold: They turned their heads, and beheld the hope of Raynham on horseback surveying the scene. *MER., Ric h. Fe v.*, Ch. XIII, 91.

The nursemaid waking in the night beheld a solitary figure darkening a lamp above her little sleeping charge. *ib.*, Ch. I, 4.

to descry: At the foot of these fairy mountains the voyager may have descried the light smoke curling up from a village. *WASH. IRV., Sk et ch-B k.*, V, 33.

to feel: Rip now felt a vague apprehension stealing over him. *ib.*, 39.

We feel the natural religion of the soul gently springing up within us. *id.*, XI, 103.

I felt myself sitting in my father's leather chair in the library at home. *G. ELIOT, Lift ed Ve il*, Ch. I, (412).

He felt an undefinable dread laying hold on him. *G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn.*, Ch. IV, 33.

He felt his end approaching. *RID. HAG., Me es. Will*, Ch. XXI, 225.

to find: She was found one morning by her cousin Edmund, the youngest of the sons, sitting crying. *JANE AUSTEN, Mans f. Park.*, Ch. II, 13.

to hear: Above all the noise we made we heard them running up the stairs and crying out. *DICK., Co p.*, Ch. IV, 29 *b*.

How sad to hear one — one like you — only sneering and speaking evil! *KINGSLEY, Hyp.*, Ch. XIII, 69 *b*.

She almost thought that she could hear her lost Jeannie's voice calling down the gale. *RID. HAG., Me es. Will*, Ch. VII, 67.

to notice: Pierson noticed his eyes always following her. *GALSW., Sain t's Prog.*, III, iv, 2 §, 261.

They had noticed the German sitting far down the woodland path. *BUCHANAN, That Wint. Night*, Ch. XI, 92.

to observe: The young lady happened to observe one of my little boys playing in the street. *GOLDS., Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (466).

Presently a small boy, whom Paul had observed looking at him intently for some time, walked up to the stove and greeted him familiarly. *ANSTAY, Vice Versa*, Ch. III, 51.

to perceive: Rip perceived a strange figure slowly toiling up the rocks. *WASH. IRV., Sk et ch-B k.*, V, 39.

to scan: She scanned the crowds streaming in through the side-doors. *Mrs. WARD, Tres.*, Ch. IV, 23 *a*.

to see: I see the young Englishman riding towards the house. *LYTTON, My Novel*, II, ix, Ch. XI, 110.

I am sorry to see you not looking so well as you were when we last met. *WILK. COL., Wo man*, I, 137.

I saw a crowd of boys going into a large door-way. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XII, 59*b*.

Jon seems to have abandoned America for good. I can't see his wife being happy over there. GALSW., *Swan Song*, II, Ch. VII, 164. (Dutch: hoe zijn vrouw daar gelukkig zou kunnen zijn.)

to watch: When my mother is out of breath and rests herself, I watch her winding her bright curls round her fingers and straightening her waist. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 8*b*.

Marjory watched the breakfast being removed with a sort of dumb anger. Mrs. ALEX., *Life Int.*, Ch. VII, 117.

20. Obs. I. It is of some interest to compare the participle-construction with the infinitive-construction which as we have seen in Ch. XVIII, 31, *a*, is often used after these verbs. The comparison will show that the participle-construction is only used when both verbs in question, i. e. that in the head-clause and that in the subordinate clause, are of a durative aspect, and that the former is chosen when this aspect is more or less distinctly present to the speaker's mind. The difference between the two constructions is clearly brought out when in such a sentence as *I have seen artists paint their own portraits* (DICK., *Break House*, Ch. V, 43) the infinitive is replaced by the participle. Observe that in the example with the infinitive the verb *to see* is vague in meaning approaching to that of *to know* (Ch. XVIII, 34, Obs. V), which is never construed with an accusative + present participle, while in the example with the participle it comes near to *to watch*. The difference between the two constructions is unmistakable in the answers in the following sequences *a*) "*Could you tell me where my sister is?*" — "*I think I heard her singing in the next room a minute ago.*" *b*) "*What do you think of my sister's singing?*" — "*I had rather not give my opinion, because this is the first time that I have heard your sister sing.*" It will hardly escape notice that in the second answer the main attention centres round the action of singing, in the first round the originator of that action. It is not difficult to account for the infinitive-construction in:

I was wondering why you have a grand piano, I never heard you play. ANSTEY, *A Fallen Idol*, Ch. VIII, 114.

She had heard him sing before. HICHENS, *Gard. of Al.*, II, IV, Ch. XVIII, 74.

The difference between the two constructions is also shown by a comparison of two such sentences as *I saw a stag swim across the river*, and *I saw a stag swimming across the river*. While in the first the implication is that the action of swimming had its desired result, viz. that of reaching the other bank of the river, there is no such notion in the second. In the first the infinitive is terminatively durative, in the second the participle is indefinitely durative (Ch. LI, 1); in the first *to see* approaches to *to perceive* or *to discover*, in the second it comes near to *to watch*. Compare KRÜGER, *Synt.*², § 2563: DEUTSCHBEIN, *Syst.*, § 36, 4.

In many cases, however, the fact that the present participle is essentially durative and the infinitive practically indifferent as to aspect is not thought of, with the result that both constructions are found in practically identical circumstances. Nor is it difficult to collect a

goodly number of examples in which the alternative construction would appear to be equally, or even more appropriate. We must confine ourselves to the following :

i. You might have heard Barbara's heart beating. *Mrs. Wood, East Lynne*, I, 53.

You could hear him eating. *TEMPLE THURSTON, City*, II, Ch. I, 206.

Do you hear the dogs barking? *HICHENS, Gard. of Allah*, II, IV, Ch. XXI, 141.

ii. He heard the wind roar through the trees. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*³⁴, 249. I felt the air fan my cheek. *ib.*

Arthur Pendennis chose to watch Miss Bell dance her first quadrille with Mr. Pynsent for a partner. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 272.

In the following examples the two constructions are used alternately :

I saw my mother stop her ears, and heard her crying. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. IV, 29 a. You may sometimes see a little, grave boy walking through a field, unwatched as he believes, suddenly fling his feet and his head every which way. *GALSW., Freeland's*, Ch. X, 81.

II. The passive present participle occurs but occasionally in the construction under discussion, the need of expressing the durative aspect not being felt. Instead of it we mostly find the past participle without *being* (Ch. XVIII, 32, Obs. IV). Some examples with *being* + past participle may be acceptable in this place :

Marjory watched the breakfast being removed with a sort of dumb anger. *Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest*, I, Ch. VII, 117.

At last Mr. Ismay saw the boats being launched. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 499, 674 c.

III. Another occasional variant of the passive present participle is the active present participle with passive meaning. This construction is due to the dropping of the proclitic *a*, representing an older preposition *in*, before the gerund, and appears to be used more or less archaically in the latest English. Compare the substitution of *The house is being built*, etc. for *The house is building* in Present-day English.

I hear some fiddles tuning. *FARQUHAR, Const. Couple*, V, 3, (127).

I can't say how I knew it was my dear mother's coffin that they went to look at. I had never heard one making. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. IX, 63.

"Simon, is supper ready?" — "Ay, my liege, I saw the covers laying." *TEN., Queen Mary*, III, 6, (625 a).

While Annie seem'd to hear | Her own death-scaffold raising. *id.*, *En. Ard.*, 175.

IV. The participle is sometimes put before the accusative, but only when the latter is of some length, as in :

One evening ... he found ... lying on the table in his garret, an undeniable glittering gold piece. *KINGSLEY, Hyp.*, Ch. XV, 72 b.

They saw coming towards them a respectable English family with daughters. *DU MAURIER, Trilby*, I, 189.

21. After the other verbs mentioned in 18 the present-participle construction does not convey a distinctly different notion from that represented by the infinitive-construction. This will be brought home to the student, if he will take the trouble to compare the following examples with those illustrating the accusative +

infinitive in Ch. XVIII, 31 ff, so far as the same verbs are concerned. It should, however, be observed that after some verbs the participle-construction appears but sporadically, so that it is difficult to collect sufficient material to draw any reliable conclusions from.

a) to have: I am sure, from his manner, that you will have him calling here soon. JANE AUSTEN, *Pers.*, Ch. XIV, 133.

She would not have Hopkins telling she watched her daughters, as they went from her own home to that of her brother-in-law. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. III, 30.

The village would have people coming from Botany Bay to settle in, if things went on in this way. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*

Do you think we can afford to have our boys gadding about in this sort of way? Miss BRAD., *My First Happy Christm.*

I have several books coming to-morrow. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXVI, 237.

She said she wouldn't have me going out with him any more. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. VIII, 211.

I'll not have you prying into my affairs. Mrs. WARD, *The Mating of Lydia*, *Prol.*, Ch. II, 29.

I've told Joy I won't have her going down to meet the train. GALSW., *Joy*, I, (90).

So we have the Conservative leader frankly interpreting the series of measures sent to the Upper House as a "long-drawn conspiracy". *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5185, 1c.

I can't have you doing anything to bring me into disfavour with the cheaper magazines. *Punch*.

b) verbs that express a picturing, a remembering, or a describing, such as:

to anticipate: Needless to say that we do not anticipate anything of the kind happening. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5219, 1b.

to conceive: I cannot conceive poor Johnny keeping holiday with the earl and his sister. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XXXVII, 77.

to depict: The wildest stretch of imagination could not depict Miss Rashleigh developing anything so warm and human as fever. Mrs. ALEX., *For his Sake*, I, Ch. X, 162.

to fancy: "This must have been the curriculum for their celibates," we may fancy him concluding. SPENCER, *Education*, Ch. I, 23a.

to imagine: Imagine me doing so, and then consider what epithets you would bestow on me. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 95.

I cannot imagine Lily living in London. TROL., *Small House*, I, Ch. XIX, 218.

I cannot imagine you being genial. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. X, 43.

She could not imagine herself doing all that would be required of her. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. I, 4.

to mind (vulgar for to remember): I mind him coming down the street. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 842.

to paint: Her strong imagination began to paint her hovering like a sea-bird upon white wings. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will.*, Ch. VII, 67.

to recollect: I recollect two (buttons) bursting to the opposite side of the parlour, while she was hugging me. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 9b.

I recollect the news coming. A. HOPE, *King's Mirror*, Ch. I, 7.

to remember: Esmond remembered his poor lord saying [etc.]. THACK., *Es m.*, III, Ch. VII, 319.

I remember Mr. Joseph Hume objecting once to a grant in the Budget for an observatory at the Cape. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. VII, 101.

My mother remembers him living at 47, 48 or 49, Abbey Forge. *Notes & Queries*.

to understand: I can understand papers of that sort going like wild-fire. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, Ch. VIII, 35.

I can quite understand you saying so. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holmes*, I, 104.

Note. In the following example *to think of* approaches to *to picture*: She thought of him going away with the priest in friendly conversation. HICHENS, *Gard. of A.I.*, II, iv, Ch. XXIV, 187.

Observe that replacing *him* by *his* would involve a material modification of meaning. Compare: "Only think of my winning," said Lady Julia, drawing together her wealth. TROL., *Last Chron.*, I, Ch. XVI, 183.

b) It is of some interest to illustrate the three constructions of which such a verb as *to remember* is capable.

i. Sir William remembered the coat to have been frequently worn by his nephew. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (413).

ii. I remember your saying, "I like to see men praying in the desert." HICHENS, *Gard. of A.I.*, II, iv, Ch. XXIV, 194.

iii. My mother remembers him living at 47, 48 or 49, Abbey Forge. *Notes & Queries*.

c) *to want*: We don't want the women meddling. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. V, 34a.

You don't want me interfering in your life. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XXV, 176.

You don't want *everybody* walking in, do you? A. BENNETT, *The Great Adventure*, I, I, (19).

d) verbs that express a liking or disliking, especially those illustrated in the following examples with:

to like: Our people don't like things being ordered and left. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 34a.

You and I don't like our pictures and statues being found fault with. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XXXIX, 288.

Some wild-looking Highlanders did not like the strangers coming in. *Story of Rob Roy*, 22.

I don't quite like Mr. D'Urberville being there. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. VI, 56.

to detest: He detested people laughing when he himself perceived no joke. GALSW., *Man of Prop.*, II, Ch. VIII, 202.

to loathe: How he loathed people poking their noses into his concerns! *id.*, *Freelands*, Ch. XXVII, 248.

e) some verbs that do not answer to a general description, such as:

to chance: I'll chance Charlie thinking that. A. HOPE, *Com. of Courtship*, I, Ch. III, 35.

to dread: There is one part which I should dread you having the power of reading again. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride & Prej.*, Ch. LVIII, 361.

He almost dreaded his valet leaving the room. OSC. WILDE, *Dor. Gray*, Ch. VIII, 124.

to mind: Suppose Derek should mind her people knowing! GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XV, 127.

to permit: To permit the present muddle-headed anarchy prevailing in such a serious problem is little short of a social indictment. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 255.

to stand: I can't stand Nedda being made anxious like this. GALSW., *Freelands*, Ch. XXI, 184.

22. Obs. I. In some cases the construction may also be regarded as the B-construction of gerund-clauses. Compare, for example, the quotations with *to recollect*, *to remember*, *to understand*, and *to like* with those with the same verbs given in Ch. XVIII, 30, *c*. This certainly applies to the construction after:

to help, as in: I cannot help the dreams coming. Mrs. Wood, *East Lynne*, II, 39.

to prevent, as in: To prevent the ladies leaving us, I generally ordered the table to be removed. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. II, (242). (Compare: I was put between two gentlemen to prevent my tumbling off the coach. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 36 *a*. See also Ch. XVIII, 32, *a*, where an example is registered of *to prevent* followed by an accusative + infinitive.)

II. In numerous cases the participle-construction goes back to a gerund-construction with some preposition. The preposition got weakened to *a*, which, because it did not convey any meaning, was mostly thrown off (Ch. LVI, 50; Ch. LVII, 6, Obs. VII). The preposition suggested by the participle-construction is mostly *in*; thus in the following examples with:

to catch: I caught him watching me with an expression which seemed to say, "Poor Boy, and art thou, too, one of us?" KINGSLEY, *Alt. Locke*, Ch. II, 28.

to waylay: I waylaid him one day coming out of the workroom to go home. KINGSLEY, *Alt. Locke*, Ch. IV, 44.

It appears to be either *on* or *to* which has got lost after *to set*, as appears from the following examples:

i. For sorrow, like a heavy-hanging bell, | Once set on ringing, with his own weight goes. SHAK., *Lucrece*, 1494.

ii. But over one and all of my friends hung a great mystery ... a mystery that always set me to thinking. THOMAS HOLMES, *London's Underworld*, Ch. I, 2.

The preposition appears in its ordinary weakened form, *a*, in:

She hath beheld some ghastly sprite, | Whose grim aspect sets every joint a-shaking. SHAK., *Lucrece*, 452.

Evan's illustration set the company a-laughing. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LIV, 138 *b*.

When the enclitic *a* is dropped, which, save for a few combinations, is now regularly done in ordinary language, the *ing*-form is grammatically indistinguishable from a present participle, *to set* assuming the function of a verb of causing. Verbs of causing, however, do not, apparently, admit of the participle-construction; thus *This set them laughing* = *This caused them to laugh* (Ch. XVIII, 31, *e*).

This set all the monkeys laughing. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. XII, 59 *b*.

He set them laughing. MER., *Ormont*, Ch. I, 7.

Again he recognized the glorious eyes and the flashing spot in one of them that had so often set his heart beating. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, II, 36.

It may be added that *to set* with the reflexive pronoun, or with the reflexive pronoun understood, regularly takes *to* + gerund or infinitive (Ch. XIX, 44, *a*, 1).

III. Sometimes the participle-clause may also be considered as a substitute for an attributive adnominal clause; thus that in:

I cannot imagine anybody, and especially any woman, disliking old Jack.
FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, I, 171. (Compare Ch. LVI, 35, a.)

IV. Certain verbs that express a judging or describing sometimes have the participle-clause preceded by the conjunction *as*. Compare 17, Note.

I should regard you as, for the time, at any rate, lost to us — as, so far, betraying us. Mrs. WARD, *Tres.*, Ch. III, 15 b.

He represented me as having forsaken my former principles.
He described Bruges as excelling all other towns in wealth.

Thus also after *to look upon*, *to talk of* and similar word-groups that are synonymous with the above transitive verbs.

Even intelligent Londoners talked of London as containing several millions of souls. MAC. *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 278.

Every Rivermouth boy looks upon the sea as being in some way mixed up with his destiny. THOMAS B. ALDRICH, *The Cruise of the Dolphin*.
He is the man I spoke of just now, as being able to tumble me out of his place neck and crop. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsemen*.

V. It should be observed that in many of the above combinations the *ing*-form may also be apprehended as a gerund, as used in what in these pages has been called the B-construction. The fact is that in most of them the logical object of the verbs concerned is, strictly speaking, not the (pro)noun, but rather the whole of the combination. From this it would follow that the *ing*-form is a substantive form and the preceding (pro)noun its adnominal modifier. For all this, however, it is only a very limited number of the verbs concerned that admit of a gerund-construction with a genitive or a possessive pronoun. See the examples in Ch. XVIII, 30, c. Thus such constructions as **I saw his kissing her*, **I heard your friend's singing*, **They will soon have his calling here*, **I cannot imagine your loving such a girl*, **We do not want this man's meddling*, **I hated his poking his nose in my concerns*, **We dread his returning to us*, etc. are either very rare or non-existent. This seems to point to the fact that, in the minds of many writers, the (pro)noun alone is felt as the object to which the following participle is added by way of an indispensable predicative adnominal adjunct. This view is all the more plausible because some of the above verbs are also found construed with a predicative adnominal adjunct in the shape of an adjective (or adjectival equivalent), or a noun, as in:

I hope to see you well. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 34.

I imagined him a respectable man. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 9.

She wish'd me happy. TEN., *Mil. Daught.*, XVIII.

It was my wife you wanted dead just now. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 239.

It is well-known that in sentences like the much-quoted *I insist on Miss Sharp appearing* (THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XI, 108) the common-case form of the noun varies with the genitive or possessive pronoun, which by some grammarians is considered to be the more correct form. When this form is used we have, of course, to deal with an indubitable gerund. But when it is borne in mind that in like manner

as *We look to the Royal Commission to tell us what may be done* (Times) answers to *we expect the Royal Commission to tell us what may be done* (Ch. XVIII, 39), *I insist on Miss Sharp appearing* answers to *I want Miss Sharp appearing*, which on the strength of the exposition in the preceding observation may be regarded as an instance of an accusative + present participle, there is room for doubt whether in this sentence with *Miss Sharp* in the common case, the *ing*-form should be set down as a gerund or a present participle. Something may, indeed, be said in support of either view, and this, no doubt, applies to a good many parallel cases. Nor can controversy on the subject be said to be of much practical use. Compare KRUISINGA, *A Shorter Accidence & Syntax*⁴, § 331 ff.

In conclusion an example is submitted to the reader in which a past participle, in the same way as the *ing*-form in the above quotation from THACKERAY, is placed after a verb governing a prepositional object, viz. *to read*.

Even Anglicans and red Communists must occasionally bestow a sympathetic sigh on the Home Secretary when they read of him cross-examined — as he is so frequently cross-examined in the House of Commons — on the complexities of our laws against gambling. *Manch. Guard.*, 18/5, 1928, 383 c. (*him cross-examined* seems to have the value of *his being cross-examined*.)

CHAPTER XXI.

NOMINAL CLAUSES.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
Nominal Clauses which answer to Relative Clauses	1—3
Nominal Clauses which answer to Adverbial Clauses	4
Nominal Clauses which answer to Predicative Adnominal Adjuncts	5—6

NOMINAL CLAUSES WHICH ANSWER TO RELATIVE CLAUSES.

1. Undeveloped clauses whose most significant constituent is a nominal, i. e. an adjective, a noun, or a word(-group) doing duty for either, may be divided into: *a*) such as answer to relative clauses; *b*) such as answer to adverbial clauses; *c*) such as answer to a predicative adnominal adjunct.

2. Such as answer to relative clauses are:

a) *restrictive*, as in: A question too important to be neglected. A patriot disinterested in a high degree. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 318.

Clive was justly regarded as a man equal to any command. MAC., Clive, (507 *b*).

He had no wife and children dependent on him. RID. HAG., Mees. Will. Ch. IV, 34.

continuative, as in: The country was to be absolutely governed by a hereditary aristocracy, the most needy, the most haughty, the most quarrelsome in Europe. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 318.

The two races, so long hostile, soon found that they had common interests. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 15.

He described in vivid language the situation in which his victory had placed him: great princes, dependent on his pleasure; an opulent city, afraid of being given up to plunder. *id.*, Clive, (538 *a*).

The young king himself, a trained theologian and proud of his theological knowledge, entered the lists against Luther. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VI, § V, 321.

On the sofa lay a fair-haired little form, so thin and fragile, that it looked like the ghost or outline of a girl rather than a girl herself. RID. HAG., Mees. Will. Ch. III, 28.

3. Continuative undeveloped clauses of the above description whose chief constituent is a noun should be distinguished from appositions as understood by the present writer (Ch. IV, 4). Grammatically, appositions differ from them in not admitting of being expanded into relative clauses. Thus no such expansion is possible with:

Havelock, the hero, is dead. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 267.

John Smith, the baker, said so. MASON, Eng. Gram.³⁴, § 267.

Cæsar, the Roman emperor, invades Britain. LATHAM, Eng. Gram., § 223.

NOMINAL CLAUSES WHICH ANSWER TO ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

4. Such as answer to adverbial clauses may be regarded as nominatives absolute with the participle *being* understood. The

adverbial relations they imply are parallel to those conveyed by the nominatives absolute discussed in Ch. XX, 10. Like the latter they are often ill-defined, which, inasmuch as a definite relation is often unthought of, may, in a manner, be regarded as an advantage. A good many examples illustrating the use of the nominative absolute having already been given in Ch. XX, 10, there appears to be no need for ample illustration for the variety discussed in this chapter. We may discern, more or less distinctly, a relation of:

time in: Not without the internal resolution of being revenged on him for his procrastination, time and place convenient. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. LXV, 160 *b.* (i. e. as soon as time and place should be convenient.)

The reading of the manuscript over, the party engaged in general conversation. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXII, 346. (i. e. when the reading of the manuscript was over.)

Agreed to this, the day fled on thro' all | Its range of duties to the appointed hour. TEN., *Princ.*, III, 160. (i. e. when this had been agreed to.)

cause in: Burns, his own wound fresh, came all the more readily to the assistance of his landlord. W. GUNNYON, *Biograph. Sketch of Burns*, 12. (i. e. because his own wound was fresh.)

condition in: Joking apart, ... I am very glad that Lord De Guest has taken him by the hand. TROL., *Small House*, II, Ch. XLII, 145. (i. e. approximately: if joking is left apart.)

It is not surely fanciful to expect that, with education universal, almost every dweller in our old towns will acquire some sort of that feeling with which a member of an ancient family looks upon its ancestral house or lands. PER. (WENDT, *Synt.*, I, 137.)

attendant circumstances in: After her death, his party disgraced, and his hopes of ambition over, Swift returned to Dublin. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, I, 4. (i. e. while his party was disgraced etc.)

I fabled nothing fair, | But, your example pilot, told her all. TEN., *Princ.*, III, 121.

Note. As in the case of the nominative absolute described in Ch. XX, we often find a construction with the preposition *with* in the same grammatical function as the adverbial nominal clauses described in this section: thus in:

I sat at work in my study with the window open.

NOMINAL CLAUSES WHICH ANSWER TO PREDICATIVE ADNOMINAL ADJUNCTS.

5. Also those which answer to predicative adnominal adjuncts may be regarded as modifications of participle-clauses in this function. From the latter they are distinguished in that they almost invariably refer to the subject of the head-clause, and mostly stand at the opening of the sentence. The adverbial relations they convey are the same as those which are more or less distinctly implied in the participle-clauses illustrated in Ch. XX, 15; i. e. they refer to:

time, as in: Betrothed, he will be safe from a thousand snares. MER., Rich. Fev., Ch. XIII, 91.

cause, as in: Remote from the polite, they still retained the primæval simplicity of manners; and frugal by habit, they scarcely knew that temperance was a virtue. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. IV, (254).

A healthy, merry child, she did not much care for dress or eating. MRS. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 37.

The son of a wealthy father, Democritus devoted the whole of his inherited fortune to the culture of his mind. TYNDALL, Belfast Address, 14*b*.

Something of an enthusiast, she was fond of Michael. GALSW., White Monkey, I, Ch. IV, 32.

A good workman, he averaged out an income of perhaps eighteen shillings a week, counting the two shillings' worth of vegetables that he grew. id., Freeland's, Ch. XIII, 111.

concession, as in: One of the most amiable and beloved of men, he yet had an unfortunate quarrel with Pope. MEIKLEJOHN, Hist. Eng. Lit.

Ardent and intrepid on the field of battle, Monmouth was everywhere else effeminate and irresolute. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 100.

The daughter of a hundred earls, | You are not one to be desired. TEN., Lady Clara Vere de Vere, I.

attendant circumstances, as in: Of English parents, and of a good English family of clergymen, Swift was born in Dublin in 1667. THACK., Eng. Hum., I, 2.

An ardent Roman Catholic, she was bound to a family of rigid Presbyterians. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. III, 46.

6. Obs. I. In slipshod English the nominal clause is sometimes found to refer to the personal pronoun suggested by a possessive pronoun; thus in:

A younger son, his family connections and family interest pre-arranged a legal career for him. MRS. GASK., A Dark Night's Work, Ch. II, (417).

His misfortune was that, like many excellent persons, his sense of humour was imperfect. A. DOBSON, Eighteenth Cent. Vignettes, 121 (KRUIS. Handb.¹, § 1901).

II. In the not unusual case that the nominal clause stands last, its connexion with the head-clause is very slight, so that it has almost the value of an independent sentence; thus in:

She did not seem to see him, and at his ease he studied her face, one of those broad, bright English country faces with deep-set rogue eyes and red, thick, soft lips, smiling on little provocation. GALSW., Freeland's, Ch. X, 85. Tom Gaunt, not long in from work, was sitting in his shirt-sleeves, reading the paper — a short, thick-set man with small eyes, round ruddy cheeks, and humorous lips indifferently concealed by a ragged moustache. id., Ch. XIII, 110.

CHAPTER XXII.

ELLIPTICAL SENTENCES AND ANACOLUTHA.

ORDER OF DISCUSSION.

	Section.
General Observations	1— 3
Special Cases of Ellipsis	4—14
Anacolutha	15

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. A sentence or clause is said to be elliptical when either the subject or the predicate, or one as well as the other, is wanting and cannot be supplied from the context. The occasion of ellipsis is chiefly a desire on the part of the speaker to secure brevity, or force of expression, and it is, therefore, especially frequent in proverbial and familiar sayings, and in the utterances of an excited state of mind.

2. Obs. I. Imperative sentences, like *Listen!*, *Go on!*, in which, though the subject is not indicated by any word, the form of the verb and the way of uttering it distinctly show that it is the person addressed that is connected with the action or state expressed by it, are not considered as elliptical.

II. Elliptical sentences and clauses should be distinguished from: a) incomplete sentences and clauses, which have one or more elements suppressed, because they can be readily supplied from the context (Ch. IX, 6); b) undeveloped clauses, which consist of a verbal (or a nominal) with one or more enlargements (Ch. IX, 14, ff).

3. Elliptical sentences are chiefly of four kinds: a) simple statements of fact, many of which are proverbial, e. g.: *First come, first served. Grasp all, lose all. More haste, worse speed. Unlucky in love, lucky at play. No pains, no gains. Like father, like son. So far so good. Least said soonest mended. Marry in haste, and repent at leisure. Sing before breakfast, and cry before night. Spare the rod, and spoil the child. Love me, love my dog.* Further instances are found in:

Twenty to one, half of them will not pass muster neither. DRYDEN, *Mar. à la Mode*, III, 1.

Now for meeting my modest gentleman with a demure face, and quite in his own manner. GOLDS., *She stoops*, II, (188).

Now to my task. BYRON, *Manfred*, I, 1, 28.

Bestow nothing, receive nothing; sow nothing, reap nothing; bear no burden of others, be crushed under your own. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. I, 14.

b) utterances of various emotions, such as: 1) approbation, or disapprobation; e. g.: *Well done! Quite right! Capital! For shame!*

2) sorrow, or happiness; e. g.: *What a pity! How sad! How fortunate! What bliss!*

3) execration, or good-will; e. g.: *Down with the tyrants! Good luck to you!*

4) a strong desire; e. g.: *Out with it! Hands off!*

c) questions, as in :

What if, instead of talking this morning, I should read you a copy of verses, with critical remarks by the author? WEND. HOLMES, *Autocrat*, I, 14 b.

And their wives, their mothers, and their little children — what of them? BUCHANAN, *That Wint. Night*, Ch. I, 5.

Harris said: "How about when it rained?" JEROME, *Three Men*, Ch. II, 17.

What about Mrs. Grundy? BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. X, 41.

d) rhetorical questions or exclamations, as in :

i. Even if I have grown so much wiser, what then? I am not changed towards you. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 42.

His father, he thought, would certainly cut him off with a shilling; what then? G. ELIOT, *Brother Jacob*, Ch. I, (485).

He was a tailor, but what of that? THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VIII, 76.

ii. Fie, my lord, fie! a soldier, and afeard? SHAK., *Macb.*, V, 1, 42.

What, I! I love! I sue! I seek a wife! id., *Love's Labour's Lost*, III, 191.
To arms! to arms!

Note. Curious is the transferring of the exclamation *Well, I never!* to the third person in reported speech as in :

"They must run away together," Ma'am," Dobbin said laughing, "and follow the example of Captain Rawdon Crawley, and Miss Emmy's friend the little governess." Was it possible? Well she never! Mrs. Sedley was all excitement about this news. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 207.

e) imperative sentences, such as: *Your name and address, please! Quiet, all of you!*

SPECIAL CASES OF ELLIPSIS.

4. The personal pronoun of the first person, apparently *I* in the majority of cases, is dispensed with in certain combinations, sometimes together with other elements: a) in literary language, as in :

i. Would it were bed-time, and all were well. GOLDS., *She stoops*, I, (172).

ii. Pray, sir, will you have the kindness to show us the way to Shepherd's Inn? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 309.

What do you want with Fanny, pray? *ib.*, Ch. XXVIII, 310.

Pray, take it, papa. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

iii. "Stay, Careless, . . . you shall be auctioneer; so come along with us." — "Oh, have with you, if that's the case." SHER., *School*, III, 3, (402).

"Have at thee then," said Kay. TEN., *Gar. & Lyn.*, 739.

Note especially the antiquated *prithee* (or *pr'ythee*) = *I pray thee*, as in :
Prithee, peace! SHAK., *Temp.*, II, 1, 9.

Nay, prithee tell us, Mr. Novel, prithee do. WYCH., *Plain Deal.*, II, 1, (404).

Uncle, now — pr'ythee. SHER., *School*, I, I, (369).

b) in colloquial or vulgar language, as in :

i. "Who do you think has come?" — "Haven't the remotest idea." ONIONS. *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 16.

"Who do you think has just alighted? — "Cannot guess." GOLDS., *She stoops*.

"How did you like your ðbathe? Was the water warm?" — "Never had a better bathe in my life." SWEET, *Spok. Eng.*, 83.

- ii. Thank the Gods, there she moves away. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. II, 6 *b*.
 Thank goodness, he is not likely to hear where I was that evening. PUNCH.
 iii. Wish he may get it. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 131.
 Nasty black staircase as ever I see. Wonder how a gentleman can live in
 such a place. *id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 302.
 Honly (read: only) saw the outside of the door, sir. *ib.*

Here belong also numerous stunted expressions denoting various emotions, that are constantly used in conversation, such as *Thank you! Beg (your) pardon! Sorry! Glad to see you!*, etc.

5. a) The pronoun *thou* is not unfrequently dispensed with in questions, not only in verse, but also, although less frequently, in prose; thus in:

Art of this house? SHAK., *Lea r*, II, 2, 1.

O good Horatio, I'll take the ghost's word for a thousand pound. Didst perceive? *id.*, *Ham l.*, III, 2, 298.

ii. And where hast been these eighteen months? LEIGH HUNT.

What babblest of? KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 12 *a*.

For numerous instances in SHAKESPEARE see AL. SCHMIDT, *Lexic.*, s. v. *thou*.

b) The dropping of *you* as the subject, often together with some other element of the sentence appears to be common only in colloquial or vulgar language, as in:

i. "Is this a through train?" — "Don't know, sir. Better ask the guard." LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 124.

ii. Been in Egypt, cove? WARWICK DEEPING, *Su v l a J o h n*, II, 3, 19.

Mind if I open the window a bit more? *ib.*, V, 3, 53.

c) This also applies to the personal pronouns of the third person or nouns as the subject, as in:

i. Miss Murdstone disposed of me in two words: "Wants manner!" DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 24 *a*.

There's an account of that West Australian swindle. Set of ruffians! GALSW., *Joy*, I, (96).

ii. Shall I go into the sort of temptations he'll meet with? No, I can't do that. Never do for an old fellow to go into such things with a boy. He won't understand me. Do him more harm than good, ten to one. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 68.

I met Adlington on the hill and told him that Mrs. Bugloss was dying. He said, "About time. too, the old vixen." *Manch. Guard.*, 163, 1928, 204 *c*.

6. The name of the Supreme Being is often understood in the language of blessing and imprecation; thus in:

"Do you give the children Daffy, Mrs. Mann?" — "Ah, bless'em, that I do, dear as it is." DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 25.

"Save us!" said the old lady, with tears in her eyes, "What a little dear it is!" *ib.*

Curse the whole pack of money-grubbing vulgarians! THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 214.

Confound the fellow! MARRYAT, *O l l a P o d r i d a*.

7. The pronoun *it* as anticipating subject, together with the equally meaningless *is*, is often dispensed with in certain combinations, such as are illustrated in:

Better be alone than in bad company. Better bend the neck than bruise the forehead. Better be envied than pitied. Better untaught than ill-taught. Better dwell in the midst of alarms, | Than reign in this horrible place. COWPER, *Alex. Selk. Solil.*, I.

Strange to say, the existence of the trench had not been mentioned to him by any of his scouts. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 176.

Theirs not to reason why. TEN., *Charge of the Light Brig.*

Like their impudence to propose it. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXV, 206 a.

Note. For the absence of *it* in the phrases *If you please!* *Please God* (and its variations), *methinks* (*methought*), and *meseems* (*meseemed*) see Ch. II, 16.

8. The demonstrative *this* or *that* may be assumed to be suppressed in:

He was shot, and served him right. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 366.

Note. In the phrase *Serves* (*served*) *him right*, the grammatical function of *serve* is apt to get obscured, as appears from its use in:

Serve you right for swearing. id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 33.

D—him, serve him right. id., *Pen d.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 283.

9. A subject of a vague meaning is suppressed in the following turns of expression:

i. There's great fun in finding out a new word. Here goes. Mrs. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 52.

The Noes have it. So here begins. ib.

ii. Needs must, you know, when somebody drives. DICK., *Nick.*, Ch. V, 23 a. I... would have no more of these follies than needs must. SCOTT, *Ken.*, Ch. XVI, 185.

10. a) The copula *to be* of the nominal predicate is often wanting, especially when the nominal is placed in front-position as representing a particularly prominent notion in the speaker's mind; thus in:

Happy the man whose wish and care | A few paternal acres bound. POPE (*JESP.*, *Phil. of Gr.*, 121). (Compare: Happy is the man who hath his quiver full of them. BIBLE, *Psalm*, CXXVII, 5.)

Costly his garb ... | Tawny his boot, and gold his spur. SCOTT, *Lay*, V, xvi.

b) The copula *to be* may also be assumed to be understood in such an emotional question as the following in which the nominal stands last:

For shame, you a sailor, and carry sorrow aboard?

c) The introductory *there is* may be supplied in such a sentence as: More company below, ... shall I show them up? GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, I, (108).

d) Sometimes the elliptical sentence contains no more than a nominal, a noun or adjective, mostly attended by an emotional modifier.

Nice goings-on, those in the Balkans! *JESP.*, *Phil. of Gr.*, 121.

Thrice blest whose lives are faithful prayers. TEN. (ib.)

What, alarmed, Amanda? SHER., *Trip to Scarb.*

e) The copula *to be*, together with the personal pronoun of the first person singular, may be supplied in sentences like:

He then cried out: "Coming, sir!" though nobody called. FIELD., *Jo s. Andrews*, I, 16 (*MätzN.*, *Eng. Gram.*, II, 48).

Sir, your humble servant. SHER., Riv., II, 1.

f) Very common also are exclamatory sentences without a finite verb containing an infinitive with or without a subject (Ch. LV, 49), or a (pro)noun with a nominal, serving to reject or negative emphatically the notion called forth by the exclamation; e. g.:

i. I think the worse of him? DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XVII, 144.

ii. Why not go there myself? SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 232.

iii. That man a traitor? He ungrateful?

g) Such elliptical sentences as are found in the Dutch *Er moest een dag vakantie gegeven worden. De jongens blij! Ik had mijn boodschap vergeten. Vader boos!* appear to be un-English. The following may, perhaps, be given as an instance:

He off, and bought another. O. E. D., s. v. *off*, 9 (vulgar or colloq.).

Note. It is almost needless to say that in practically all the examples mentioned in this section the interpolation of *to be* or any other verb would entail a weakening of the sense.

11. Instances of some verb expressing motion, especially *to go* or *to get*, being absorbed by an adverb of place after certain verbs of incomplete predication, such as *can (could)*, *let*, *may (might)*, *must*, *shall (should)*, and *will (would)*, are not nearly so common in Present-day English as they were in Early Modern English, and as they are still in Modern Dutch. In fact these constructions have now some currency only in certain combinations, and are, most of them, distinctly felt as archaisms.

i. I cannot away with them. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. I, 19.

He could not away with Browning. HALLAM, Lord Ten. and his Friends, 117.

This was the self-satisfied, smug doctrine of compensation, which Arnold could not away with. WAUGH, Introd. to Sel. Poems of Matth. Arn., 11.

They cannot away with his style. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 10 a.

ii. Be ruled by me: depart in patience, | And let us to the Tiger all to dinner. SHAK., Com. of Er., III, 1, 95.

Let him up. SHER., School, IV, 3, (414).

Let us across the country to Terracina! LYTTON, Rienzi.

Let us away with the curmudgeonly ledger-keeping spirit, which degrades wealth into money! Westm. Gaz., No. 6029, 4 a.

iii. You may away by night. SHAK., Henry IV, A, III, 1, 142.

iv. I must away to-day. SHAK., Taming, III, 2, 192,

I must after him to tell him the news. SHER., Riv., I, 1, (215).

Whatever might befall now, he must on to his journey's end. DICK., Two Cities, III, Ch. I, 276.

I must away into the City. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. IV, 47.

If the truth must out, the great haunch of venison trick was one of this young lady's performing. id., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 55.

Excuse me, Mr. Bly, I must away. GALSW., Windows, II, (253).

v. Thou shalt to prison. SHAK., Love's Labour's Lost, I, 2, 163.

I should to Plashy too. id., Rich. II, II, 2, 120.

vi. We'll away to-night. SHAK., *Merch.*, IV, 2, 2.

At the length truth will out. *ib.*, II, 2, 85.

He is very sick, and would to bed. *id.*, *Henry V*, II, 1, 87.

For hence will I. TEN., *Gar. & Lyn.*, 166.

The songs would out in spite of the saying: Sing before breakfast, cry before night. SARAH GRAND, *Our Man. Nat.*

The problem of wealth will not down. CARNEGIE (in *Rev. of Rev.*, No. 205, 28 a).

"Murder will out." They say so, because they have no idea how often murders don't out. W. WESTALL, *Her Two Millions*, Ch. XXVII (O. E. D., s. v. *out*, 13).

I tremble here at what I am going to say in this company of Elizabethan scholars, but my conviction will out. G. MURRAY, *Essays*, III, 25 (KRUIS., *Handb.*, § 625).

12. All the elements of the sentence, except the negative *not*, are suppressed in such a sentence as *Not but that I should have gone if I had had the chance* (O. E. D., s. v. *but*, 18). For further examples see Ch. XIII, 5, c.

13. a) Through the suppression of the predicate *woe* has become a word of a vague grammatical function, forming with the following (pro)noun a kind of interjection, in such exclamations as *Woe me!* (SHAK., *Meas. for Meas.*, I, 4, 26) *O, Woe the day!* (*id.*, *Temp.*, I, 2, 15).

Of a similar nature are the combinations with *dear*, and with certain interjections, as illustrated in the following examples:

i. Dear me! you have no notion of the size of the house. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

ii. Ay me, how weak a thing! The heart of woman is! SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 4, 40.

O me, what hast thou done? *id.*, *Hamlet*, III, 4, 26.

Ay me! you must bear your own burthen, fashion your own faith, think your own thoughts, and pray your own prayer! THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVI, 381.

Oh, misery me! What have I done? EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXIX, 275.

b) Much clearer is the grammatical function of *woe* when followed by a preposition + (pro)noun, as in:

i. Woe to that land that is govern'd by a child! SHAK., *Rich.*, III, II, 3, 11.

Woe to those who came late! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 22.

Woe to the people who dare take possession of it! MARRYAT, *Childr. of the New Forest*, Ch. II, 26.

Woe to the man who follows such careless advice! E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. IV, 43.

ii. Woe upon the single gentleman who saw them enter — artful witches: well they knew it — in a glow! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 64.

iii. I go to watch thy slumbers, and woe with him that shall intrude on them! SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. V, 51.

Note a) This *woe to* + (pro)noun is felt to be short for *woe be to* + (pro)noun. Observe that in relating past happenings the form *be* is either retained, or replaced by *was*; e. g.:

i. The mistress of the house ... said he could not be introduced to the

master ... The master was asleep after his dinner; ... and woe be to the person who interrupted him! THACK., *Four Georges*, II, 31.
 ii. Woe indeed was to the man who trod upon *his* toes. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, A, 10.

β) The shortened phrase with *to* may have been formed on the analogy of such expressions as *Glory to God! Hail to thee! Good-bye to you! Death to the tyranny! Life to the Republic!, Long life to him!* etc. That with *on*, which is far less frequent, is analogous to such phrases as *This to their own relation! mercy on me!* (SHER., *School*, II, 2 (381), *Fie upon you, man!* (SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. V, 51), *Out upon Merry Christmas!* (DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 6), *Plague on that old man!* (THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. X, 118).

The full phrase with *to be* resembles such expressions as *Peace be to the house and all that dwell in it* (Book of Com. Pray).

γ) Curious is the syntactical conforming of such imperatives as *you (he, it) be damned (hanged)* to the above phrases, especially to those with *to*, without *to be*; e. g.:

i. * Lay on, Macduff, | And damn'd be him that first cries, "Hold, enough!" SHAK., *Macb.*, V, 8, 34.

** "You are a son of a b.," replied the Squire, "for all your laced coat. You my son-in-law, and be d—n'd to you!" FIELD., *Tom. Jones*, II, XV, Ch. V, 104 b.

ii. The County Mercury has ratted, and be hanged to it! LYTTON, *Caxt.*, II, Ch. IV, 45.

If you choose to have such a daughter, you must take the consequences, and be hanged to you! KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. III, 20 b.

14. The head-clause is wanting: a) in certain sentences with an infinitive-clause, as in:

"How!" cried I, "relinquish the cause of truth?" GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. II (243) (Supply some such sentence as: *Do you consider it possible for me (to).*)

And O, may Heaven's everlasting fury light upon him and his! Thus to rob me of my child! *ib.*, Ch. XVII, (341).

Seven years, alas! to have received | No tidings of an only child! WORDSW., *Afflict. of Marg.*, II.

To think he should have formed so foolish and cruel and fatal an attachment! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 84.

Oh God! to hear the insect on the leaf pronouncing on the too much life among his hungry brothers in the dust! DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 62.

Oh mother, mother — to think, that you should have turned against us! MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VII, 137.

b) in certain substitutes for optative sentences (Ch. VII, 2, b; Ch. XVII, 65; Ch. XLIX, 10), as in:

i. Oh! that it were possible! MASON, *Eng. Gram.*³⁴, 192. (Supply some such sentence as: *I wish to God.*)

O, that we then could come by Cæsar's spirit, | And not dismember Cæsar! SHAK., *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 1, 169.

That I was safe at Clod Hall! SHER., *Riv.*, V, 3, (281).

Oh! that I had but known! HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. XVIII, 126.

ii. Oh! if he would but attach himself to any living thing! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. IV, 46. (Supply some such sentence: *How happy I should be.*)

Ah, if I had only known! BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. VI, 24.

c) after certain infinitive-clauses of purpose (Ch. XVIII, 24, Obs. V), as in:

To tell you the truth, he has not prepossessed me in his Favour. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. V, (262). (Supply some such sentence as: *I must say*.)

d) before expressions of wonder differing from direct questions in that they have the word-order of subordinate questions.

How one may be deceived at a little distance! SHER., Riv., V, 2, (276). (Supply some such sentence as: *It is astonishing*.)

"It is understood that amongst the shareholders are large numbers of women, clergymen, and Army officers." How people can be such fools! GALSW., Joy, I, (97).

ANACOLUTHA.

15. Anacoluthia (from the Greek *ἀνακολουθία* = want of sequence) "consists in beginning with one grammatical construction and then changing to a different one, so that the first half of the statement remains unfinished, the last half being connected with it not grammatically, but only logically." SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 118. A sentence in which anacoluthia appears, is called an anacoluthon (plural anacolutha).

Anacoluthia is especially frequent in the spoken language, in which speakers in the middle of a construction often find themselves confronted by an unforeseen inability of bringing the sentence to a natural conclusion, and therefore flounder into another construction to express all that they wish to say. But also the written language, especially that of poets, often contains many instances of this irregular form of language. Here follow some instances:

But lend it rather to thine enemy, | Who, if he break, thou mayst with better face Exact the penalty. SHAK., *Merch.*, I, 3, 137.

Every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof in the day of judgment. Bible, *Matth.*, XII, 36.

Every man that eateth the sour grape, his teeth shall be set on edge. id., *Jer.*, XXXI, 30.

In the afternoon, the old gentleman proposed to walk to Vauxhall, a place of which he said, he had heard much, but had never seen it. FIELD., *Amelia*, IX, Ch. IX, § 2 (HODGSON, *Errors*⁸, 85).

Oh, Mrs. Primmings, the next fable of this kind you try to teach him, and we part for ever. LYTTON, *Caxt.*, I, Ch. IV, 19.

Else why has God used those relations as symbols of the highest mysteries, which we ... are the more saintly the less we experience of them? KINGSLEY, *Life and Letters*, I, 125.

For detailed discussion of the above anacolutha, in all of which an adnominal clause has not its normal sequence, see especially JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, III, 5.5.

CORRECTIONS.

Page	13,	line	13	from	bottom:	<i>read</i>	one	of	my	guests.						
"	144,	"	2	"	"	:	"	condemn.								
"	194,	"	21	"	"	:	"	He.								
"	208,	"	23	"	top	:	"	also	<i>instead of</i>	however.						
"	233,	"	28	"	"	:	"	to	let	blood.						
"	251,	"	15	"	bottom:	"	regularly,	or	almost	regularly,	have					
								a	<i>to</i> -	complement.						
"	284,	"	24	"	"	:	"	Before	the	title	preceding	a	proper			
								name.								
"	314,	"	10	"	top	:	"	in	connexion	with	names	of	measure.			
"	375,	"	11	"	"	:	"	There	are	no	alternative	constructions	with	<i>for</i>	or	<i>to be</i> .
"	398	"	15	"	"	:	"	Ch. X,	21,	Obs. I.						
"	496	"	6	"	"	:	"	contented.								
"	729	"	14	"	bottom:	"	w	o	o	n	d	e.				

INDEXES.

ABBREVIATIONS.

ac cusative	dem onstrative	nom inative
adj ective	den oting	numb er
adj unct	determ inative	obj ect
admit ting	dif ferent	part iciple
adn ominal	elem ent	part itive
adv erbial(ly)	ellipt ical	pas sive
advers ative	Eng lish	pos ition
altern ative	equiv alent	pos sessive
anticip ating	exclam atory	prec eded
appos ition(al)	explan atory	prec eding
approach ing	expres sed	pred icate
art icle	expres sing	pred icating
assum ing	fol lowed	pred icative
attrib utive	fol lowing	pre fix
cl ause	funct ion	prep osition(al)
comb ination	furn ished	pron oun
comb ined	gen itive	quant ity
com mon	ger und	redund ant
compar ative	gov erning	ref erring
comp ared	gram matical	reflex ive
compl ement	hort ative	reg ular
comp ound	imper ative	rel ation
concer ning	impl ied	repl aced
condit ional	impl ying	repl acing
conj ugation	indef inite	repres ented
conj unction	inf initive	repres enting
conj unctive	intens ive	requir ing
connect ing	interpret ation	sent ence
connex ion	inter rogative	stat us
constr uction	introd ucing	subj ect
constr ued	invers ion	subj ective
cont ext	invert ed	subord inate
contin uative	lit erary	suf fix
conv erted	loc ution	sup pressed
co-ord inate	mean ing	synt actical
co-ord ination	mod ifier	temp oral
cop ula	mod ifying	trans itive
copul ative	nat ure	var iant
correl ative	neg ation	var ious
corresp onding	neg ativng	var ying
declar ative	nom inal	word-ord er

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

- ablatus absolutus, 973.
 absolute use of verbs, 125; — of genit., 128; — of pos. pron., 128.
 absolute infinitive, 466, 785.
 absolute participle, 680, 785.
 accusative + infinitive, 7, 202 *f*, 351, 790 *ff*, 959, 968, 984.
 accusative + past participle, 8, 206, 968, 984.
 accusative + present participle, 983, 984.
 active present participle with pas. mean., 987.
 adjective dispensing with anticip. prep. obi., 258 *f*; — conv. into noun, 315 *ff*; — expres. adv. relation, 331 *ff*: — placed after noun, 484 *ff*; — in *able* or *ible*, 490, 491 *f*; — with pref. *un*, or *in* (*im*), 491; — divided from compl., 500; — constr. with ger., 870.
 adjectival forms var. with adv. forms, 16.
 adjunct of benefit, 180.
 adnominal adjunct, 279, 342.
 adnominal clause, 551–640–654; — incorporated in another adnom. cl., 643; — with *anacolutha*, 1005.
 adverb used as predicative, 5, 342 *f*; — mod. ger., 320; — mod. noun of action, 320; — in combin. with part., 513 *f*.
 adverbial adjunct used as pred., 5, 342 *f*; — as sent.-mod., or word-mod., 320; — comp. with pred. adn. adj., 344; — where placed, 427 *ff*.
 adverbial clause, 552, 656; — incorporated in adnom. cl., 643.
 adverbial genitive, 321 *ff*; — in Dutch, not in Eng., 322 *ff*.
 adverbial phrases, 329 *f*.
 adverbial relation impl. in adnom. adj. or cl., 279, 333 *ff*, 640; — in verb, 330 *f*; — in adj., 331 *ff*; — in pred. adn. adj., 345 *ff*.
 adversative co-ordination, 550, 590, 600.
 alternative hypothesis, 716 *ff*.
 alternative question, 382.
 American English, 226.
 anaphoric pronoun, 275, 643.
 anticipating subject, 136 *ff*.
 anticipating non-prepositional object, 202 *ff*.
 anticipating prepositional object, 258 *f*.
 apparent apposition, 278 *ff*.
 appended clause, 402 *ff*, 641.
 appended subject, 276.
ἀπό κοινοῦ, 180, 256.
 apposition, 138, 172, 268 *ff*, 349; — comp. with other constr., 270 *ff*, 278 *ff*, 294 *ff*, 483, 994; — repres. by subord. cl., 275; — repres. by inf. cl., 275, 773; — repres. by ger. cl., 275; — repres. by noun with adj., 276; — repres. by dem. pron. *all*, or *both*, 277; — not confined to nouns and pron., 278; — var. with *of*-constr., or gen., 281 *ff*, 299 *ff*; — where placed, 482 *f*.
 aspect of combin. with *to be*, 5, *to go*, 8; — mod. by cont., 5, 7, 8, 9; — in temp. cl., 663.
 asyndetic connexion, 549.
 attributive adjective, 483 *ff*.
 attributive adnominal adjunct, 268 *ff*, 481 *ff*.

- attributive noun**, 481 *ff.*
attributive participle, 504 *ff.*
auxiliary, 31, 49, 74, 78.
- break-stress**, 414.
- capability** how expres., 89.
causal co-ordination, 550, 602, 605.
change of subject, 130 *ff.*, 142, 150 *ff.*, 167.
classifying restrictive adn. adj. and cl., 268, 640.
cognate object, 278.
co-incident of time-sphere, 58, 65, 68, 77, 162.
collateral connexion, 549.
collective nouns with or without of, 304 *ff.*
common case before ger., 825, 832 *ff.*
complementary predicate, 341.
complex predicate, 31.
complex sentence, 140 *ff.*, 277, 545.
compound containing part., 511.
compound sentence, 545.
concessive clause, 407, 707 *ff.*
condensed and expanded const., 160 *ff.*
conditional clause, 32, 202, 694 *ff.*
conjunction where placed, 390 *f.*
conjunctive adverb where placed, 390 *f.*, 442 *ff.*, 658; — their funct., 549, 646, 826, 932.
constraint expres. by verbs, 48 *ff.*
continuative adjunct, 268.
continuative adnom. cl., 149, 640, 967, 982, 994.
continuative adv. cl., 656, 660 *f.*, 688 *ff.*, 723 *ff.*, 730, 733.
contracted sentence, 547.
co-ordination, 544; — var. with subordination, 717.
copulas of three kinds, 2; — formed from trans., 3; of the first kind, 4—17; — of the second, 17—21; — of the third kind, 21—30; — comp. with full verbs, 341 *f.*
copulative co-ordination, 550, 556—588.
- dative in nom. abs.**, 973.
dativus ethicus, 177.
dativus sympatheticus, 193.
declarative sentence, 379.
declarative arrangement, 391.
defective verbs not constr. with to do, 101.
definite article before appellative + prop. name, 284 *f.*, 296 *ff.*; — before names of parts of the day, 325; — favouring post-position of adj., 516; — replaced by indef. art., 035.
definitive adjunct, 277.
demonstrative pronoun head-word of appos., 275, 277; — gathering up members of comp. subj., 277 *fol.* by pos. pron., 277.
direct object, 177; — where placed, 224 *ff.*
direct speech mixed with indirect speech, 630 *ff.*
disjunctive concession, 716 *ff.*
double passive, 821.
durative aspect, 986.
elliptic sent. or cl., 548, 783, 998.
- emphasis influencing word-ord.**, 497, 566.
empty word, 140.
ethical dative, 177.
exclamatory sentence, 379, 409 *f.*
expanded and condensed const., 160 *ff.*
expletives, 199.
- form-word**, 107.
fractional numbers with or without of, 302 *ff.*
- genitive as nom. part of pred.**, 30; — replacing apposit. or *of*-constr. 270 *f.*, 281 *ff.*, 299 *f.*; — of combin. containing noun in appos., 280 *f.*, before ger., 831.
gerund as nom. part of pred., 30; — as subj., 129, 835 *f.*; — as obj., 177; — after pos. pron., 251; — mod. by adj., 276; — mod. by adv., 320; — comp. with pres. part.,

- 505, 903, 952, 979, 981; — prec. by *no*, 838; — prec. by adj., 838.
- gerund-clause** anticip. by *it*, 137, 275, 959; — var. with part. cl., 168, 518; — understood, 169; — after prep., 265, 294; — incorporated in adnom. cl., 644; — var. with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 825, 837 *f*; — comp. with inf. cl., 839 *ff*.
- group-preposition**, 873.
- group-verb**, 871, 876.
- head-clause** understood, 59, 66, 1004 *f*.
- hendiadys**, 559, 771, 781 *f*, 955.
- hortative sentence**, 380 *f*, 410; — as adv. cl. of condition, 706; — as adv. cl. of concession, 714; — as adv. cl. of disjunctive concession, 718.
- hypotaxis**, 544, 641.
- idle wish** how expressed, 380, 622.
- illative co-ordination**, 550.
- imperative** in the funct. of prep. or conj., 972.
- imperative sentence** with subj. expres., 107, 383, 412; — prec. by *and*, 556 *f*, 707; — as adv. cl. of condition, 707 *f*; — as adv. cl. of concession, 715.
- impersonal construction**, 129 *ff*; — var. with pers. constr., 129 *ff*.
- incomplete clause, or sentence**, 346, 546, 551, 552, 678 *f*, 707, 715, 716, 719 *f*, 724, 728 *f*, 730, 733, 741, 746, 752, 758 *f*, 787 *f*, 998.
- incorrect contraction**, 547.
- incorrect omission** of (pro)noun before ger., 831 *f*.
- indefinite article** before names of parts of the day, and proper names of days 325; — where placed, 534 *ff*; — taking the place of def. art., 935.
- indirect object**, 177, 212 *ff*; — repl. by compl. with prep., 213 *ff*; — where placed, 214 *ff*.
- individualizing restrictive adn. adj. or cl.**, 268, 640.
- infinitive-clause** whether or no announced by antic. *it* 137, 142, 264, 275; — not ref. to prec. pred., 145; — den. rel. of purpose, 145, 780 *ff*; — prec. by appos. *of*, 294; — incorporated in adnom. cl., 644; — with *for*-adj., 825, 837; — comp. with ger. cl., 839 *ff*; — comp. with pres.-part.-cl., 986 *f*.
- infinitive-statement** admit. of more than one interpretation, 772.
- ing-forms** of uncertain gram. funct., 991.
- interrogative arrangement**, 391.
- interrogative sentence**, 107, 381 *f*, 410 *f*; — as adv. cl. of condition, 706.
- intransitive verbs** in Eng. corresp. to trans. in Dutch, 195.
- inverted word-order**, 277, 391.
- metre** its synt. influence, 497, 506, 508, 571.
- modal adverb**, 35 *ff*.
- modal auxiliary**, 31.
- modal verb**, 32 *ff*.
- multiplicatives** with, or without *of*, 303 *f*.
- mutative verbs** conj. with *to be*, 980.
- names of (parts of) the day, and of seasons**, 322 *ff*.
- negative causing inversion**, 392 *ff*.
- negating** effected by *not*, *never*, 102; — concern. a whole sent., or a word(-group). 102 *f*; — illogical, 105 *f*; — effected by *hardly* (or *scarcely*), *rarely* (or *seldom*), *only*, *little* (*less least*), 109, 392.
- nominal gov. non-prep. obj.**, 186.
- nominal part of the predicate**, 30 *f*; — comp. with subj., 128.
- nominal predicate**, 2.
- nominal undeveloped clause**, 279.
- nominal absolute**, 557, 973, 977.
- non-prepositional object** in Dutch corresp. to gen., pos. pron. or *of* + (pro)noun in Eng., 192 *f*; — corresp. to prep. + (pro)noun in Eng., 196.

- objective verbs**, 132, 510; — turned into subj. verbs through loss of refl. pron., 517.
open condition, 694.
optative sentence, 380 *f*, 410, 1004; — as adv. cl. of condition, 706; — as adv. cl. of concession, 714; — as adv. cl. of disjunctive concession, 718.
oratorical question, 383.
ordinal numeral after prop. name, 488.

parataxis, 544, 641.
parenthetic clause, 402 *ff*, 641.
participle as prep., 969, 971 *f*, 974 *ff*.
participle as conj., 680, 686 *f*, 972.
participle-clause var. with ger.-cl., 168, 518, 664; — understood, 169; — incorporated in adnom. cl., 645; — var. with temp. cl., 664; — with the value of a ger.-cl., 968; — of uncertain gram. funct., 991; — prec. by *as*, 991.
partitive genitive, 301.
passive conversion, 132, 219 *ff*, 250 *f*, 805, 818 *ff*.
passiveness impl. by adj. in-able, and -ible, 491.
passive present participle, 987.
permission how expressed, 89.
person-object, 176; — where placed, 214 *ff*, 425 *f*; — repl. by compl. with prep., 249.
personal pronoun used by way of refl. pron., 178 *ff*; — before ger., 825, 832 *ff*.
pleonastic use of pronoun, 276 *f*.
pluperfect conditional impl. non-fulfilment of action or state, 34, 38, 50, 60, 66, 68, 82, 93, 96, 166 *f*.
polysyndetic connexion, 549.
possessive pronoun as nom. part. of the pred., 30; — incompatible with post-position of adj., 516; — before ger., 831 *ff*.
predicate without subj., 134 *f*.
predicative common name for nom. part. of pred. and pred. adn. adj., 3; — fol. by inf. cl., 142 *ff*, 151.
predicative adnominal adjunct, 3, 279, 340 *ff*, 377, 408, 553, 979, 995; — comp. with adv., 344; — impl. adv. relation, 345.
preposition comp. with adv., 195 *f*; placed after its compl., 196; understood, 243, 826; — in compl. repl. non-prep. obj., 249 *f*; — as part of prep. obj., 256 *ff*; — fol. by subord. stat., 261, 609, before subord. quest., 261 *ff*, 624 *f*; — before inter. pron., 263; — before substantive cl., 264, 634 *f*; — dispensed with, 327 *ff*, 903, 952, 979, 981, 983; — in combin. with part., 514; — in end-position, 777; before ger., 871 *ff*, 952, 979, 981.
prepositional object, 256 *f*; — dispensed with before subord. stat., 258 *f*; — containing ger. or inf., 873 *ff*.
present participle comp. with ger., 505, 903, 952, 979, 981, 983; — in funct. of prep., 969, 971, 980; in funct. of conj., 972; — comp. with inf., 986 *ff*; — placed before ac., 987.
proper name, 282.
prosiopesis, 575.
protasis, 45.
pseudo-object, 180 *f*, 194, 217.
putative future, 48.

recurrency implied by shall or will, 42; — expressed by *can*, *use* and *will*, 83 *ff*.
redundancy, 38.
redundant object, 177 *f*, 217.
reflexive pronoun sup., 3, 7, 12, 25, 377 *f*, 807, 808; — as redundant obj., 178; — as sham obj., 201 *f*.
reflexive verbs equiv. to intrans., 202.
rejected (-ing) condition, 45, 694.
relative pronoun where placed, 390, 533; — left out, 776; — in part. cl., 978, 982.
repeating pronoun, 169 *f*.
repetition of subj., 169 *ff*, 277, 843; — of non-prep. obj., 211 *f*.

- restrictive 268, 640, 966, 994.
 rhetorical question, 383.
 rhythm its synt. influence, 497, 506, 572.
- secondary predicate, 341.
 semantic decline of verbs, 3—30.
 sham-object, 197 *ff.*
 sham-subject, 129 *ff.*
 shifting of subject see: change of subject.
 shifting of preposition, 470 *ff.*
 specializing genitive, 299 *f.*
 split-infinitive, 462.
 stressing of pronoun in imper. sent. with a subj., 107 *f.*; — influencing the use of *to do*, 110.
 style its influence on word-order, 497 *f.*
 subject to be supplied from context, 148 *f.*; — dispensed with, 999 *ff.*
 subjective verbs, 132, 509.
 subjunctive, 49, 74, 380 *f.*
 subordinate statement, 137, 247, 258 *ff.*, 551, 608—622; — incorporated in adnom. cl., 643.
 subordinate question, 137, 261 *ff.*, 551, 624—632; — prec. by appos. *of*, or by *as to*, 293 *f.*; — comp. with substantive cl., 636 *f.*
 subordination, 544; — varying with co-ordination, 717.
 substantive clause, 137, 264, 551, 634—637; — comp. with subordin. quest., 636 *f.*
 substantive use of gen., 129; — of pos. pron., 129.
 syndetic connexion, 549.
 tense in temp. cl. and head-cl. compared, 668; — in head-cl. and inf. cl. comp., 778 *f.*
 thing-object, 176; — where placed 214 *ff.*, 425 *f.*
 transitive verbs conv. into intrans., 3, 6; — not adm. of pas. conv., 13; — in Dutch corresp. to intrans. in Eng., 195; — in causative mean., 227, 230, 246.
 transposition of appellative and proper name, 294 *ff.*
- undeveloped clause, 316, 341, 506, 551, 998.
- verbs expr. sense-impression, 6; — den. certainty, or uncertainty, 31; — of asking or requesting, 194 *f.*; — with two non-prep. obj., 217 *ff.*; — with (pronoun + inf. or subord. stat., 247 *ff.*; — requir. *to*-compl. 251 *ff.*; — with two non-prep. obj. in Dutch, 254 *ff.*; — dispensing with antic. prep. obj., 258 *f.*; — with antic. prep. obj., 259 *f.*; — of dif. constr. with com. obj., 265; — expres. adv. relation, 330 *f.*, — of incomplete pred., 340; — den. a perceiving or discovering, 351; — den. a judging, declaring, or revealing, 353, 767 *ff.*; — constr. with pred. adn. adj., 354 *ff.*
 verbal predicate, 2.
- word-order, 105 *f.*, 107, 196, 203, 212 *f.*, 277, 340, 381, 383, 387—540, 545.
 word-sentence modifier, 334, 445 *ff.*

INDEX OF WORDS, ETC.

ENGLISH.

- a (prep.) a weakening of *in*, or *on*, 21, 955, 983, 987, 990: — a weakening of *of*, 326.
- a as pref of adj., 495.
- abhor with ger. or inf., 858.
- abide approach. to cop., 342.
- ability with *to* + inf. or *at* + ger., 939.
- able (adj.) in *to be able*, 93.
- able (suf.), 491.
- about where placed, 417 *ff*; — in combin. with pas. inf., 526; — before subord. quest., 625; — with ger. or inf., 871 *f*, 874 *ff*; — in attrib. ger.-cl., 933 *ff*; — opening adv. ger.-cl., 956; — with (pro)noun + ger., 960 *f*.
- abominate with ger., 864.
- above in comp. with past part., 520; — with ger., 872.
- absolute impl. adv. rel., 332; — after noun, 488.
- absorbed with *in* + ger., 899.
- abstain with *from* + ger., 893.
- acause vulgar for *because*, 682.
- accept with pred. *for*, 373.
- accessory with *to* + ger., 916.
- acclaim with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 355.
- accord (verb) requir. *to*-compl., 251.
- accord (noun) in *of one's own accord*, 326.
- according as in adv. cl. of alternative agreement, 751.
- accordingly as causal conj., 602 *f*.
- according to as prep., 969.
- account (noun) in *to have it by all accounts*, 209.
- account (verb) with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 355.
- accredit requir. *to*-compl., 251; — with *with*-compl., 251, 930; — with *with* + ger., 930.
- accuse with *of* + ger., 906.
- accustomed in *to be accustomed*, 88, 927; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf. 927.
- ache with *to* + inf., 879.
- acknowledge requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *as* or *for*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 355 *f*; — with ac. + infin., 795; — with reflex. pron., 807; — with ger., 849.
- acquit with *of* + ger., 906.
- act (verb) dispensing with predic. *as*, 347.
- act (noun) in *in the act of* + ger., 909; — in *in (the) act to* + inf., 909.
- adapted with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 888.
- addicted with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 927.
- additional after noun, 488.
- address with *to* + ger., 913.
- addressed after noun, 518.
- adjure with (pro)noun + inf., 247.
- adopt with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 373.
- administer with two non-prep. obj., 210.
- admire with pred. adn. adj., 356.
- admit with (pro)noun + inf., 247; requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with ac. + infin., 356, 795; — in nomin. + infin., 818; — with ger., 849; —

- with *of* + ger., 906; — with *to* + ger., 913.
 admitted before noun, 517.
 adore with ger., 849.
 advance with two non-prep. obj., 219.
 advert with *from* + ger., 894.
 advertise with (pro)noun + subord. stat., 247.
 advise with (pro)noun + inf., 247; — with pos. pron. + ger., 251, 960; — with *of*-compl., 255; — before subord. quest., 262; — in nom. + inf., 820; — with ger., 855.
 advocate with ger., 849.
 affair placed after prop. name, 299.
 affairs replacing indef. *it*, 131; — fol. by adj., 491.
 affect constr. with inf., 769, 857.
 affecting before noun, 517.
 affirm requir. *to*-compl., 252; — constr. with subord. stat., 768; — with ac. + inf., 795.
 afford with two non-prep. obj., 219; — with inf., 857.
 afore in comp. with past part., 520; — vulgar for *before*, 670.
 afraid dispensing with anticip. prep. object., 258; — with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 817; — with *about*, or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 876, 907; — with *of* + (pro)noun + ger., 961.
 after opening adv. ger.-cl., 951.
 after all as advers. conj., 593, 596.
 after (that) in temp. cl., 670 *f*.
 after which in temp. cl., 679.
 again where placed, 451 *f*; — in dif. mean., 451 *f*.
 against in prep.-compl., 221; — with (pro)noun + ger., 960.
 against (that) opening temp. cl., 670.
 age with or without appos. *of*, 293.
 agitated with *at* + ger., 880.
 agree dispensing with anticip. prep. obj., 258; — with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 900; — with *to* + inf., 920.
 agreeable constr. with *for* or *to*, 183.
 Ah me! as ellipt. sent., 1003.
 aid (verb) with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 900.
 ail with dif. subj., 152.
 aim with *to* + inf., 793, 883; — with *at* + ger., 883.
 alarm with *for* + ger., 939.
 alarmed with *at* + ger., 880.
 albe in adv. cl. of concession, 712.
 albeit in adv. cl. of concession, 712, 715.
 alike ... and in copul. co-ordin., 579.
 alive before noun, 496.
 all (number) gathering up members of comp. subj., 171, 277; — with, or without part. *of*, 302, 334; — impl. adv. relation, 333 *f*; — as head-word of appos., 302, 334; — where placed 334, 528 *ff*; — before pos. pron., 335; — in sent. opening with *so*, 399; — after pos. pron., 836; in *all things considered*, 974 *f*; in *all things being equal*, 975.
 all (quantity) with *of*, 315, 334; — impl. adv. relation, 334; — in *all and all*, 568; — in adv. cl. of concession, 714; — in *all being well*, 973.
 all (conj.) in adv. cl. of concession, 707 *f*.
 all (adv.) before pred. nom. in adv. cl. of concession, 710.
 allege with ac. + infin., 795.
 alleged before noun, 517.
 allot with two non-prep. obj., 219 with *to* + ger., 913.
 allow with two non-prep. obj., 219; — with (pro)noun + *to be*, 356; — with ac. + inf., 795, 800, 813, 814; — in nomin. + inf., 818, 820; — with *for* + (pro)noun + ger., 961.
 allowance with two non-prep. obj., 209.
 allowed in *to be allowed*, 58, 96.
 all the same where placed, 444.
 allude with *to* + ger., 913.
 Almighty after noun, 403.
 almost where placed, 428, 429.
 alone causing invers., 392; — where placed, 445, 447.
 aloof before noun, 496.
 also where placed, 445 *f*; — in neg. combin., 573 *f*; — as copul. conj., 580.

- alternative** in *to have no alternative*, 64.
- although** in adv. cl. of concession, 707 *f*.
- altogether** where placed, 452; — in dif. mean., 452.
- always** where placed, 434 *ff*; — before or after *provided(-ing)*, *supposing*, or *saving*, 703.
- ambition** with *to* + inf. or *of* + ger., 940.
- amiss** in *to take amiss*, 210.
- amount** with *to* + ger., 913.
- amuse** with *by*, *in*, or *with* + ger., 886, 930.
- amused** with *with* + (pro)noun + ger., 961.
- an** before subord. quest., 627.
- and** con. two nouns forming adv. adj., 427; — comp. with *while*, 544, 557; — together with other co-ord. conj., 549, 540, 558; — in a variety of applications, 556 *ff*; — between two adj. or adv., 567 *f*; — instead of *in*, 568; — instead of *by*, 569; instead of (*up*)*on*, 569; — a rhythmical insertion, 572; — before adn. cl., 642; — between two verbs, 955 *f*; — before nom. abs., 977.
- an(d)** in adv. cl. of condition, 694 *f*; — in adv. cl. of concession, 707 *f*.
- angry** with *at*, or *for* + ger., 890.
- a-nights**, 326.
- announce** requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with pred. *as*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 356; — in nomin. + infin., 818.
- annoyed** with *at* + ger., 880.
- anoint** with pred. adn. adj., 376.
- another** such = *such another*, 537 *f*.
- answer** with two non-prep. obj., 209; 209; — with anticip. prep. obj., 259; — not with ac. + inf., 809; with *for* + ger., 889.
- anticipate** with ger., 849; — with (pro)noun + pres. part., 988.
- antipathy** with *to* + ger., 934.
- anxiety** with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 941.
- anxious** with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 806.
- any more than** as substitute for *nor* (*neither*), 574, 746.
- anything** fol. by adj., 316, 490; — fol. by *of*, 336.
- anything but** before adj., 502.
- ape** (verb) with ger., 849.
- appear** not a cop., 4; — as part of compl. pred., 31; — with dif. subj., 161 *f*; — furn. with pers. adj. with *to*, 162; — in *should* (or *would*) *appear*, 163.
- appellation** with appos. *of*, 291.
- apply** with *to* + ger., 913.
- apologize** with *for* + ger., 889.
- apology** with *for* + ger., 939.
- apparent** after noun, 484.
- apparently** comp. with *to appear*, 4.
- appoint** with two non-prep. obj., 209; — with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 273; — with ac. + infin., 799.
- apportion** with two non-prep. obj., 209.
- apprehend** with pred. adn. adj., or (pro)noun + *to be*, 356; — with (pro)noun + ger., 791; — with ac. + infin., 795.
- apprehensive** with *of* + ger., 906.
- apprise** with *of*-compl., 255; — dispensing with anticip. prep. obj., 258.
- approach** (verb) with *to* + ger., 914.
- approach** (noun) with *to* + ger., 948.
- approve** with pred. adn. adj., 356, 808; — with reflex. pron., 808.
- apt** in *to be apt at* + ger., 885; — with *to* + inf., 885, 920.
- aptitude** with *to* + inf., 941.
- argue** with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 356.
- arise** with *from* + ger., 893.
- arm** in *arm-and-arm*, 568.
- arrange** with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 815, 816; — with *for* + ger.-cl., 815.
- arranged** in *to be arranged*, 50.
- arrangement** with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 825, 826; — with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 941.
- arrive** with *at* + ger., 884.
- arrogate** requir. *to*-compl., 252.

- article** fol. by appos. *of*, 289.
- as** (conj.) fol. by antic. *it*, 145; — in adv. cl. without subj., 149; — in contin. cl., 149, 398; — equiv. to *which* or *what*, 149; — var. with *to be* or *for*, 206; — in *as it is* (or *was*), 329 *f*, 726; — as pred. conj., 345, 347 *ff*, 729, 821, 984; — comp. with Dutch *a ls*, 347 *f*; — approach. to **as it were**, 349; — den. a relation of cause, 349; — in group-prep., 388; — not in front-pos., 390 *f*, 407, 408; — in cl. with invert. word-order, 398 *f*, 407; — comp. with *for*, 545; — in subord. stat., 609; — prec. inter. adv., 629; — after antec. *same*, 646; — after antec. *such*, 647 *ff*, 735, 747; — after determ. *that* (or *the*), 650; — vulgarly replac. rel. pron., 651; — as component part of adverb. conj., 657, 661, 677, 680, 687; — in adv. cl. of place, 658 *f*; — in adv. cl. of time, 661 *ff*; — after the main word(-group) of the pred., 681, 709 *f*, 726; — in adv. cl. of cause, 680 *f*, 688, 726; — in adv. cl. of concession, 709 *f*, 726; — repl. by *that*, 710, 728; — in adv. cl. of quality, 718 *ff*; — approach. to *as if*, 720, 732; — in *as who should say*, 720; — approach. to *as it were* (*as*), 720; — var. with *which*, 724; — var. with *so*, 724; — var. with *nor* or *neither*, 725; — approach. to *as well as*, 725; — approach. to *and*, 725; — approach. to *while*, 725; — approach. to *in the manner as*, 725; — after anteced. *so*, 735, 747; — instead of *that*, 735, 755; — in adv. cl. of degree, 738 *ff*, 747; — liable to be taken in the meaning of *if*, 741; — in *as I live!*, 741; — instead of *than*, 746; — in adv. cl. of alternative agreement, 750 *f*; — in adv. cl. of proportionate agreement, 751 *f*; — in adv. cl. of restriction, 753; — before prep., 754; — before *how*, or *why*, 754; — in *as boys* (etc.) *go*, 755; — prec. by *but*, 755; — in infin.-cl., 788, 842 *f*; — before *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 823; — before ger., 842; — before part., 984, 991.
- as** (adv.) influencing place of indef. art., 534 *ff*; — as anteced. of conj. *as*, 726, 741 *f*; — instead of *so*, 749.
- ascertain** in nom. + inf., 820.
- as early as** as prep. or conj. phrase, 743.
- as far as** as prep. or conj. phrase, 743, 756, 758.
- as far back as** as prep. or conj. phrase, 743.
- as for** before prominent elem. of sent., 388.
- ashamed** with *of*, *about*, or *at* + ger., or *to* + inf., 907.
- as if** after *to seem*, 164; — in adv. cl. of quality, 731; — in inf.-cl., 788.
- ask** with two non-prep. obj., 219; — with *at-*, *for-*, *from-*, or *to-*compl., 219 *f*; — with ac. + inf., 800; — with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 816.
- aslant** after noun, 495 *f*.
- as late as** as prep. or conj. phrase, 743.
- aleep** in comp., 496.
- as long ago as** as prep. or conj. phrase, 743:
- as (or so) long as** in adv. cl. of time, 673, 677, 744.
- as much as** fol. by inf.-cl., 789.
- as (or so) often as** in adv. cl. of time, 177 *f*, 744.
- aspire** with *at* + ger., 884; — with *to* + inf., 884.
- as regards** (or **respects**) before prominent elem. of sent., 388, 754.
- assert** in nomin. + infin., 818.
- as (or so) soon as** in adv. cl. of time, 678 *f*, 744.
- assign** with two non-prep. obj., 220.
- assist** with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 900 *f*.
- assistance** with *in* + ger., 945.

- assume** with (pro)noun + *to be*, 356 *f*;
— with ac. + inf., 795.
- assure** with (pro)noun + subord.
stat., 247.
- as that** instead of *that*, 735.
- as though** after *to seem*, 164; — in
adv. cl. of quality. 731; — in inf.-cl.,
788.
- as to** before subord. quest., 294, 625;
— before prominent elem. of sent.,
388; — fol. by ger., 958; — before
(pro)noun + ger., 964.
- astonished** with *to* + inf., 889.
- astonishment** with *at* + ger., 938; —
with *at* + (pro)noun + ger., 962.
- as what** in adv. cl. of degree, 745.
- as well** standing with *may*, 95.
- as well as** as copul. conj., 581.
- at** in prep. compl., 220, 224; — before
names of parts of the day, 323,
326; — forming unit with fol. noun,
376; — before subordin. quest.,
626; — opening adv. ger.-cl., 951,
956; — with (pro)noun + ger., 961.
- at least** in rectifying stat., 598 *f*.
- at once** ... and in copul. co-ord., 579.
- at one time** (moment, etc.) ... **at**
another time (moment, etc.) in
copul. co-ord., 585.
- attach** with *to* + ger., 914.
- attempt** (verb) in double pas. constr.,
821; — with ger. or inf., 859.
- attempt** (noun) with *of* + ger. or *to*
+ inf., 937.
- attend** with *to* + ger., 914.
- attention** in *to pay attentions*, 236.
- attest** with (pro)noun + *to be*, 357;
— with ac. + inf., 795.
- at the risk of** with ger., 958.
- at the same time** as copul. conj., 581.
- at the same time that** in adv. cl. of
attendant circumstances, 735, 737.
- at times** ... **at times** in copul. co-
ordin., 585.
- attribute** with *to* + ger., 914.
- at which** in temp. cl., 679.
- at work** with pres. part., 904.
- ought** fol. by *of*, 315.
- authority** in *to have it on good*
authority, 209; — with *for* + ger.
or *to* + inf., 941.
- authorize** with *to* + inf., 917.
- avail** with or without *to do*, 111.
- averse** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf.,
927 *f*.
- aversion** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf.,
948.
- avoid** with ger. or inf., 850.
- avow** with pred. adn. adj., or with
(pro)noun + *to be*. 357; — with
ac. + inf., 795, 806; — with reflex.
pron. + *to be*, 806.
- avowed** before noun, 527.
- award** with two non-prep. obj., 220.
- aware** dispensing with anticip. prep.
obj., 258; — before (prep. +) sub-
ord. quest., 263; — with *of* + ger.,
906.
- back** (noun) in *to turn one's back*
(*up*) *on a man*, 245.
- back** (adv.) where placed, 417 *ff*.
- back again** in two mean., 451.
- backward** with *in* + ger., 957.
- badger** (verb) with *into* + ger., 904.
- bail** in *to go bail*, 329.
- banish** with two non-prep. obj., 220.
- baptize** with pred. adn. adj., 375.
- bar** with two non-prep. obj., 220.
- bar** as imper. with prep. or conj.
function, 972.
- bare-foot(ed)**, 322.
- bare-head(ed)**, 322.
- barely** in head-cl. of temp. cl., 666.
- barring** as prep., 971.
- barring that** in adv. cl. of exception,
760 *f*.
- bate** with two non-prep. obj., 221.
- bating** as prep., 671.
- battle** (verb) in *to battle it out*, 200.
- bay** prec. by *at* or *to*, 377.
- be** as copula 2, 4 *f*, 766; — added
to other cop. 5, 10, 18, 23, 25, 26;
— assum. ingres. asp., 5; — cor-
resp. to Dutch *worden* 5; — var.
with *to go*, 8, *to make*, 11 *f*, *to*
fight. 18; — as aux. of pas. voice,
17; — as modal verb, 32; — den.

- constraint, 49 *ff*; — var. with *should*, 50 *f*; — var. with tense-aux., 51; — comp. with *to have* and *must*, 52 *f*; — comp. with *ought* or *should*, 53, 55; — comp. with *shall*, 53; — approach. to *will*, 54; — var. with *may* or *can*, 54, 55; — in the mean. of *to be allowed*, 54 *f*; — approach. to a copula, 55; — replac. *shall*, 74; — not constr. with weak *to do*, 101; — constr. with *to do*, 115; — in sent. with anticip. *it*, 140 *f*; — dispensed with 202 *f*, 547, 752 *f*, 802, 807, 808, 809, 811, 821, 1001; — var. with *as* or *for*, 206, 353 *ff*; — after verbs of perceiving, or discovering, 351; — after verbs of judging, declaring, or revealing, 353 *ff*; — impl. purpose, 373; — approach. to *to mean*, 766; — in the mean. of *to consist*, 898; — with *in* + ger., 898.
- bear** with two non-prep. obj., 221; — with (pronoun + ger., 791; — with ac. + past part., 814; — with ger. or inf., 859.
- beautiful** after noun, 494 *f*.
- because** in adv. cl. of cause, 681 *f*, 688; — comp. with *for*, 545, 682; — in adv. cl. of purpose, 682, 690; — fol. by *that*, 682; — mutilated into *acause* or *cos*, 682 *f*.
- because of** opening adv. ger.-cl., 953.
- beckon** with (*to* +) (pronoun + inf., 247, 815, 854.
- become** as copula, 2, 22; — as aux. of pas. voice, 30; — comp. with *to be chosen*, 341.
- been** fol. by *and*, 564.
- been and gone** fol. by *and*, 564.
- befall** without anticip. *it*, 148.
- before** (prep.) opening adv. ger.-cl., 952.
- before** (conj.) after *it was* + pred., 167; — var. with *when*.
- before that** opening adv. cl. of time, 670 *f*.
- beg** with two non-prep. obj., 221; — with *at*, *for*, or *from*-compl., 221; — with inf.-cl., 766 *f*, 854; — with ac. + inf., 800; — with subord. stat., 815; — with *for* + (pronoun + inf., 816.
- begin** with ger. or inf., 859; — with *by* + ger., 885.
- beginning** with as group-prep., 972.
- begudge** with two non-prep. obj., 222; — with pos. pron. + ger., 251.
- beguile** with *into* + ger., 904.
- behold** with (pronoun + inf., 792, 794; — with (pronoun + pres. part., 985.
- behave** den. constraint, 64, 70; — without antic. *it*, 148; — with dif. subj., 152.
- being** after noun, 518; — sup., 674, 980, 994.
- being that** as conj., 687 *f*.
- believe** with pred. adn. adj., or with (pronoun + *to be*, 357; — with subord. stat., 767, 809; — with ac. + inf., 795; — in nom. + inf., 818; — in double pas. constr., 821; — with *in* + ger., 897.
- belike** as modal adv., 35.
- bend** dispensing with pred. *as*, 347.
- bent** with (*up*)*on* + ger., or *to* + inf., 79, 912.
- be out** fol. by adv. ger., 955.
- bequeath** with two non-prep. obj., 222.
- beseech** with two non-prep. obj., 222.
- beseem** without antic. *it*, 148.
- beside(s)** opening adv. ger.-cl., 956; — before (pronoun + ger., 964.
- beside** where placed, 443; — as cop. conj., 580.
- besides that** in adv. cl. of attendant circumstances, 735, 737.
- bespeak** with pred. adn. adj., 357.
- bestir oneself** with *in* + ger., 897.
- bestow** with two non-prep. obj., 222; — with (*up*)*on*-, or *in*-compl., 223, 255.
- betake oneself** with *to* + ger., 916.
- beteem** with (pronoun + inf., 247.
- betoken** with (pronoun + *to be*, 357; — with ac. + infin., 798.

- betray with (pro)noun + *to be*, 357; — with ac. + inf., 798.
- better in *had better*, 67, 153 *ff*; — in var. loc., 160.
- better-advised with *in* + ger., 957.
- between opening adv. ger. cl., 951.
- beverage fol. by appos. *of*, 290.
- beware before subord. quest., 262; — with *of* + ger., 906.
- beyond with ger., 872, 958; — opening adv. ger.-cl., 951; — in adv. cl. of exception, 762.
- bid with two non-prep. obj., 223; — fol. by inf., 540; — with inf.-cl., 769; — with ac. + inf., 800; — in *to bid fair to* + inf., 888.
- bide as cop., 18.
- billed in *to be billed*, 52.
- billion with, or without *of*, 312.
- bind with *to* + inf., 917.
- blame with pred. *as*, 357; — with *for* + ger., 889; — with *to* + inf., 889; — with pos. pron. + ger., 889.
- blow with two non-prep. obj., 223.
- blush approach. to cop., 342; — with *at* + ger., 879.
- boast (verb) with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 357; — with subord. stat., 768; — with reflex. pron. + *to be*, 806; with ger., 850.
- boast (noun) in *to make a boast of* + ger., 910.
- bode with two non-prep. obj., 223.
- bodkin in *to sit (ride, etc.) bodkin*, 348.
- book with or without appos. *of*, 291.
- boot without antic. *it*, 148.
- born (*to be*) dispensing with pred. *as*, 347.
- born before, or after noun 517, 521.
- born and bred (or brought up) before, or after noun, 521.
- both gathering up members of comp. subj., 277; — with, or without part. *of*, 302, 334; — as head-word of appos., 302, 334; — where placed, 334, 530 *f*; — before pos. pron., 335; — in sent. opening with *so*, 399; — after pos. pron., 836.
- both ... and in copul.co-ordin., 579; — varying with *whether ... or*, 717 *f*.
- bound in *to be bound* 62, 67, 69, 165, 329, 920.
- bound (inf.) with *to* + ger., 914.
- brand with *for*, 350; — with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *as*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 357.
- brave (verb) in *to brave it out*, 197.
- brazen (verb) in *to brazen it out*, 200.
- break in *to break out*, 201; — fol. by anticip. *it*, 208; — requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with *into* + ger., 905.
- to breed with prep. adn. adj., with pred. *as* or *for*, or (pro)noun + *to be*, 374.
- bribe with *to* + inf., 917.
- to bring in *to bring it far*, 197; — with two non-prep. obj., 223; — with pred. adn. adj., 372; — with *to* + inf., 793, 917.
- bring in with two non-prep. obj., 223.
- bring up with (pro)noun + *to be*, 374.
- brink in (*up*)*on the brink of* + ger., 909.
- broach requir. *to*-compl., 252.
- broadly in shortened partic.-cl., 970.
- brook with ac. + inf., 813; — with ger. or inf., 860.
- bulk as cop., 6.
- burst out fol. by adv. ger., 955.
- business in *to have no business*, 69; — with *to* + inf., 950.
- busy with *in* or *with* + ger., 899, 930; — with pres. part., 904.
- but (adv.) occasioning the use of *to do*, 112 *f*; — causing invers., 392.
- but (conj.) as advers. conj., 548, 590, 592, 593 *f*; — together with other co-ordin. conj., 549, 594; — fol. by *then (also)*, 594; — in subordin. stat., 609 *f*; — in adnom. cl., 646, 652 *f*; — in adv. cl. of time, 655, 670 *ff*; — in adv. cl. of condition, 698 *ff*; — in adv. cl. of attendant circumstances, 735 *f*; — after a

- compar., 670, 746; — in adv. cl. of degree, 760; — in adv. cl. of exception, 759; — in inf.-cl., 789; — before *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 824.
- but that** in subordin. stat., 609 *ff*;
— in adnom. cl., 646, 652 *f*;
— in adv. cl. of condition, 698; — in adv. cl. of attendant circumstances, 736 *f*;
— in adv. cl. of degree, 750; — in adv. cl. of exception, 760 *f*.
- but what** in subordin. stat., 609 *f*;
— in adnom. cl., 646, 662 *f*;
— in adv. cl. of condition, 699.
- by** (adv.) where placed 417 *ff*.
- by** (prep.) after part., 510; — opening adv. ger.-cl., 952; — dropped before ger., 953, 982; — before (pro)noun + ger., 963, 982.
- by consequence** as causal conj., 602, 604.
- by far** before or after compar., 428.
- by how much** as correl. of *by so much*, 753.
- by a long way** before or after compar., 429.
- by (a) long chalk(s)** before or after compar., 429.
- by reason (that)** in adv. cl. of cause, 685.
- by that** in adv. cl. of time, 672; — in adv. cl. of cause, 684.
- by then** in adv. of time, 675.
- by the time (that)** in adv. cl. of time, 672.
- by way of opening** adv. ger.-cl., 954.
- by what** comp. with *for what*, 758.
- calculate** with (up)on + ger., 911.
- calculated** with *for* + ger., 888; — with *to* — inf., 888.
- call** with two non-prep. obj., 223; — with pred. adn. adj., 357, 839; — fol. by *and*, 563; — with (up)on + (pro)noun + inf., 815, 821; — with *to* + (pro)noun + inf., 854.
- called for** with *for* + ger., 889; — with *to* + inf., 889.
- called upon** with *to* + inf., 917.
- called upon** in *to be called upon*, 67, 821.
- can** as modal verb, 32 *f*;
— var. with *to be*, 64; — in *cannot but* + inf., 64; — den. recurrency, 83 *f*;
— den. capability, 89 *ff*;
— den. permission, 97 *f*;
— in *cannot away with*, 1002.
- capable** in *to be capable*, 94; — with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 907.
- capacity** with *for* or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 941.
- care** with or without *to do*, 111, 114; with subordin. quest., 262; — with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 816; — with *about* + ger., 837, 874; — with *for* + ger., 874, 889; — with *to* + inf., 874 *f*;
— with *about* + (pro)noun + ger., 960 *f*.
- careful, -less** before subordin. quest., 262; with *about* or *in* + ger., 877; with *to* + inf., 877.
- carry** fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 197; — with two non-prep. obj., 223 *f*.
- cast** in *to cast in one's teeth*, 208; — with two non-prep. obj., 224; — with *at*-compl., 224.
- cast** (part.) after noun, 518.
- catch** fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 197; — with two non-prep. obj., 224; — with (pro)noun + pres. part., 900.
- cause** (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 224; — with ac. + inf., 793, 810; — with ac. + pas. inf., 810; — with subordin. stat., 810.
- cause** (noun) with *of* + (pro)noun + ger., 962.
- caution** with (pro)noun + inf., 248; — with *against* + ger., 878; — with *to* + inf., 878.
- cautious** with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 903.
- cavalry** prec. by num., 286.
- cease** with ger. or inf., 860, 893; — with *from* + ger., 893.
- cede** requir. *to*-compl., 152.
- censure** with pred. *as*, 357 *f*;
— with *for* + ger., 889.

- certain** in *to be certain*, 39, 57, 164 *f*;
— fol. by inf., *that* cl., or *of* +
ger., 165; — after noun, 493.
- certainly** in *to know certainly*, 364 *f*,
449; — announcing contrasting
stat., 596.
- certainty** in *for (of, or to) a certainty*,
166, 326; — in *to know for a
certainty*, 364.
- certify** with (*to*) + (pro)noun + sub-
ord. stat., 248; — with pred. adn.
adj., with pred. *as*, or with (pro)noun
+ *to be*, 358.
- chance** (verb) as part of compl. pred.,
31, 330; — without antic. *it*, 148;
— expres. adv. relation, 330 *f*;
— with (pro)noun + pres. part.,
989.
- chance** (noun) with *for (or of)* + ger.,
or *to* + inf., 941 *f*; — with *of* +
(pro)noun + ger., 962.
- change** (verb) fol. by *into*, 376.¹
- charge** (noun) in *to have it in charge*,
207; — with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf.,
947.
- charge** (verb) with two non-prep. obj.,
224; — with with-compl., 224, 930;
— with *to* + inf., 224, 931; — with
with + ger., 930 *f*.
- charming** before noun, 504.
- chary** with *of* + ger., 906.
- chide** with *for* + ger., 889.
- chief** (adj.) favouring post-pos. of
adj., 490.
- choice** in *of one's own choice*, 326.
- choose** in *cannot choose but* + inf.,
64; — with pred. adn. adj., with
pred. *as* or *for*, or with (pro)noun
+ *to be*, 374; — with ac. + inf.,
799; — with subord. stat., 811; —
with inf., 857.
- christen** with pred. adn. adj., 358.
- chuck** fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 198;
— with ger., 850.
- circumstance** before subordin. stat.
- claim** (verb) with *to* + inf., 769, 920.
- claim** (noun) in *to lay claim with to*
+ ger. or *to* + inf., 926; — with
to + ger. or *to* + inf., 948 *f*.
- clan** dispensing with appos. *of*, 287 *f*.
- classifying**, 268.
- clever** with *at* + ger., 885.
- close** (verb) with *with* + ger., 930;
— with *with* + (pro)noun + ger.,
961.
- coax** with *into* + ger., 904.
- coerce** with *into* + ger. or *to* + inf.,
904.
- coin** fol. by appos. *of*, 290.
- combine** with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf.,
901; — with *to* + inf., 920.
- come** as cop., 22 *f*; 982 *f*; — furn.
with *to be*, 23; — as part of
complex pred., 35; — approaching
to to happen, 114, 560; — not
constr. with *to do*, 114; — *in to
come it strong*, 199; — with cogn.
obj., 328; — dispensing with predi-
cating *as*, 347; — in *for many
years to come*, 525 *f*; — fol. by
and, 559, 781; — construed with
inf.-ci., 772. 983; — as auxil. of
aspect, 772; — in *come to pass*,
773; — with *from* + ger., 893; —
with *of* + ger., 906; — with *to* +
ger., 914; — fol. by pres. part.,
982 *f*.
- come out** with dif. subj., 162.
- comedy** with or without appos. *of*,
291.
- comfort** constr. with *to*, 186.
- command** (noun) in *to have it in
command*, 207.
- command** (verb) with two non-prep.
obj., 224; — fol. by *to* + infin., 224;
— with ac. + inf., 800, 814; — in
double pas. constr., 820.
- coming** after noun, 518.
- commence** dispensing with pred. *as*.
347; — with ger. or inf., 860; —
with *at* + ger., 886.
- commission** with (pro)noun + *to* +
inf., 248, 854, 917.
- commit** requir. *to*-compl., 252.
- committed** with *to* + ger., 916.
- communicate** requir. *to*-compl., 252.
- companion** constr. with *for* or *to*,
185.

- compare with *to* + ger., 914.
 compel with *to* + inf., 917.
 compensation with *for* + ger., 939.
 competence with *to* + ger., 939.
 complain with *for* + ger., 889; — with *of* or *at* + ger., 906.
 compliment (noun) in *to pay* (or *make*) a compliment, 234.
 compliment (verb) with (*up*)*on* + ger., 811.
 concede with two non-prep. obj., 224.
 conceive with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *as*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 358; — with (pro)noun + pres. part., 988.
 concern with *at* + ger., 938; — with *in* + ger., 945.
 concerned after noun, 518; — with *at* + ger. or *to* + inf., 880.
 concerning as prep., 969.
 conclude with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 358; — with ac. + inf., 795; — with *at* + ger., 886.
 concur with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 901.
 condemn with ac. + inf., 795; — with *to* + inf., 917.
 descend with *to* + inf., 920.
 condition in *to be in a condition*, 94.
 conditionally that in adv. cl. of condition, 701.
 conduce with *to* + ger., 914.
 confer with *on*-compl., 255.
 confess requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 358; — construed with subord. stat., 768; — with ac. + inf., 795; 807, 914; — with or without reflex. pron., 807, 808; — with *to* + ger., 914.
 confide requir. *to*-compl., 252.
 confine with *from* + ger., 894; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 921.
 confined with *to* + ger., 916.
 confound in *Confound it!*, 199.
 confronting as prep., 980.
 confused with *at* + ger., 880.
 congratulate with (*up*)*on* + ger., 911.
 conjecture with (pro)noun + *to be*, 358; — with ac. + inf., 795.
 conjure with (pro)noun + inf., 248.
 conscience in *to find (it) in one's conscience*, 209.
 conscious dispensing with anticip. prep. obj., 258; — fol. by (prep. +) subord. quest., 263.
 conscript before or after noun, 484.
 consecrate requir. *to*-compl. 252; — with *to* + ger., 914.
 consent with *to* + inf., 920.
 consequence with *of* + ger., 946.
 consequently where placed, 444; — in causal co-ord., 602 *f.*
 consider with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *as*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 358 *f.*; — with ac. + inf., 795; — with subord. stat., 809; — with *about* + ger., 875.
 considering in shortened part.-cl., 970; — as prep., 971; — in *considering all (things)*, 975.
 considering that as group-conj., 687, 972.
 consist with *in* + ger., 897; — with *in* + (pro)noun + ger., 961.
 conspire with *to* + inf., 920.
 constitute with pred. adnom. adj., 376.
 constrained in *to be constrained* (= *must*), 63.
 construe with pred. adn. adj. or with pred. *as*, 359; — with ac. + inf., 795.
 contemplate with ger., 850.
 contemplation in *to have it in contemplation*, 207.
 content oneself with *by* (or *with*) + ger. or *to* + inf., 931.
 content (adj.) with *with* (or *in*) + ger., or *to* + inf., 931.
 contest with *against*- or *with*-compl., 255.
 contiguous after noun, 519.
 continue as cop., 18; — furn. with *to be*, 18; — in combin. with pres. part. or ger., 21; — in combin. with inf., 21; — as part. of complex pred., 31.

- contrariwise** as adverb. conj., 591 *f.*
contrary in *to the contrary*, 758.
contribute with *to* + inf., 920.
contrive with inf., 857.
convenient constr. with *for* or *to*, 183.
conversely where placed, 442; — in adverb. co-ord., 591.
convey requir. *to*-compl., 252.
co-operate with *in* + ger., 903.
corporate after noun, 484.
correct with *in* + ger., 957.
cos vulgar for *because*, 683.
cost with *of* + ger., 946.
couchant after or before noun, 488.
could as modal verb, 32 *f.*; — den. recurrency, 83 *f.*; — den. capability, 89 *f.*; — den. permission, 97 *f.*; — used from motives of modesty, 97.
counsel with (pro)noun + inf., 248; — with pos. pron. + ger., 251.
count with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as* or *for*, 358; — with (*up*)on + (pro)noun + infin., 816, 821.
counting as prep., 971.
county with or without def. art. and dispensing with appos. *of*, 289.
craze with *for* + ger., 939 *f.*
crown with pred. adn. adj., 376.
create with two non-prep. obj., 224; — with pred. adn. adj., 372.
credit (noun) in *to take credit for* + ger., 890.
credit (verb) with *with* + ger., 930.
crime fol. by appos. *of*, 290.
cry (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 224 *f.*; — with inf.-cl., 771; — with *at* + ger., 879.
cry (noun) fol. by appos. *of*, 286.
cry out constr. with inf.-cl., 769.
cure with *of* + ger., 906.
curiosity with *to* + inf., 940.
curious with prep. + subord. quest., 262; — fol. by *to know*, 262.
current in combin. with var. verbs, 8; — after noun, 484.
curse with pred. *as*, 359.
custom in *of custom*, 327.
cut assuming pas. mean., 6, — fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 198; — in *to cut short*, 539.
damned in exclam., 1004.
danger with *of* + ger., 936; — with *of* + (pro)noun + ger., 962.
dare as part of compl. pred., 31, 99 *f.*; — in *I dare say* 99 *f.*, 329; — in *I dare answer* (*swear*, or *think*), 99; constr. with and without *to do*, 115 *f.*; — with *to* + inf., 917.
darling assum. nature of adj., 284.
date with or without appos. *of*, 293.
dating from as group-prep., 972.
day fol. by appos. *of*, 293; — in gen., 321.
dazed with *at* + ger., 880.
dead in *to be dead*, 5.
dead and gone before or after noun, 521 *f.*
deal (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 225.
deal (noun) in *a great* (or *good*) *deal*, 429.
dear after noun, 493; — in certain exclam., 1003.
death in *to death*, 376.
debar with two non-prep. obj., 225; — with *from-* or *of*-compl. 225; — with *from* + ger., 884.
decide with (*up*)on + ger. or *to* + inf., 912; — with *to* + inf., 917.
decided with (*up*)on + ger. or *to* + inf., 912.
declare requir. *to*-compl., 252; — in *to declare war* with *against-* or (*up*)on-compl., 255; — with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *for*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 359; — constr. with subord. stat., 768; — with ac. + inf., 795; — dispensing with reflex. pron. and *to be*, 808; — in nomin. + inf., 819.
declared before noun, 517.
decline replacing *will not*, 80; — with ger. or inf., 860.
dedicate requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with *to* + ger., 914.
dedicatory after noun, 484.

- deem with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*. 359.
- defer with ger. or inf., 850.
- defy with *to* + inf., 918.
- degree in comb. with appos., 314.
- deign with two non-prep. obj., 225; — with *to* + inf., 920.
- deliberation in *of set deliberation*, 326.
- delay with ger. or inf., 861.
- delight (verb) with dif. subj., 152; — with *at* (or *in*) + ger., or *to* + inf., 879, 901.
- delight (noun) in *to take (a) delight in* + ger., 879, 898; — with *in* + ger., 934.
- delighted with *at* + ger. or *to* + inf., 880,
- deliver with two non-prep. obj., 225; — requir. *to*-compl., 252.
- demand with inf., 857.
- denote with pred. adn. adj., 359.
- denounce with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 359 *f*.
- deny with two non-prep. obj., 225; — with (pro)noun + *to be*, 360; with ac. + inf., 795; — with ger., 849.
- depend with antic. prep. obj., 259; — with prep. + subord. stat., 261; — with (*up*)on + (pro)noun + infin., 816; — with (*up*)on + ger., 911; with (*up*)on + (pro)noun + ger., 951.
- depict with (pro)noun + pres. part., 988.
- depose with *from* + ger., 894.
- deprecate with ger., 850.
- deride with pred. *as*, 360.
- describe requiring *to*-compl., 252; — with pred. *as*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 360; — in nomin. + inf., 819; — with *as* + pres. part., 991.
- descry with (pro)noun + pres. part., 985.
- deserve with ger. or inf., 861.
- design (noun) in *of set design*, 326.
- design (verb) with *to* + inf., 820; — with ger. or inf., 861.
- designate (verb) with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 360.
- designate (adj.) after noun, 484.
- designation with or without appos. *of*, 291.
- designing before noun, 517.
- desire (noun) with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 947.
- desire (verb) replacing *will*, 79; — — with ac. + inf., 799; — with subord. stat., 811.
- desirous with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 907.
- desist with *from* + ger., 893.
- despair with *of* + ger., 906.
- despatch with two non-prep. obj., 225.
- despite that in adv. cl. of concession. 711.
- destine with *to* + infin., 793, 820.
- destined in *to be destined*, 50, 52; — before noun, 517.
- detail (verb) requir. *to*-compl., 252.
- detect with *in* + ger., 897.
- deter with *from* + ger., 894.
- determine with (pro)noun + *to be*, 360; with ac. + inf., 795; — with (*up*)on + ger. or *to* + inf., 912; — with *to* + inf., 918.
- determined in *to be determined* with *to* + inf. or (*up*)on + ger., 79, 913.
- detest with ger. or inf., 861; — with (pro)noun + pres. part., 989.
- devote with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 921 *f*.
- dictate requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with ac. + inf., 800.
- die dispensing with pred. *as*, 347.
- differ with *in* + ger., 957.
- different(ly) ... *from* (or *to*) var. with *other(wise)* ... *than*, 734 *f*. 896; — with *from* + ger., 896.
- different ... *than* catachrestic use of, 734 *f*, 896.
- difficult constr. with *for* or *to*, 183.
- difficulty with *in* + ger., 957.
- dimissory after noun, 484.
- direct (verb) with (pro)noun + inf., 248; — with ac. + inf., 800, 915;

- with *to* + ger., 914; — with *towards* + ger., 920.
- direct** (adj.) after noun, 495.
- directly** (that) in adv. cl. of time, 675.
- disable** with *from* + ger., 894.
- disagreeable** with *for* or *to*, 183.
- disappointed** with *at* or *in* + ger., 880 *f*; — with *to* + inf., 881.
- disappointment** with *at* + ger., 938.
- discern** with ac. + inf., 794.
- disclaim** with ger., 849.
- disclose** requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with (pro)noun + *to be*, 360.
- disconcerted** with *at* + ger., 881.
- discourage** with *from* + ger., 894.
- discover** requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with ac. + inf., 794, 798; — in nomin. + inf., 818.
- disdain** with ger. or inf., 861.
- disguise** with *from*-compl., 254.
- disgusted** with *at* + ger., 861.
- disinclination** with *for* (or *of*) + ger., or *to* + inf., 942, 949.
- dislike** (verb) with ac. + inf., 800; — with ger. or inf., 864.
- dislike** (noun) with *of*-, *for*-, *to*-, or *at*-compl., 935, 948.
- dispense** with *from* + ger., 894.
- displeased** with *at* or *with* + ger., 881.
- disposition** with *to* + inf. or *towards* + ger., 950.
- dispute** with two non-prep. obj., 226; — with *to*- or *with*-compl., 226, 255.
- distance** in combin. with appos., 314.
- dismiss** with two non-prep. obj., 226.
- dispatch** with two non-prep. obj., 225 *f*.
- dispense** with *with* + ger., 930.
- disposed** with *to* + inf., 920.
- distaste** with *for* + ger., 940.
- distribute** with *in* + ger., 897.
- diversity** with *in* + ger., 957.
- divine** after or before noun, 484.
- divulge** requir. *to*-compl., 252.
- do** as part. of compl. pred., 31, 100 *ff*; — in neg. sent. or cl. with *not*, 101 *ff*; — with ger., 101, 856; — repres. a whole cl., 104; — in sent. with (*un*)*til*(*t*), 104; — in sent. with invert. word-ord., 107 *fj*; — in imper. sent. with a subj., 107 *f*; — in cond. cl. without a conj., 108; — in declar. sent. opening with adv. adj., obj. or pred. adn. adj., 109 *f*; — in con. with *to avail. to care, to matter, and to signify*, 111; — used for the sake of the metre or rhythm, 112; — in Early Mod. Eng., 113; — irregularities, 113 *f*; in the strong form, 120 *ff*; — as verbum vicarium, 123 *f*, 169, 719; in *to do well*, 201; — with two non-prep. obj., 326; — gov. compl. with *for*, 226 *f*; — with pred. adn. adj., 372; — with ac. + inf., 793, 810.
- dole out** with two non-prep. obj., 227.
- doom** with two non-prep. obj., 227; — with pred. adn. adj., 36; — in nom. + inf., 819; — with *to* + ger., 915.
- double** impl. adv. relation, 333 *ff*; — fol. by part. *of*, 335.
- doubt** (verb) not constr. with *to do*, 114; — furn. with redund. *me*, 179; — with inf.-cl., 770; — with ger., 849.
- doubt** (noun) in *to have* or *make no doubt of* + ger., 910; — with *as to* + (pro)noun + ger., 962.
- down** (adv.) where place, 417 *ff*; — in combin. with part., 513 *f*.
- dozen** with or without *of*, 301, 305 *ff*.
- draw** in *to draw it mild*, 198; — in *to draw lots* before subord. quest., 261.
- drawn** after noun, 518.
- dread** furn. with redund. *me*, 179; with ger. or inf., 861; — with ac. + pres. part., 989.
- dream** with *of* + ger., 906.
- drive** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 922; — with (*up*)*on* + ger., 922.
- drop** with two non-prep. obj., 227; — with ger., 850.
- dry foot**, 322.

- dub with pred. adn. adj., 372.
 due in *to be due*, 52; — after noun, 495.
 dupe with *into* + ger., 905.
 during as prep., 975 *f*.
 during which in adv. cl. of time, 679.
 dwell dispensing with pred. *as*, 347.
 dwindle approach. to cop., 342.
- each where placed, 531.
 each time (that) in temp. cl., 672.
 early days, 321 *f*.
 early times, 322.
 earn with two non-prep. obj., 227; — with *for*-compl., 227.
 ease in *to set at ease*, 376.
 easy constr. with *for* or *to*, 183 *f*.
 eat assum. pas. mean., 6.
 effect with *of* + ger., 934.
 effort with *to* + inf., 941.
 either its gram. funct., 549; — in end-pos., 576 *f*; — in altern. adverbs. co-ordin., 597 *f*; — as conj., 598.
 either ... or replacing *neither ... nor*, 576, 598; — var. with *both ... and*, 598; — var. with *whether ... or*, 708.
 eke where placed, 442; — in copul. co-ord., 580.
 elated with *at* + ger., 881.
 elect (verb) with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as* or *for*, 374; — with inf., 857.
 elect (adj.) after noun, 484 *f*.
 else in adv. phrase with *all*, 332; — where placed, 443; — in adverbs. co-ord., 600; — fol. by *than* or *but*, 759.
 embarrassed with *at* + ger., 881.
 employ with *in* + ger., 897; — with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 901; — with pres. part., 903.
 employed with *in* + ger., 899.
 empower with *to* + inf., 918.
 enable with *to* + inf., 918.
 enclose with two non-prep. obj., 227.
 encourage with ger., 850.
 end (verb) with *by*, *in*, or *with* + ger., 886; — with *with* + ger., 930; — with *in* + (pro)noun + ger., 961.
 end (noun) with *of* or *to* + ger., 948.
 endeavour with *to* + inf., 857, 884; — with *at* + ger., 884.
 endure with (pro)noun + ger., 791; with ac. + inf., 813; — with ger. or inf., 862.
 enemy with *to* + ger., 917.
 engage with pred. *as*, 374; — with *for* + ger., 887; — with *to* + inf., 887.
 engaged with *in* + ger., 899; — with pres. part., 904.
 enjoin with two non-prep. obj., 227; — with *from*-, (*up*)*on*- or *to*-compl., 227, 894; — fol. by *to* + inf., 227; with *from* + ger., 894.
 enjoy with ger. or inf., 862.
 enlarge with (*up*)*on* + subord. quest., 262; — fol. by *into*, 376.
 enlist with pred. *as*, 377.
 enough constr. with *to*, 183; — where placed, 427 *f*, 528; — fol. by inf.-cl., 786.
 enraged with *for* + ger., 890.
 enroll with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 374.
 ensuing before or after noun, 519.
 ensure with two non-prep. obj., 228; — with pred. adn. adj., 360.
 entail with ger., 850.
 enter with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 374 *f*.
 entice with *into* + ger. or *to* + inf., 905; — with *to* + inf., 918.
 entirely where placed, 429.
 entitled in *to be entitled* (= *ought*), 68; — with *to* + inf., 920.
 entreat with (pro)noun + inf., 248, 854; — in nom. + inf., 820; — with ger., 855.
 entrust requir. *to*-compl., 252; — with *with*-compl., 252.
 envy with two non-prep. obj., 228; — with *for*-compl., 228; — with ger., 855.
 epithet fol. by appos. *of*, 291.

- equal** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 928.
equally in copul. co-ord., 580.
equally ... and in copul. co-ordin., 579.
equivalent with *to* + ger., 916.
ere after *it was* + pred., 167.
ere (that) in adv. cl. of time, 670.
erect requir. *to*-compl. 253; — after noun, 488.
errant after or before noun, 485.
escape with ger., 850, 893; — with *from* + ger., 893.
essential with *to* + ger., 916.
esteem with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 360 *f*; — in nomin. + inf., 819.
estop with *from* + ger., 894.
eternal after noun, 488.
evade with ger., 850.
eve in (*up*)*on* or *at the eve of* + ger., 909.
even before identifying word(-group), 271; — where placed, 446; — in copul. co-ord., 502; — as intensive before *as*, 722.
ever in combin. with part., 513; — after *or*, 671; — before *since*, 676; — as part of adv., 713.
everlasting after noun, 489.
everything fol. by adj., 316, 490.
every time (that) in adv. cl. of time, 672.
exasperate with *into* + ger. or *to* + inf., 905.
exasperated with *for* + ger., 891.
exceedingly where placed, 428.
excel with *at* + ger., 884.
except as conj., 705, 759; — before inf.-cl., 790; — before (pronoun), 971.
excepted after (pronoun), 971.
excepting in inf.-cl., 790; — as prep., 971.
except that in adv. cl. of exception, 760.
excite with ger., 851.
exclaim with *against* + ger., 878.
exclusive impl. adv. relation, 332.
excuse (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 228; — with *for-*, *from-*, or *in-*compl., 228 *f*; — with ger. constr., 229, 837; — with *for* or *in* + ger., 891; — with pos. or pers. pronoun + ger., 891; — with *if*-cl., 892; — with *from* + ger., 892.
excuse (noun) with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 942.
exhort with *to* + inf., 918.
expect with ac. + inf., 796; — dispensing with reflex. pron., 807; — with subord. stat., 809; — in nom. + inf., 819; — in double pas. constr., 821; — with ger. or inf., 862.
expectant after noun, 485.
expel with two non-prep. obj., 229; — with ger.-compl. with *from*, 229.
expend with *in* + ger., 897.
experience with *in* + ger., 945.
experienced with *in* + ger., 899.
explain requir. *to*-compl., 253.
expound requir. *to*-compl., 253.
express requir. *to*-compl., 253; — with pred. *as* (+ *being*), 361.
extant after noun, 495.
extend requir. *to*-compl., 253.
extol with pred. *as*, 361.
extraordinary after noun, 485.
exult with *at* or *in* + ger., 879; — with *to* + inf., 879.
fable (verb) in nom. + inf., 819.
face in *to look in the face*, 193, in *to set one's face against* + ger., 878.
facility with *for* or *in* + ger., 940.
facing as prep., 969, 980.
fact in *to know as* (or *for*) *a fact*, 364; — in *the fact is (that)*, 605; before subordin. stat., 619; — with *of* + ger., 946.
faculty with *for* (or *of*) + ger., or *to* + inf., 942.
fail in *cannot fail*, 64; — with *in* (or *of*) + ger. or *to* + inf., 901 *f*.
failing fol. by (pronoun), 974 *f*, 977; — as prep., 975.
fain mod. *must*, 61; — in *to be fain*, 63, 920; — mod. *would*, 331.

- fair** after noun, 493.
fall approach. to cop., 23 *f*, 342; — with *to* + ger., *to* + inf., pres. part., or proclitic *a* + ger., 24, 922 *f*; — furn. with *to be*, 25; — as auxil. of aspect, 773.
family fol. by appos. *of*, 287; — placed after prop. name, 296.
fancy (verb) with pred. adn. adj., or with (pronoun) + *to be*, 361; — with subord. stat., 767, 851; — with ac. + inf., 796; — with ac. + pres. part., 988.
fancy (noun) with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 942; — with *for* + (pronoun) + ger., 962.
far before or after compar., 428.
fare as pers. or impers. verb, 133, 151.
far from before adj., 502.
fast-asleep before noun, 496.
fated in *to be fated*, 52.
favour with *of* + ger., 934.
fear (verb) furn. with redundant *me*, 179 *f*; — with ac. + inf., 801; — with ger. or inf., 862.
fear (noun) with *of* + (pronoun) + ger., 962.
feast with or without appos. *of* 293.
feel as cop., 3, 6 *f*; — with and without refl. pron. 7; — of uncertain gram. stat., 16; — replacing *to be*, 17; — with pred. adn. adj., or with (pronoun) + *to be*, 361; — with ac. + inf., 794, 987; — with ac. + past part., 803; — with subord. stat., 804; — in nom. + inf., 818; — with ger., 851; — with ac. + pres. part., 985.
feign with refl. pron., 361; — with inf., 857.
female after noun, 485.
fetch with two non-prep. obj., 229.
few impl. neg., 109, 392 *f*; — prec. by indef. art., 301; — causing invers., 392 *f*.
fie in *Fie upon you!* 1004.
fight in *to fight shy*, 18; — in *to fight it out*, 197 *f*.
figure fol. by *of* + num., 285 *f*.
fill with two non-prep. obj., 229.
finally in copul. combin., 583.
find in *to find (it) in one's heart (mind, or conscience)*, 209; — with two non-prep. obj., 229; — with *for*-compl., 229; — as verb of discovering, 351; — as verb of judging, 361, *f*; — with ac. + inf., 794; — in nom. + infin., 818; — with (pronoun) + pres. part., 985.
fine (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 229; — gov. compl. with *in* 229.
finish with ger. or inf., 851; — with *by* + ger., 886.
firm fol. by appos. *of*, 287.
first (adj.) fol. by *of*, 336, *f*.
first (adv.) where placed, 453, 538; — in dif. mean., 453; — in copul. co-ord., 583; — in *in the first place (or instance)*, 583 *f*; — fol. by inf. cl.; 786.
firstly in copul. co-ord., 583.
fit (verb) with *for* + ger., 890; — with *to* + inf., 918.
fixed after noun, 518.
flash with two non-prep. obj., 229.
fling in *to fling in one's teeth*, 208; — with two non-prep. obj., 229.
flush approach. to cop., 3, 329.
fly with non-prep. obj., 328.
following before or after noun, 519; — as prep., 969, 980.
fond with *of* + ger., 906.
foolish with *in* + ger., 957.
foot prec. by num., 287; — in comb. with appos., 314.
for (prep.) + (pronoun) repl. pseudo-obj., 181; — var. with *to*, 181 *ff*, 221, 228; — + (pronoun) fol. by inf., 183, *ff*; — var. with *to*, *as*, or *to be*, 206, 349 *f*; — in prep.-compl., 220, 221, 222, 223, 227, 228, 229, 816; — as predicating word, 350, *f*; — dimly den. relation of purpose, 350, 373; — dimly den. relation of cause, 350; — after *to give up*, 350; — in expres. den. contempt or praise, 350; — in the mean. of *as for*, 388; — before *to* + infin., 782, *f*, 871; — before (pronoun) + infin., 816, 821 *ff* 959; — replacing other

- prep., 817, 824; — in the mean. of *incumbent on*, 824; — with *ger.*, 872; — in attrib. *ger.-cl.*, 933 *f*; — opening adv. *ger.-cl.*, 953, 956; — before (pro)noun + *ger.*, 963.
- for** (conj.) as co-ordin. conj., 548, 602, 605; — comp. with *as* or *because*, 545, 682; — as subordin. conj., 685, 692.
- for all that (or this)** in adverbs. co-ord., 593, 596.
- for all (that)** in adv. cl. of concession, 711.
- for aught (all, anything, or what)** in adv. cl. of restriction, 757.
- forbear** with *ger.* or *inf.*, 862, 893; — with *from* + *ger.*, 893.
- forbid** with two non-prep. obj., 230; — with *for-*, *from-*, or *to*-compl., 230 + 894; — with pos. pron. + *ger.*, 251; — with *ac.* + *inf.*, 800; with *ger.*, 854; — with *from* + *ger.*, 894.
- force** (noun) in *of force*, 326.
- force** (verb) with *into* + *ger.* or *to* + *inf.*, 905.
- forced** in *to be forced* (= *must*), 64.
- foreigner** assum. funct. of *adj.*, 28.
- foremost** with *in* + *ger.*, 957.
- foretell** with two non-prep. obj., 230.
- for fear (that)** in adv. cl. of cause, 686 — in adv. cl. of purpose, 692 *f*.
- forget** with *inf.*, 857.
- forgive** with two non-prep. obj., 230; — with *for* + *ger.*, 891; — with pos. or pers. pron. + *ger.*, 892; — with *if-cl.*, 892; — with *to* + *inf.*, 892.
- forgiveness** with *for* + *ger.*, 940.
- for me** = *for my part*, 738.
- for my part** comp. with Dutch *voor mijn part*, 758.
- for one thing ... for another** in copul. co-ordin., 585.
- forsomuch as** in adv. cl. of cause, 687.
- forswear** with *inf.-cl.*, 770, 849, — with *ger.-cl.*, 849.
- for that** as subordin. conj., 609, 684 *f*, 692.
- for the purpose of opening** adv. *ger.-cl.*, 954.
- for the sake of opening** adv. *ger.-cl.*, 954.
- for why** in adv. cl. of cause, 685.
- fort** dispensing with appos. *of*, 289.
- forward** with two non-prep. obj., 230.
- frankly** in shortened part.-cl., 970.
- free will** in *of one's own free will*, 326.
- frenzy** in *to put in a frenzy*, 376 *f*.
- friend** with *to* + *ger.*, 917.
- frighten** with *from* + *ger.*, 894; — with *into* + *ger.*, 905.
- from** in compl., 219, 221, 222, 225, 229, 230; — with *ger.*, 872; — opening adv. *ger.-cl.*, 951, 952, 953; — before (pro)noun + *ger.*, 963.
- full** as adv., and as *adj.*, 335.
- funk** in *to funk it*, 200; — with *ger.*, 851.
- furnish** with *with*-compl., 255.
- further** where placed, 443, 466; — in copul. co-ord., 500.
- furthermore** where placed, 443; — in copul. co-ord., 580.
- further than** fol. by *inf.-cl.*, 789.
- fury** in *to set in a fury*, 376 *f*.
- gain** with two non-prep. obj., 230 *f*; — with *for*-compl., 231.
- galore** after noun, 528.
- game** fol. by appos. *of*, 290.
- gather** with two non-prep. obj., 231; — with *for*-compl., 231.
- get** as cop., 3, 25; — furnished with *to be*, 25; — furnished with refl. pron., 25; — as auxil. of aspect, 25, 773; — as auxil. of pas. voice, 30; — as part of compl. pred., 31; — with *to* + *inf.*, 25, 29, 793, 918, 923; — with two non-prep. obj., 231; — with *to* + *ger.*, 923; — with pres. part., 923; — absorbed by adv. of place, 1002.
- general** after noun, 485.

- generally where placed, 453; — in dif. mean., 453.
- german after noun, 485.
- gift with *for* or *of* + ger., 942.
- give archaic *for to misgive*, 153; — fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 198; — with two non-prep. obj., 231; — with pred. *as* or *for*, 362; — with *to* + ger., 915.
- given in *to be given*, 88, 928; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 928; — after noun, 518; — as prep., 976.
- give out with pred. *as* or *for*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 362; — with ac. + inf., 796, 806; — with refl. pron. + *to be*, 806.
- give over with ger. or inf., 851.
- give up fol. by *for*, 350; — with ger., 851; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 916.
- glad with *of* (*at*, or *for*) + ger., or *to* + inf., 908.
- gladness with *at* + ger., 938.
- glory with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 902.
- go approach. to copula, 3, 8, 955; — assum. ingres. asp., 8 *f*; — var. with *to be*, 8; — in combin. with past part. 8; — in *How goes it?*, 114; — fol. by *it* by way of obj., 199; — with cogn. obj., 328; — dispensing with pred. *as*, 347; — fol. by *and*, 561 *f*, 782; — in *as boys* (etc.) *go*, 755; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 923, 930; — in *to go far* (or *a long way*) with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 925 *f*; — with *towards* (or *to*) + ger. or *to* + inf., 930; — fol. by adv. ger., 955; — fol. by pres. part., 983; — in *Here goes*, 1001; — absorbed by adv. of place, 1002.
- good with *into* + ger., 905.
- going in *to be going*, 81, 782; — after noun, 518, 967; — in part.-cl., 970.
- gone after noun, 494.
- good (adj.) after noun, 406; — in *good men and true*, 499; — in *good-for-nothing*, 500; — with *at* + ger., 885; — with *for* + ger., 888; — with *to* + inf., 888; with *in* + ger., 957.
- good (noun) in *it (there) is no good* + ger., 844 *f*.
- good-bye in *Good-bye to* etc., 1004.
- go off fol. by adv. ger., 955.
- gone as prep. or adv., 976.
- go on with *ing*-form, 21; — with inf., 21; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 926.
- got after *to have*, 56.
- go out fol. by adv. ger., 955.
- government placed after prop. name, 296.
- graduate with pred. adn. adj., 378.
- grant with two non-prep. obj., 231; — with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 362; — with ac. + inf., 796; — as imper. + *that* with conj. force, 973.
- granted in partic. cl., 970.
- granting in partic.-cl., 970.
- granting that as group-conj., 972, 976.
- gratitude with *for* + ger., 940.
- greet with pred. adn. adj., 362.
- grief with *at* + ger., 938.
- grieve with dif. subj., 152; — with *at* + ger., 874; — with *to* + inf., 879.
- groan with *at* + ger., 879.
- ground with *for* + ger., 940.
- grow as cop., 3, 26; — furn. with *to be*, 26; — approach. to cop., 28 *f*, 342; — in comb. with inf., 29, 773; — fol. by (*in*)*to*, 29; — as part of compl. pred., 31; — as auxil. of aspect, 773.
- grow up dispensing with pred. *as*, 343.
- grudge with two non-prep. obj., 231; — with ger. or inf., 862.
- grumble with *at* + ger., 879.
- guarantee with two non-prep. obj., 231 *f*; — with ac. + inf. 796.
- guard in *to be on one's guard against* + ger., 878.
- guess with pred. adn. adj., with pred.

- for*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 362; — with ac. + inf., 796.
- guiltless with *of* + ger., 906.
- guilty with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 906 *f*.
- habit in *to be in the habit*, 89.
- had var. with *would* in *had rather*, etc., 157.
- had best with inf., 67, 155 *ff*, 856.
- had better with inf., 67, 155 *ff*, 856; — with pas. inf., 159.
- had as good with inf., 155 *ff*, 856.
- had as soon with inf., 155 *ff*, 856.
- had as well with inf., 155 *ff*, 856.
- had as lief (or lieve) with inf., 155 *ff*, 856.
- had liefer (or liever) with inf., 155 *ff*, 856.
- had like with perf. inf., 166 *f*.
- had need with inf., 67, 856.
- had rather with inf., 67, 155 *ff*.
- had sooner with inf., 155 *ff*.
- hail (verb) with pred. adn. adj., or with *as* or *for*, 363.
- hail (noun) in *Hail to* etc. 1004.
- half with or without *of*, 303; — impl. adv. relation, 333 *f*; — where placed, 429.
- half . . . half in copul. co-ordin., 585.
- half (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 232.
- hand (noun) in *hand and glove*, 568 *f*; — *to try one's hand at* + ger., 884; — in *a good (clever, etc.) hand at* + ger., 885.
- hang as cop., 5, 18 *f*.
- hanged in exclam., 1004.
- haply as modal adv., 35.
- happen as part of compl. pred., 31; — contr. from *it may happen*, 35; — with dif. subj., 160 *f*; — expres. adv. relation, 330 *f*.
- happy with *at* or *in* + ger., 881; — with *to* + inf., 881.
- hard constr. with *for* or *to*, 183 *f*; — in *hard of hearing*, 500, 957.
- hardly impl. neg., 109, 392 *f*; — causing inversion, 392 *f*; — where placed, 431 *f*, 453 *f*; — in dif. mean., 453 *f*; — in head.-cl. of temp. cl., 666.
- hark'ee, 108.
- hate with ger. or inf., 863.
- have den. constraint, 52, 55 *f*; — comp. with *to be*, 52; — furn. with *got*, 56; — comp. with *must*, 56, 57, 62, 777 *f*; — approach. to *to need*, 56, 67; — in *to have no call (or occasion)*, 67; — in *there is no call (or occasion)*, 67; — constr. with or without *to do*, 101, 118 *f*; — fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 198; — in *to have it on good authority (or by all accounts)*, 209; — in *to have (got) it in one's eye (mind, head or thoughts)*, 209; — approach. to *to see*, 352, 791, 803; — fol. by pred. adn. adj., 352 *f*, 791, 984; — fol. by *as, for, or to*, 353; — with (pro)noun + infin., 777 *f*; — with ac. + inf., 791, 794 *f*, 804 *f*; — with ac. + past part., 803, 805, 984; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 923; — with ac. + pres. part., 986.
- have done with ger., 850.
- hazard prec. by *at* or *to*, 377.
- he as anticip. subj., 139, 275.
- head in *to have (got) it in one's head*, 209; — in *to take it into one's head*, 210; — in *to take it amiss (ill, etc.)*, 210.
- hear with two non-prep. obj., 232; — fol. by inf., 540, 769; — with ac. + inf., 794, 987; — with ac. + past part., 803; — with subord. stat., 804; — in nomin. + infin., 818; — with *of* + (pro)noun + ger., 961; — with ac. + pres. part., 985, 987.
- heart in *to set one's heart*, 79; — in *to find (it) in one's heart*, 209; — in *to take it to heart*, 210.
- help (verb) in *cannot help*, 64, 843, 863; — in *to help forward*, 539; — in *cannot help but* + inf., 863; — in *cannot help oneself from* + ger., 863, 894; — with *at* or *in* + ger., 884, 902 *f*; — with *to* + inf., 884, 902; — with (pro)noun + pres. part., 884, 903; — with inf. not prec. by *to*, 903; — with (pro)noun + ger., 960, 990.

- help** (noun) with *in* + ger., 945; — with *to* + ger., 948.
- hence** as caus. conj., 602 *f*.
- here** in *Here goes!*, *Here begins!* 1001.
- hesitate** fol. by (prep. +) subord. quest., 262; — with *about*, as *to*, *at*, *in*, or *on* + ger., 875, 903; with *to* + inf., 875, 903; — as trans., 875.
- hesitation** with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 945 *f*.
- high glee** in *in high glee at* + ger., 883.
- hinder** with ac. + inf., 801, 894; — with *from* + ger., 864.
- hint** requir. *to*-compl., 253.
- hit** in *to hit it off*, 198; — with two non-prep. obj., 232; — with *at*-compl., 232.
- hold** approach. to cop., 3, 19; — with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *as* or *for*, or with (pronoun + *to be*, 363, 376; — with ac. + inf., 796; — with *from* + ger., 893.
- hold out** with two non-prep. obj., 232.
- hold up** with pred. *as*, 363.
- honour** in *bound in honour*, 69; — constr. with *to*, 186; — in *honour bright*, 493.
- hope** (verb) with ac. + inf., 801; — in double pas. constr., 821; — with inf., 857.
- hope** (noun) with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 947.
- horse** prec. by num., 287.
- hotel** dispensing with appos. *of*, 288.
- house** fol. by appos. *of*, 287 *f*.
- how** influencing place of indef. art., 534; — introducing subordin. quest., 629; — fol. by *that*, 629; — in adv. cl. of concession, 714; — in inf. quest., 774.
- howbeit** as adv. unit, 329; — where placed, 442; — as advers. conj., 544; — in adv. cl. of concession, 712.
- however** as intens. in conc. cl., 407, 713; — influencing place of indef. art., 534.
- however** (conj. adv.) where placed, 444; — in advers. co-ord., 593 *f*.
- however** (conj.) in adv. cl. of concession, 711, 715.
- howsoever** in advers. co-ord., 594; — as intens. in conc. cl., 713; 715.
- howsomdever** in advers. co-ord., 594; — in adv. cl. of concession, 713.
- hundred** with or without *of*, 308 *f*.
- hung** before noun, 517.
- hunger** as verb, 135.
- hurry** (noun) in *in a hurry for* + (pronoun + infin., 816.
- hurry** (verb) with *about* + ger., or *to* + inf., 875.
- hurt** with *at* + ger., 881.
- I** dispensed with, 999.
- ible** (suf.), 491.
- idea** fol. by appos. *of*, 290, 962; — in *to have no idea of* + ger., 910; — with *of* + (pronoun + ger., 962.
- idealize** with (pronoun + *to be*, 363; — with ac. + inf., 796.
- if** in adv. cl. of condition, 32, 695 *ff*, 707; — not in front-pos., 391; — before subordin. quest., 627 *f*; — approach. to *as* or *since*, 696; — approach. to final *that*, 696; — approach. to *in like manner as*, 696; — approach. to *so sure as*, 696; — in var. idioms, 696; — in idle wish, 697; — understood, 697; — in adv. cl. of concession, 710 *f*, 715; — in adv. cl. of disjunctive concession, 716.
- if so be (that)** in adv. cl. of condition, 704.
- if that** in adv. cl. of cond., 697.
- if you please** in dif. mean., 146.
- ignorant** dispensing with anticip. prep. obj., 259; — before subord. quest., 262.
- ill** in *to take it ill*. 210; — with *of*-compl., 255.
- imagine** with pred. adn. adj., or with (pronoun + *to be*, 363, 991; — with subord. stat., 768; — with

- ac. + inf., 796, 806; — with refl. pron. + *to be*, 806; — with refl. pron. without *to be*, 808; — with ger., 851; — with ac. + pres. part., 988.
- immediate** implying adv. rel., 332.
- immediately (that)** in adv. cl. of time, 675.
- immemorial** after or before noun, 485 *f*.
- immortal** after noun, 489.
- impart** requiring *to*-compl., 253.
- impatience** with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 825; — with *to* + inf., 941.
- impatient** with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 816; — with *at* + ger., 881.
- implore** with (pro)noun + inf., 243.
- imply** with (pro)noun + *to be*, 363; — with ger., 851.
- importance** with *of* + ger., 934.
- impose** with two non-prep. obj., 232; — with (*up*)*on*-compl., 232.
- impossible** foreshadowing *should*, 45; — constr. with *for* or *to*, 183 *f*.
- improbable** foreshadowing *should*, 45.
- impute** requir. *to*-compl., 253; — with *to* + ger., 915.
- in** (prep.) before ger., 167, 223, 957; — in prep.-compl., 229; — before names of parts of the day and the names of seasons, 323 *f*; — forming unit with fol. noun, 376; — in the meaning of *into*, 377; — before subordin. quest., 626; — opening adv. ger.-cl., 951, 952; — dropped before ger., 168, 903, 952, 954, 979, 981, 990; — before (pro)noun + ger., 963.
- in** (adv.) where placed. 417 *ff*; — in combin. with part., 513 *f*.
- in** (pref.) as pref. of adj., 491.
- in addition to** opening adv. ger.-cl., 956.
- inasmuch as** in adv. cl. of cause, 688, 744.
- incapable** with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 907.
- incapacitate** with *for* or *from* + ger., 887, 895; — with *to* + inf., 887.
- incarnate** after noun, 486.
- in case (that)** in cond. cl., 701.
- in case of** before (pro)noun + ger., 964.
- incentive** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 949.
- inch** in comb. with appos., 314.
- inclined** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 928.
- inclination** with *for* or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 942, 949.
- inclose** with two non-prep. obj., 227; — gov. compl. with *for*, 227.
- include** with ger., 851.
- included** varying with *including*, 971.
- in consequence** in causal co-ord., 602, 604.
- in consequence of** opening adv. ger.-cl., 953.
- incumbent in to be incumbent on**, 69 *f*.
- indebted** with *for* + ger., 890.
- indeed** where placed, 454 *f*; — in dif. mean., 454 *f*, 596; — as copul. conj., 582; — announcing contrasting stat., 596.
- in degree as** in adv. cl. of proport. agreem., 751 *f*.
- indicate** requir. *to*-compl., 253; — with (pro)noun + *to be*, 363; — with ac. + inf., 798.
- indifferent** before subordin. quest., + 262.
- induce** with *into* + ger. or *to* + inf., 905; — with *to* + inf., 918.
- inevitably** as modal adv., 39.
- in exchange** in advers. co-ord., 591.
- infantry** prec. by num., 286.
- inform** with *of*-compl., 255; — dispensing with anticip. prep. obj., 258.
- in high glee** with *at* + ger., 883.
- in honour of** before (pro)noun + ger., 963.
- in measure as** in adv. cl. of proportionate agreement, 751 *f*.
- in order that** in adv. cl. of purpose, 693.
- in order to** in inf.-cl. of purpose, 782; — before (pro)noun + ger., 963 *f*.
- in part . . . in part** in copul. co-ordin., 585.
- in proportion as** in adv. cl. of proport. agreem., 751 *f*.

- inquiry** fol. by appos. *of*, 186.
in respect that in adv. cl. of cause, 686.
in revenge as adverb. conj., 591.
insinuate requir. *to*-compl., 253.
insist with, or without anticip. prep. obj., 260; — with (*up*)*on* + (pro)-noun + ger., 837, 961, 991; — with (*up*)*on* + ger., 911.
(in) so far as in adv. cl. of restriction, 756 *f*.
insomuch that in adv. cl. of consequence, 689 *f*.
inspire with *in*- or *with*-compl., 254 *f*.
in spite of before (pro)noun + ger., 964.
install with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 375.
instant (adj.) impl. adv. rel., 332.
instant (subst.) in (*the*) *instant* (*that*) 673.
instead of in conj. funct., 738; — opening adv. ger.-cl., 956; — before (pro)noun + ger., 964.
instrumental with *in* + ger., 899.
insure with two non-prep. obj., 232; — with *to*-compl., 232; — with *from* + ger., 895.
intend as substit. for *will*, 81; — with two non-prep. obj., 232; — with ac. + inf., 799; — with subord. stat., 811 *f*; — with ger. or inf., 863.
intending before noun, 517.
intent with (*up*)*on* + ger. or *to* + inf., 913.
intention with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 947.
interdict with two non-prep. obj., 232; — with *from*-compl., 232, 895, — with *from* + ger., 895; — in pas. voice + pres. part., 895.
interest with *in* + ger., 946.
interested with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 903.
interpret with ac. + inf., 796; — in nom. + inf., 819.
in that as subordin. conj., 609, 684, 756.
is the meantime (or *-while*) in adverb. co-ord., 594 *f*.
in the way of opening adv. ger.-cl., 954.
into implying change of state, 376.
introduction with *to* + ger., 948.
intrust requir. *to*-compl., 252, 256; — with *with*-compl., 252, 256.
inveigle with *into* + ger. or *to* + inf., 905.
inviolate after noun, 495.
invite with *to* + inf., 820, 918.
it as indef. pron., 129 *ff*, 140, 150, 276; — instead of *there*, 132; — as anticip. subj. 130 *f*, 136 *ff*, 721, 765, 839, 843, 959; — dispensed with, 134 *f*, 139 *f*, 140, 146, 148, 151, 204 *f*, 261, 1000 *f*; — repres. substant. cl., 137, 139 *f*, 308; — corresp. to Dutch *er*, 137, 140; — repres. inf. cl., 142 *ff*, 145, 202, 275, 765, — after *hence*, etc., 145; — after *as* or *than*, 145; — as repeating subj., 171 *f*; — *as sham-obj., 197 *ff*; — as anticip. obj., 202 *ff*, 258 *ff*, 275, 856; — where placed, 212 *f*; — in prep. obj., 258; — repres. ger. cl., 275; — repres. noun with adj., 276; — in adv. adj., 337; — as subj. of pred. with ger. or inf., 845 *f*; — repres. ger. cl., 959.
it is (or *was*) as introductory word-group, 140, 388, 618, 637.
it is true announcing contrasting stat., 596.
jockey (verb) with *into* + ger., 905.
join with *in* + ger., 897.
joy constr. with *to*, 186; — with *of* + ger., 935, 938.
judge with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 363; — with ac. + inf., 796; — as inf. constituent of adv. cl., 971.
junior after prop. name, 488.
just as adv. 331; — as intens. before *as*, 722.
justified with *in* + ger., 899.
justify with pred. adn. adj., 364; — with ger., 851; — with *in* or *for* +

- ger., 897; — with (pro)noun + ger., 897.
- just the same** in advers. co-ord., 59² 596.
- keep (on)** as copula, 3, 19; — in combin. with pres. part., 21.
- keep** with two non-prep. obj., 232; — with *to-* or *with-*compl., 232 *f*; — with pred. adn. adj., 376; — with *from* + ger., 895.
- kindle** with *to* + inf., 918.
- kindness** with *in* + ger., 957.
- king** assum. funct. of adj., 284.
- knack** in *to have a knack*, 88; — with *at, for (in or of)* + ger., or *to* + inf., 943.
- kneeling** in part.-cl., 970.
- know** not constr. with *to do*, 114 *f*; — with pred. adn. adj., with predic. *as* or *for*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 364; — with ac. + inf., 796, 808 *f*; — with ac. + pas. inf., 806; — with reflex. pron., 808; — with subord. stat., 809; — with *of* + (pro)noun + infin., 816; — in nomin. + infin., 819.
- label** with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 365.
- labour** with *to* + inf., 941.
- lake** dispensing with appos. *of*, 288.
- lapse** with *into* + ger., 906.
- last** fol. by *of*, 336 *f*; — where placed, 494, 538; — fol. by infin.-cl., 786.
- lastly** in co-ord. combin., 583.
- late** with *of* + ger., 957.
- laugh** with *at* + ger., 879.
- laureate** after noun, 486.
- lay** in *to lay it down*, 210; — with two non-prep. obj., 233; — with pred. adn. adj., 372; — in *to lay bare, to rest, or waste*, 539.
- lay out** with *in* + ger., 897.
- lead** with two non-prep. obj., 233; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 923; — with *to* + (pro)noun + ger., 961.
- lean** with *towards* + ger., 930.
- learn** fol. by (pro)noun + pred. adn. adj., 352; — with inf.-cl., 775; — with ger.-cl., 775; — with ger. or inf., 863.
- least** in combin. with pas. inf., 526; — as conj., 691; — in the sense of *unless*, 705.
- leave (noun)** in *to have leave*, 96; — with *to* + inf., 941, 950.
- leave (verb)** fol. by indir. pron. *it* 208; — with two non-prep. obj., 233; — den. qualified causing, 343; — dispensing with predicating *as*, 348; — with inf., 793, 852; — with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 817; — with ger., 852; — with *to* + inf. 918 *f*.
- leave off** with ger. or inf., 851 *f*.
- leaving** in *leaving on one side*, 972.
- left** after noun, 518, 967.
- lend** with two non-prep. obj., 233.
- length** with *of* + ger., 946.
- 'less** in the sense of *unless*, 705.
- lest** in subordin. stat., 614; — in adv. cl. of cause, 683, 691; — in adv. cl. of purpose, 690 *f*; — approach. to *if*, 691; — approach. to *or else*, 691; — as part of adv. conj., 692 *f*.
- lest that** in adv. cl. of purpose, 691.
- let** in hort. sent., 101, 381, 980; — constr. with or without *to be*, 117 *f*; — in *to let blood*, 233; — in *to let loose*, 539; — fol. by infin., 539 *f*, 770, 810; — with ac. + inf., 800, 813, 814; — with adv. of place, 1002.
- let alone** as prep., 976.
- left off** with two non-prep. obj., 233; — with *from-*compl., 233.
- liable** 'in *to be liable*, 88, 928; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 928.
- liberty** in *to set at liberty*, 376.
- lie** approach. to cop. 5, 10, 341, 983; — constr. with part., 10, 983; — with redund. refl. (or pers.) pron., 178 *f*; — fol. by *and*, 564.
- lief (or lieve)** in *had as lief (or lieve)*, 155 *f*.
- liefer (or liever)** in *had liefer (or liever)*, 155 *f*.
- like** (verb) implying recurrency, 88; — with different subj., 152; — expressing adv. relation, 331; —

- with pred. adn. adj., 365; — with (pro)noun + ger., 791, 836; — with ac. + inf., 800; — with ac. + past part., 812; — with subord. stat., 812; — with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 817; — with ger. or inf., 864; — with ac. + pres. part., 989.
- like** (adj.) instead of *likely*, 166; — fol. by perf. inf., 166; — with or without (*un*)*to*, 187 *f*; — with ger. or *to* + inf., 870.
- like** (of uncertain gram. funct.) comp. with *as*, 346 *f*, 718 *ff*; — where placed, 479 *f*; — in adv. cl. of quality, 718 *ff*; — before nominal in *as*-cl., 727 *f*; — approach. to *as if*, 728; — comp. with pred. *as*, 729 *f*.
- like** as in adv. cl. of quality, 730 *f*.
- like** as (*if*) in adv. cl. of quality, 733.
- likely** in *to be likely*, 164.
- likewise** where placed, 444; — as copul. conj., 580.
- liking** with *of-* or *for*-compl., 935.
- line** fol. by appos. *of*, 287; — placed after prop. name, 296.
- lining** as prep., 968.
- list** with dif. subj., 151, 153.
- listen** with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 816; — with *to* + (pro)noun + bare inf., 817.
- little** impl. neg., 109, 392 *f*; — prec. by indef. art., 301 *f*; — fol. by *of*, 315, 336; — fol. by adj., 316; — causing invers., 392 *f*.
- live** dispensing with *as*, 348; — with *by* + ger., 886.
- lo(a)th** in *to be loath* with dif. subj., 153; — with *to* + inf., 920 *f*.
- loathe** with ac. + inf., 800; — with ger., 864; — with ac. + pres. part., 989.
- long** (adv.) where placed, 440, 466.
- long** (verb) with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 816; — with *to* + inf., 920.
- long** since where placed, 440.
- look** as cop., 10; — furn. with *to be*, 10; — comp. with *to seem*, 10 *f*; — constr. with adj. or adv., 11; — as part of compl. pred., 31; — in *to look in the face*, 193; — with or without anticip. prep. obj., 259 *f*; — with *to* + (pro)noun + infin., 815, 992; — with *for* + (pro)noun + infin., 816; — with (*up*)*on* + (pro)noun + infin., 817, 821; — with *at* + (pro)noun + bare infin., 817; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 923 *f*; — with (*up*)*on* + (pro)noun + *as* + pres. part., 991.
- look 'ee!** as exclam., 108.
- look forward** with *to* + ger., 916.
- looking** in certain combin. preceded by *as* or *so*, 535 *f*.
- look upon** with pred. *as*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 365.
- look you!** as exclam., 108.
- lord** (verb) in *to lord it*, 200.
- lose** with two non-prep. obj., 233; — with ger., 852; — with *in* + ger., 897.
- lots** in *to draw* (or *cast*) *lots*, 261; — **ough** dispensing with appos. *of*, 288.
- love** (verb) with ac. + inf., 800; — with ger. or inf., 864.
- love** (noun) with *of-*, *for-*, or *to*-compl., 935; — in *love lost* (or *to spare*) *between* + (pro)noun, 967.
- ly** as adv. suf., 344 *f*, 441, 501.
- mad** in *to drive* (*to make*, or *to send*) *mad*, 373.
- maintain** with (pro)noun + *to be*, 365; — with ac. + inf., 796.
- major** after prop. name, 488.
- make** as copula, 3, 11 *f*; — var. with *to be*, 11 *f*, 13, 234; — with ingres. asp., 12; — not adm. of pas. conv., 12; — absorb. refl. pron., 12; — in *to make it up*, 198 *f*; — in *to make out*, 201; — fol. by antic. *it*, 205; — in *to make it a point* + inf., 205; — in *to make a point of* + ger., 205, 936; — in *to make a point of* + (pro)noun + ger., 961; — with two non-prep. obj., 233 *f*; — in various loc., 233 *f*; — with *to*-compl., 234; — in *to make war* + *against-* or (*up*)*on*-compl., 255.

- with pred. adn. adj., 365, 372, 839; — with *into* + noun, 372; — in *to make clear, glad, public*, 539; — with ac. + inf., 798, 810; — with ac. + *to be*, 810; — with ac. + past part., 810; — in nomin. + infin., 820; — in *to make up one's mind to* + inf., 886; — in *to make shift to* + inf., 386; — in *to make a system of* + ger., 936.
- make believe** with inf. cl., 769.
- make bones** with *about* or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 876.
- make haste** fol. by *and* 563.
- make out** with pred. adn. adj., or with (pronoun) + *to be*, 365; — with ac. + inf., 796.
- make sure** with *of* + (pronoun) + ger., 961.
- male** after noun, 486.
- man** fol. by adj., 491.
- manage** with inf. or ger., 857.
- manifest** with pred. adn. adj., or with (pronoun) + *to be*, 365.
- man and (or or) boy** as pred. adn. adj., 349.
- manual** after noun, 486.
- many** prec. by indef. art., 301 *f*; — fol. by indef. art., 537.
- mark you!**, 108.
- match** in *a (or no) match at* + ger., 885.
- matrimonial** after noun, 486.
- matter** (verb) with inf. or without *to do*, 111; — in *what matters (or mattered)*, 111, 150; — with dif. subj., 151.
- matter(s)** (noun) replac. indef. *it*, 131, 197; — in *as a matter of fact*, 329, 726; — fol. by adj., 491.
- maxim** fol. by appos. *of*, 286.
- may** as modal verb, 34 *f*, 101, 330; 714; — comp. with *perhaps*, 36 *ff*; — as non-modal verb, 36; — varying with *shall*, 42; — comp. with *should*, 46; — var. with *to be*, 54; — den. capability, 90 *ff*; — den. permission, etc., 94 *ff*; — fol. by *as well*, 95; — fol. by *well*, 95; — in adv. cl. of concession, 714; — with adv. adj. of place, 1002.
- maybe** as modal adv., 35, 329.
- mayhap(pen)** as modal adv., 35, 329.
- may** not var. with *must not*, 58, 98.
- me** as redundant obj., 177.
- meal** fol. by appos. *of*, 290.
- mean** as cop. 13 *f*, 847, 864; — as substit. for *will*, 81; — with or without indef. pron. *it*, 201; — with ac. + inf., 799; — with subord. stat., 812; — in nomin. + infin., 820; — con. subj. inf. with pred. inf., 848, 864; — with ger. or inf., 864; — with *by* + ger., 886.
- means** with *for* or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 943.
- meantime** (or *-while*) in advers. coord., 594 *f*.
- measure** with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 943.
- meditate** with ger. or inf., 865.
- mention** requir. *to*-compl., 253; — with ger., 849.
- mercy** in *to cry one mercy*, 224; — in *mercy on me!*, 1004.
- mere** implying adv. relation, 331.
- merely** where placed, 446.
- merit** in *to make a merit of* + ger., 910.
- merry** var. with *merriment*, 12.
- meseems, methinks**, 146, 1001.
- mete (out)** with two non-prep. obj., 234; — with (un)*to*-compl., 234 *f*.
- method** with *for* or *of* + ger., 943.
- might** as modal verb, 34, 714; — den. doubtful capability, 91 *f*; — approaching to *ought*, 95; — used from motives of modesty, 95; — comp. with Germ. *möchte*, 96; — in *that might not be*, 99; — in adv. cl. of concession, 714.
- mile** in comb. with appos., 314.
- militant** after noun, 486.
- military** after noun, 489.
- militia** prec. by num., 286.
- milliard** with or without *of*, 313.
- million** with or without *of*, 310 *f*.
- mind** (verb) den. absence of willingness, 80; — fol. by *and*, 565 *f*; —

- with ger., 566; — with ger. or inf., 865; — with *about* + ger., 876; — with (pronoun) + ger., 960; — in the mean. of *to remember*, 988; — with ac. + pres. part., 989.
- mind you!**, 108.
- mind** (noun) in *to find (it) in one's mind*, 209; — in *to have (got) it in one's mind (head, or thoughts)*, 209; — in *to make up one's mind with for- or to-compl.*, 888, 950; — with *about* + ger., 937, 950; — in *to have a mind with to* + inf., 950.
- mine**, after noun, 526.
- ministry** placed after prop. name, 296.
- minor** after prop. name, 488.
- misgive** with dif. subj., 153.
- miss** with ger., 852; — with ger. or inf., 865.
- mistake** (verb) not constr. with *to do*. 114 *f*.
- moment** in *the moment that*, 673.
- month** fol. by appos. *of*, 293.
- mood** with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 943.
- more** after nouns den. numb. or quant., 313; — fol. by *of*, 336.
- more** by token in adv. cl. of cause, 686.
- moreover** where placed, 444; — in copul. co-ord., 580.
- more than** + adv. before adj., 502.
- moreover than which** in adv. cl. of attendant circumstances, 738.
- moreover that** in adv. cl. of attendant circumstances, 735, 737.
- motion** with (*to* +) (pronoun) + inf., 248; — with inf.-cl., 771.
- motive** with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 943.
- mount** dispensing with appos. *of*, 288 *f*.
- move** dispensing with predicating *as*, 348; — with *to* + inf., 919.
- moved** with *at* + ger., 881.
- much** fol. by *of*, 315. 336; — fol. by adj., 316; — in front-pos., 424 *f*, 429; — divided from its head-word, 430; — in combin. with pas. inf., 526; — as intens. before *as*, 722; as intens. before *as if (or though)*, 732; — with adv. adj. of place, 1002.
- murmur** with *against* + ger., 878.
- must** as modal verb, 38 *f*; — den. constraint, 52 *ff*; — comp. with *to be*, 52; — comp. with *to have*, 56 *f*, 62, 64; — comp. with *to be certain (or sure)*, 57; — fol. by *shall* or *will*, 58; — replacing *shall*, 71; — var. with *shall*, 73; — in peculiar applic., 99.
- must not** var. with *may not*, 58, 98.
- muster** approach. to cop., 17.
- my** in *Good my Lord*, 537.
- myriad** with, or without *of*, 312.
- name** (verb) requir. *to-compl.*, 253; — with pred. adn. adj. or with pred. *for*, 365 *f*.
- name** (noun) with or without appos. *of*, 291 *f*; — in *by name*, 292.
- namely** before explan. word(-group), 270.
- natheless (or more)** in adverb. co-ord., 593, 595.
- naturalize** with pred. adn., adj. 376.
- nay** in *to say one nay*, 241; — where placed, 442; — in copul. co-ord., 582.
- ne** in archaic Eng., 577.
- near** constr. with or without *to* or (*up*)*on*, 189 *ff*; — shifted to back-pos., 480; — with *to* + ger. or inf., 871.
- nearest** with *to* + ger., 871.
- necessary** constr. with *for* or *to*, 183 *f*; — after noun, 489; — with *for* + ger., 888; — with *to* + inf., 888.
- necessitate** with ac. + inf., 798; — with ger., 852.
- necessity** in *of necessity*. 39, 326; — in *under the necessity*, 64; — with *for* or *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 943.
- need** (verb) den. constraint, 64 *ff*; — equiv. to both *to require* and *to be required*, 65, 865; — when uninflected, 65; — var. with *to have*, 67; — constr. with or without *to do*, 118 *f*; — with pers. or impers.

- subj., 133, 151; — with dif. subj., 154; — with ac. + inf. 799; with ger. or inf., 865.
- need** (noun) in *to have need, there is need*, 66 *f*; — in *if need be*, 135; — with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 943 *f*.
- need** (adv.) in *had need* + inf., 67.
- needs** as modal adv., 39, — mod. *must* in *needs must*.
- neglect** with ger. or inf., 866.
- neither** causing inversion, 392 *f*; — in corrobor. sent., 398; — its gram. function, 549, 573; — as co-ordin. conj., 573 *ff*; — in end-position, 576 *f*, — as variant of *either*, 597; — varying with *as*, 725.
- never** as emphatic neg., 402; — where placed, 434 *ff*; — in combin. with part., 513; — in combin. with pas. inf., 526.
- nevertheless** not causing inversion, 396; — where placed, 444; — in advers. co-ord., 593; 595.
- new** after noun, 496.
- newspaper** placed after prop. name, 299.
- next** where placed, 494, 538; — in copul. co-ord., 583; — with *to* + ger., 871.
- nickname** fol. by appos. *of*, 292.
- nigh** constr. with or without *to* or (*up*)*on*, 191 *f*; — with *to* + inf., 871.
- nil** as neg. of *will*, 718.
- no** instead of *not*, 106; — influencing place of indef. art., 536; — before compar., 536 *f*; — dropped before *more*, 575; — instead of *not the* (*or a*), 935 *f*.
- no** with two non-prep. obj., 235.
- nominate** with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *as* or *for*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 375.
- no more** opening sent., 396, 398, 406 *f*, 574 *f*; — in *a* + *no more* + adj., or *no more* + *a* + adj., 536.
- no more but** in the mean. of *only*, 746.
- none the less** not, as a rule, causing inversion. 396; — in advers. co-ord., 594.
- none too** before adj., 501.
- nor** causing inversion, 392 *f*; — as co-ordin. conj., 548, 573 *ff*; — varying with *as*. 725; — instead of *than*, 746.
- no sooner** fol. by *but*, 670 *f*, 746.
- not** coalescing with prec. verb, 102; — where placed, 102; — in *not a word* (or *syllable*, etc.), 102; — with strong or weak stress, 103; — in dif. places according to sense, 105; — neg. wrong element, 105 *f*; — neg. verbs of judging fol. by sub-ordin. cl. 106; — neg. *must* (*ought*, etc.), 106; — neg. dif. elem. of the sent., 106 *f*; — in exclam. sent. 379 *f*; — causing inversion, 392 *ff*; — where placed. 449 *ff*, 466, 467; — in comb. with pas. inf., 525; — representing an entire sent., 611, 1003.
- note** with ac. + inf., 794.
- nothing** fol. by adj., 316, 490; — causing inversion, 402.
- notice** with ac. + past part., 803; — with ac. + pres. part., 985.
- notify** with (*to* +) (pro)noun + sub-ord. stat., 248.
- notion** in *to have no notion of* + ger., 910; — with *of* + (pro)noun + ger., 962.
- not only** causing inversion, 395.
- not only (alone, or merely) ... but (also)** in copul. co-ord., 582.
- not the less (or more)** not, as a rule, causing inversion. 396; — in advers. co-ord., 594 *f*.
- notwithstanding** where placed, 444; — in advers. co-ord., 593, 595; — as prep., 975 *f*.
- notwithstanding (that)** in adv. cl. of concession, 711 *f*.
- novel** with or without appos. *of*, 291.
- now** where placed, 455; — in dif. mean., 455; — in copul. co-ordin., 580.
- now-a-days**, 321.

- now ... now** in copul. co-ordin., 585.
now (that) in adv. cl. of time, 675 *f*, 686.
numberless after noun, 489.
- o'** abbreviated from *of* or *on*, 326.
- object** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 924; — with *to* + (pro)noun + 961.
- objection** with *to* or *against* + ger., or *to* + inf., 949; — with *to* + (pro)noun + ger., 962.
- obliged** in *to be obliged*, 39, 63; — fol. by pas. inf., 64; — with *for* + ger., 891.
- observe** as verb of declaring. 366; — with ac. + inf., 809; — with ac. + pres. part., 985.
- obstacle** with *to* + ger., 948.
- obstinacy** with *in* + ger., 946.
- obtain** with two non-prep. obj., 235; — with *for*-compl., 235.
- occasion** (noun) in *to have occasion*, 64; — with *for* or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 936, 944.
- ocasion** (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 235; — with ac. + inf., 799, 810; — with ac. + pas. inf., 810; — with *of* + (pro)noun + ger., 962.
- occasional** implying adv. relation, 332.
- occupied** with *in* or *with* + ger., 899, 930; — with pres. part., 904.
- odds** in *to make odds*, 234.
- of** in prep. compl., 219 *f*. 221, 222, 225; — + noun replac. appos., 271, 281 *ff*, 290, 962; — in part. funct., 272, 285. 302, 334 *f*, 408, 963; — before explanatory word-group, 290; — dispensed with before subord. stat., 293; — before subord. quest., 293 *f*, 626; — before inf. cl., 294; — before ger. cl., 294, 957; — before names of parts of the day, and proper names of seasons, 324, 326; — repres. an earlier *on*, 325; — as substit. of gen. infl. in adv. expres., 326 *f*; — in *of all men*, etc., 331; — shifted to back-position, 474; — in prep.-group, 532 *f*; — with ger., 872; — with (pro)noun + ger., 962; — corresp. to var. gram. funct., 932 *ff*.
- off** (adv.) where placed, 417 *ff*.
- off** (prep.) with ger., 872.
- O(h) me!** as ellipt. sent., 1003.
- offended** dispensing with anticip. prep. obj., 259; — with *for* + ger., 890.
- offer** with two non-prep. obj., 235; — with inf., 854, 858.
- often** where placed, 434 *ff*.
- old** in comp. with name of measure, 502 *f*.
- omit** with ger. or inf., 866.
- omitting** as prep., 971.
- on** (prep.) before proper names of days. 324 *f*; — before names of parts of the day, 327; — opening adv. ger.-cl. 952, 977; — dropped before ger., 954, 990; — before (pro)noun + ger., 963; — in var. exclam., 1004.
- on** (adv.) where placed, 417 *ff*.
- on condition (that)** in adv. cl. of condition, 701.
- once** where placed, 456 *f*; — in dif. mean. 456 *f*; — as conj. adv., 456; — in *once and away*, 568; — in *once and for all*, 572.
- once more** in two mean., 451.
- once (that)** in adv. cl. of time, 676.
- one** (indef. pron.) in *one day*, *morning*, etc., 327; — favouring postpos. of adj., 490; — fol. by adj., 491; — fol. by part., 508.
- one** (num.) in *one by (or and) one*. 569; — in *one (and) only*, 572.
- only** impl. neg., 109, 392 *f*; — causing invers. 392 *f*; — not causing invers., 393, 396; — without negat. force, 393, — where placed, 442, 446 *f*, 457; — in dif. mean., 457; — as conj. adv., 457; — favouring postpos. of adj., 490; — in *one (and) only* or *only one*, 572; — in advers. co-ord., 593. 595, 700; — fol. by (pro)noun, 762.
- only that** in adv. cl. of condition, 700; — in adv. cl. of exception, 762.

- on condition of with *ger.*, 958.
- on purpose that in adv. cl. of purpose, 693.
- on purpose to in inf.-cl. of purpose, 782.
- on the contrary where placed, 443; — in advs. co-ord., 591 *f.*
- on the one hand . . . on the other (hand) in copul. co-ordin., 585.
- on the other hand where placed, 443; — in advs. co-ord., 591.
- open with *for* or *to*, 181 *f.*
- opportunity with *for* or *to* + *ger.*, or *to* + *inf.*, 936, 944.
- opposed with *to* + *ger.*, 916.
- opposite constr. with or without *to*, 192.
- or before explan. word(-group), 270; — in altern. quest., 382, 599; — in strong or weak form, 382 *f.*, 597; — as co-ordin. conj., 548, 575 *f.*, 597 *ff.*, 716 *ff.*; — replac. *nor*, 575 *f.*; as advs. conj., 597; — before rectifying stat., 599; — equiv. to *if not*, 599; — connecting subordin. cl., 599; — before explan. stat., 599 *f.*; — dispensed with, 717; — in front-position, 717.
- order (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 235; — not construed with inf.-cl., 768; — with ac. + *inf.*, 800, 813, 814; — with ac. + past part., 814; with subord. stat., 815; — in nom. + *inf.*, 820; — in double pas. constr., 821.
- order (noun) with *for* + (pronoun + *inf.*), 825.
- ordinary after noun, 486.
- or else (or otherwise), 600.
- or ere (or ever) in adv. cl. of time, 671.
- or so after noun den. numb. or quant., 313 *f.*
- other in *cannot do other than* + *inf.*, 64; — in adv. phrase with *all*, 332; — as anteced. of *than*, 733, 759; — constr. with *from* or *to*, 734 *f.*
- otherwise in advs. co-ord., 597, 600; — as anteced. of *than*, 733, 759.
- ought comp. with *to be*, 53; — den. constraint, 67 *ff.*; — equiv. to *to be entitled*, 68; — comp. with *should*, 75 *f.*; — approach. to *might*, 95; — with dif. subj., 154.
- out where placed, 417 *ff.*; — in combin. with part., 513 *f.*; — in *Out upon* etc., 1004.
- outright where placed, 429.
- over (adv.) where placed, 417 *ff.*; — in the meaning of *left*, 619, 967.
- overhear with ac. + *inf.*, 794.
- overt after noun, 486.
- owe with or without anticip. *it*, 208; — with two non-prep. obj., 235; — with *to* + *ger.*, 915.
- own requir. *to*-compl., 253; — with pred. adn. adj., or with (pronoun + *to be*), 366; — with subord. stat., 768; — with reflex. pron. + (*to be*), 807, 808; — with *ger.*, 849; — with *to* + *ger.* or *to* + *inf.*, 924.
- paint with pred. adn. adj., 366; — with (pronoun + pres. part.), 988.
- Palatine after noun, 486.
- parallel with *to* + *ger.*, 916.
- paramount after noun, 486.
- pardon (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 235; — with a *for-*, *from-*, *in-*, or *to*-compl., 236; — with *for* or *in* + *ger.*, 891; — with pos. or pers. pron. + *ger.*, 892, 960; — with *from* + *ger.*, 892.
- pardon (noun) with *for* + *ger.*, 940.
- part (verb) with or without pred. *as*, 348.
- part (noun) in *to take (a) part in* + *ger.*, 899.
- particular implying adv. relation, 331; — with *about*, *in*. or *over* + *ger.*, 877; — with *to* + *inf.*, 877; — with *as to* + (pronoun + *ger.*), 961.
- party with *to* + *ger.*, 917.
- pass approach. to cop., 17; — with two non-prep. obj., 236; — with pred. *as*; — with *in* + *ger.*, 897.
- passion with *for* + *ger.*, 940.
- past (adj.) after noun, 494.

- past (prep.) with *ger.*, 872; — in var. applications, 976.
- patent after noun, 486.
- pay with two non-prep. obj., 236; — in *to pay attention(s)*, 236.
- peace in *Peace be to etc.!*, 136, 1004.
- pending as prep., 975 *f.*
- peradventure as modal adv., 35.
- perceive with ac. + inf., 794; — with ac. + past part., 803; — with subord. stat., 804; — with ac. + pres. part., 985.
- perchance as modal adv., 35.
- perfectly where placed, 430.
- perhaps as modal adv., 35 *ff.*, 330 *f.*; — comp. with *may*, 36 *ff.*
- permission with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 825; — with *to* + inf., 950.
- permit with pos. pron. + *ger.*, 251; — with ac. + inf., 800, 813; — in nom. + inf., 820; — with ac. + pres. part., 989.
- permitted in *to be permitted*, 96.
- perplexed with *at* + *ger.*, 881.
- persevere with *in* + *ger.*, 897.
- persist with *in* + *ger.*, 897.
- person fol. by appos. *of*, 283.
- persuade with *to* + infin., 793, 878, 905; — with *against* + *ger.*, 878; — with *into* + *ger.*, 878, 905.
- picture (verb) requir. *to-compl.*, 253.
- pig (verb) in *to pig it*, 200.
- prick oneself with (*up*)*on* + *ger.*, 911.
- pity (verb) with *for* + *ger.*, 890.
- plague in *Plague on etc.!*, 1004.
- plan in *to lay down a plan of* + *ger.*, 910; — with *for* + *ger.*, 940.
- plaudits fol. by appos. *of*, 286.
- play with or without appos. *of*, 291.
- play with two non-prep. obj., 236; — with (*up*)*on-* or *with-compl.*, 236.
- plea with *for* or *of* + *ger.*, 944.
- pleasant with *for* or *to*, 184.
- please in var. loc., 146, 697, 1001; — with dif. subj., 154.
- pleased in *to be pleased*, 147, 154; — with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 817; — with *at* or *with* + *ger.*, or *to* + inf., 881, 932.
- pleasure constr. with *for* or *to*, 184; — in *to take (a) pleasure in* + *ger.*, 899; — with *of* + *ger.*, 934; — with *at* or *in* + *ger.*, 938 *f.*
- pledge with two non-prep. obj., 236; — with *to* + infin., 793, 919.
- plume oneself with (*up*)*on* + *ger.*, 911.
- point fol. by partic., 508; — in (*up*)*on* (or *at*) *the point of* + *ger.*, 909; — in *at (the) point to* + inf., 909; — in *to make a point of* + *ger.*, or *to* + inf., 910; — in *to the point of* + *ger.*, 946.
- point out with two non-prep. obj., 236 *f.*; — requir. *to-compl.*, 253.
- polite after noun, 495.
- politic after noun, 486.
- port dispensing with appos. *of*, 289.
- portend with two non-prep. obj., 237.
- position in *to be in a position*, 94.
- positive after noun, 486; — with *about* + *ger.*, 877.
- possible as mod. adj., 38; — with *for* or *to*, 183 *ff.*
- possibly as mod. adv., 35.
- postpone with *ger.*, 852.
- pound in comb. with appos., 314.
- pour out with two non-prep. obj., 237.
- power in *to have it in one's power*, 207; — with *to* + inf. or *of* + *ger.*, 950.
- practice in *to put into practice*, 376; — in *to make a practice of* + *ger.*, 911.
- practise with *ger.*, 852; — with *ger.* or inf., 866.
- praise with pred. *as*, 366.
- pray with (*to* +) (pro)noun + inf., 248 *f.*; — with inf., 254.
- preach with two non-prep. obj., 237; — with *to-compl.*, 253, 256.
- preceding after noun, 519.
- predilection with *for* + *ger.*, 940.
- prefer with ac. + inf., 800; — with subord. stat., 813; — with *ger.* or inf., 866; — with *to* + *ger.*, 915.

- preferable** with *for* or *to*, 185; — with *to* + ger., 916.
preference in *in preference to* + ger., 873.
prelude with *to* + ger., 948.
preparation with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 944.
prepare with *for* + ger., 887; — with *to* + inf., 887.
preparatory with *to* + ger., 873.
prepenise after noun, 486 *f*.
prescribe with two non-prep. obj., 237; — with ac. + inf., 800.
present (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 237; — with *to-* or *with-*compl., 237, 253.
present (adj.) after noun, 495.
preserve with *from* + ger., 895.
press with *to* + inf., 919.
presume with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 366; — with ac. + inf., 796; — in nomin. + infin., 819; — with inf., 858.
presumptive after noun, 487.
presumptuous with *in* + ger., 957.
pretence with *for* or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 944.
pretend with *to* + inf., 769, 920.
pretended before noun, 517.
pretension with *to* + inf., 950.
pretext with *for* or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 944.
prevail with *on* (or *with*) + (pro)noun + inf., 815.
prevent with ac. + inf., 801; — in various ger. constr., 837, 895, 960.
previous after noun, 494; — with *to* + ger., 873.
previously var. with *previous*, 494; — with *to* + ger., 873.
principal favouring post-pos. of adj., 490.
pride (noun) in *to take (a) pride in* + ger., 899; — with *at* + ger., 939.
pride oneself with (*up*)*on* + ger., 911.
prize with pred. *as*, 366.
probable as mod. adj., 38.
process in *to be in process of* + ger., 909.
proclaim with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 366, 375; — with with ac. + inf., 797.
procure with two non-prep. obj., 237 *f*; — with *for-*compl., 239.
produce with two non-prep. obj., 238; — with *for-*compl., 238.
profess requir. *to-*compl., 253; — with reflex. pron., 366; — with inf.-cl., 769, 771; — with ac. + inf., 797, 807; — with or without reflex. pron., 807, 808; — with ger. or inf., 866.
professed before noun, 517.
professing before noun, 517.
prohibit with two non-prep. obj., 238; — with *from-*compl., 238, 896; — with (pro)noun + ger., 238, 896; — with *from* + ger., 896; — in pas. voice + inf., 896.
project with ger. or inf., 867.
promise (noun) with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 947.
promise (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 238; — with inf.-cl., 770.
promote with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 375.
prompt with *to* + inf., 919.
pronounce with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 366 *f*; — with ac. + inf., 797; — dispensing with reflex. pron. and *to be*, 808; — with subord. stat., 809; — in nom. + infin., 819.
proof gov. non-prep. obj., 186.
propensity with *for* or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 944 *f*, 950.
proper after noun, 487.
prophecy with two non-prep. obj., 238.
propitious with *for* + ger., 888.
propose requir. *to-*compl., 253; — with pred. *for*, 375; — in double pas. constr., 821; — with inf., ger., or subord. stat., 855 *f* — with ger. or inf., 867; — with pos. pron. + ger., 960.
prospect with *of* + ger., 947.
protest constr. with subord. stat., 768.

- proud** in *to do one proud*, 372; — with *at* or *of* + ger., 882; — with *to* + inf., 882, 908.
- prove** requir. *to-compl.*, 253; — with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 367; — with ac. + inf., 798, 807; — with or without reflex. pron., 807, 808; — in nomin. + infin., 820.
- proverb** fol. by appos. *of*, 286.
- provide** with two non-prep. obj., 238; with *from-*, *of-*, or *with-compl.*, 238 *f.*, 255.
- provided** as conj., 702, 976.
- providing** as conj., 702, 976.
- providing that** as group-conj., 972.
- provision** with *for* + ger., 940.
- provoke** with ger., 852; — with *into* + ger., 905.
- public** after noun, 487.
- pure** after noun, 489.
- purport** constr. with inf.-cl., 769.
- purpose** (noun) in *of set purpose*, 326; with *of* + ger., 947.
- purpose** (verb) with ger. or inf., 867.
- put** fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 208; — in *to put into one's heart*, 209; — with two non-prep. obj., 239; — fol. by *in(to)*, 376; — fol. by prep.-groups, 376.
- put down** with pred. *as* or *for*, 367.
- put off** with ger., 852,
- putting** in *putting on one side*, 972.
- put up** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 926; — with *with* + ger., 930.
- qualified** with *for* + ger., 888; — with *to* + inf., 888.
- quality** in *in the quality of*, 346 *f.*
- quarter** with or without *of*, 303.
- question** placed after proper name, 299.
- quick** fol. by inf.-cl., 786; — with *at* + ger., 885; — with *of* + ger., 957.
- quite** comp. with *whole*, 334, 335; — where placed, 428, 429, 535; — as intensive before *as*, 722.
- quote** with two non-prep. obj., 239.
- raise** with two non-prep. obj., 239; — with (pro)noun + *to be*, 375.
- range** with non-prep. obj., 328.
- rank** with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 367.
- rank and file** prec. by num., 286.
- rapture** with *to* + inf., 939.
- rarely** impl. neg., 109, 392 *f.*; — causing invers., 392 *f.*
- rash** with *in* + ger., 957.
- rate** with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 367.
- rather** in *had rather*, 67, 155 *ff.*; — where placed, 428, 429, 535; — in advers. co-ord., 592 *f.*; — in rectifying stat., 598.
- read** with two non-prep. obj., 239; — with *to-compl.* 256; — with ac. + inf., 801; — with *of* + (pro)-noun + past part., 992.
- readiness** with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 945.
- ready** den. willingness, 80; — with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 888.
- reason** with *for* + ger. or *to* + inf., 945.
- rebel** with *at*, *against*, or *to* + ger., 884.
- recite** requir. *to-compl.*, 253.
- reck** with dif. subj., 154.
- reckon** with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *as* or *for*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 367.
- recognize** with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as* or *for*, 367 *f.*
- recollect** with (pro)noun + ger., 791; — with ger. or inf., 867; — with (pro)noun + pres. part., 988.
- recommend** fol. by anticip. *it*, 208; with two non-prep. obj., 239; — with ger., 854; — with pos. pron. + ger., 960; — with pers. pron. and ger., 960.
- reconcile** with *to* + ger., 915.
- recount** requir. *to-compl.*, 253.
- reduce** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 924.
- referring to** as prep., 980.
- reflect** fol. by (prep. +) subord. quest., 263.

- refrain** with *from* + ger. or *to* + inf., 893.
refuge in *to take refuge in* + ger., 899.
refuse replac. *will not*, 80; — with two non-prep. obj., 239; — with one non-prep. obj., 256; — with ger. or inf., 867.
regard (verb) with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *as (being)*, or with *in the light of*, 368; — with *as* + pres. part., 991.
regard (noun) with *to* + ger., 948.
regarding as prep., 969.
regnant after noun, 487.
regret (verb) with ger. or inf., 867.
regret (noun) with *at* or *for* + ger., 939.
regular troops prec. by num., 286.
reign approaching to cop., 17; — dispensing with pred. *as*, 348.
reimburse with two non-prep. obj., 239; — with *for-* or *of-* compl., 239.
reject with ger., 849; — with *from* + ger., 896.
rejoice dispensing with anticip. prep. obj., 258; — with *to* + inf., 879; — with *in* + (pronoun) + ger., 961.
relate with two non-prep. obj., 240; — with *to*-compl., 253; — with *to* + ger., 915.
relating to as prep., 969.
relish with gen., 852.
reluctance with *to* + inf. or *in* + ger., 950.
reluctant with *to* + inf., 921.
rely(on) with anticip. prep. obj., 260; — with pred. *as*, 368.
remin. as cop., 2, 17; — in combin. with present part., 21; — in *it remains to say*, 140.
remaining after noun, 518; — as adnom. partic.-cl., 966.
remember with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 368; — with ger.-constr., 791, 836, 838, 989; — with ac. + inf. 797, 989; — with ger. or inf., 868; — with (pro)noun + pres. part., 988 *f.*
remit with two non-prep. obj., 240.
render fol. by anticip. *it*, 205; — with two non-prep. obj., 240; — with pred. adn. adj., 372.
renounce with ger., 853.
repeat requir. *to*-compl., 253.
repent with dif. subj., 155; — with ger. or inf., 868; — with *of* or *for* + ger., 906.
reply not with ac. + inf., 809.
report requir. *to*-compl., 254; — with (pro)noun + *to be*, 368; — with ac. + inf., 797; — in nomin. + inf., 819; with ger., 849.
reprehend with *for* + ger., 889.
represent with pred. *as*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 363; — with ac. + inf., 797; — with *as* + pres. part., 991.
reproach with *for-* or *with*-compl., 255; — with *for* or *with* + ger., 889, 930.
repugnance with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 949.
repute in nom. + inf., 819.
request with two non-prep. obj., 240; — with *from* or *of*-compl., 240; — with subord. stat., 815.
require with pers. or impers. pred., 133, 151; — with ac. + inf., 799; with subord. stat., 812; — with ger. or inf., 868.
resemble with *in* + ger., 957.
reserve (verb.) requir. *to*-compl., 254.
reserve (noun) prec. by num., 286.
resign with two non-prep. obj., 240; — with *to* + gen. or *to* + inf., 924.
resist with ger., 853.
resistance with *to* + ger., 948.
resolution with *in* + ger., 957.
resolve with (up)on + ger., or *to* + inf., 912.
resolved with (up)on + ger. or *to* + inf., 913.
respecting as prep., 971.
responsibility with *for* or *of* + ger., 945.

- responsible** with *for* + ger., 890.
rest (verb) replac. *to be*, 17; — as cop., 19 *f*; — furn. with redundant refl. (or pers.) pron., 178 *f*.
rest (noun) in *to set at rest*, 376.
restore with two non-prep. obj., 240; — with *to*-compl., 254.
result with *in* + ger., 897.
resume with ger., 853.
return with two non-prep. obj., 240 *f*; — with *to*-compl., 253; — dispensing with predicating *as*, 348; — fol. by *and*, 563; — with *from* + ger., 894.
reveal requir. *to*-compl., 254; — with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 368 *f*.
revolt with *at* + ger., 879.
right (noun) with *to* + inf. or *of* + ger., 950; — in *of right*, 326.
right (adj.) in *right you are!*, 408; — with *in* + ger., 957.
rigid with *in* + ger., 957.
riled with *at* + ger., 882.
ring as cop., 14; — with *for* + (pronoun + inf., 815, 816.
rise approach. *to* cop., 17; — dispensing with pred. *as*, 348; — fol. by *and*, 563.
risk with *of* + ger., 947.
river with or without appos. *of*, 288.
roughly as shortened part.-cl., 970.
round (adv.) where placed, 419 *f*.
round (adj.) in *Table Round*, 493.
rove dispensing with pred. *as*, 348.
Royal after noun, 487.
rule in *as a rule*, 329, 726.
rumour (verb) in nom. + inf., 819.
run as cop., 14; — fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 199.
running after noun, 518.
rush fol. by *and*, 563.

sacrifice with *to* + ger., 915.
safe as var. of *certain* (or *sure*) 166 *f*, 896; — with *from* + ger., 896; — with *in* + ger., 900.
same anteced. of *as*, 647 *f*; — understood, 648; — as intens. before *as*, 722 *f*; — as intens. before *as if* (or *though*), 732.
sanction with ger., 853.
satisfaction with *at* + ger., 939.
satisfied with *with* + ger. or *to* + inf., 932.
save (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 241; — with *from*-compl., 241, 896; — with *from* + ger., 896.
save as prep. or conj., 759; — in inf.-cl., 790.
save that in adv. cl. of exception, 760 *f*.
saving in inf.-cl., 790; — as prep., 972.
saving that as group-conj., 760 *f*, 972.
say in *Who is to say?*, 43; — in *it says*, 138; — in *I heard say*, 206; with two non-prep. obj., 241; — not with inf.-cl., 767, 768; — not with ac. + inf., 809; — in nomin. + infin. 819; — with *to* + ger., 915.
say (imper.) as conj., 703.
saying (noun) fol. by appos. *of*, 286.
saying (part.) in *so* (or *thus*) *saying*, 468.
scan with (pronoun + pres. part., 985.
sarcely impl. neg., 109, 392 *f*; — causing invers., 392 *f*; — where placed, 431 *f*; — in head-cl. of temp. cl., 666, 670.
scheme with *for* or *of* + ger., 945.
score with or without *of*, 307 *f*.
scorn with ger. or inf., 868.
scrawl with two non-prep. obj., 241.
scruple (verb) with ger. or inf., 809.
scruple (noun) in *to make a scruple of* + ger., 911; — with *about*, *at*, *in*, or *of* + ger., or *to* + inf., 938, 946.
scrupulous with *about* or *in* + ger., 877; — with *to* + inf., 877.
seal with pred. adn. adj., 372.
season with pred. adn. adj., 372.
secure (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 241; — with *for*- or *to*-compl., 241; — with *from* or *against* + ger., 896.
secure (adj.) with *from* + ger., 896.

- see with or without anticip. prep. obj., 260, 566; — in to see *the first*, (or *the last*) of a person, 366 f; — fol. by *and*, 566; — with pred. adn. adj., 791, 991; — with (pro)noun + adnom. inf.-cl., 792; — with ac. + inf. 794, 802, 987; — with ac. + past part. 803; — with subord. stat., 804; — in nomin. + inf., 818; — in to see *one's way (clear)* with to + ger. or to + inf., 926 f; — with ac. + pres. part., 985 f, 987.
- seeing that as prep.-conj., 687.
- seek with inf., 858.
- seem not a cop., 4; — comp. with to look, 10 f; — as part of compl. pred., 31; — without antic. *it*, 148, 149; — with dif. subj., 161; — furn. with person-adj. with to, 162; — dispensing with to be, 163; — in *should* (or *would*) seem, 163; — fol. by *as if* (or *as though*), 164; — in various con., 164.
- seemingly comp. with to seem, 4.
- seldom impl. neg., 109, 392 f; — causing invers., 392 f, 436; — in front-pos. 392 f, 436.
- select with for + ger. 887.
- sell with two non-prep. obj., 241.
- senatorial after noun, 489.
- send with two non-prep. obj., 241; — fol. by *and*, 563, 782; — with doubtful ac. + inf. 801; — with for + (pro)noun + inf., 816.
- sensible with of + ger. 907.
- serve with two non-prep. obj., 241; — with (up)on-compl., 242; — with or without pred. *as*, 348; — with for or *instead of*, 350; — with for + ger., 887; — with to + inf. 888; — in *serve(s) him right*, 1001.
- set in to set it about 210; — with two non-prep. obj., 242; — with pred. adn. adj., 372; — fol. by prep.-groups, 376; — in to set at (or to) work, 377; — with ac. + inf., 799; — in to set *one's face against* + ger., 878; — in to set *one's heart* (or *mind*) upon + ger., 911; — with to + inf. or (up)on + ger., 912, 929; — (+ refl. pron.) with to + ger. or to + inf., 925, 990; — with on or to + ger. 990; — with *a* as weak prep., 990; — with (pro)noun + pres. part., 990.
- set (part.) with (up)on + ger., 913.
- set down with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as* or *for*, 369.
- set in with ger. (or pres. part.) or inf., 869.
- setting in *setting aside*, 972.
- settle with to + ger., 915.
- set up with two non-prep. obj., 242; — with pred. *as* or *for*, or with (pro)noun + to be, 375, 377; — with or without refl. pron., 807; — with ger., 853.
- shall as modal verb, 39 ff; — implying recurrency, 42, 87; — var. with *may*, 42; — var. with *should*, 46; — var. with to be, 51 ff; — den. constraint, 70 ff; — replaced by the tense-aux. *will*, 70; — replaced by *must*, 71, 73; — in the language of prophecy, 73; — as modal aux., 74; — replaced by to be, 74; — after a word den. volition, 83; — with adv. adj. of place, 1002.
- shame (verb) without antic. *it*, 148.
- shame (noun) with at + ger., 939.
- share with in + ger., 946.
- sheer impl. adv. relation, 332.
- shilling in comb. with appos., 314.
- shine approach. to cop., 14, 342 f; — of uncertain gram. status, 16.
- shirk with ger., 853.
- shock with of + ger., 935.
- shocked with at + ger., 882.
- shoot with two non-prep. obj. 242.
- should as modal verb, 43 ff; — comp. with *may*, 46; — var. with to be, 50 ff; — den. constraint, 74 ff; — comp. with *ought*, 75 f; — in quest. opening with *why*, 76; — in rhet. quest. fol. by *but*, 77; — as mod. aux., 78; — after a word den. volition, 83; — in *should rather*, 157.

- shoulder** in *to show (or turn) the cold shoulder*, 245.
- shout** with *to* + (pro)noun + inf., 771.
- show** (verb) as cop., 3, 14; — of uncertain gram. status, 16; — with two non-prep. obj., 242; — with *for-* or *to-*compl., 242; — with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 369; — with ac. + inf., 798, 807; — with reflex. pron., 807, 808; — in nom. + inf., 820; — in double pas. constr., 821.
- show** (noun) in *to make a show of* + ger., 911, 947.
- shrink** with *from* + ger., 894.
- shun** with inf., 858; — with ger. or inf., 869.
- shy** with *of* + ger., 907.
- shyness** with *at* + ger., 939.
- sicken** with *to* + inf., 879.
- sign** (verb) with (*to*) + (pro)noun + inf., 249, 771, 815, 854.
- sign** (noun) with *of* + ger., 947.
- signal** with (*to*) + (pro)noun + inf., 249.
- signify** with or without *to do*, 111; — requir. *to-*compl., 254; — with *about* + (pro)noun + ger., 961.
- simple** after noun, 487.
- since** (conj.) suggesting a prec. *ago*, 141; — in adv. cl. of time, 676; — prec. by *ever*, 676; — in adv. cl. of cause, 686.
- since when** in adv. cl. of time, 680.
- sing** with two non-prep. obj., 242; with *for-* or *to-*compl., 242.
- sinister** after noun, 488.
- sit approach.** to cop., 14, 341, 983; — fol. by pres. part., 14; 983, — furn. with redundant refl. (or pers.) pron., 178 *f*; — dispensing with pred. *as*, 348; — fol. by *and*, 564.
- sit up** fol. by pres. part., 983.
- sith** in adv. cl. of time, 676 *f*.
- situation** in *to be in a situation*, 94.
- skill** with *in* + ger. or *to* + inf., 946.
- slow** with inf.-cl., 786; — with *in* or *of* + ger., 957.
- smart** with *at* + ger., 885.
- smell** as cop., 6, — of uncertain gram. status, 16.
- smile** with two non-prep. obj., 242.
- so** (adv.) opening sent., 398 *f*, 406 *f*, 457 *f*, 574, 724; — where placed, 432, 442, 457 *f*, 466, 467; — in *so saying*, 468; — before adj., 501; — before part., 510; — influencing place of indef. art., 534 *ff*; — referring to prec. *when*, 679; — as antec. of *as*, 681, 721 *f*, 741 *f*; — referring to prec. *if*, 697; — referring to prec. (*al*)*though*, 709; — as part of adv., 713; — varying with *as*, 724; — before main word-(group) of pred., 726; — as antec. of *that-*cl., 735; 748; — as antec. of *as*, 735, 747; — understood, 735; — in *So help me God!*, 741; — fol. by inf.-cl., 788; — fol. by part.-cl., 789.
- so** (conj.) in caus. co-ord., 602; — in adv. cl. of condition, 701 *f*, 707.
- so as** in adv. cl. of consequence, 690; — in adv. cl. of purpose, 693.
- sobriquet** fol. by appos. *of*, 291.
- so early as** as prep. or conj. phrase, 743.
- soever** as part of adv., 713.
- so far as** in adv. cl. of restriction, 756, 758.
- so far back as** as prep. or conj. phrase, 743.
- so far from** opening adv. ger.-cl., 956; — before (pro)noun + ger., 964.
- so late(ly)** as as prep. or conj. phrase, 743.
- solely** where placed, 446.
- so long** referring to prec. *as long as*, 679.
- so long ago as** as prep. or conj. phrase, 743.
- so (or as) long as** in adv. cl. of time, 673, 677, 744.
- something** fol. by *of*, 315, 336; — fol. by adj., 316, 490; — used substantively, 317.

- sometimes ... sometimes in copul. co-ordin., 585.
- so much as part of adverb. conjunctive, 429, 745.
- so much as in adverb. co-ord., 593.
- so much so that in adv. cl. of consequence, 689 *f*.
- (so much) the as correlative of *by so much*, 753.
- so near as as prep. or conj. phrase, 744.
- so (or as) oft(en) as in adv. cl. of time, 677 *f*, 744.
- sooner in *would sooner*, 156 *ff*.
- so recently as as prep. or conj. phrase, 744.
- sorrow with *at* + ger., 939.
- sorry with *at* + ger., 882; — with *to* + inf., 882.
- so (or as) soon as in adv. cl. of time, 678, 744.
- so surely as in adv. cl. of time, 678, 744.
- so that in adv. cl. of consequence, 689 *f*; — in adv. cl. of purpose, 693; — in adv. cl. of condition, 702.
- sound as cop., 14; — of uncertain gram. status, 16.
- spare with two non-prep. obj., 242; — with *from-* or *to-*compl., 242 *f*; — with inf., 858.
- speak with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 369; — with *to* + ger., 915; — as inf. constituent of adv. cl., 971; — with *of* + (pro)noun + *as* + pres. part., 991.
- speaking in part.-cl., 966, 969 *f*.
- speculate with prep. + subord. quest., 262.
- spell as cop., 14 *f*.
- spend with *in*, (*up*)*on*, or *over* + ger., 898 *f*; — with pres. part., 903 *f*.
- sphere fol. by appos. *of*, 290.
- spiritual after noun, 487.
- spirit up with *to* + ger., 916.
- spry with *at* + ger., 885.
- spur with *to* + inf., 919.
- square after noun, 493 *f*.
- state with two non-prep. obj., 243.
- stamp with pred. *as*, 369.
- stand approach. to cop., 5, 15, 341, 348, 989; — fol. by part., 15, 983; — fol. by inf., 16; — of uncertain gram. status, 17; — repl. *to be*, 17; — in *to stand in good stead*, 193; — with anticip. prep. obj., 260; — dispensing with pred. *as*, 348; — fol. by *and*, 564 *f*; — with ac. + pres. part., 990.
- standing in part.-cl., 970.
- star (verb) in *to star it*, 200.
- stare with *to* + inf., 879.
- start with ger. or inf., 869.
- startled with *at* or *by* + ger., 882.
- state with (pro)noun + *to be*, 269; — with ac. + inf., 797; — in nom. + infin., 819.
- stay as cop., 20; — in *to stay (to) dinner*, etc., 328 *f*; — in *to stay and dine*, etc., 329; — fol. by *and*, 563, 782; — with *from* + ger., 896.
- stead in *to stand in good stead*, 193.
- stick (verb) fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 199; — with *at* + ger., 884.
- stickle with *at* + ger., 884.
- stigmatize with pred. *as*, 370.
- still where placed, 428, 440, 442; — in combin. with part., 513; — in adverb. co-ord., 593, 595, 709.
- stimulus with *to* + ger., 948.
- stir with *to* + inf., 919.
- stolen before noun, 504.
- stone in comb. with appos., 314.
- stoop fol. by *and*, 563.
- stop as cop., 21; — in *to stop (to) dinner*, etc., 328 *f*; — fol. by *and*, 563, 782; — with ger., 853; — with *from* + ger., 896; — with (pro)noun + *ing*-form, 896.
- store after noun, 528.
- story in comb. with appos., 314.
- stray implying adv. relation, 332.
- strike with dif. subj., 151; — with two non-prep. obj., 243; — in *it strikes me*, 984.
- struck as prep., 976.
- study with prep. + subord. quest., 262.

- stump** (verb) in *to stump it*, 200.
stupid with *at* + ger. 885.
style fol. by appos. *of*, 292.
subject (noun) fol. by appos. *of*, 290.
subject (adj.) with *to* + ger.. 917.
submit with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 925.
succeed with *in* + ger., 898.
succeeding as prep., 969.
successful with *in* + ger., 900.
such in front-pos., 406; — before indef. art., 537; — anteced. of *as*, 647, 735, 747; — placed after noun, 650; — in exclam., 651; — before nominal in *as*-cl., 727; — as anteced. of *that*-clause, 735, 748; — fol. by inf.-cl., 788.
such another = *another such*, 537 *f.*
such as replaced by *as*, 650; var. with *those* (or *they*) *who*, 650 *f.*
suffer with ac. + inf., 800, 813; — with subord. stat., 815; — with *at* + ger., 880.
suffice with *for* + ger., 888; — with *to* + inf., 888.
sufficient constr. with *for*, 183; — after noun, 489; — fol. by inf.-cl., 786.
sufficiently influencing place of indef. art., 535; — fol. by inf.-cl., 786.
suffragan after noun, 487.
suggest requir. *to*-compl., 254; — with inf., ger., or subord. stat., 856.
summon with *to* + inf., 919.
superlative after noun, 489.
superior with *to* + ger. 917.
supply with *with*-compl., 255.
suppose with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 370; — with subord. stat., 768; — with ac. + inf., 797; — in nom. + inf., 819.
suppose as conj., 703 *f.*
supposing as conj., 703.
supposing that as group-conj., 972.
sure in *to be sure*, 39, 57, 164 *f.*, 329, 566 *f.*; — fol. by inf., *that*-cl., or *of* + ger., 165, 908; — in *I'm sure*, 329.
surety in *of a surety*, 326.
surname fol. by appos. *of*, 292.
surprise with *of* + ger., 935; — with *at* + ger., 939.
surprised with *at* + ger. or *to* + inf., 882; — with *at* + (pro)noun + ger., 961.
survey with ac. + inf., 794.
suspect with pred. adn. adj., with pred. *as* or *for*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 370; — with ac. + inf., 797; — with *of* + ger., 906.
swear requir. *to*-compl., 254; — with inf.-cl., 770.
sweep with two non-prep. obj., 243.
swift with *at* + ger., 885.
system fol. by appos. *of*, 290.
table *Table Round*, 493.
take fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 199; — in *to take for granted*, 207; — in *to take (it) upon one(self)*, 209, 854; — with two non-prep. obj., 243; with prep. understood, 243 *f.*; — in *you may take my word for it*, 260 *f.*; — in *to take one (for) a walk*, etc., 329; — with pred. *as* or *for*, or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 370; — with pred. adn. adj., 373; — with ac. + inf., 797; — in *to take delight in* + ger., 879; — in *to take credit for* + ger., 390; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 925; — as imper. constituent of adv. cl., 971.
taken aback with *at* + ger., 883.
take up with pred. *as*, 370; — with *in* + ger., 899.
taking before noun, 517; — in part.-cl., 970.
tale with or without appos. *of*, 391.
talent with *at*, *for*, or *of* + ger., 934 *f.*
talk (verb) with prep. + subord. quest., 262; — with *about* or *of* + ger., 876, 906; — with *of* + (pro)noun + *as* + pres. part., 991.
talk (noun) with *about* + (pro)noun + ger., 962.
talking in part.-cl., 970.
tantamount with *to* + ger., 917.

- taste as cop., 6; — of uncertain gram. status, 16, 17.
- taunt with *with* + ger., 930.
- tax with *with* + ger., 930.
- teach with two non-prep. obj., 244, 256; — with inf., 775; — with ger., 775, 854.
- teeth in *to cast* (*fling*, or *throw*) in *one's teeth*, 208.
- telegraph with two non-prep. obj., 244.
- tell in *it tells*, 138; — in *I heard tell*, 206; — with two non-prep. obj., 244; — in nom. + inf., 820.
- temporal after noun, 487.
- tempt with *into* + ger. or *to* + inf., 905.
- temptation with *to* + inf. or *of* + ger., 950 *f.*
- tend with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 925.
- tendency with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 825; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 949 *f.*
- tender with two non-prep. obj., 244.
- testify with *to* + ger., 915.
- than fol. by antic. *it*, 145; — in adv. cl. without subj., 149; — in cl. with invert. word-order, 399; — in comb. placed before noun, 503; — before rel. pron., 644, 746; — in involved adnom. cl., 644, 645; — in adverb. cl. of time, 661, 665; — in adv. cl. of quality, 733; — instead of *as*, 745; — in adv. cl. of degree, 746; — before *where*, 747; — in front-position, 747; — after *to prefer*, 747; — fol. by redundant *what*, 747; — in adv. cl. of exception, 758 *f.*; — before inf.-cl., 767, 789, 842; — before *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 823; — before ger., 842.
- thank with, or without anticip. prep. obj., 260; — with *for* + ger., 890; — with *to* + inf., 890.
- thankful with *at* + ger., 882; — with *to* + inf., 882; — with *for* + ger., 882, 890.
- that (demonst. pron.) as anticip. subj. 139; — in *that is* (*to say*), 270 *f.*; — instead of *so*, 749; — as subj. of pred. with ger., or inf., 845.
- that (rel. pron.) opening subst. cl., 137, 635; — opening adn. cl., 646 *ff.*;
- that (conj.) dispensed with, 141, 614 *f.*, 653, 749; — after prep., 261, 656; — evolved from dem. *that*, 278; — introd. subordin. stat., 609, 614 *ff.*; — dispensing with a prec. member of conj. word-group, 613, 657; — before subordin. stat., 620; — approach. to *if*, 621; — after *whether*, 628; — after interrog. pron., 629; — after *how*, 629; — prec. interrog. adv., 629 *f.*; — introducing adnom. cl., 646, 653 *f.*; — after *same*, 648; — replacing conj. adv., 653, 657 *f.*; — replacing *why*, 653; — as component part of adverb. conj., 656 *f.*, 661, 680, 689, 690, 692 *f.*; — in adv. cl. of cause, 683 *f.*; — in adv. cl. of consequence, 688 *f.*; — in adv. cl. of purpose, 690, 692; — in adv. cl. of condition, 698; — replacing *as*, 710, 728; — in adv. cl. of quality, 635; — in adv. cl. of attendant circumstances, 735 *f.*; — in adv. cl. of degree, 748; — in adv. cl. of restriction, 755 *f.*
- that is to say in rectifying stat., 599.
- the (adv.) in adv. cl. of proportion, 407, 466, 752.
- then (conj. adv.) where placed, 444; — in copul. co-ord., 583; — in adverb. co-ord., 596; — in causal co-ord., 602, 604; — referring to prec. *when*, 679; — referring to prec. *if*, 697.
- then-a-days, 321.
- thence in causal co-ord., 602, 604.
- there with weak stress, 132 *ff.*, 393 *f.*, 401 *f.*; — where placed, 393; — as recapit. adv., 660.
- therefore where placed. 444 *f.*; — in caus. co-ord., 602, 604.
- there is understood 651, 1001.
- these as anticip. subj., 139.
- they as anticip. subj., 139.
- thing(s) replac. indef. *it*, 131; — as

- prop-word, 317; — fol. by adj., 490; — fol. by part., 508.
- think** in *to think fit* (or *proper*), 204; — before (prep. +) subord. quest., 263; — with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 370; — with subord. stat., 767, 768; — with inf.-cl., 770 *f*; — with ac. + inf., 797; — in nomin. + inf., 819; — with *of* + ger., 906; — with *of* + (pro)noun + pres. part., 989.
- thirst** as verb, 135.
- this** as anticip. pron., 139, 275, 276; — before subordin. stat., 620; — as subj. of pred. with ger. or inf., 845 *f*; — in *this done*, 975.
- those** as anticip. subj., 139.
- thou** dispensed with, 1000.
- though** (conj.) not in front-pos., 390 *f*, 407, 408; — in adv. cl. of concession, 708 *f*, 715; — in the sense of *whereas*, 709; — fol. by *that*, 709.
- though** (adv.) where placed, 443, 596; — in advers. co-ord., 593, 596.
- thought** in *to have (got) it in one's thoughts*, 209; — in *to have no thought(s) of* + ger., 910; — with *about* + ger., 938.
- thousand** with or without *of*, 308 *ff*.
- threaten** construed with inf.-cl., 771.
- threatened** before noun, 517.
- three** after noun, 528.
- through** (adv.) where placed, 417 *ff*.
- through** (prep.) opening adv. ger.-cl., 953.
- throw** in *to throw in one's teeth*, 208; — with two non-prep. obj., 244.
- thus** where placed, 442; — in *thus saying*, 448; — before part.; — in caus. co-ord., 602, 604.
- till (that)** in adv. cl. of time, 672, 679.
- till which time** in adv. cl. of time, 680.
- time** in *time out of mind*, 327; — in *to have a good time (of it)*, 337; — in *the time (that)*, 673; — in *for the time being*, 966 *f*.
- tip** with two non-prep. obj., 244.
- tired** with *of* + ger., 907.
- title** with or without appos. *of*, 292; — with *to* + inf., 951.
- to** (prep.) comp. with *for*, 181 *ff*; — + (pro)noun fol. by inf., 183 *ff*; — in *to-compl.*, 213 *ff*; — dispensed with, 215; — implying change of state, 376; — absorbing other prep., 775, 873; — dropped before inf., 789; — with ger., 958; — with (pro)noun + ger., 960 *f*; — in various exclam., 1003 *f*.
- to** (adv.) where placed, 419.
- to be sure** as adv. adj., 784.
- to conclude** as adv. adj., 784.
- tolerate** with ger., 853.
- ton** in combin. with appos., 414.
- too** where placed, 447; — influencing place of indef. art., 447 *f*; — in neg. combin., 578 *f*; — in copul. co-ord., 580; — fol. by adj. + inf.-cl., 786.
- to spare** as adv. adj., 784.
- total** after noun, 487.
- to the end that** in adv. cl. of purpose, 692.
- to the intent (that)** in adv. cl. of purpose, 693.
- touching** as prep., 969.
- toward(s)** opening adv. ger.-cl., 953.
- to wit** before apposition, 270, 784.
- tragedy** with or without appos. *of*, 291.
- train (up)** with pred. adn. adj., 376; — with *to* + ger., 915.
- transaction** after proper name, 299.
- translate** requir. *to-compl.*, 254.
- transmit** with two non-prep. obj., 245.
- travel** with non-prep. obj., 328.
- treble** implying adv. relation, 333 *ff*.
- tribe** fol. by appos. *of*, 287.
- trick** in *to have a trick of* + ger., 88, 910; — in *to play a trick*, 236.
- trip** in *to trip it*, 200.
- triumph** with *at* + ger., 880.
- triumphant** after noun, 487.
- trot** prec. by *at* or *to*, 377.
- trouble** (noun) constr. with *to*, 186; — with *about* + ger. or *to* + inf., 938.
- trouble** (verb) with *about* + ger., or *to* + inf., 876.

- true** in *true-to-life, tragedy*, 500.
- trust** (noun) in *to have it in trust*, 207.
- trust** (verb) requir. *to*-compl., 254, 797; — with *with*-compl., 254; — with ac. + inf., 797; — with *to* + (pro)noun + inf., 817; — in nom. + inf., 819; — with *to* + ger., 915.
- truth** in *truth to tell*, 461.
- try** fol. by *and* 565 *f*, 854 *f*; — with ger., 566, 853.
- turn** (noun) in *to do one a good turn*, 226.
- turn** (verb) as cop., 3, 26; — in *turn (of) + num.*, 27 *f*; — fol. by (*in*)*to*, 29 *f*, 376; — with two non-prep. obj., 245; — with (*up*)*on*-compl., 245; — fol. by *and*, 563; — with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 925; — with *towards* + ger., 936.
- turned** as prep., 976.
- turn out** with dif. subj., 162; — approach. to cop., 342.
- un** as pref. of adj., 491; — as pref. of part., 510 *f*.
- unable** with *to* + inf., 920.
- unborn** after noun, 519.
- unburden** requir. *to*-compl., 254.
- uncertain** before subord. quest., 262.
- uncomfortable** with *at* + ger., 880.
- unconscious** after noun, 489.
- understand** with (pro)noun + ger., 791; — with ac. + inf., 797; — in nom. + inf., 819; — with (pro)noun + pres. part., 989.
- understanding** before nouns, 517.
- undertake** with inf., 858.
- uneasiness** with *about* + ger., 934, 938.
- unequal** with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 928.
- unfold** requir. *to*-compl., 254.
- unfrequently** causing invers., 392 *f*.
- unite** with *in* + ger., 898.
- unknown** before or after noun, 522.
- unless** in adv. cl. of condition, 704, 707.
- unlike** constr. with or without *to*, 187 *f*.
- unlikely** foreshadowing *should*, 45.
- unpropitious** with *for* + ger., 888.
- until** in adv. cl. of time, 672.
- unto** lit. equiv. of *to*, 187.
- unworthy** without any prep. link, 186 *f*; — constr. with *of*, 187, 908; — with (*of* +) ger. or *to* + inf., 908.
- upbraid** with *with* + ger., 889, 930.
- (up)on** in prep. compl., 223, 227; — before prop. names of days, 324 *f*; — with ger., 854.
- up** (adv.) where placed, 417 *ff*; — in combin. with part., 513 *f*.
- (up)on condition (that)** in adv. cl. of condition, 701.
- (up)on which** in adv. cl. of time, 679.
- urge** with *to* + inf., 793, 919; — with *upon* + pron. + inf., 815, 919; — with ger., 854.
- use** (verb) den. recurrency, 84 *f*; — den. discontinuance, 85; — constr. with or without *to*, 119 *f*.
- use** (noun) in *it (or there) is (of) no use* + ger. 844 *f*, 947.
- used** in *to be used*, 88.
- usher** with two non-prep. obj., 245.
- vail** without antic. *it*, 148.
- value** with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 371.
- value oneself** with (*up*)*on* + ger., 911.
- vaunt** with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 371.
- venture** with inf., 858, 911; — with (*up*)*on* + ger., 911.
- verge** (noun) in (*up*)*on the verge of* + ger., 909.
- verge** (verb) with *to* + inf., 920.
- very** (adj.) implying adv. relation. 331.
- vexed** dispensing with anticip. prep. obj., 259; — with *at*, or *for* + ger., 883; — with *to* + inf., 883.
- vexation** with *at* + ger., 939.
- vie** with *in* + ger., 903.
- view** in *to have it in view*, 207.
- visit** in *to pay (or make) a visit*, 234.
- vocation** with *to* + inf., 941.
- volunteer** with inf., 858.

- vote** with two non-prep. obj., 245; — with pred. adn. adj., or with (pro)noun + *to be*, 371; with *for* + ger., 890.
vouch with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 371; — with ac. + inf., 798; — with *to* + ger., 906.
vonchsafe with two non-prep. obj., 245.
vow with subord. stat., 768; — with inf.-cl., 771.
wage with two non-prep. obj., 245; — with *against-*, (*up*)*on-*, or *with-compl.*, 245.
wager with two non-prep. obj., 245.
wait in *to wait dinner*, etc., 323 *f*; — with ac. + inf., 801; — with *for* + (pro)noun + infin., 816.
walk fol. by indef. pron. *it*, 199; — with non-prep. obj., 328.
want replacing *will*, 79; — with pers. or impers. pred., 133 *f*, 151; — with pred. adn. adj., 378, 991; — with (pro)noun + adnom. inf.-cl., 792; — with ac. + inf., 799; — with ac. + past. part., 811; — with subord. stat., 812; — with *for* + (pro)noun + infin., 817; — in nom. + inf., 820; — with ac. + pres. part., 989; — with ger. or inf., 870.
wanting as prep., 976.
war in *to wage war*, 245.
warn with *against* + ger., 878; — with *to* + inf., 878.
warrant furn. with redund. *me*, 179 *f*; — with pred. adn. adj., or with pred. *as*, 371; — with ac. + inf., 797; — in nom. + inf., 820, 898; with *in* or *for* + ger., 898.
warranted with *in* + ger., 900.
wary before subord. quest., 262.
was in *this was not to be*, 99; — in *was like* + perf. inf., 166.
waste with *in* + ger., 898; — with pres. part., 904.
watch with (pro)noun + inf.-cl., 792, 794; — with ac. + inf., 794, 987; — with ac. + past part., 803; — with ac. + pres. part., 986.
watchfulness with *to* + inf., 941.
wave with two non-prep. obj., 245.
wax as cop., 28.
way in *to have a way of* + ger., 88, 910; — in gen., 321; — in *to get into the way of* + ger., 910; — in *to put in a way of* + ger., 911; — in *in a fair way* with *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 929; — in *on the (one's) way with* *to* + ger. or *to* + inf., 929; — with *for* or *of* + ger., 945; — with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 947.
waylay with (pro)noun + pres. part., 990.
weary with *of* + ger. or *to* + inf., 908.
well standing with *may*, 34, 95, 459; — in *to take it well of a person*, 255; — where placed, 458 *f*; — in dif. mean., 453 *f*.
well-advised with *in* + ger., 957.
what (inter.) in adv. funct., 111; — as subj. of *to matter*, 111; — introd. subord. quest., 261; — fol. by *of*, 315; — fol. by adj. + *thing(s)*, 317; — fol. by indef. art., 537.
what (rel.) introd. subst. cl., 264; — in *what is more (rarer, or worse)*, 583; — in adv. cl. of concession, 714.
what (conj.) introducing subordin. stat., 622.
whatso in adv. cl. of concession, 713.
what(so)ever fol. by *of*, 315; — fol. by adj., 317; — in adv. cl. of concession, 407, 713, 715; — as independent rel. pron., 635.
what time in adv. cl. of time, 678 *f*.
wheedle with *into* + ger., 905.
when (conj.) comp. with predicating *as*, 345; — in adverb. cl. of time, 666 *ff*, 678; — var. with *before*, 666; — fol. by *that, as, or if*, 668 *f*.
when (adv.) introd. subst. cl., 635; — introd. adn. cl., 646; — practically equiv. to *where*, 659.
whence introd. adn. cl., 646; — introd. adv. cl. of place, 658 *f*; — in cl. den. a conclusion, 661, 688 *f*.

- whencesoever** in adv. cl. of concession, 713.
- whenever** in adv. cl. of time, 611, 669; — in adv. cl. of concession, 713.
- whensoever** in adv. cl. of time, 661.
- where** (adv.) introd. subst. cl., 635; — introd. adn. cl. 646; — introd. adv. cl. of place, 658 *f*; — practically equiv. to *when*, 659; — introduc. inf. cl., 765.
- whereas** in adv. cl. of cause, 688; — in adv. cl. of attendant circumstances, 738.
- whereat** in adv. cl. of time, 679.
- whereby** in inf.-cl., 776.
- wherefore** in adv. cl. of consequence, 688 *f*.
- wherever** introd. adv. cl. of place, 660.
- whereso** in adv. cl. of concession, 713.
- where(so)ever** in adv. cl. of place, 660; — in adv. cl. of concession, 713.
- where(up)on** in adv. cl. of time, 679; — in inf.-cl., 776.
- wherewith** in inf.-cl., 776.
- wherewithal** in inf.-cl., 765; — in substantival funct., 765.
- whether** in subordin. quest., 599, 628; — fol. by *that*, 628; — in adv. cl. of concession, 599; — in adv. cl. of disjunctive concession, 716 *ff*; — dispensed with, 716; — in inf.-question, 773; — redundantly after *or*, 599.
- whether . . . or** var. with *both . . . and*, 717.
- whether or no** var. with *whether or not*, 628 *f*, 716..
- which** in subst. cl., 138 *f*, 635; — in adn. cl., 646, 648 *f*; — after *same*, 648; — after *such*, 649; — var. with *as*, 724.
- whichever** as independent rel. pron., 635; — in adv. cl. of concession, 713.
- while** comp. with *and*, 544; — in adv. cl. of time, 673, 678; — var. with *as* (or *so*) *long as*, 673; — prec. by *the*, 674; — fol. by *as* (or *that*), 674; — in adv. cl. of attendant circumstances, 674 *f*, 735, 737; — approach. to *though*, 675; — approach. to *provided (that)*, 675; — in the mean. of *till*, 675; — in *it is worth while* + ger. or inf., 845.
- whiles** in adv. cl. of time, 674; — prec. by *the*, 674; — fol. by *that*, 674; — in the mean. of *till*, 675.
- whilst** in adv. cl. of time, 674; — prec. by *the*, 674; — in adv. cl. of attendant circumstances, 735, 737.
- whisper** with (*to* +) (pro)noun + subord. stat., 249.
- whither** introducing adnom. cl., 646; — introducing adverb. cl. of place, 659 *f*.
- whithersoever** in adv. cl. of place, 660.
- who** in subst. cl., 137 *f*, 634 *f*; — in adnom. cl., 646, 648; — after *same*, 648.
- whoever** as independent rel. pron., 634.
- whoso(ever)** as independent rel. pron., 634.
- whole** comp. with *all*, 334; — after noun, 489.
- wholly** where placed, 429.
- why** in *that is why*, 605; — introd. adnom. cl., 646; — repl. by *that*, 653.
- will** impl. recurrency, 42; — as modal verb, 47 *f*, 714; — var. with *to be*, 51 *f*, 54; — replacing *shall*, 70; — den. constraint, 78 *ff*; — with reg. conj., 80; — den. recurrency, 85; — with two non-prep. obj., 246; — in adv. cl. of concession, 714; — with ac. + inf., 799; — with subord. stat., 812; — fol. by adv. of place, 1003.
- willing** in *to be willing*, 80; — with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 816; — in *God willing*, 977.
- willy-nilly** as adv. expression, 718.

- win** with two non-prep. obj., 246; — with *for*-compl., 246; — with *to* + inf., 793.
- wind up** with *by*, *in*, or *with* + ger., 886.
- wire** with two non-prep. obj., 246.
- wise** with *in* + ger., 957.
- wish** replacing *will*, 79; — with two non-prep. obj., 246; — with pred. adn. adj., 378, 991; — with ac. + inf., 799; — with ac. + past part., 811; — with subord. stat., 812; — with *for* + (pro)noun + inf., 817.
- wit** in *to wit*, 270.
- with** in prep.-compl., 221, 224, 226; — after *same*, 648 *f*; — after *equally*, *like*, or *similar*, 649; — opening adv. ger.-cl., 953; — fol. by ger., 958; — fol. by (pro)noun + part., 978.
- withal** in copul. co-ord., 581; — as prep., 581.
- withal that** in adv. cl. of cause, 686.
- with a (or the) view of** opening adv. ger.-cl., 954.
- with a (or the) view to** opening adv. ger.-, or inf.-cl., 954.
- withhold** with *from*-compl., 254, 896; — with ac. + inf., 801, 896; — with ger., 854; — with *from* + ger., 896; — with pos. pron. + ger., 896.
- with intent to** in inf.-cl. of purpose, 782.
- without** opening adv. ger.-cl., 956; — before (pro)noun + ger., 964.
- without** as conj., 705; — fol. by (pro)noun + part., 978 *f*.
- with the intention of** opening adv. ger.-cl., 954.
- with the purpose of** opening adv. ger.-cl., 954.
- woe** in var. loc., 135 *f*, 1003.
- wonder** den. perplexity, 46; — with *at* + (pro)noun + ger., 961.
- wonderful** after noun, 495.
- wont** in *to be wont*, 88.
- woo** with pred. adn. adj., 376.
- word** in *you may take my word for it*, 260 *f*.
- work** (verb) with two non-prep. obj., 246; — with (*up*)on-compl., 246; — with *at* + ger., 884.
- work** (noun) prec. by *at* or *to*, 377.
- worry** with *to* + inf., 919.
- worship** with pred. adn. adj., 371.
- worth** without a prep. link, 187; — comp. with significant prep., 187; — in back-pos., 187; — in *it is worth while* + ger. or inf., 845; — constr. with ger., 870.
- worthy** with or without *of*, 187, 908; — dispensing with anticip. prep. obj., 259; — with *for*+ (pro)noun + inf., 817; — with (*of* +) ger. or *to* + inf., 908.
- would** den. perplexity, 46; — var. with *should*, 47; — den. volition, 47; — as modal verb, 48; — in *would rather*, etc., 80; — den. recurrency, 85 *ff*; — var. with *had* in *had rather*, etc., 157.
- wrest** with *from*-compl., 254.
- write** with two non-prep. obj., 246; — fol. by *to tell* or *to say*, 246 *f*, 564; — with *to*-compl., 256; — fol. by *and*, 563.
- write down** with pred. adn. adj., 371.
- writing** in *at the moment of writing*, 831.
- wrong** with *in* + ger., 957; — with *for* + ger., 958.
- yea** in copul. co-ord., 583.
- year** dispensing with appos. *of*, 292.
- yearn** with dif. subj., 155.
- yeomanry** prec. by num., 286.
- yet** where placed, 443; — in adv. co-ord., 593, 595, 709.
- yield** with two non-prep. obj., 247.
- you** as redund. obj., 177; — dispensed with, 1000.

D U T C H.

- aangenomen (dat)**, 696.
alleen, 331.
als as pred. conj., 347, 373; — not used in inf.-cl., 788.
barvevoets, 322.
beletten with ac. + inf., 895.
bepaald as adv., 322.
(be)hoeven equiv. to *to need*, 65.
behoudens corresp. to *excepted*, 971.
bevelen construed with inf.-cl., 768.
blijken corresp. to *to appear*.
blijven as cop., 2.
blootshoofds, 322.
daargelaten corresp. to var. Eng. loc., 972.
dan as correl. adv., 679, 697; — fol. by *dat*, 828.
dienen equiv. to *to need*.
gaan in ingres. comb., 10.
droogvoets, 322.
dubbel, 333 *f*.
gaarne, 331.
graag, 331.
half, 333 *f*.
hebben with ac. + inf., 806.
heel comp. with *all*, and *quite*, 33 *f*.
heeten with ac. + inf., 806.
hooren fol. by inf.-cl., 767.
iets goeds, 315 *ff*.
juist as adv., 331.
louter, 332.
het dispensed with, 145.
indien, 695, 701 *f*.
meenen with ac. + inf., 806.
mits, 696.
mocht comp. with *might*, 96.
moeten comp. with *must*, 39; — corresp. to *to be*, 49.
mogen comp. with *may*, 36.
nog maar, 331.
nu en dan, 332.
of, 599.
onmiddellijk as adv., 332.
ontbreken how transl., 134.
ouder gewoonte, 327.
of corresp. to *but*, *but that* or *but what*, 609.
opdat, 692.
schijnen corresp. to *to appear* or *to seem*, 161 *f*.
slechts, 331.
soms comp. with *perhaps*.
tenzij or *tenware*, 704.
tot, 373.
uitsluitend as adv., 332 *f*.
verondersteld (dat), 696.
vinden with ac. + inf., 806.
vlak as adv., 331.
voor corresp. to Eng. *to*, 182.
voor mijn part comp. with *for my part*, 758.
wel eens, 326.
worden as cop., 2, 5.
zeer and its Eng. equiv., 430.
zelfs, 331.
zijn as cop., 2.
zoals, 650.
zou(den) den. a mere rumour, 47.
zullen as modal verb, 48; — corresp. to *to be*, 49.





Faint, illegible text, possibly bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.

PE Poutsma, Hendrik
1105 A grammar of late modern
P6 English 2d ed.
1928
v.2

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

